XC40

RECHARGE

OWNER'S MANUAL

VÄLKOMMEN!

We hope you will enjoy many years of driving pleasure in your Volvo. The car has been designed for the safety and comfort of you and your passengers. Volvo strives to design one of the safest cars in the world. Your Volvo is also designed to meet applicable safety and environmental requirements.

To increase your enjoyment of your Volvo, we recommend that you read the instructions and maintenance information in this owner's manual. The owner's manual is also available as a mobile app (Volvo Manual) and on the Volvo Cars support site (support.volvocars.com).

We encourage everyone to always wear their seatbelt in this and other cars. Please do not drive if you are under the influence of alcohol or medication – or have an impaired ability to drive in some other way.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

OWNER INFORMATION

Owner information 16
Owner's manual in centre display 17
Navigate in the owner's manual in the centre display 18
Owner's Manual in mobile devices 20
Volvo Cars support site 21
Reading the owner's manual 21
The owner's manual and the environment 23

YOUR VOLVO

Volvo ID 26
Creating and registering a Volvo ID 26
Drive-E - cleaner driving pleasure 28
IntelliSafe – driver support and safety 31
Sensus - online connectivity and entertainment 32
Software updates 35
Recording data 35
Terms & Conditions for Services 36
Customer Privacy Policy 37
Important information on accessories and auxiliary equipment 37
Installation of accessories 38
Connection of equipment to the car's diagnostic socket 38
Showing the car's identification number 39
Change of market when importing or relocating 40
Driver distraction 40

SAFETY

Safety 44
Safety during pregnancy 44
Whiplash Protection System 45
Seatbelts 46
Putting on and taking off seatbelts 47
Seatbelt tensioner 49
Resetting the electric seatbelt tensioner* 50
Door and seatbelt reminder 50
Airbags 51
Driver airbags 52
Passenger airbag 53
Activating and deactivating passenger airbag* 54
Side airbags 57
Inflatable curtains 57
Safety mode 58
Starting and moving the car after safety mode 59
Child safety 60
Child seats 60
Upper mounting points for child seats 61
Lower mounting points for child seats 62
i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats 62
Child seat positioning 63

Child seat mounting 64
Overview table for location of child seats 66
Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts 67
Table for location of i-Size child seats 69
Table for location of ISOFIX child seats 70

DISPLAYS AND VOICE CONTROL

Displays and controls by the driver in a left-hand drive car 74
Displays and controls by the driver in a right-hand drive car 75
Driver display 77
Driver display settings 79
Fuel gauge 80
Hybrid gauge 80
Hybrid battery gauge 81
Trip computer 82
Show trip data in the driver display 84
Resetting the trip meter 85
Show trip statistics in the centre display 85
Settings for trip statistics 86
Date and time 86
Outside temperature gauge 87
Indicator and warning symbols 87
License agreement for the driver display 89
App menu in the driver display 94
Managing the app menu in the driver display 95
Messages in the driver display 96
Managing messages in the driver display 97
Handling a message saved from the driver display 97
Overview of centre display 99
Managing the centre display 102
Activating and deactivating centre display 105
Navigating in the centre display's views 105
Managing subviews in centre display 109
Function view in centre display 112
Moving apps and buttons in centre display 114
Symbols in the centre display's status bar 114
Keyboard in centre display 116
Changing keyboard language in centre display 119
Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display 119
Changing the appearance in the centre display 121
Switching off and changing the volume of the system sound in the centre display 121
Changing system units 122
Changing system language 122
Other settings in the centre display's top view 122

Open contextual setup in the centre display 123
Resetting user data for change of ownership 124
Resetting settings in the centre display 124
Table showing centre display settings 125
Driver profiles 126
Selecting driver profile 127
Renaming a driver profile 127
Protect driver profile 128
Linking remote control key to driver profile 128
Resetting settings in the driver profiles 130
Message in centre display 130
Managing messages in the centre display 131
Handling a message saved from the centre display 131
Voice recognition 132
Using voice recognition 133
Controlling a telephone with voice recognition 135
Voice control of radio and media 136
Settings for voice recognition 136

LIGHTING

Lighting control 140
Adjusting light functions via the centre display 141
Adapting the headlamp pattern from the headlamps 142
Position lamps 142
Daytime running lights 143
Dipped beam 143
Using main beam 144
Active main beam 145
Using direction indicators 146
Active bending lights* 146
Front fog lamps/cornering lights* 147
Rear fog lamp 148
Brake lights 149
Emergency brake lights 149
Hazard warning flashers 149
Using home safe lighting 150
Approach light duration 150
Interior lighting 151
Adjusting interior lighting 153

WINDOWS, GLASS AND MIRRORS

Windows, glass and mirrors 156
Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds 156
Reset sequence for pinch protection 157
Power windows 157
Operating power windows 158
Rearview and door mirrors 159
Adjusting rearview mirror dimming 160
Angling adjustment of the door mirrors 161
Panoramic roof* 162
Operating the panoramic roof* 164
Automatic closing of the panoramic roof's* sun blind 166
Wiper blades and washer fluid 167
Using windscreen wipers 167
Using the rain sensor 168
Activating and deactivating the rain sensor's memory function 169
Using windscreen and headlamp washers 170
Using the rear window wiper and rear window washer 171
Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing 172

SEATS AND STEERING WHEEL

Manual front seat 174
Power* front seat 175
Adjusting the power* front seat 175
Storing a position for seat and door mirrors 176
Using a stored position for seat and door mirrors 177
Adjusting* the length of the seat cushion in the front seat 178
Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat 178
Lowering the backrests in the rear seat 179
Adjusting the head restraints in the rear seat 181
Steering wheel controls and horn 182
Steering lock 183
Adjusting the steering wheel 183

CLIMATE

Climate 186
Climate zones 186
Climate control - sensors 187
Perceived temperature 187
Controlling the climate control system using voice control 188
Air quality 189
CleanZone* 189
Clean Zone Interior Package* 190
Interior Air Quality System* 190
Activating and deactivating the air quality sensor* 191
Passenger compartment filter 191
Air distribution 192
Changing air distribution 192
Opening, closing and aiming the air vents 193
Table of air distribution options 194
Climate controls 197
Activating and deactivating heated front seat* 198
Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated front seat* 199
Activating and deactivating heated rear seat* 199
Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel* 200
Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated steering wheel* 200
Activating auto climate control 201
Activating and deactivating air recirculation 201
Activating and deactivating time setting for air recirculation 202
Activating and deactivating max defroster 202
Activating and deactivating the heated windscreen* 203
Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated windscreen* 204
Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors 205
Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors 205
Regulating fan level for front seat 206
Regulating temperature for front seat 206
Synchronising temperature 207
Activating and deactivating air conditioning 208
Parking climate 208
Preconditioning 209
Start and switch off preconditioning 209
Preconditioning time setting 211

Adding and editing time setting for preconditioning 211
Activating and deactivating time setting for preconditioning 213
Removing time setting for preconditioning 213
Climate comfort when parking 214
Starting and switching off climate comfort when parking 215
Symbols and messages for parking climate control 216
Heater 218
Parking heater 219
Additional heater 220
Activating and deactivating automatic start of auxiliary heater 221

KEY, LOCKS AND ALARM

Locking and unlocking 224
Lock confirmation 224
Lock indication setting 225
Remote control key 226
Locking and unlocking with the remote control key 228
Settings for remotely controlled and inside unlocking 230
Unlocking the tailgate with the remote control key 230
Remote control key range 231
Replacing the battery in the remote control key 231
Ordering more remote control keys 235
Care Key - restricted remote control key 236
Care Key settings 237
Detachable key blade 237
Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade 238
Immobiliser 240
Type approval for the remote control key system 241
Keyless and touch-sensitive surfaces* 256
Keyless locking and unlocking* 257
Settings for Keyless entry* 258
Keyless unlocking of the tailgate* 258
Antenna locations for the start and lock systems 259
Locking and unlocking from inside the car 260
Unlocking the tailgate from the inside of the car 261
Activating and deactivating child safety locks 261
Automatic locking when driving 262
Closing and locking tailgate with button* 263
Setting the max. opening for electrically operated tailgate* 265
Operating the tailgate with foot movement* 265
Private locking 267
Activating and deactivating private locking 267
Alarm* 268
Activating and deactivating alarms* 270
Reduced alarm level* 270
Double lock* 271

DRIVER SUPPORT

Driving support systems 274
Speed-dependent steering force 274
Electronic stability control 275
Electronic Stability Control in sport mode 276
Activating or deactivating sport mode for electronic stability control 277
Symbols and messages for electronic stability control 278
Connected Safety 280
Activating or deactivating Connected Safety 281
Limitations of Connected Safety 281
Road Sign Information* 282
Activating or deactivating road sign information* 283
Display mode for road sign information* 284
Road Sign Information and Sensus Navigation* 286
Warning for speed limitation and speed camera from road sign information* 286
Activating or deactivating warnings from road sign information* 287
Limitations of Road Sign Information* 288
Speed limiter 289
Selecting and activating speed limiter 290
Deactivating the speed limiter 291
Temporary deactivation of speed limiter 291
Limitations for speed limiter 292
Automatic speed limiter 292
Activating or deactivating the automatic speed limiter 293
Changing the tolerance for the automatic speed limiter 294
Limitations for automatic speed limiter 295
Cruise control 295
Selecting and activating cruise control 297
Deactivating cruise control 297
Standby mode for cruise control 298
Adaptive cruise control* 299
Controls for adaptive cruise control* 300
Display mode for adaptive cruise control* 301
Selecting and activating adaptive cruise control* 302
Deactivating adaptive cruise control* 303
Standby mode for adaptive cruise control* 303
Limitations for adaptive cruise control* 305
Change between cruise control and adaptive cruise control* in the centre display 305
Symbols and messages for adaptive cruise control* 307
Pilot Assist* 309
Controls for Pilot Assist* 311
Display mode for Pilot Assist* 312
Selecting and activating Pilot Assist* 314
Deactivate Pilot Assist* 315
Standby mode for Pilot Assist* 315
Temporary disabling of steering assistance with Pilot Assist* 316
Limitations of Pilot Assist* 317
Symbols and messages for Pilot Assist* 320
Overtaking Assistance* 321
Use Overtaking Assistance 321
Warning from driver support in the event of a collision risk 322
Change of target with driver support 323
Set the stored speed for driver support 323
Set time interval to vehicle ahead 324
Drive modes when using time interval to vehicles 326
Automatic braking with driver support 326
Lane assistance 327
Activating or deactivating lane assistance 329

Selecting assistance option for lane assistance 330
Limitations of Lane assistance 330
Symbols and messages for lane assistance 331
Display mode for lane assistance 333
City Safety™ 334
Subfunctions for City Safety 335
Setting the warning distance for City Safety 337
Detection of obstacles with City Safety 338
City Safety in cross traffic 340
Limitations for City Safety in cross traffic 341
Automatic braking in the event of an impeded evasive manoeuvre with City Safety 341
City Safety brakes for oncoming vehicles 342
Limitations of City Safety 343
Messages for City Safety 346
Steering assistance at risk of collision 347
Activating or deactivating steering assistance in the event of a collision risk 348
Steering assistance upon risk of run-off 348
Steering assistance upon risk of head-on collision 349
Steering assistance upon risk of rear-end collision* 350
Limitations for steering assistance at risk of collision 351
Symbols and messages for steering assistance upon risk of collision 352
Rear Collision Warning* 353
Limitations of Rear Collision Warning* 353
BLIS* 354
Activating or deactivating BLIS 355
Limitations of BLIS 356
Messages for BLIS 357
Driver Alert Control 358
Activating or deactivating Driver Alert Control 359
Select rest stop guidance in the event of a warning from Driver Alert Control 359
Limitations of Driver Alert Control 360
Cross Traffic Alert* 360
Activating or deactivating Cross Traffic Alert* 361
Limitations of Cross Traffic Alert* 362
Messages for Cross Traffic Alert* 364
Park Assist* 365
Park Assist Pilot front, rear and along the sides* 366
Activating or deactivating the parking assistance system* 367
Limitations of Parking assistance 368
Symbols and messages for Park Assist Pilot 370
Park assist camera* 371
Park assist camera locations and surveillance areas* 372
Park assist lines for park assist camera* 374
Sensor fields for parking assistance system 376
Activate park assist camera 378
Symbols and messages for Park assist camera 379
Park Assist Pilot* 381
Parking variants with Park Assist Pilot* 382
Using Park Assist Pilot* 383
Leaving parallel parking with Park Assist Pilot* 386
Limitations of Park Assist Pilot* 386
Messages for Park Assist Pilot* 389
Radar unit 390
Type approval for radar device 391
Camera unit 399

Limitations for camera and radar unit 399
Recommended maintenance for camera and radar unit 402
Symbols and messages for camera and radar unit 404

ELECTRIC OPERATION AND CHARGING

General information on electric drive 408
Charging the hybrid battery 409
Charging current 410
Charging cable 411
Ground fault breaker in the charging cable 413
Temperature monitoring of the charging cable 414
Opening and closing the hatch for the charging input socket 415
Starting hybrid battery charging 415
Charging status in the car's charging input socket 418
Charging status in the charging cable's control unit 419
Charging status in the car's driver display 421
Stopping hybrid battery charging 423
Symbols and messages relating to hybrid drive in the driver display 425
Long-term storage of vehicles with hybrid batteries 427

STARTING AND DRIVING

Starting the car 430
Switching off the car 431
Ignition positions 432
Selecting ignition mode 433
Alcohol lock* 434
Bypass of the alcohol lock* 434
Before starting the engine with the alcohol lock* 435
Brake functions 435
Foot brake 435
Brake assistance 437
Braking on wet roads 437
Braking on gritted roads 437
Brake system maintenance 438
Parking brake 438
Activating and deactivating the parking brake 439
Automatic parking brake activation setting 440
Parking on a hill 440
In the event of a fault in the parking brake 441
Automatic braking when stationary 441
Activating and deactivating the automatic brake at a standstill 442
Help when starting on a hill 443

Auto braking after a collision 443
Regenerative braking* 443
Gearbox 444
Automatic gearbox 444
Changing gear with automatic gearbox 445
Changing gear with steering wheel paddles* 446
Gear selector inhibitor 448
Kick-down function 448
Launch function* 448
Symbols and messages for automatic gearbox 449
Gear shift indicator 449
Drive systems 449
Starting and stopping the combustion engine 450
Drive modes 451
Changing drive mode 454
Energy distribution using map data* 455
Economical driving 456
Range 457
Hold and Charge 458
Preparations for a long trip 459
Winter driving 460
Driving in water 461
Opening and closing the fuel filler flap 461
Filling fuel 462
Handling of fuel 464
Petrol 465
Petrol particle filter 466
Overheating in the engine and drive system 466
Overloading the starter battery 467
Using jump starting with another battery 468
Towbar* 470
Specifications for towbar* 470
Extendable and retractable towbar* 471
Driving with a trailer 473
Trailer stability assist* 475
Checking trailer lamps 476
Towbar-mounted bicycle rack* 477
Towing 478
Fitting and removing the towing eye 479
Recovery 480
HomeLink®* 480
Programming HomeLink®* 481
Using HomeLink®* 483
Type approval for HomeLink®* 483
Compass* 484
Activating and deactivating the compass* 484
Calibrating the compass* 484

SOUND, MEDIA AND INTERNET

Sound, media and Internet 488
Audio settings 488
Sound experience* 489
Apps 489
Downloading apps 490
Updating apps 491
Deleting apps 491
Radio 492
Start radio 492
Changing radio band and radio station 493
Searching for radio stations 494
Save radio channels in the Radio Favourites app 495
Settings for radio 495
RDS radio 497
Digital radio* 497
Link between FM and digital radio* 498
Media player 498
Media playback 499
Controlling and changing media 500
Searching media 501
Gracenote® 502
Video 503
Playing a video 503
Playing back DivX® 503
Settings for video 504
Media via Bluetooth® 504
Connecting a device via Bluetooth® 504
Media via USB port 505
Connecting a device via USB port 505
Technical specifications for USB devices 506
Compatible media formats 506
Apple® CarPlay®* 507
Using Apple® CarPlay®* 508
Settings for Apple® CarPlay®* 510
Tips for using Apple® CarPlay®* 510
Android Auto* 511
Using Android Auto* 512
Settings for Android Auto* 513
Tips for using Android Auto* 514
Phone 514
Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time 515
Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth automatically 517
Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth manually 518
Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone 518
Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones 518
Removing devices connected to Bluetooth 519
Managing phone calls 519
Managing text messages 520
Settings for text messages 521
Managing the phone book 521
Settings for phone 522
Settings for Bluetooth devices 522
Wireless phone charger* 523
Using the wireless telephone charger* 523
Certificate for wireless charger 525
Internet-connected car* 529
Connect the car to the Internet via a Bluetooth-enabled phone 530
Connect the car to the Internet via a phone (Wi-Fi) 530
Connect the car to the Internet via car modem (SIM card) 531
Settings for car modem* 532
Sharing Internet access from the car via a Wi-Fi hotspot 532
No or poor Internet connection 533
Remove Wi-Fi network 534
Wi-Fi technologies and security 534

User terms and conditions and data sharing 535
Activating and deactivating data sharing 535
Data sharing for services 536
Storage space on hard disk 537
License agreement for audio and media 538

WHEELS AND TYRES

Tyres 550
Dimension designation for tyre 552
Dimension designation for wheel rim 553
Tyres' rotation direction 553
Tread wear indicators on the tyres 554
Checking tyre pressure 554
Adjusting tyre pressure 555
Recommended tyre pressure 556
Tyre pressure monitoring system* 557
Saving a new reference value for tyre pressure monitoring* 558
See tyre pressure status in the centre display* 559
Action in the event of warning for low tyre pressure 560
Messages for tyre pressure monitoring* 561
Changing wheel 561
Tool kit 563
Jack* 564
Wheel bolts 564
Spare wheel* 565
Handling the spare wheel* 566
Winter tyres 567
Snow chains 567
Emergency puncture repair kit 568
Using a puncture repair kit 569
Inflating tyres with the compressor from the puncture repair kit 573

LOADING, STORAGE AND PASSENGER COMPARTMENT

Passenger compartment interior 576
Tunnel console 577
Using the cigarette lighter* 577
Emptying the ashtray* 578
Electrical sockets 578
Using electrical sockets 579
Using the glovebox 580
Sun visors 581
Cargo area 582
Recommendations for loading 582
Roof load and loading on load carriers 583
Bag hooks 584
Load retaining eyelets 584
Through-load hatch in the rear seat* 585
Folding up the cargo area floor 585
Fitting and removing the safety net* 585
Remove and store the parcel shelf 587
First aid kit* 588
Warning triangle 588

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

Volvo service programme 590
Data transfer between car and workshop via Wi-Fi 590
Download Center 591
Managing system updates via the Download Centre 591
Car status 592
Book service and repair 593
Sending car information to a workshop 594
Raise the car 595
Servicing the climate control system 598
Opening and closing the bonnet 598
Engine compartment overview 600
Engine oil 601
Checking and filling with engine oil 602
Coolant 604
Topping up coolant 604
Starter battery 606
Hybrid battery 608
Symbols on the batteries 608
Battery recycle 609
Fuses and central electrical units 609
Replacing a fuse 610
Fuses in engine compartment 611
Fuses under the left-hand front seat 617
Bulb replacement 624
Exterior lamp positions 624
Replacing the rear direction indicator bulb 625
Changing brake light bulb 626
Replacing the rear fog lamp bulb 627
Bulb specifications 628
Cleaning the interior 628
Cleaning the centre display 629
Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining 630
Cleaning the seatbelts 631
Cleaning textile floor and entrance mats 631
Cleaning leather upholstery* 632
Cleaning the leather steering wheel 633
Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts 633
Cleaning the exterior 634
Polishing and waxing 634
Handwashing 635
Automatic car wash 636
High-pressure washing 638
Cleaning the wiper blades 638
Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components 639

Cleaning wheel rims 640
Rustproofing 640
Car paintwork 640
Touching up minor paintwork damage 641
Colour codes 642
Replacing the wiper blade, rear window 642
Replacing windscreen wiper blades 643
Set the wiper blades in service position 644
Filling washer fluid 645

SPECIFICATIONS

Type designations 648
Dimensions 651
Weights 653
Towing capacity and towball load 654
Engine specifications 656
Engine oil — specifications 657
Adverse driving conditions for engine oil 658
Transmission fluid – specifications 659
Brake fluid – specifications 659
Fuel tank - volume 659
Air conditioning — specifications 660
Fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions 662
Approved wheel and tyre sizes 665
Minimum permitted tyre load index and speed rating for tyres 666
Approved tyre pressures 667

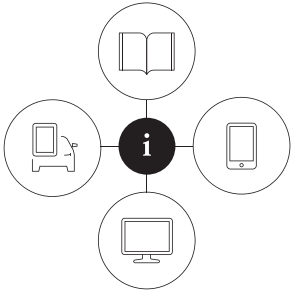
ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Alphabetical Index 669

OWNER INFORMATION

Owner information

Owner's information is available in several different product formats, both digital and printed. The owner's manual is available in the car's centre display, as a mobile app and on the Volvo Cars support site. There is a Quick Guide and a supplement to the owner's manual available in the glovebox, with specifications and fuse information, amongst other things. A printed owner's manual can be ordered.

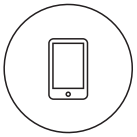


G060053

The car's centre display[1]

In the centre display, drag down the top view and tap on **Owner's manual**. Available here are options for visual navigation with exterior and interior images of the car. The information is searchable and is also divided into categories.

Mobile app



In App Store or Google Play, search for "Volvo Manual", download the app to your smartphone or tablet and select the car. Available in the app are video tutorials and options for visual navigation with exterior and interior images of the car. The content is searchable, and the various sections are designed to facilitate navigation

Volvo Cars support site

Go to volvocars.com/support and select your country. Here you can find owner's manuals, both online and in PDF format. On the Volvo Cars support site there are also video tutorials and further information and help regarding your Volvo and your car ownership. The page is available for most markets.

Printed information

There is a supplement to the owner's manual[1] in the glovebox that contains information on fuses and specifications, as well as a summary of important and practical information.

There is also a Quick Guide available in printed format that helps you to get started with the most commonly used functions in the car.

Depending on equipment level selected, market, etc. additional owner's information may also be available in printed format in the car.

A printed owner's manual and associated supplement can be ordered. Contact a Volvo dealer to order.

[1] A complete printed manual is included with the car for markets without owner's manual in the centre display.

IMPORTANT

The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven safely in traffic and that applicable laws and regulations are followed. It is also important that the car is maintained and handled in accordance with Volvo's recommendations in the owner's information.

If there should be a difference between the information in the centre display and the printed information then it is always the printed information that applies.

NOTE

Changing the language in the centre display may mean that some owner's information is not compliant with national or local laws and regulations. Do not switch to a language that is difficult to understand as this may make it difficult to find your way back through the screen structure.

Related information

- Owner's manual in centre display (p. 17)
- Owner's Manual in mobile devices (p. 20)
- Volvo Cars support site (p. 21)
- Reading the owner's manual (p. 21)

Owner's manual in centre display

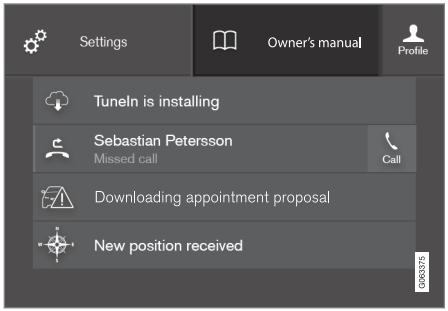
A digital[2] version of the owner's manual is available in the car's centre display.

The digital owner's manual can be accessed from the top view, and in some cases the contextual owner's manual can also be accessed from the top view.

NOTE

The digital owner's manual is not available while driving.

Owner's manual



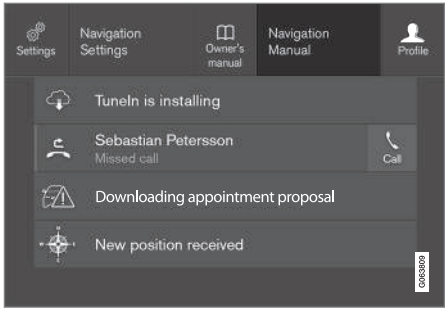
Top view with button for owner's manual.

To open the owner's manual - drag down the top view in the centre display and tap on **Owner's manual**.

The information in the owner's manual can be accessed directly via the owner's manual homepage or its top menu.

2 Applies for most markets.

Contextual owner's manual



Top view with button for contextual owner's manual.

The contextual owner's manual is a shortcut to an article in the owner's manual that describes the active function shown on the screen. When the contextual owner's manual is available, it is shown to the right of **Owner's manual** in the top view.

Tapping on the contextual owner's manual therefore opens an article in the owner's manual that is related to the content that is shown on the screen. E.g. tap on **Navigation Manual** – an article that is related to navigation opens.

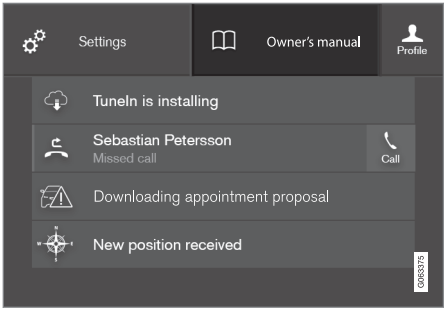
This only applies to some of the apps in the car. For downloaded third party apps, for example, it is not possible to access app-specific articles.

Related information

- Navigate in the owner's manual in the centre display (p. 18)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 105)
- Downloading apps (p. 490)

Navigate in the owner's manual in the centre display

The digital owner's manual can be accessed from the centre display top view in the car. The content is searchable, and the various sections are designed to facilitate navigation.



The owner's manual is accessed from the top view.

– To open the owner's manual - drag down the top view in the centre display and tap on **Owner's manual**.

There is a range of different options for finding information in the owner's manual. The options can be accessed from the owner's manual homepage and from the top menu.

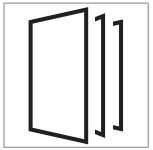
Opening the menu in the top menu

– Press ☰ in the upper list in the owner's manual.
  > A menu with different options for finding information is opened:

Homepage

Tap on the symbol to go back to the start page in the owner's manual.

Categories



The articles in the owner's manual are structured into main categories and subcategories. The same article can be found in several appropriate categories so that it can be found more easily.

1. Press **Categories**.
   > The main categories are shown in a list.
2. Tap on a main category (❑).
   > A list of subcategories (❑) and articles (🗎) is shown.
3. Tap on an article to open it.

To go back, press the back arrow.

Featured articles

Press the symbol to access a page with links to a selection of articles that can be useful to read in order to get to know the more common functions of the car. The articles can also be accessed via categories, but are collected here for faster access. Tap on an article in order to read it in its entirety.

Hotspots for exterior and interior

Exterior and interior overview images of the car. Different parts are designated with hotspots that lead to articles about those parts of the car.

1. Press **Exterior** or **Interior**.
   > Exterior or interior images are shown with so-called hotspots in place. The hotspot leads to articles about the corresponding part of the car. Swipe horizontally over the screen to browse among the images.
2. Tap on a hotspot.
   > The title of the article about the area is shown.
3. Tap on the title to open the article.

To go back, press the back arrow.

Favourites

Press the symbol to access the articles saved as favourites. Tap on an article in order to read it in its entirety.

Saving or deleting articles as favourites

Save an article as favourite by pressing ☆ at the top right when an article is open. When an article has been saved as a favourite the star is filled in: ★.

To remove an article as a favourite, press the star again in the current article.

Video

Press the symbol to view brief instruction videos for various functions in the car.

Information

Tap on the symbol to obtain information about which version of the owner's manual is available in the car as well as other useful information.

Using the search function in the top menu

1. Tap on in the top menu of the owner's manual. A keyboard appears in the lower part of the screen.
2. Type in a keyword, such as "seatbelt".
   > Suggestions for articles and categories are shown while letters are being entered.
3. Tap on the article or category to access it.

Related information

- Owner's manual in centre display (p. 17)
- Keyboard in centre display (p. 116)
- Reading the owner's manual (p. 21)

Owner's Manual in mobile devices

The owner's manual is available as a mobile app[3] from both the App Store and Google Play. The app is adapted for smartphones and tablets.

The owner's manual can be downloaded as a mobile app from the App Store or Google Play. The QR code provided here takes you directly to the app. Alternatively, you can search for "Volvo manual" in the App Store or Google Play.

The app contains a video along with exterior and interior images where different parts of the car are highlighted with so-called hot-spots, which lead to articles about the area in question. The content is searchable, and the various sections are designed to facilitate navigation.

The mobile app is available from both the App Store and Google Play.

Related information

- Reading the owner's manual (p. 21)

[3] For certain mobile devices.

Volvo Cars support site

More information on your car is available on the Volvo Cars website and support site.

Support on the Internet

Go to volvocars.com/support to visit the site. The support site is available for most markets.

It contains support for functions such as web-based services and functions, Volvo On Call*, the navigation system* and apps. Videos and step-by-step instructions explain different procedures, e.g. how to connect the car to the Internet via a mobile phone.

Downloadable information

Maps

For cars equipped with Sensus Navigation there is the facility to download maps from the support page.

Owner's manuals as PDF

Owner's manuals are available for download in PDF format. Select car model and model year to download the manual as required.

Contact

The support site contains contact details to customer support and your nearest Volvo retailer.

Create a Volvo ID on the Volvo Cars website

Create a personal Volvo ID and manage it on volvocars.com.

Related information

- Volvo ID (p. 26)

Reading the owner's manual

To help you get to know your new car, read the Owner's Manual before you drive it for the first time.

Reading the owner's manual is a way to become familiar with new functions, get advice on how to handle the car in different situations and learn how to make use of all the car's features. Please pay attention to the safety instructions contained in the owner's manual.

The intention of this owner's information is to explain all possible functions, options and accessories included in a Volvo vehicle. It is not intended as an indication or guarantee that all of these features, functions and options are included in every vehicle. Some terminology used may not exactly match terminology used in sales, marketing and advertising materials.

Development work is constantly underway in order to improve our product. Modifications may mean that information, descriptions and illustrations in the owner's manual differ from the equipment in the car. We reserve the right to make modifications without prior notice.

Do not remove this manual from the car - if problems should arise then the necessary information about where and how to seek professional help will be missing.

© Volvo Car Corporation

Options/accessories

In addition to standard equipment, the owner's manual also describes options (factory fitted equipment) and certain accessories (retrofitted extra equipment).

All, at the time of publication known, options and accessories are marked with an asterisk: *.

The equipment described in the owner's manual is not available in all cars - they have different equipment depending on adaptations for the needs of different markets and national or local laws and regulations.

In the event of uncertainty over what is standard or an option/accessory, contact a Volvo dealer.

Special texts

WARNING

Warning texts appear if there is a risk of injury.

IMPORTANT

Important texts appear if there is a risk of damage.

NOTE

Note texts give advice or tips that facilitate the use of e.g. features and functions.

Decals

The car contains different types of decal which are designed to convey important information in a clear manner. The decals in the car have the following descending degree of importance for the warning/information.

Warning of personal injury

Black ISO symbols on yellow warning field, white text/image on black message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the warning is ignored, may result in serious personal injury or fatality.

Risk of property damage

White ISO symbols and white text/image on black or blue warning field and message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the warning is ignored, may result in damage to property.

* Option/accessory.

Information

White ISO symbols and white text/image on black message field.

NOTE

It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and location in the car. The information that applies to your particular car is available on the respective decals for your car.

Illustrations and video clips

Illustrations and video clips used in the owner's manual are sometimes schematic and are intended to provide an overall picture or example of a certain function. They may deviate from the car's appearance depending on equipment level and market.

Related information

- Owner's manual in centre display (p. 17)
- Owner's Manual in mobile devices (p. 20)
- Volvo Cars support site (p. 21)

The owner's manual and the environment

The Owner's Manual is printed on paper originating from controlled forests.

The Forest Stewardship Council (FSC)® symbol shows that the paper pulp in a printed owner's manual comes from FSC®-certified forests or other controlled sources.

Related information

- Drive-E - cleaner driving pleasure (p. 28)

YOUR VOLVO

Volvo ID

Volvo ID is a personal ID that gives access to a wide range of services via a single username and password.

NOTE

The services available may vary over time and depend on equipment level and market.

Examples of services:

- Volvo On Call app* – check the car with your phone. For example, you can check fuel level, show the nearest petrol station and lock the car remotely.
- Send to Car – send addresses from map services on the Web, directly to the car.
- Book service and repair – register a workshop/dealer and book a service directly from the car.

NOTE

If the username/password for a service (e.g. Volvo On Call) is changed, then it is also changed automatically for other services.

Volvo ID is created from the car, volvocars.com or the Volvo On Call app[1].

When a Volvo ID is registered in the car, several services will be made available. Several Volvo IDs can be used for the same car and several cars can even be connected to the same Volvo ID.

Related information

- Creating and registering a Volvo ID (p. 26)
- Book service and repair (p. 593)

Creating and registering a Volvo ID

It is possible to create a Volvo ID in different ways. If the Volvo ID is created at volvocars.com or with Volvo On Call app[2], the Volvo ID must also be registered to the car to enable use of the various Volvo ID services.

Create a Volvo ID with the Volvo ID app

1. Download the Volvo ID app from **Download Centre** in the centre display's app view.
2. Start the app and register a personal email address.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address.
   > A Volvo ID has now been created and automatically registered to the car. Volvo ID services can now be used.

Create a Volvo ID on the Volvo Cars website

1. Go into volvocars.com and log in[3] using the icon at the top right. Select Create Volvo ID.
2. Enter a personal email address.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address.
   > A Volvo ID has now been created. Read below to learn how to register the ID to the car.

[1] If you have Volvo On Call*.

* Option/accessory.

Create a Volvo ID with the Volvo On Call app[4]

1. Download the latest version of the Volvo On Call app to the phone[5].
2. Select to create Volvo ID.
3. The web page for creating a Volvo ID opens. Fill in the requested information.
4. Tick the box to accept the terms and conditions.
5. Press the button that creates your Volvo ID.
6. An e-mail message is sent to the address given. Click on the link in the e-mail message to activate Volvo ID.
   > Now the Volvo ID is ready to use.

Registering your Volvo ID to the car

If you created your Volvo ID via the web or the Volvo On Call app, register it to your car as follows:

1. If not done already, download the Volvo ID app from **Download Centre** in the centre display's app view.

> **NOTE**
>
> To download apps, the car must be connected to the Internet.

2. Start the app and enter your Volvo ID/your email address.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the email address linked to your Volvo ID.
   > Your Volvo ID is now registered to the car. Volvo ID services can now be used.

Related information

- Volvo ID (p. 26)
- Downloading apps (p. 490)
- Managing system updates via the Download Centre (p. 591)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)

2 Only applies to certain markets.
3 Available on certain markets.
4 Cars with Volvo On Call*.
5 Available to download via e.g. Apple App Store or Google Play.

Drive-E - cleaner driving pleasure

Volvo Car Corporation is constantly working on the development of safer and more efficient products and solutions in order to reduce the negative impact on the environment.

Environmental care is one of Volvo Cars' core values and influences all operations. The environmental work is based on the whole life cycle of the car and takes into account the environmental impact it has, from design to scrapping and recycling. Volvo Cars' basic principle is that every new product developed must have less impact on the environment than the product it replaces.

Volvo's environmental management work has resulted in the development of more effective and less polluting drivelines Drive-E. Personal environment is also important to Volvo - the air inside a Volvo is, for example, cleaner than the air outside thanks to the climate control system.

Your Volvo complies with stringent international environmental standards. All Volvo's manufacturing units must be ISO 14001 certified, and this supports a systematic approach to the operation's environmental issues, which leads to continuous improvement with reduced environmental impact. Holding the ISO certificate also means that environmental laws and regulations in force are complied with. Volvo also requires that its partners must also meet these requirements.

Fuel consumption

Since a large part of a car's total environmental impact stems from its use, the emphasis of Volvo Cars' environmental work is on reducing fuel consumption, carbon dioxide emissions and other air pollutants. Volvo cars have competitive fuel consumption in each of their respective classes. Lower fuel consumption generally results in lower emission of the greenhouse gas, carbon dioxide.

Contributing to a better environment
An energy-efficient and economical car can contribute to reduced environmental impact and also involve reduced costs for the owner of the car. As the driver, it is easy to reduce fuel consumption and thereby save money and contribute to a better environment - here is some advice:

- Plan for an effective average speed. Speeds above approx. 80 km/h (approx. 50 mph) and below 50 km/h (approx. 30 mph) lead to increased energy consumption.
- Follow the Service and Warranty Booklet's recommended intervals for service and maintenance of the car.
- Avoid letting the engine idle - switch off the engine when stationary for longer periods. Pay attention to local regulations.
- Plan the journey - a lot of unnecessary stops and uneven speed contribute to increased fuel consumption.
- Use preconditioning – it can improve the range of the hybrid battery and reduce the energy requirement while driving.
- Make it a habit to charge the car from the mains power circuit on a regular basis.

Also remember to always dispose of environmentally hazardous waste, such as batteries and oil, in an environmentally safe manner. Consult a workshop in the event of uncertainty about how this type of waste should be discarded - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Efficient emission control
Your Volvo is manufactured following the concept "Clean inside and out" – a concept that encompasses a clean interior environment as well as highly efficient emission control. In many cases the exhaust emissions are well below the applicable standards.

Clean air in the passenger compartment
An air filter helps prevent dust and pollen entering the passenger compartment via the air intake.

The Interior Air Quality System (IAQS)* ensures that the incoming air is cleaner than the air in the traffic outside.

The system cleans the air in the passenger compartment from contaminants such as particles, hydrocarbons, nitrous oxides and ground-level ozone. If the outside air is contaminated then the air intake is closed and the air is recirculated. Such a situation may arise in heavy traffic, queues and tunnels for example.

IAQS is a part of the Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP)*, which also includes a function that allows the fan to start when the car is unlocked with the remote control key.

Interior
The material used in the interior of a Volvo is carefully selected and has been tested in order to be pleasant and comfortable. Some of the details are hand-made, such as the seams of the steering wheel that are sewn by hand. The interior is monitored in order not to emit strong odours or substances that cause discomfort in the event of e.g. high heat and bright light.

Volvo workshops and the environment
Regular maintenance creates the conditions for a long service life and low fuel consumption for your car. In this way you also contribute to a cleaner environment. When Volvo's workshops are entrusted with the service and maintenance of your car it becomes part of Volvo's system. Volvo makes clear demands regarding the way in which workshop premises shall be designed in order to prevent spills and discharges into the environment. The workshop staff have the knowledge and the tools required to guarantee good environmental care.

Recycling
Since Volvo works from a life cycle perspective, it is also important that the car is recycled in an environmentally sound manner. Almost all of the car can be recycled. The last owner of the car is therefore requested to contact a retailer for referral to a certified/approved recycling facility.

Related information

- Fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions (p. 662)
- Economical driving (p. 456)
- Range (p. 457)
- Start and switch off preconditioning (p. 209)
- The owner's manual and the environment (p. 23)
- Air quality (p. 189)

IntelliSafe – driver support and safety

IntelliSafe is the Volvo Cars concept for car safety. IntelliSafe comprises a number of systems[6], whose purpose is to make a car journey safer, to prevent injuries and to protect passengers and other road users.

WARNING

The functions are supplementary aids - they cannot handle all situations in all conditions.

The driver always bears responsibility that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable road traffic rules and regulations are followed.

Support

With the aim of assisting the driver to drive the car in a safer way, IntelliSafe has the following functions.

- Active main beam
- Tunnel detection
- Pilot Assist
- Cross Traffic Alert*
- Blind Spot Information*
- Park Assist*
- Park Assist Pilot*
- Park assist camera*
- Road Sign Information*
- Electronic stability control
- Roll Stability Control
- Speed limiter*
- Cruise control
- Adaptive cruise control*
- Rear Collision Warning
- Driver Alert Control
- All-wheel drive[7]

Prevention

With the aim of assisting the driver to avoid an accident, IntelliSafe has the following functions.

- City Safety
- Distance Warning*
- Lane assistance
- **Collision Avoidance**

Protection

With the aim of protecting the driver and passengers in certain situations in the event of an accident, IntelliSafe has the following collaborative functions.

- Whiplash Protection System
- Seatbelts with seatbelt tensioners
- Airbags

NOTE

Read the individual sections on each system in order to fully understand the functions and learn about important warnings.

Related information

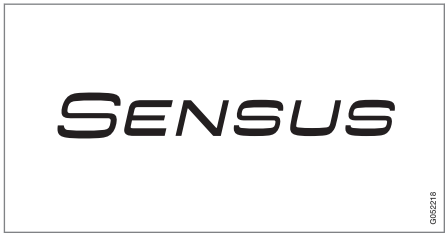
- Active main beam (p. 145)
- Safety (p. 44)
- Driving support systems (p. 274)

6 Some of the systems are fitted as standard, while others are options. This may vary depending on market, model year and car model.
7 All Wheel Drive

Sensus - online connectivity and entertainment

Sensus makes it possible to use different types of apps and turn the car into a Wi-Fi hotspot.

This is Sensus



Sensus offers an intelligent interface and online connectivity with the digital world. An intuitive navigation structure makes it possible to receive relevant support, information and entertainment when it is necessary, without distracting the driver.

Sensus covers all solutions in the car that are connected with entertainment, online connectivity, navigation* and the user interface between driver and car. It is Sensus that makes communication possible between you, the car and the outside world.

Information when it is needed, where it is needed

The different displays in the car provide information at the right time. The information is shown in different locations based on how it should be prioritised by the driver.

* Option/accessory.

Different types of information are shown in different displays depending on how the information should be prioritised.

Driver display

Driver display[8].

The driver display shows information on speed and e.g. incoming calls or song tracks being played. The display is operated via the two steering wheel keypads.

Centre display

8 The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

Many of the main functions of the car are controlled from the centre display, a touch screen which reacts to touch. The number of physical buttons and controls in the car is therefore minimal. The screen can even be operated while wearing gloves.

From here, for example, you can control the climate control system, the entertainment system and seat position*. The information that is shown in the centre display can be acted on by the driver or someone else in the car when the opportunity arises.

Voice recognition system

The voice recognition system can be used without the driver needing to take his/her hands off the steering wheel. The system can understand natural speech. Use voice recognition to, for example, play back a song, call someone, increase the temperature or read out a text message.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 77)
- Overview of centre display (p. 99)
- Voice recognition (p. 132)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Sharing Internet access from the car via a Wi-Fi hotspot (p. 532)

* Option/accessory.

Software updates

So that you as a Volvo customer get the best experience of your car, Volvo continuously develops the systems in the cars and the services that you are offered.

In connection with service at an authorised Volvo dealer, the software in your Volvo will be updated to the latest version. The latest software update allows you to benefit from available improvements, including improvements from earlier software updates.

For more information about available updates and frequently asked questions, visit volvocars.com/support.

NOTE

Functionality after updating may vary depending on market, model, model year and options.

Related information

- Sensus - online connectivity and entertainment (p. 32)
- Managing system updates via the Download Centre (p. 591)

Recording data

As part of Volvo's safety and quality assurance, certain information about the vehicle's operation, functionality and incidents are recorded in the car.

Event Data Recorder (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an "Event Data Recorder" (EDR). Its primary purpose is to register and record data related to traffic accidents or collision-like situations, such as times when the airbag deploys or the vehicle strikes an obstacle in the road. The data is recorded in order to increase understanding of how vehicle systems work in these types of situations. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short time, usually 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record data related to the following in the event of traffic accidents or collision-like situations:

- How the various systems in the car worked
- Whether the driver and passenger seatbelts were fastened/tensioned
- The driver's use of the accelerator or brake pedal
- The travel speed of the vehicle

This information can help us understand the circumstances in which traffic accidents, injuries and damage occur. The EDR only records data when a non-trivial collision situation occurs. The EDR does not record any data during normal driving conditions. Similarly, the system never registers who is driving the vehicle or the geographic location of the accident or near-miss situation. However, other parties, such as the police, could use the recorded data in combination with the type of personally identifiable information routinely collected after a traffic accident. Special equipment and access to either the vehicle or the EDR is required to be able to interpret the registered data.

In addition to the EDR, the car is equipped with a number of computers designed to continually check and monitor the function of the car. They can record data during normal driving conditions, but in particular register faults affecting the vehicle's operation and functionality, or upon activation of the vehicle's driver support function (e.g. City Safety and the auto brake function).

Some of the recorded data is required to enable service and maintenance technicians to diagnose and remedy any faults that occurred in the vehicle. The registered information is also needed to enable Volvo to satisfy legal requirements laid out in laws and by government authorities. Information registered in the vehicle is stored in its computer until the vehicle is serviced or repaired.

In addition to the above, the registered information can be used in aggregate form for research and product development with the aim of continuously improving the safety and quality of Volvo cars.

Volvo will not contribute to the above-described information being disclosed to third parties without the vehicle owner's consent. To comply with national legislation and regulations, Volvo may be forced to disclose information of this nature to the police or other authorities who may assert a legal right to access such. Special technical equipment which Volvo and workshops that have entered into agreements with Volvo have access to is required to be able to read and interpret the recorded data. Volvo is responsible that the information, which is transferred to Volvo during servicing and maintenance, is securely stored and managed and that its management complies with relevant legal requirements. For further information - contact a Volvo retailer.

Vehicle Connectivity Module (VCM High)

Vehicles equipped with VCM High can collect data on the vehicle's safety functions as well as other functions in the vehicle. Data are collected for product development, quality follow-up and safety work, as well as to improve and monitor the vehicle's quality and its safety functions. The purpose of data collection is also to manage Volvo Car Corporation's warranty undertakings, as well as to meet legal requirements related to engine emissions data.

NOTE

In conjunction with data collection, Volvo may use a small part of the vehicle's data plan of up to 10 MB/month.

Terms & Conditions for Services

Volvo offers services that help to enhance car safety and comfort.

These services include everything from assistance in emergencies to navigation and various maintenance services.

Before using the services, it is important for you to read the support information relating to the Terms & Conditions for Services at volvocars.com.

Related information

- Customer Privacy Policy (p. 37)

Customer Privacy Policy

Volvo respects and safeguards the personal integrity of everyone visiting our website. This policy regards to the handling of customer data and personal information. The purpose is to give current, past and potential customers a general understanding of:

- The circumstances in which we gather and process your personal data.
- The types of personal data we gather.
- The reason we gather your personal data.
- How we handle your personal data.

For more information on the policy, search support information at volvocars.com.

Related information

- User terms and conditions and data sharing (p. 535)
- Terms & Conditions for Services (p. 36)
- Recording data (p. 35)

Important information on accessories and auxiliary equipment

The incorrect connection and installation of accessories and extra equipment can negatively affect the car's electronic system. We strongly recommend that Volvo owners only install Volvo approved original accessories, and that installation of accessories is only carried out by trained and qualified Volvo service technicians. Certain accessories only function when associated software is installed in the car's computer system.

The equipment described in the owner's manual is not available in all cars - they have different equipment depending on adaptations for the needs of different markets and national or local laws and regulations.

Options or accessories described in this manual are marked with an asterisk. In the event of uncertainty over what is standard or an option/accessory, contact a Volvo retailer.

⚠ WARNING

The driver always bears the ultimate responsibility that the car is used safely and that laws and regulations in force are followed.

It is also important that the car has maintenance and service according to Volvo's recommendations, the owner's information and the service and warranty booklet.

If the on-board information differs from the printed owner's manual then the printed information always has precedence.

Related information

- Installation of accessories (p. 38)
- Connection of equipment to the car's diagnostic socket (p. 38)
- Reading the owner's manual (p. 21)

Installation of accessories

We strongly recommend that Volvo owners only install Volvo approved original accessories, and that installation of accessories is only carried out by trained and qualified Volvo service technicians. Certain accessories only function when associated software is installed in the car's computer system.

- Volvo original accessories are tested to ensure that they function with the car systems for performance, safety and emissions control. In addition, a trained and qualified Volvo service technician knows where accessories may or may not be safely installed in your Volvo. Always seek the advice of a trained and qualified Volvo service technician before installing any accessories in or on your car.
- Accessories that are not approved by Volvo may not have been specifically tested for use with your car.
- Some of the car's performance or safety systems can be negatively affected if you install accessories that have not been tested by Volvo, or if you permit someone without experience of the car to install accessories.
- Damage that is caused by accessories installed in a non-approved or incorrect way is not covered by any new car warranty. More warranty information can be found in the service and warranty booklet. Volvo does not accept any liability for deaths, personal injury or costs arising as a result of the installation of non-original accessories.

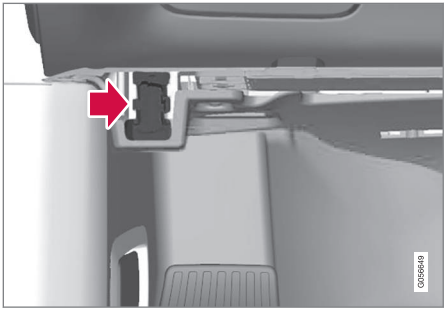
Related information

- Important information on accessories and auxiliary equipment (p. 37)

Connection of equipment to the car's diagnostic socket

Incorrect connection and installation of software or diagnostic tools may have a negative effect on the car's electronic system.

We strongly recommend that Volvo owners only install Volvo approved original accessories, and that installation of accessories is only carried out by trained and qualified Volvo service technicians. Certain accessories only function when associated software is installed in the car's computer system.



Data link connector (On-board Diagnostic, OBDII) is under the instrument panel on the driver's side.

NOTE

Volvo Cars accepts no liability for the consequences if unauthorised equipment is connected to the On-board Diagnostic socket (OBDII). This socket should only be used by trained and qualified Volvo service technicians.

Related information

- Important information on accessories and auxiliary equipment (p. 37)

Showing the car's identification number

When contacting a Volvo dealer concerning your Volvo On Call subscription, for example, you will need the car's identification number (VIN[9]).

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Continue to **System** ➔ **System Information** ➔ **Vehicle Identification Number**.
   > The car's identification number is shown.

Another way of finding VIN is:

- on the first page of the service and warranty booklet
- in the car's registration document
- look on the dashboard through the car's windscreen.

VIN is positioned in a similar place on all models.

9 Vehicle Identification Number

Change of market when importing or relocating

When you import a car or relocate a car to another country, it is important that you register the car in the new market in order, for example, for the online services to work correctly, as well as to ensure that the car complies with local requirements and laws.

Visit an authorised Volvo dealer

To get help to register the car, visit an authorised Volvo dealer.

If you do not do this then you may experience that apps, Volvo On Call[10], software downloads and other online services are affected and do not work correctly.

Creating a new Volvo ID in your new home market

When you relocate to another country you should create a Volvo ID in the new country.

If you have already created a Volvo ID in another country and want to use the same email address, you must first delete your Volvo ID in the region you originally created it. Alternatively, you can create a new Volvo ID using another e-mail address.

For cars with Volvo On Call[10]

Download the Volvo On Call app from the country where the car will be used and link the app to your car.

NOTE

Visit an authorised Volvo dealer if you have imported or relocated with your car to a new country.

Available services may vary depending on market and car model.

NOTE

If the car is exported to another market, Volvo is not responsible for any adaptations to the car in order to comply with requirements or laws that apply in the importing market. Read more in Service and Warranty or contact your Volvo workshop for more information.

Related information

- Book service and repair (p. 593)

Driver distraction

The driver is responsible for doing everything possible to ensure the safety of themselves, their passengers and other road users. Part of this responsibility is avoiding distractions such as carrying out an activity that is not related to operating the car in a driving environment.

Your new Volvo is, or can be, equipped with content-rich entertainment and communications systems. This could be mobile phones with handsfree, navigation systems and audio systems with lots of functions. You may also have other portable electronic devices for your own convenience. Used correctly, in a safe way they can enrich the driving experience. If they are used in the wrong way they could distract you.

We wish to give the following warnings regarding such systems, to indicate Volvo's concern for your safety. Never use a device or function in the car in such a way that it will distract you from the task of driving safely. Distractions can lead to serious accidents. Apart from these general warnings, we offer the following advice regarding the new functions that may be in the car:

10 Applicable only to markets that have access to Volvo On Call.

WARNING

- Never use a hand-held mobile phone while driving. In some areas it is forbidden for the driver to use a mobile phone while the car is moving.
- If the car is equipped with a navigation system you must only set and change the itinerary when the car is parked.
- Never program the audio system while the car is moving. Program the radio's presets when the car is parked and then use the programmed presets for faster and simpler use of the radio.
- Never use laptops or hand-held computers while the car is moving.

Related information

- Sound, media and Internet (p. 488)

SAFETY

Safety

The vehicle is equipped with several safety systems that work together to protect the vehicle's driver and passengers in the event of an accident.

The car is equipped with a number of sensors that react in the event of an accident and activate different safety systems, such as different types of airbags and seatbelt tensioners. Depending on the specific accident situation, such as collisions at different angles, roll-over or driving off the road, the systems react in different ways to provide good protection.

There are also mechanical safety systems such as Whiplash Protection System. The car is also constructed so that a large part of the force of a collision is distributed to beams, pillars, floor, roof and other parts of the body.

The car's safety mode may be activated after a collision if an important function in the car has been damaged.

Warning symbol in driver display

The warning symbol is illuminated in the driver display when the car's electrical system is set in ignition position **II**. The symbol is extinguished after approx. 6 seconds if the car's safety system is fault-free.

⚠ WARNING

If the warning symbol remains illuminated or is switched on during driving and the message **SRS airbag Service urgent Drive to workshop** is shown in the driver display, it means that part of one of the safety systems does not have full functionality. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Never modify or repair the car's various safety systems yourself. Defective work in one of the systems can cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

If the specific warning symbol is broken then the general warning symbol is illuminated instead and the driver display shows the same message.

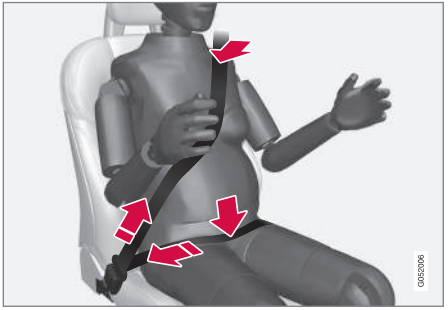
Related information

- Safety during pregnancy (p. 44)
- Seatbelts (p. 46)
- Airbags (p. 51)
- Whiplash Protection System (p. 45)
- Safety mode (p. 58)
- Child safety (p. 60)

Safety during pregnancy

It is important that the seatbelt is used correctly during pregnancy, and that pregnant drivers adjust their seating position.

Seatbelt



The diagonal section should wrap over the shoulder then be routed between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.

The lap section should lay flat over the thighs and as low as possible under the abdomen. – It must never be allowed to ride upward. Remove the slack from the seatbelt and ensure that it fits as close to the body as possible. In addition, check that there are no twists in the seatbelt.

Seating position

As the pregnancy progresses, pregnant drivers must adjust the seat and steering wheel such

that they can easily maintain control of the vehicle as they drive (which means that they must be able to easily operate the foot pedals and steering wheel). The aim should be to position the seat with as large a distance as possible between abdomen and steering wheel.

Related information

- Safety (p. 44)
- Seatbelts (p. 46)
- Manual front seat (p. 174)
- Power* front seat (p. 175)

Whiplash Protection System

Whiplash Protection System (WHIPS) reduces the risk of whiplash injuries. The system consists of energy absorbing backrests and seat cushion, as well as a specially designed head restraint in the front seats. WHIPS is deployed in the event of a rear-end collision, where the angle and speed of the collision and the nature of the colliding vehicle all have an influence.

When WHIPS is deployed, the front seat backrests are lowered backward and the seat cushions move downward to change the seating position of the driver and front seat passenger. Its movement helps to absorb some of the forces that can arise and cause whiplash.

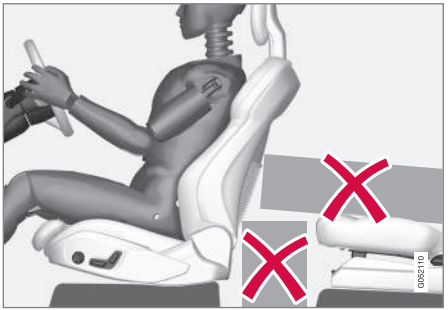
WARNING

WHIPS is a supplement to the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

WARNING

Never modify or repair the seat or WHIPS yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

If the front seats have been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the seats must be replaced. Some of the seats' protective properties may have been lost even if they do not appear damaged.



Do not leave any objects on the floor behind or under the front seats or in the rear seat that may prevent WHIPS from functioning.

WARNING

Do not squeeze rigid objects between the rear seat cushion and the front seat's backrest.

If a backrest in the rear seat is lowered then any load must be secured to prevent it from sliding up to the front seat backrest in the event of a collision.

WARNING

If a backrest in the rear seat is lowered or a rear-facing child seat is used in the rear seat, the corresponding front seat must be moved forward so that it does not make contact with the lowered backrest or child seat.

Seating position

For good protection from WHIPS the driver and passenger must have the correct seating position and make sure that the system's function is not obstructed.

Set the correct seating position in the front seat before driving starts.

Driver and front seat passenger should sit in the centre of the seat with as little space as possible between the head and the head restraint.

WHIPS and child seats

The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by WHIPS.

Related information

- Safety (p. 44)
- Manual front seat (p. 174)
- Power* front seat (p. 175)
- Rear Collision Warning* (p. 353)

Seatbelts

Heavy braking can have serious consequences if the seatbelts are not used.

It is important that the seatbelt lies against the body so it can provide good protection. Do not lean the backrest too far back. The seatbelt is designed to protect in a normal seating position.

WARNING

Remember not to clip or hook the seatbelt to hooks or other interior fittings, as this prevents the belt from tightening properly.

WARNING

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If a seatbelt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

* Option/accessory.

⚠ WARNING

Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

If the seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the seatbelt's protective properties may have been lost even if the seatbelt does not appear damaged. The seatbelt must also be replaced if it shows signs of wear or damage. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and designed for installation at the same location as the replaced seatbelt.

Related information

- Safety (p. 44)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 49)
- Putting on and taking off seatbelts (p. 47)
- Door and seatbelt reminder (p. 50)

Putting on and taking off seatbelts

Make sure that all passengers have fastened their seatbelts before starting to drive.

Putting on seatbelts

1. Pull out the seatbelt slowly and make sure it is not twisted or damaged.

ⓘ NOTE

The seatbelt is equipped with an inertia reel that is locked in the following situations:

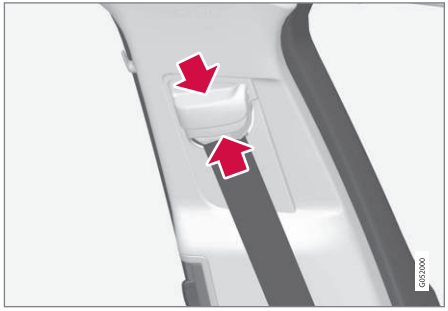
- if the belt is extended too quickly.
- during braking and acceleration.
- if the car leans heavily.
- when driving in bends.

2. Lock the belt by inserting the locking tab in the intended buckle.
   > A loud "click" indicates that the belt has locked.

⚠ WARNING

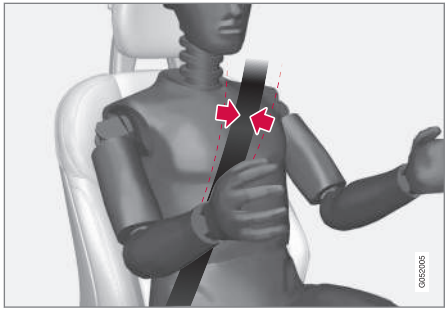
Always insert the tongue of the seatbelt into the buckle on the correct side. The seatbelts and buckles would otherwise possibly not function as intended in the event of a collision. There is a risk of serious injury.

3. In the front seats the seatbelt can be adjusted for height.



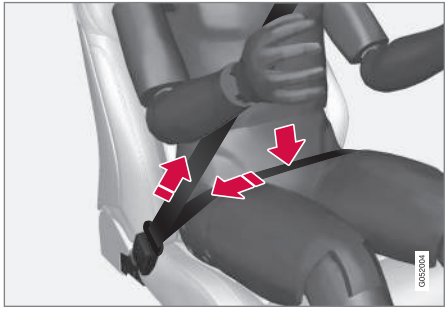
Press together the seat mounting and move the seatbelt up or down.

Position the belt as high as possible without it chafing against your throat.



The seatbelt must pass over the shoulder (not down over the arm).

4. Tension the hip strap over the lap by pulling the diagonal shoulder belt up towards the shoulder.



The hip strap must be positioned low down (not over the abdomen).

WARNING

Each seatbelt is designed for only one person.

WARNING

Remember not to clip or hook the seatbelt to hooks or other interior fittings, as this prevents the belt from tightening properly.

WARNING

Do not make any damages on seatbelts nor insert any foreign objects into a buckle. The seatbelts and buckles would then possibly not function as intended in the event of a collision. There is a risk of serous injury.

Taking off seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the seatbelt buckle and then let the belt retract.
2. If the seatbelt does not retract fully, feed it in by hand so that it does not hang loose.

Related information

- Seatbelts (p. 46)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 49)
- Door and seatbelt reminder (p. 50)

Seatbelt tensioner

The car is fitted with standard seatbelt tensioners and electric* seatbelt tensioners that can tension the seatbelts in critical situations and collisions.

Standard seatbelt tensioner

The seatbelts in the front seat and at the outer seats in the rear are equipped with a standard belt pretensioner.

The seatbelt tensioner tensions the seatbelt in the event of a collision with sufficient force in order to more effectively restrain the occupant.

Electric seatbelt tensioner*

The driver and front passenger seatbelts are equipped with an electric seatbelt tensioner.

The seatbelt tensioners work together and can be activated together with the driver support systems City Safety and Rear Collision Warning. In critical situations, such as panic braking, driving off the road (e.g. the car rolls into a ditch, lifts off the ground or hits something in the terrain), skidding, or risk of collision, the seatbelt can be tensioned by the seatbelt tensioner's electric motor.

The electric seatbelt tensioner helps to adjust the occupant to a better position, reducing the risk of striking the car's interior and improving the effect of safety systems, such as the car's airbags.

When the critical situation has come to an end, the seatbelt and the electric seatbelt pretensioner are restored automatically, but they can also be restored manually.

IMPORTANT

If the passenger airbag is deactivated, the electric seatbelt tensioner on the passenger side will also be deactivated.

WARNING

Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

If the seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the seatbelt's protective properties may have been lost even if the seatbelt does not appear damaged. The seatbelt must also be replaced if it shows signs of wear or damage. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and designed for installation at the same location as the replaced seatbelt.

Related information

- Seatbelts (p. 46)
- Putting on and taking off seatbelts (p. 47)
- Resetting the electric seatbelt tensioner* (p. 50)
- Activating and deactivating passenger airbag* (p. 54)
- City Safety™ (p. 334)
- Rear Collision Warning* (p. 353)

Resetting the electric seatbelt tensioner*

The electric seatbelt tensioner is designed to be reset automatically, but the seatbelt tensioner can be reset manually if the belt remains extended.

1. Stop the car at a safe place.
2. Unfasten the seatbelt and then refasten it.
   > The seatbelt and electric seatbelt tensioner are reset.

WARNING

Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

If the seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the seatbelt's protective properties may have been lost even if the seatbelt does not appear damaged. The seatbelt must also be replaced if it shows signs of wear or damage. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and designed for installation at the same location as the replaced seatbelt.

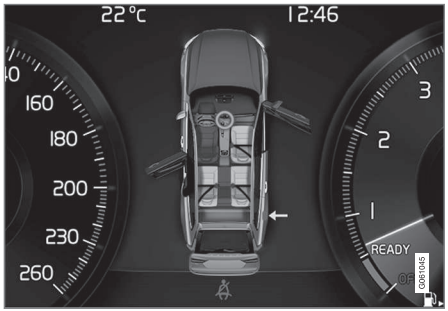
Related information

- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 49)
- Seatbelts (p. 46)

Door and seatbelt reminder

The system reminds unbelted occupants to wear a seatbelt, and also warns about an open door, bonnet or lid.

Driver display graphics



Graphics in the driver display with different types of warnings. The warning colour on the door and tailgate is dependent on the vehicle's speed.

The driver display's graphics show which seats in the car are occupied by belted and unbelted passengers.

The same graphic also shows if the bonnet, tailgate, fuel filler flap or any door is open.

The graphic can be acknowledged by pressing the **O** button on the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

Seatbelt reminder

Visual reminder in the roof console.

A visual reminder is given in the roof console and by means of the warning symbol in the driver display.

The acoustic reminder is dependent on speed, driving time and distance.

The belt status of the driver and passengers is shown in the driver display's graphic when a belt is buckled or unbuckled.

Child seats are not covered by the seatbelt reminder system.

Front seat

A visual and acoustic reminder remind the driver and front seat passenger to use a seatbelt if either of them is not wearing one.

* Option/accessory.

Rear seat

The seatbelt reminder in the rear seat has two subfunctions:

- Provides information on which seatbelts are being used in the rear seat. The driver display's graphics are shown when the seatbelts are in use.
- Reminding that a seatbelt in the rear seat is unfastened during a journey by means of a visual and acoustic reminder. The reminder will cease once the seatbelt has been put on again.

Reminder for doors, bonnet, tailgate and fuel filler flap

If the bonnet, tailgate, fuel filler flap or a door is not closed properly, the driver display's graphics show what is open. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the source of the warning.

If the car is driven at a speed lower than approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) then the driver display's information symbol illuminates.

If the car is driven at a speed higher than approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) then the driver display's warning symbol illuminates.

Related information

- Seatbelts (p. 46)
- Putting on and taking off seatbelts (p. 47)

Airbags

The car is equipped with airbags and inflatable curtains for driver and passengers.

NOTE

The detectors react differently depending on the nature of the collision and whether or not the seatbelts are fastened. Applies to all belt positions.

It is therefore possible that only one (or none) of the airbags may inflate in a collision. The detectors sense the force of the collision on the vehicle and the action is adapted accordingly so that none, one or more airbags are deployed.

WARNING

The airbag system's control module is located in the centre console. If the centre console is drenched with water or other liquid, disconnect the cables to the starter battery. Do not attempt to start the car since the airbags may deploy. Recovering the car. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

Deployed airbags

If any of the airbags have deployed, the following is recommended:

- Recovering the car. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised

Volvo workshop. Do not drive with deployed airbags.

- Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to handle the replacement of components in the car's safety systems.
- Always contact a doctor.

WARNING

Never drive with deployed airbags. They can make steering difficult. Other safety systems may also be damaged. The smoke and dust created when the airbags are deployed can cause skin and eye irritation/injury after intensive exposure. In case of irritation, wash with cold water. The rapid deployment sequence and airbag fabric may cause friction and skin burns.

Related information

- Safety (p. 44)
- Driver airbags (p. 52)
- Passenger airbag (p. 53)
- Side airbags (p. 57)
- Inflatable curtains (p. 57)

Driver airbags

As a supplement to the seatbelts, the car is equipped with steering wheel airbag and knee airbag[1] on the driver's side.

Steering wheel airbag and knee airbag[1] on the driver's side in the front seat.

In the event of a frontal collision, the airbags help to protect the head, neck, face and chest of the driver as well as the knees and legs.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the airbag/airbags is inflated. The airbag cushions the initial collision impact for the occupant. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. When this occurs, smoke escapes into the car. This is completely normal. The entire process, including inflation and deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

WARNING

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

To minimise the risk of injury if the airbag deploys, passengers must sit as upright as possible with their feet on the floor and backs against the backrest.

WARNING

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair. Defective work in the airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

Steering wheel airbag location

This airbag is fitted into the centre of the steering wheel. The steering wheel is marked **AIRBAG**.

Knee airbag[1] location

The airbag is folded up in the lower part of the instrument panel on the driver's side. Its cover panel is marked **AIRBAG**.

[1] The car is only equipped with knee airbag in certain markets.

WARNING

Do not place or attach any object on the top or front of the panel where the knee airbag is stowed.

Related information

- Airbags (p. 51)
- Passenger airbag (p. 53)

Passenger airbag

As a supplement to the seatbelts, the vehicle is equipped with an airbag on the passenger side in the front seat.

Passenger side front airbag.

In the event of a frontal collision, the airbag helps to protect the head, neck, face and chest of the passenger as well as the knees and legs.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the airbag is inflated. The airbag cushions the initial collision impact for the occupant. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. When this occurs, smoke escapes into the car. This is completely normal. The entire process, including inflation and deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

WARNING

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

To minimise the risk of injury if the airbag deploys, passengers must sit as upright as possible with their feet on the floor and backs against the backrest.

WARNING

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair. Defective work in the airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

Passenger airbag location

The airbag is folded up into a compartment above the glovebox. Its cover panel is marked **AIRBAG**.

WARNING

Do not put objects in front of or above the dashboard where the passenger airbag is located.

Label for passenger airbag

Label on the passenger side's sun visor.

The warning label for the passenger airbag is positioned as shown above.

WARNING

If the car is not equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag, the airbag will always be activated.

WARNING

Never allow anybody to stand or sit in front of the front passenger seat.

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated.

Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is deactivated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

Related information

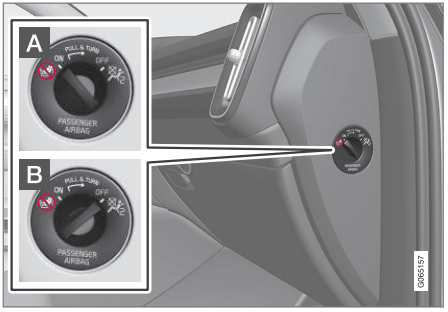
- Airbags (p. 51)
- Driver airbags (p. 52)
- Activating and deactivating passenger airbag* (p. 54)

Activating and deactivating passenger airbag*

The passenger airbag can be deactivated if the car is equipped with a switch, Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch (PACOS).

The switch for the passenger airbag is located on the passenger end of the instrument panel and is accessible when the passenger door is open.

Check that the switch is in the required position.



A **ON** - The airbag is activated and all front-facing passengers (children and adults) can sit safely on the passenger seat.

B **OFF** - The airbag is deactivated and children in rear-facing child seats can sit safely on the passenger seat.

* Option/accessory.

⚠ WARNING

If the car is not equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag, the airbag will always be activated.

Activating passenger airbag

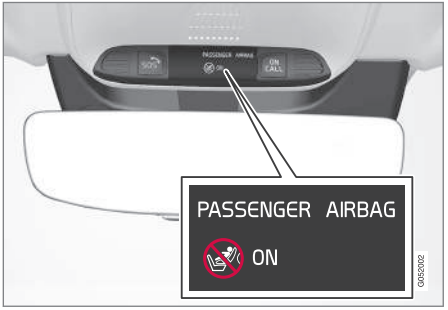
1 Pull the switch outward and turn from **OFF** to **ON**.

> The driver display shows the message **Passenger airbag on Please acknowledge**.

ⓘ NOTE

If the passenger airbag has been activated/deactivated with the car in ignition position **I** or lower, a message is shown in the driver display and the following indicator in the roof console approx. 6 seconds after the car's electrical system has been set in ignition position **II**.

2. Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's **O** button.



> A text message and a warning symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is activated.

⚠ WARNING

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when the airbag is activated.

The passenger airbag must always be activated when front-facing passengers (children and adults) are sitting in the front passenger seat.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

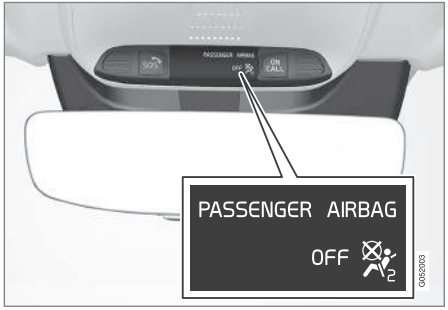
Deactivating passenger airbag

1. Pull the switch outward and turn from **ON** to **OFF**.
   > The driver display shows the message **Passenger airbag off Please acknowledge**.

NOTE

If the passenger airbag has been activated/deactivated with the car in ignition position **I** or lower, a message is shown in the driver display and the following indicator in the roof console approx. 6 seconds after the car's electrical system has been set in ignition position **II**.

2. Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's **O** button.



   > A text message and a symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is deactivated.

WARNING

Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the passenger seat when the airbag is deactivated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

IMPORTANT

If the passenger airbag is deactivated, the electric seatbelt tensioner on the passenger side will also be deactivated.

Related information

- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 49)
- Child seats (p. 60)

Side airbags

The side airbags on the driver's and passenger seats act to protect the chest and hips in the event of a collision.

The side airbags are fitted in the outer backrest frames of the front seats and help to protect the driver and passengers in the front seat.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the side airbags are inflated. The airbag inflates between the occupant and the door panel and thereby cushions the initial impact. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. The side airbag is normally only deployed on the side of the collision.

WARNING

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair. Defective work in the side airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

WARNING

Do not put objects in the area between the outside of the seat and the door panel, since this area is required by the side airbag.

Volvo recommends the use only of car seat covers approved by Volvo. Other seat covers may impede the operation of the side airbags.

WARNING

Side airbags are a supplement the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

Side airbags and child seats

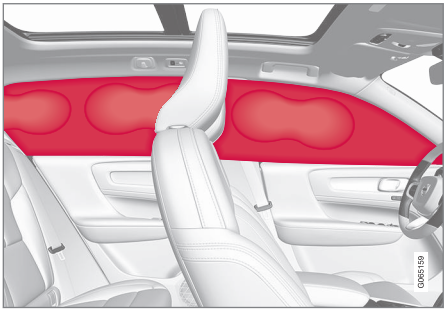
The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by the side airbag.

Related information

- Airbags (p. 51)

Inflatable curtains

The inflatable curtain, Inflatable Curtain (IC), helps to prevent the driver and passengers from striking their heads on the inside of the car during a collision.



The inflatable curtain is mounted along both sides of the headlining and helps protect the driver and outer seat passengers of the car. The panels are labelled with **IC AIRBAG**.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the inflatable curtain is inflated.

WARNING

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair. Defective work in the inflatable curtain system can cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

WARNING

Never hang or attach heavy items onto the handles in the roof. The hooks are only designed for light coats and jackets (not for solid objects such as umbrellas).

Do not screw or install anything onto the car's headlining, door pillars or side panels. This could compromise the intended protection. Volvo recommends only using Volvo genuine parts that are approved for fitting within these areas.

WARNING

Leave 10 cm (4 inches) space between the load and the side windows if the car is loaded to above the top edge of the door windows. Otherwise, the intended protection of the inflatable curtain, which is concealed in the headlining, may be compromised.

WARNING

The inflatable curtain is a supplement to the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

Related information

- Airbags (p. 51)

Safety mode

Safety mode is a protective state that is triggered when a collision may have damaged any of the car's vital functions, such as the fuel lines, sensors for any of the safety systems, or the brake system.

If the car has been in a collision, the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** may be shown on the driver display with a warning symbol as long as the display is not damaged and the car's electrical system is still in working order. This message means that the car has reduced functionality.

WARNING

Never, under any circumstances, attempt to restart the car if it smells of fuel when the **Safety mode See Owner's manual** message is shown in the driver display. Leave the car at once.

If the car is in safety mode, it is possible to attempt to reset the system in order to start and move the car for a short distance, if in a dangerous traffic situation for example.

WARNING

Never attempt to repair your car or reset the electronics yourself if the car has been in safety mode. This could result in personal injury or the car not functioning as normal. Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to check and restore the car to normal status after **Safety mode See Owner's manual** has been shown.

WARNING

If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

Related information

- Safety (p. 44)
- Starting and moving the car after safety mode (p. 59)
- Recovery (p. 480)

Starting and moving the car after safety mode

If the car is in safety mode, it is possible to attempt to reset the system in order to start and move the car for a short distance, if in a dangerous traffic situation for example.

Starting the car after safety mode

1. Check the general damage situation of the car and whether any fuel has been leaking. There must be no smell of fuel either.

   If there is only minor damage and a check has revealed no fuel leaks, starting can be attempted.

WARNING

Never, under any circumstances, attempt to restart the car if it smells of fuel when the **Safety mode See Owner's manual** message is shown in the driver display. Leave the car at once.

2. Switch off the car.
3. Then try to start the car.
   > The car's electronics carry out a systems check and then try to resume normal status. The driver display shows the message **Car start System check, wait** during this time. This can take up to one minute.
4. Then try to start the car again when the message **Car start System check, wait** is no longer shown in the driver's display.

IMPORTANT

If the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** is still shown on the display the car must not be driven or towed but a vehicle recovery service must then be used instead. Even if the car appears to be driveable, hidden damage may make the car impossible to control once moving.

Moving the car after safety mode

1. If the driver display shows the message **Normal mode The car is now in normal mode** after a start attempt, the car can be carefully moved if standing in a dangerous position.
2. Do not move the car further than necessary.

WARNING

If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

Related information

- Safety mode (p. 58)
- Starting the car (p. 430)
- Recovery (p. 480)

Child safety

Children must always sit secure while travelling in the car.
Volvo has child safety equipment (child seats and attachment devices) which is designed for fitting in this particular car. Using Volvo's child safety equipment, you obtain good conditions for a child to travel safely in the car. In addition, the child safety equipment fits in well and is simple to use.

The equipment that should be used is selected taking account of the weight and size of the child.

Volvo recommends that children travel in a rear-facing child seat until as late an age as possible, at least until 4 years of age, and then in a front-facing child seat until the child is 140 cm (4 feet 7 inches) tall.

NOTE

Legal provisions about the type of child seat that must be used for children of different ages and heights vary from country to country. Check what does apply.

NOTE

When using child safety equipment, it is important to read the installation instructions included.

In the event of questions when fitting child safety equipment, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

Children of all ages and sizes must always sit correctly secured in the car. Never allow a child to sit on the knee of a passenger.

Related information

- Safety (p. 44)
- Child seats (p. 60)
- Activating and deactivating child safety locks (p. 261)

Child seats

Suitable child seats should always be used when children are travelling in the car.
Children should sit comfortably and safely. Make sure that the child seat is positioned, mounted and used correctly.

Look in the installation instructions for the child seat for the correct fitting.

NOTE

When using child safety equipment, it is important to read the installation instructions included.

In the event of questions when fitting child safety equipment, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

NOTE

Never leave a child seat loose in the car. Always secure it according to the instructions for the child seat, even when it is not in use.

NOTE

Long-term installation and use of child seats may cause wear and tear on the car's fittings. Volvo recommends using the kick guard accessory to protect the car's fittings.

Related information

- Child safety (p. 60)
- Upper mounting points for child seats (p. 61)
- Lower mounting points for child seats (p. 62)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 62)
- Child seat positioning (p. 63)
- Activating and deactivating passenger airbag* (p. 54)

Upper mounting points for child seats

The car is equipped with upper mounting points for child seats on the rear seat's outer seats.

The upper mounting points are primarily intended for use with front-facing child seats.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the upper mounting points.

The location of the mounting points

Mounting point locations are indicated by symbols on the rear of the backrest.

The mounting points are located on the rear of the rear seat's outer seats.

WARNING

The child seat's upper straps must be routed through the hole in the head restraint leg before they are tensioned at the mounting point. If this is not possible, follow the recommendations from the child seat manufacturer.

NOTE

Fold the head restraints in order to facilitate fitting this type of child seat in cars with folding head restraints on the outer seats.

NOTE

In cars with a parcel shelf, this must be removed before child seats can be attached to the mounting points.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 60)
- Lower mounting points for child seats (p. 62)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 62)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 66)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 67)

Lower mounting points for child seats

The car is equipped with lower mounting points for child seats in the front seat* and the rear seat.

The lower mounting points are designed to be used in conjunction with certain rear-facing child seats.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the lower mounting points.

The location of the mounting points

Mounting point locations in the front seat.

The mounting points in the front seat are located on the sides of the passenger seat's legroom.

The mounting points in the front seat are only mounted if the vehicle is equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag*.

Mounting point locations in the rear seat.

The mounting points in the rear seat are located on the rear section of the front seat's floor rails.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 60)
- Upper mounting points for child seats (p. 61)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 62)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 66)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 67)

i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats

The car is equipped with i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats in the rear seat.

i-Size/ISOFIX[2] is a fixture system for car child seats that is based on an international standard.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points.

The location of the mounting points

Mounting point locations are indicated by symbols[2] on the upholstery of the backrest.

The mounting points for i-Size/ISOFIX are located behind covers in the lower section of the rear seat's backrest, in the outer seats.

Lift the covers in order to access the mounting points.

* Option/accessory.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 60)
- Upper mounting points for child seats (p. 61)
- Lower mounting points for child seats (p. 62)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 66)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 69)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 70)

Child seat positioning

It is important to position the child seat in the right place in the car. The choice of location depends, amongst other things, on the type of child seat and whether the passenger airbag is activated.

Rear-facing child seat and airbag are not compatible.

Always fit rear-facing child seats in the rear seat if the passenger airbag is activated. If a child is sitting on the front passenger seat then he/she could suffer serious injury if the airbag deploys.

If the passenger airbag is deactivated then rear-facing child seats can be fitted on the front passenger seat.

NOTE

Regulations regarding the placement of children in cars vary from country to country. Check what does apply.

WARNING

Never allow anybody to stand or sit in front of the front passenger seat.

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated.

Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is deactivated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

[2] Names and symbols change depending on market.

Label for passenger airbag

Label on the passenger side's sun visor.

The warning label for the passenger airbag is positioned as shown above.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 60)
- Child seat mounting (p. 64)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 66)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 67)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 69)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 70)

Child seat mounting

It is important to remember a number of things when a child restraint system is mounted and used, which depend on where the child restraint system is positioned.

WARNING

Booster cushions/child seats with steel braces or some other design that could rest on the seatbelt buckle's opening button must not be used, as they could cause the seatbelt buckle to open accidentally.

Do not secure the straps for the child seat into the seat's horizontal adjustment bar or in springs, rails or beams under the seat. Sharp edges may damage the straps.

Do not allow the upper section of the child seat to rest against the windscreen.

NOTE

When using child safety equipment, it is important to read the installation instructions included.

In the event of questions when fitting child safety equipment, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

NOTE

Never leave a child seat loose in the car. Always secure it according to the instructions for the child seat, even when it is not in use.

NOTE

Long-term installation and use of child seats may cause wear and tear on the car's fittings. Volvo recommends using the kick guard accessory to protect the car's fittings.

Installation in the front seat

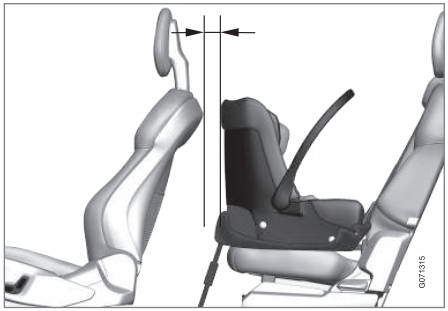
- When fitting rear-facing child seats, check that the passenger airbag is deactivated.
- When fitting front-facing child seats, check that the passenger airbag is activated.
- Only use child seats that are recommended by Volvo, are universally approved or are semi-universal, and where the car is included on the manufacturer's vehicle list.
- ISOFIX child seats can only be fitted when the car is equipped with the ISOFIX console[3] accessory.

[3] The accessory range varies depending on market.

- If the child seat is equipped with lower straps, Volvo recommends that the lower mounting points are used with these[3].
- If the child seat is equipped with support legs, always fit the support leg/support legs directly to the floor. Never fit a support leg to a footrest or other object.
- The ISOFIX guide can be used in order to facilitate child seat installation.

Installation in the rear seat

- Only use child seats that are recommended by Volvo, are universally approved or are semi-universal, and where the car is included on the manufacturer's vehicle list.
- A child seat with support legs must not be fitted in the centre seat.
- The outer seats are equipped with the ISOFIX fixture system and are approved for i-Size[4].
- The outer seats are equipped with upper mounting points. Volvo recommends that child seat's upper straps should be pulled through the hole in the head restraint before being tensioned at the mounting point. If this is not possible, follow the recommendations from the child seat manufacturer.
- If the child seat is equipped with lower straps, never adjust the position of the seat in front after the straps have been fitted in the lower mounting points. Always remember to remove the lower straps when the child seat is not installed.
- If the child seat is equipped with support legs, always fit the support leg/support legs directly to the floor. Never fit a support leg to a footrest or other object.



With the installation of an infant seat in the rear seat, Volvo recommends a distance of at least 50 mm (2 tum) from the front part of the infant seat to the rearmost part of the seat in front.

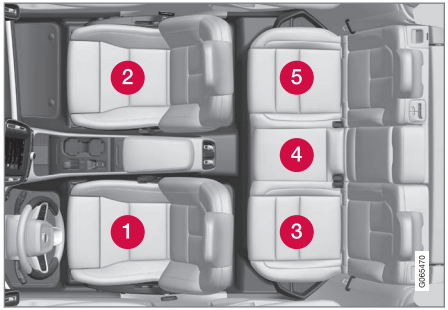
Related information

- Child seat positioning (p. 63)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 66)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 67)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 69)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 70)

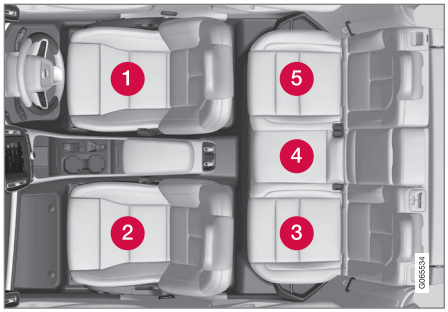
3 The accessory range varies depending on market.
4 Varies depending on market.

Overview table for location of child seats

The table gives an overview of the types of child seats suitable for the car's seats.



Seat positions in left-hand drive cars.



Seat positions in right-hand drive cars.

	i-Size child seats	Universally approved child seats secured using the car's seatbelt	Other child seat categories[A]
Seat position[B]	3, 5	2[C], 3, 4, 5	2[C], 3, 5

A For more information, contact the child seat manufacturer.
B According to the numbering above.
C Activated airbag for front-facing child seats. Deactivated airbag for rear-facing child seats.

Related information

- Child seat positioning (p. 63)
- Child seat mounting (p. 64)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 67)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 69)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 70)

Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts

The table gives a recommendation for which child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

NOTE

Always read the owner's manual section on installing a child seat before installing one in the car.

Weight	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)[A]	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)[A]	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 0 max 10 kg	U[B, C]	X	U[C]	U[C]
Group 0+ max 13 kg	U[B, C]	X	U[C]	U[C]
Group 1 9-18 kg	L[D]	UF[B, E]	U[E], L[D]	U[E]
Group 2 15-25 kg	L[D]	UF[B, F]	U[F], L[D]	U[F]

Weight	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)[A]	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)[A]	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 3 22-36 kg	X	UF[B, F]	U[F]	U[F]

U: Suitable for universal category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for front-facing universally approved child seats.

L: Suitable for particular child restraints. These restraints may be of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.

X: The seat is not suitable for children in this mass group.

A The seat cushion extension must always be retracted for the installation of child seats.
B Adjust the seat to a more elevated position.
C Volvo recommends: Volvo infant seat (type approval E1 04301146).
D Volvo recommends: Volvo rear-facing seat (type approval E5 04212).
E Volvo recommends rear-facing child seat for children in this mass group.
F Volvo recommends: Booster cushion with and without back (type approval E5 04216); Volvo booster seat (type approval E1 04301312).

⚠ WARNING

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger air-bag is activated.

Related information

- Child seat positioning (p. 63)
- Child seat mounting (p. 64)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 66)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 69)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 70)
- Seatbelts (p. 46)

Table for location of i-Size child seats

The table gives a recommendation for which i-Size child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

The child seat must be approved in accordance with UN Reg R129.

NOTE

Always read the owner's manual section on installing a child seat before installing one in the car.

Type of child seat	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
i-Size child seats	X	X	i-U[A, B]	X

i-U: Suitable for i-Size "universal" child seat, front-facing and rear-facing.

X: Not suitable for universally approved child seats.

A Volvo recommends that children travel in a rear-facing child seat until as late an age as possible, at least until 4 years of age.
B Volvo recommends: BeSafe iZi Kid X2 i-Size (type approval E4-129R-000002).

Related information

- Child seat positioning (p. 63)
- Child seat mounting (p. 64)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 66)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 67)
- Table for location of ISOFIX child seats (p. 70)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 62)

Table for location of ISOFIX child seats

The table gives a recommendation for which ISOFIX child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

The child seat must be approved in accordance with UN Reg R44 and the car model must be included in the manufacturer's vehicle list.

NOTE

Always read the owner's manual section on installing a child seat before installing one in the car.

Weight	Size class[A]	Type of child seat	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)[B, C]	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)[B, C]	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 0 max 10 kg	E	Rear-facing infant seat	IL[B, D], X[E]	X	IL[D]	X
Group 0+ max 13 kg	E	Rear-facing infant seat	IL[B, D, F], X[E]	X	IL[D]	X
	C	Rear-facing child seat				
	D	Rear-facing child seat				

Weight	Size class[A]	Type of child seat	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)[B, C]	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)[B, C]	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 1 9-18 kg	A	Front-facing child seat	X	IL[B, F, G], X[E]	IL[G], IUF[G]	X
	B	Front-facing child seat				
	B1	Front-facing child seat				
	C	Rear-facing child seat	IL[B, F], X[E]	X	IL	X
	D	Rear-facing child seat				

IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems. These child restraint systems are those of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.

IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.

X: Not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems.

A For child seats with the ISOFIX fixture system there is a size classification to help users choose the right type of child seat. The size class can be read on the child seat's label.
B Works for the installation of ISOFIX child seats that are semi-universally approved (IL) if the car is equipped with the ISOFIX console accessory (the accessory range varies depending on market). There are no upper mounting points for child seats here.
C The seat cushion extension must always be retracted for the installation of child seats.
D Volvo recommends: Volvo infant seat secured using the ISOFIX fixture system (type approval E1 04301146).
E Applicable if the car is not fitted with an ISOFIX bracket.
F Adjust the backrest so that the head restraint does not interfere with the child seat.
G Volvo recommends rear-facing child seat for children in this mass group.

WARNING

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated.

NOTE

If an i-Size/ISOFIX child seat has no size classification, the car model must be included on the vehicle list for the child seat.

NOTE

Volvo recommends contacting an authorised Volvo dealer for information about which i-Size/ISOFIX child seats Volvo recommends.

Related information

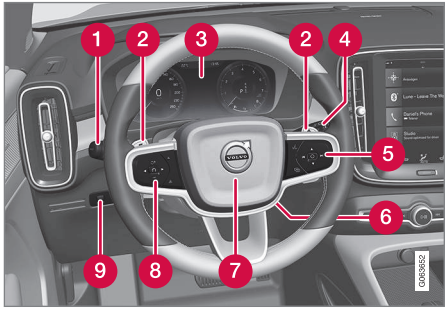
- Child seat positioning (p. 63)
- Child seat mounting (p. 64)
- Overview table for location of child seats (p. 66)
- Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts (p. 67)
- Table for location of i-Size child seats (p. 69)
- i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats (p. 62)

DISPLAYS AND VOICE CONTROL

Displays and controls by the driver in a left-hand drive car

The overviews show where the displays and controls near the driver are located.

Steering wheel and instrument panel

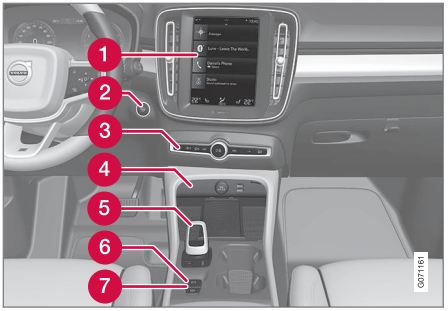


1. Position lamps, daytime running lights, dipped beam, main beam, direction indicators, front fog lamps/cornering lights*, rear fog lamp, resetting the trip meter
2. Steering wheel paddles* for manual gear changing in an automatic gearbox
3. Driver display
4. Wipers and washing, rain sensor*
5. Right-hand steering wheel keypad
6. Steering wheel adjustment
7. Horn
8. Left-hand steering wheel keypad
9. Display lighting, unlocking/opening*/closing* of tailgate

Roof console

1. Front reading lamps and interior lighting
2. Panoramic roof*
3. Display in roof console, **ON CALL** button*
4. Manual dimming of interior rearview mirror

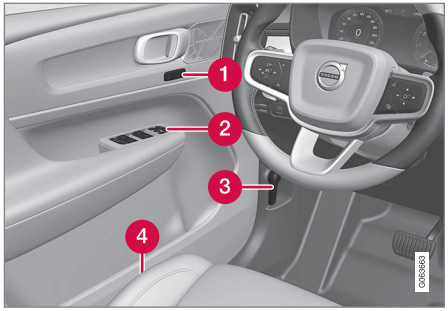
Centre and tunnel console



1. Centre display
2. Start button
3. Hazard warning flashers, defrosting, media, drive mode button*
4. Electrical socket, USB port, wireless phone charger*
5. Gear selector
6. Parking brake
7. Automatic braking when stationary

* Option/accessory.

Driver's door



1. Memory for settings for power front seat*, door mirrors
2. Central locking, power windows, door mirrors, electric child lock*
3. Bonnet opening
4. Adjusting front seat

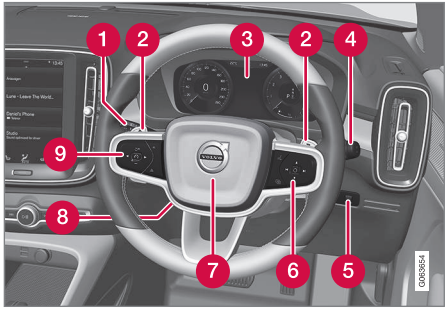
Related information

- Manual front seat (p. 174)
- Adjusting the power* front seat (p. 175)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 183)
- Lighting control (p. 140)
- Starting the car (p. 430)
- Driver display (p. 77)
- Overview of centre display (p. 99)
- Gearbox (p. 444)

Displays and controls by the driver in a right-hand drive car

The overviews show where the displays and controls near the driver are located.

Steering wheel and instrument panel



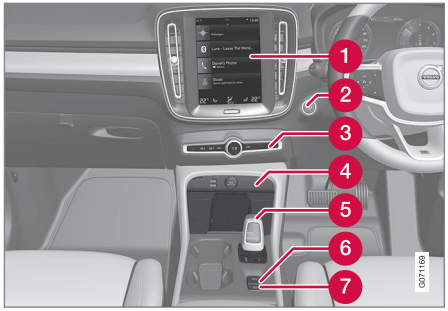
1. Position lamps, daytime running lights, dipped beam, main beam, direction indicators, front fog lamps/cornering lights*, rear fog lamp, resetting the trip meter
2. Steering wheel paddles* for manual gear changing in an automatic gearbox
3. Driver display
4. Wipers and washing, rain sensor*
5. Display lighting, unlocking/opening*/closing* of tailgate
6. Right-hand steering wheel keypad
7. Horn
8. Steering wheel adjustment
9. Left-hand steering wheel keypad

Roof console

1. Front reading lamps and interior lighting
2. Panoramic roof*
3. Display in roof console, **ON CALL** button*
4. Manual dimming of interior rearview mirror

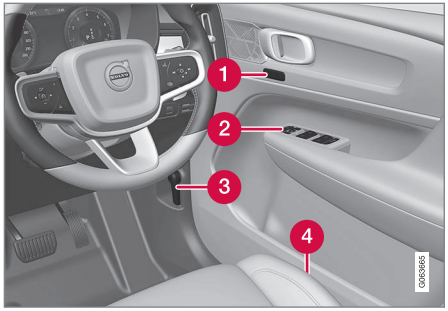
▶▶

Centre and tunnel console



1. Centre display
2. Start button
3. Hazard warning flashers, defrosting, media, drive mode button*
4. Electrical socket, USB port, wireless phone charger*
5. Gear selector
6. Parking brake
7. Automatic braking when stationary

Driver's door



1. Memory for settings for power front seat*, door mirrors
2. Central locking, power windows, door mirrors, electric child lock*
3. Bonnet opening
4. Adjusting front seat

Related information

- Manual front seat (p. 174)
- Adjusting the power* front seat (p. 175)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 183)
- Lighting control (p. 140)
- Starting the car (p. 430)
- Driver display (p. 77)
- Overview of centre display (p. 99)
- Gearbox (p. 444)

* Option/accessory.

Driver display

The driver display shows information about the car and driving.

The driver display contains gauges, indicators and indicator and warning symbols. The content of the driver display depends on the car's equipment, settings and which functions are active at that time.

The driver display is activated as soon as a door is opened, i.e. in ignition position **0**. The driver display extinguishes after a while if it is not used. To reactivate it, proceed with one of the following:

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Activate ignition position **I**.
- Open one of the doors.

WARNING

If the driver display should extinguish, not illuminate on activation/start or be fully or partially illegible, the car must not be used. You should visit a workshop immediately. Volvo recommends an authorised Volvo workshop.

WARNING

In the event of a fault in the driver display the information on e.g. brakes, airbags or other safety systems may not be shown. In which case, the driver cannot check the status of the car's systems or receive current warnings and information.

The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

Location in the driver display:

On the left	In the middle	On the right
Speedometer	Indicator and warning symbols	Tachometer/Hybrid gauge[A]
Trip meter	Outside temperature gauge	Gear shift indicator
Odometer[B]	Clock	Drive mode
Cruise control and speed limiter information	Messages, in some cases with graphics	Fuel gauge
Road Sign Information*	Door and seatbelt information	Hybrid battery gauge
–	Charging status	Distance to empty tank
–	Media player	Distance to empty battery

On the left	In the middle	On the right
–	Navigation map*	Instantaneous fuel consumption
–	Phone	App menu (activated via steering wheel keypad)
–	Voice recognition	–

A Depends on drive mode selected.
B Accumulated mileage.

Dynamic symbol

The dynamic symbol in its basic form.

The centre of the driver display contains a dynamic symbol that changes appearance for different types of message. An amber or red marker around the symbol indicates the degree of severity of a control or warning message.

Examples of indicator symbol.

With an animation, the basic shape can be turned into a graphic showing where a problem is situated, or in order to clarify information.

Related information

- Driver display settings (p. 79)
- Indicator and warning symbols (p. 87)
- Trip computer (p. 82)
- Messages in the driver display (p. 96)
- Managing the app menu in the driver display (p. 95)
- Drive modes (p. 451)

* Option/accessory.

Driver display settings

Settings for the driver display's display options can be made via the driver display's app menu and via the centre display's settings menu.

Settings via the driver display's app menu

The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

The app menu is opened and controlled using the right-hand keypad on the steering wheel.

In the app menu, you can choose which information is shown on the driver display from:

- trip computer
- media player
- phone
- navigation system*.

Settings via the centre display

Selecting information type

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Displays** ➔ **Driver Display Information**.
3. Select what should be shown in the background:
   - **Show no information in background**
   - **Show information for current playing media**
   - **Show navigation even if no route is set**

Selecting theme

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Tap on **My Car** ➔ **Displays** ➔ **Display Themes**
3. Select a theme (appearance) for the driver display:
   - **Glass**
   - **Minimalistic**
   - **Performance**
   - **Chrome Rings**

Selecting language

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Tap on **System** ➔ **System Languages and Units** ➔ **System Language** to select language.
   > A change will affect the language in all displays.

These settings are personal and are saved automatically to the active driver profile.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 77)
- Managing the app menu in the driver display (p. 95)
- Other settings in the centre display's top view (p. 122)

Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge in the driver display shows the fuel level in the tank.

The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

The beige zone in the fuel gauge indicates the quantity of fuel in the tank.

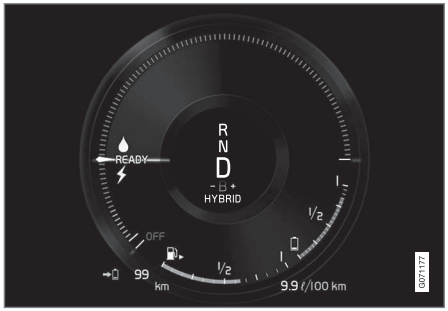
When the fuel level is low, the fuel pump symbol illuminates and turns amber colour. The trip computer also shows the distance to empty tank.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 77)
- Hybrid battery gauge (p. 81)
- Filling fuel (p. 462)
- Fuel tank - volume (p. 659)

Hybrid gauge

In drive modes Hybrid and Pure, the driver display shows a hybrid gauge that can help the driver to drive the car in a more energy-efficient way.



The hybrid gauge shows in different ways the relationship between how much power is being taken from the electric motor and how much power is available.

Symbols in the hybrid gauge

Indicates current level for available electric motor power. If the symbol is filled in, it means that the electric motor is in use.

If the symbol is not filled in, it means that the electric motor is not in use.

Indicates the power level when the combustion engine starts. If the symbol is filled in, it means that the combustion engine is in use.

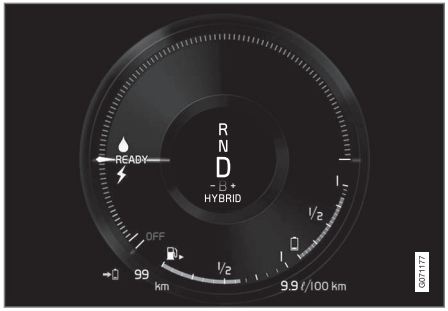
Indicates the power level when the internal combustion engine is due to start. If the symbol is not filled in, it means that the combustion engine is not in use.

Indicator that shows that the hybrid battery is being charged e.g. if the brake pedal is gently depressed.

Driver-requested power

The pointer in the hybrid gauge indicates the amount of engine power requested by the driver by regulating the accelerator pedal. The higher the reading on the scale, the more power is requested by the driver in the current gear. The marker between the lightning flash and the drop shows the point at which the internal combustion engine starts.

Example:



The car is started but stationary, no power is requested.

The electric motor cannot supply the amount of engine power requested and the internal combustion engine starts.

The car generates current to the battery, the battery is charged, e.g. when the brake pedal is pressed lightly or during engine braking down a hill.

Related information

- Drive modes (p. 451)
- Driver display (p. 77)
- Foot brake (p. 435)
- Range (p. 457)
- Starting and stopping the combustion engine (p. 450)

Hybrid battery gauge

The hybrid battery gauge shows how much energy there is in the hybrid battery.

The energy in the hybrid battery is used for the electric motor, but also to cool or heat the car. The trip computer calculates an approximate distance for the energy left in the hybrid battery.

Symbols in the hybrid battery gauge

The symbol in the hybrid battery gauge indicates that the **Hold** function is activated, and the symbol indicates that the **Charge** function is activated.

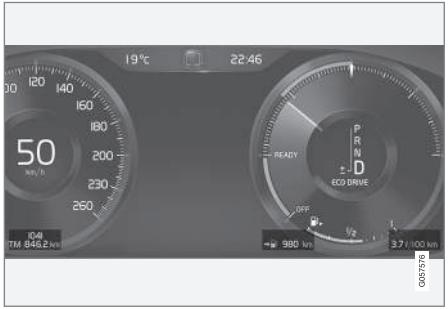
Related information

- Driver display (p. 77)
- Charging the hybrid battery (p. 409)
- Hold and Charge (p. 458)

Trip computer

The car's trip computer records vales such as e.g. distance, fuel consumption and average speed whilst driving.

In order to facilitate fuel-efficient driving, information is recorded about both instantaneous and average fuel consumption. The information from the trip computer can be shown in the driver display.



Examples of trip computer information in the driver display. The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

The following meters are included in the trip computer:

- Trip meter
- Odometer
- Instantaneous fuel consumption
- Distance to empty tank
- Distance to empty battery
- Tourist - alternative speedometer

Units for distance, speed, etc. can be changed via system settings in the centre display.

Trip meter

There are two trip meters, TM and TA.

TM can be reset manually and TA is reset automatically if the car is not used for at least four hours.

The following information is registered while driving:

- Mileage
- Driving time
- Average speed
- Average fuel consumption

The values apply from the trip meter's latest reset.

Odometer

The odometer records the car's total mileage. This value cannot be reset to zero.

Instantaneous fuel consumption

This gauge shows the fuel consumption that the car has at the moment. The value is updated approximately every second.

Distance to empty tank

The trip computer calculates the remaining mileage with the fuel available in the tank.

The calculation is based on the average fuel consumption over the last 30 km (20 miles) and the remaining drivable fuel quantity.

When the gauge shows "----", there is not enough fuel left to be able to calculate the remaining mileage. Refuel as soon as possible.

NOTE

There may be a slight deviation if the driving style has been changed.

An economic driving style generally results in a longer driving distance.

Distance to empty battery

The approximate distance that can be driven with the remaining amount of energy in the hybrid battery is indicated adjacent to this symbol.

The calculation is based on the average consumption of normally loaded vehicle, during normal driving and taking into account whether the air conditioning (AC) is switched on or off. When changing between the **Hybrid** and **Pure** drive modes, the calculated distance increases since the **Pure** mode has reduced climate settings (ECO climate).

No guaranteed range on electric power remains when the gauge shows "----".

NOTE

There may be a slight deviation if the driving style has been changed.

An economic driving style generally results in a longer driving distance.

Start value for fully charged hybrid battery

Since it is difficult to anticipate driving style and other factors that affect the range for electric operation, Volvo has decided to use a start value when the car is fully charged. The start value indicates an up-to figure instead of a forecast for the range for electric operation. The difference in start value between **Hybrid** and **Pure** is due to the car being allowed to use more energy from the hybrid battery in **Pure** mode, as well as that the car changes over to ECO climate.

Mileage for electric operation

In order to achieve the longest possible mileage for electric operation, the driver of an electrically powered car also has to think about energy conservation. The more consumers there are (stereo, electric heating in windows/mirrors/seats, very cold air from the climate control system, etc.) that are active - the shorter the potential mileage.

NOTE

In addition to high current take-off in the passenger compartment, sudden acceleration and braking, high speed, heavy loads, low outside temperature and uphill gradients also reduce the possible driving distance.

Tourist - alternative speedometer

The alternative digital speedometer makes it easier to drive in countries where speed limit signs are in a different unit than that shown in the car's instruments.

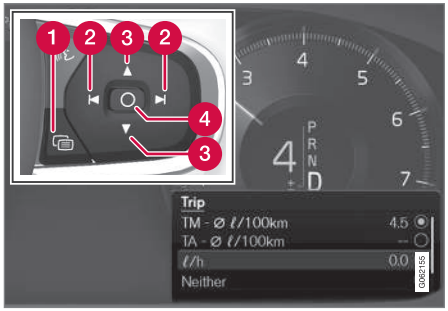
The digital speed is then shown in the opposite unit to that shown in the analogue speedometer. If the analogue speedometer is graduated in **mph**, the digital speedometer shows the corresponding speed in **km/h** and vice versa.

Related information

- Show trip data in the driver display (p. 84)
- Resetting the trip meter (p. 85)
- Show trip statistics in the centre display (p. 85)
- Driver display (p. 77)
- Changing system units (p. 122)

Show trip data in the driver display

The trip computer's recorded and calculated values can be shown in the driver display.
The values are saved in a trip computer app. Via the app menu, you can choose which information is shown on the driver display.



Open and navigate in the app menu[1] using the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

1. App menu
2. Left/right
3. Up/down
4. Confirm

1. Open the app menu in the driver display by pressing (1).

   (It is not possible to open the app menu while there is an unacknowledged message in the driver display. The message first has to be confirmed by pressing the **O** button (4) before the app menu can be opened.)

2. Navigate to the trip computer app to left or right with (2).
   > The top four menu rows show measured values for trip meter TM. The next four menu rows show measured values for trip meter TA. Scroll up or down in the list with (3).

3. Scroll down to the option buttons to select which information to show in the driver display:
   - Odometer
   - Distance to empty tank
   - Distance to empty battery
   - Tourist (alternative speedometer)
   - Mileage for trip meter TM, TA, or no display of mileage
   - Instantaneous fuel consumption, average consumption for TM or TA, alternatively, no display of fuel consumption

   Select or deselect an option with the **O** button (4). The change is made immediately.

Related information

- Trip computer (p. 82)
- Resetting the trip meter (p. 85)

[1] The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

Resetting the trip meter

Reset the trip meter using the left-hand stalk switch.

– Reset all information in trip meter TM (i.e. mileage, average consumption, average speed and driving time) with a long press on the **RESET** button on the left-hand stalk switch.

  Pressing the **RESET** button resets only the mileage.

The trip meter TA can only be reset automatically when the car has not been used for four or more hours.

Related information

- Trip computer (p. 82)

Show trip statistics in the centre display

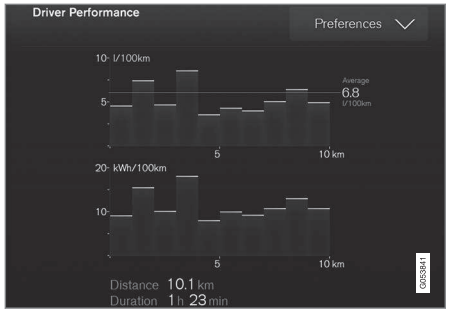
Trip statistics from the trip computer are displayed graphically in the centre display and provide an overview that facilitates more fuel-efficient driving.

Open the **Driver performance** app in app view in order to show the trip statistics.

Each bar in the diagram symbolises a distance of 1, 10 or 100 km, alternatively miles. The bars are filled in from the right as driving progresses. The bar on the far right shows the value for the current distance.

The average fuel consumption and total driving time are calculated since the last time the trip statistics were reset.

Fuel and electricity consumption are shown in separate graphs. Electricity consumption is "net" consumption, i.e. energy consumed minus regenerated energy created during braking.



Trip statistics from the trip computer[2].

NOTE

When driving with electric operation, fuel consumption can be indicated in the trip statistics if the additional heater[3] is running.

Related information

- Settings for trip statistics (p. 86)
- Trip computer (p. 82)

2 The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.
3 Applicable to fuel-driven auxiliary heater.

Settings for trip statistics

Reset or adjust settings for trip statistics.

1. Open the **Driver performance** app in app view in order to show the trip statistics.

2. Press **Preferences** to
   - change graph scale. Select resolution 1, 10 or 100 km/miles for the bar.
   - reset data after every trip. Performed when the car has been stationary for more than 4 hours.
   - reset data for the current trip.

   Trip statistics, calculated average consumption and total driving time are always reset simultaneously.

Units for distance, speed, etc. can be changed via system settings in the centre display.

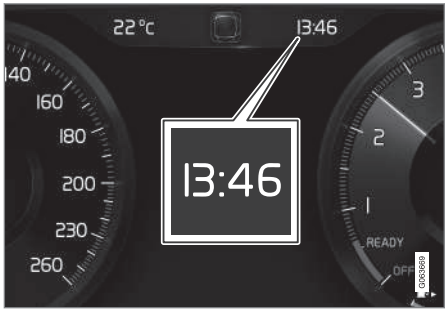
Related information

- Show trip statistics in the centre display (p. 85)
- Trip computer (p. 82)
- Resetting the trip meter (p. 85)

Date and time

The clock is shown in both the driver display and the centre display.

Clock location



In certain situations, messages and information may cover the clock in the driver display.

In the centre display, the clock is located at the top right of the status bar.

Date and time settings

– Select **Settings** ➔ **System** ➔ **Date and Time** in the centre display's top view to change settings for time and date format.

  Adjust the date and time by pressing the up or down arrow on the touch screen.

Automatic time for cars with GPS

When the car is equipped with a navigation system, **Auto Time** can be selected. The time zone is then adjusted automatically based on the location of the car. For certain types of navigation systems, the current location (country) must also be set to obtain the right time zone. If **Auto Time** is not selected, time and data are adjusted with arrow up or arrow down on the touch screen.

Summer time

In certain countries, it is possible to select the **Auto Daylight Saving Time** setting for automatic setting of summer time. For other countries, the **Daylight Saving Time** setting can be selected manually.

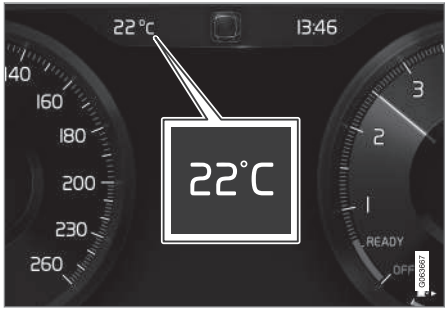
Related information

- Driver display (p. 77)
- Other settings in the centre display's top view (p. 122)

Outside temperature gauge

The outside temperature is shown in the driver display.

A sensor detects the temperature outside of the car.



If the car has been stationary, the gauge may display a temperature reading that is too high.

When the outside temperature is in the range –5 °C to +2 °C (23 °F to 36 °F), a snowflake symbol lights up that warns of potentially slippery conditions.

Change the unit for the temperature gauge, etc. via system settings in the centre display's top view.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 77)
- Changing system units (p. 122)

Indicator and warning symbols

The indicator and warning systems alert the driver to the fact that a function is activated, a system is working, or a defect or serious error has occurred.

Red symbols

	Warning The red warning symbol illuminates when a fault has been detected which could affect the safety or drivability of the car. An explanatory text is shown on the driver display at the same time. The warning symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.
	Seatbelt reminder Illuminates or flashes when someone in the car is not wearing a seatbelt.
	Airbags An error has been detected in any of the car's safety systems. Read the message on the driver display and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.
	Fault in brake system An error has occurred on the braking system. Read the message on the driver display and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.
	Parking brake Light illuminated permanently: The parking brake is activated. Flashing: an error has occurred with the parking brake. Read the message in the driver display.
	Faults in the electrical system An error has occurred on the electrical system. Read the message on the driver display and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.
	High engine temperature The engine temperature is too high. Read the message in the driver display.

Collision risk

City Safety warns of a risk of collision with other vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists or large animals.

Low oil pressure

The engine oil pressure is too low. Stop the engine immediately and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary.

If the symbol lights up and the oil level is normal, read the message on the display and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.

Amber symbols

Information

A fault has occurred in one of the car's systems. Read the message in the driver display.

The information symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.

Fault in brake system

An error has occurred on the braking system. Read the message in the driver display.

ABS fault

The system is disengaged. The car's regular brake system continues to work, but without the ABS function.

Emissions system

Emissions systems fault. Drive to a workshop for checking. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.

Rear fog lamp

The rear fog lamp is illuminated.

Tyre pressure system

Low tyre pressure.

If there is a fault in the tyre pressure system, the symbol will flash for approx. 1 minute and then illuminate with a constant glow. This may be because the system cannot detect or warn of low tyre pressure as intended.

Fault in the headlamp system

A fault has occurred on the headlamp system. Read the message in the driver display.

Lane assistance

Lane assistance warns/intervenes.

Reduced performance

Temporary fault on drivetrain. Read the message in the driver display.

Stability system

Light on permanently: a fault has occurred in the system.

Flashing: the system is working.

Stability system, sport mode

Sport mode is selected.

Blue symbols

Active main beam

Active main beam is activated and switched on.

Main beam

Main beam is switched on.

Green symbols

	Automatic brake The function is activated and the service brake or parking brake is operating.
	Front fog lamps The front fog lamp is switched on.
	Position lamps The position lamps are switched on.
	Left and right-hand direction indicator The direction indicator is being used.

White/grey symbols

	Active main beam Active main beam is activated, but does not come on.
	Preconditioning Engine and compartment heater/air conditioning pre-condition the car.
	Lane assistance White symbol: Lane assistance is on and road lines are detected. Grey symbol: Lane assistance is on but road lines are not detected.
	Rain sensor The rain sensor is activated.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 77)

License agreement for the driver display

A license is an agreement for the right to operate a certain activity or the right to use someone else's entitlement according to the terms and conditions in the agreement. The following text is Volvo's agreement with the manufacturer or developer.

Freetype Project License

3rd Party Software Disclaimers and License Agreements Confidential ID 06-00004-004 39 / 75 Revision 06.00A, 2015-06-09 2006-Jan-27 Copyright 1996-2002, 2006 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg.

Introduction

The FreeType Project is distributed in several archive packages; some of them may contain, in addition to the FreeType font engine, various tools and contributions which rely on, or relate to, the FreeType Project. This license applies to all files found in such packages, and which do not fall under their own explicit license. The license affects thus the FreeType font engine, the test programs, documentation and makefiles, at the very least. This license was inspired by the BSD, Artistic, and IJG (Independent JPEG Group) licenses, which all encourage inclusion and use of free software in commercial and freeware products alike. As a consequence, its main points are that: o We don't promise that this software works. However, we will be interested in any kind of bug reports. (`as is' distribution) o You can use this software for whatever you want, in parts or full form, without having to pay us. (`royalty-free' usage) o You may not pretend that you wrote this software. If you use it, or only parts of it, in a program, you must acknowledge somewhere in your documentation that you have used the FreeType code. (`credits') We specifically permit and encourage the inclusion of this software, with or without modifications, in commercial products. We disclaim all warranties covering The FreeType Project and assume no liability related to The FreeType Project. Finally, many people asked us for a preferred form for a credit/disclaimer to use in compliance with this license. We thus encourage you to use the following text:

"Portions of this software are copyright © 2013 The FreeType Project (www.freetype.org). All rights reserved."

Legal Terms

0. Definitions – Throughout this license, the terms `package', `FreeType Project', and `FreeType archive' refer to the set of files originally distributed by the authors (David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg) as the `FreeType Project', be they named as alpha, beta or final release. `You' refers to the licensee, or person using the project, where `using' is a generic term including compiling the project's source code as well as linking it to form a `program' or `executable'. This program is referred to as `a program using the FreeType engine'. This license applies to all files distributed in the original FreeType Project, including all source code, binaries and documentation, unless otherwise stated in the file in its original, unmodified form as distributed in the original archive. If you are unsure whether or not a particular file is covered by this license, you must contact us to verify this. The FreeType Project is copyright (C) 1996-2000 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg. All rights reserved except as specified below.

1. No Warranty – THE FREETYPE PROJECT IS PROVIDED `AS IS' WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT WILL ANY OF THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE, OF THE FREETYPE PROJECT. '

2. Redistribution – This license grants a worldwide, royalty-free, perpetual and irrevocable right and license to use, execute, perform, compile, display, copy, create derivative works of, distribute and sublicense the FreeType Project (in both source and object code forms) and derivative works thereof for any purpose; and to authorize others to exercise some or all of the rights granted herein, subject to the following conditions: o Redistribution of source code must retain this license file (`FTL.TXT') unaltered; any additions, deletions or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation. The copyright notices of the unaltered, original files must be preserved in all copies of source files. o Redistribution in binary form must provide a disclaimer that states that the software is based in part of the work of the FreeType Team, in the distribution documentation. We

also encourage you to put an URL to the FreeType web page in your documentation, though this isn't mandatory. These conditions apply to any software derived from or based on the FreeType Project, not just the unmodified files. If you use our work, you must acknowledge us. However, no fee need be paid to us.

3. Advertising – Neither the FreeType authors and contributors nor you shall use the name of the other for commercial, advertising, or promotional purposes without specific prior written permission. We suggest, but do not require, that you use one or more of the following phrases to refer to this software in your documentation or advertising materials: `FreeType Project', `FreeType Engine', `FreeType library', or `FreeType Distribution'. As you have not signed this license, you are not required to accept it. However, as the FreeType Project is copyrighted material, only this license, or another one contracted with the authors, grants you the right to use, distribute, and modify it. Therefore, by using, distributing, or modifying the FreeType Project, you indicate that you understand and accept all the terms of this license.

4. Contacts – There are two mailing lists related to FreeType: o freetype@nongnu.org. Discusses general use and applications of FreeType, as well as future and wanted additions to the library and distribution. If you are looking for support, start in this list if you haven't found anything to help you in the documentation. o freetype-devel@nongnu.org. Discusses bugs, as well as engine internals, design issues, specific licenses, porting, etc. Our home page can be found at http://www.freetype.org

HarfBuzz / UCDN License

- Copyright © 2010,2011,2012 Google, Inc.
- Copyright © 2012 Mozilla Foundation
- Copyright © 2011 Codethink Limited
- Copyright © 2008,2010 Nokia Corporation and/or its subsidiary(-ies)
- Copyright © 2009 Keith Stribley
- Copyright © 2009 Martin Hosken and SIL International
- Copyright © 2007 Chris Wilson
- Copyright © 2006 Behdad Esfahbod
- Copyright © 2005 David Turner
- Copyright © 2004,2007,2008,2009,2010 Red Hat, Inc.
- Copyright © 1998-2004 David Turner and Werner Lemberg

For full copyright notices consult the individual files in the package. Permission is hereby granted, without written agreement and without license or royalty fees, to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose, provided that the above copyright notice and the following two paragraphs appear in all copies of this software. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE TO ANY PARTY FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE AND ITS DOCUMENTATION, EVEN IF THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE. THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE SOFTWARE PROVIDED HEREUNDER IS ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, AND THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER HAS NO OBLIGATION TO PROVIDE MAINTENANCE, SUPPORT, UPDATES, ENHANCEMENTS, OR MODIFICATIONS.

Libunibreak License

This library is released under an open-source licence, the zlib/libpng licence. Please check the file LICENCE for details. Apart from using the algorithm, part of the code is derived from the data provided under http://www.unicode.org/Public. And the Unicode Terms of Use may apply: URL:http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html

LICENSE:

- Copyright (C) 2008-2012 Wu Yongwei <wuyongwei at gmail dot com>
- Copyright (C) 2012 Tom Hacohen <tom dot hacohen at samsung dot com>

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the author be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software. Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgement in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

Unicode Inc. License Agreement

EXHIBIT 1 UNICODE, INC. LICENSE AGREEMENT - DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE Unicode Data Files include all data files under the directories http://www.unicode.org/Public/, http://www.unicode.org/reports/, and http://www.unicode.org/cldr/data/ . Unicode Software includes any source code published in the Unicode Standard or under the directories http://www.unicode.org/Public/, http://www.unicode.org/reports/, and http://www.unicode.org/cldr/data/. NOTICE TO USER: Carefully read the following legal agreement. BY DOWNLOADING, INSTALLING, COPYING OR OTHERWISE USING UNICODE INC.'S DATA FILES ("DATA FILES"), AND/OR SOFTWARE ("SOFTWARE"), YOU UNEQUIVOCALLY ACCEPT, AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY, ALL OF THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE, DO NOT DOWNLOAD, INSTALL, COPY, DISTRIBUTE OR USE THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE. COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE Copyright © 1991-2010 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of the Unicode data files and any associated documentation (the "Data Files") or Unicode software and any associated documentation (the "Software") to deal in the Data Files or Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, and/or sell copies of the Data Files or Software, and to permit persons to whom the Data Files or Software are furnished to do so, provided that (a) the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear with all copies of the Data Files or Software, (b) both the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in associated documentation, and (c) there is clear notice in each modified Data File or in the Software as well as in the documentation associated with the Data File(s) or Software that the data or software has been modified. THE DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY

RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR HOLDERS INCLUDED IN THIS NOTICE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, OR ANY SPECIAL INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE. Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in these Data Files or Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

ZLIB Data Compression Library License Agreement

(C) 1995-2010 Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software. Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

Jean-loup Gailly Mark Adler jloup@gzip.org madler@alumni.caltech.edu If you use the zlib library in a product, we would appreciate *not* receiving lengthy legal documents to sign. The sources are provided for free but without warranty of any kind. The library has been entirely written by Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler; it does not include third-party code. If you redistribute modified sources, we would appreciate that you include in the file ChangeLog history information documenting your changes. Please read the FAQ for more information on the distribution of modified source versions.

GLEW Licence (Modified BSD Licence)

The OpenGL Extension Wrangler Library

- Copyright (C) 2002-2008, Milan Ikits <milan.ikits@ieee org>
- Copyright (C) 2002-2008, Marcelo E. Magallon <mmagallo@debian.org>
- Copyright (C) 2002, Lev Povalahev

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. * The name of the author may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS

INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 77)

App menu in the driver display

The app menu in the driver display provides quick access to commonly used functions for certain apps.

The figure is schematic.

The app menu in the driver display can be used instead of the centre display and is controlled using the right-hand keypad on the steering wheel. The app menu makes it easier to switch between different apps or functions within the apps without having to let go of the steering wheel.

App menu functions

Different apps give access to different types of functions. The following apps and their associated functions can be controlled from the app menu:

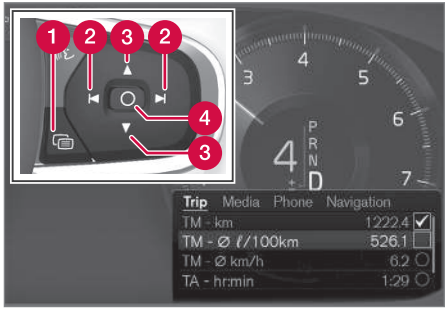
App	Functions
Trip computer	Selection of trip meter, selection of what to show in the driver display, etc.
Media player	Selection of active source for the media player.
Phone	Calling a contact from the call list.
Navigation	Guide to destination, etc.

Related information

- Driver display (p. 77)
- Overview of centre display (p. 99)
- Managing the app menu in the driver display (p. 95)

Managing the app menu in the driver display

The app menu in the driver display is operated with the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.



The app menu and the steering wheel's right-hand keypad. The figure is schematic.

1. Open/close
2. Left/right
3. Up/down
4. Confirm

Opening/closing the app menu

– Press on open/close (1).
  > The app menu opens/closes.

NOTE

It is not possible to open the app menu while there is an unacknowledged message in the driver display. The message has to be confirmed first before the app menu can be opened.

The app menu closes automatically after a period of inactivity or after certain options have been selected.

Navigating and selecting in the app menu

1. Navigate between the apps by pressing on the left or right (2).
   > Functions for previous/next app are shown in the app menu.
2. Browse through the functions for the selected app by tapping on up or down (3).
3. Confirm or highlight an option for the function by pressing on confirm (4).
   > The function is activated and for some options the app menu then closes.

If the app menu is opened again, the functions of the most recently selected app are shown first.

Related information

- App menu in the driver display (p. 94)
- Messages in the driver display (p. 96)

Messages in the driver display

The driver display can show messages to inform or assist the driver in the event of different events.

Examples of messages in the driver display. The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

The driver display shows messages that are of high priority for the driver.

Messages can be shown in different parts of the driver display depending on what other information is currently being displayed. After a while, or when the message has been acknowledged/action taken if required, the message disappears from the driver display. If a message needs to be saved, it is placed in the **Car Status** app, which is opened from the app view in the centre display.

Message composition may vary and they can be shown together with graphics, symbols or buttons for acknowledging the message or accepting a request, for example.

Service messages

Shown below is a selection of important service messages and their meanings.

Message	Specification
Stop safely[A]	Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - consult a workshop[B].
Turn off engine[A]	Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - consult a workshop[B].
Service urgent Drive to workshop[A]	Contact a workshop[B] to check the car immediately.
Service required[A]	Contact a workshop[B] to check the car as soon as possible.
Regular maintenance **Book time for maintenance**	Time for regular service - contact a workshop[B]. Shown before the next service date.
Regular maintenance **Time for maintenance**	Time for regular service - contact a workshop[B]. Shown at the next service date.
Regular maintenance **Maintenance overdue**	Time for regular service - contact a workshop[B]. Shown when the service date has passed.
Temporarily off[A]	A function has been temporarily switched off and is reset automatically while driving or after starting again.

A Part of message, shown together with information on where the problem has arisen.
B An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Managing messages in the driver display (p. 97)
- Handling a message saved from the driver display (p. 97)
- Message in centre display (p. 130)

Managing messages in the driver display

Messages in the driver display are handled using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

Examples of messages in the driver display and the steering wheel's right-hand keypad. The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

1. Left/right
2. Confirm

Some messages in the driver display contain one or more buttons for acknowledging the message or accepting a request, for example.

Managing a new message

For messages with buttons:

1. Navigate between the buttons by pressing on the left or right (1).
2. Confirm the selection by pressing on confirm (2).
   > The message disappears from the driver display.

For messages without buttons:

– Close the message by pressing on confirm (2), or allow the message to close automatically after a while.
  > The message disappears from the driver display.

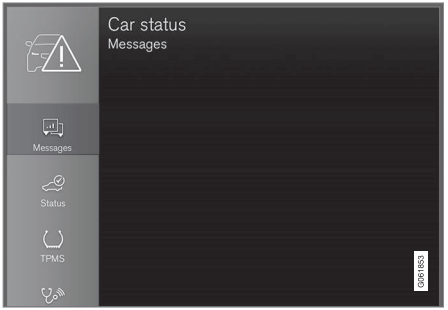
If a message needs to be saved, it is placed in the **Car Status** app, which is opened from the app view in the centre display. The message **Car message stored in Car Status application** is shown in the centre display in conjunction with this.

Related information

- Messages in the driver display (p. 96)
- Handling a message saved from the driver display (p. 97)
- Message in centre display (p. 130)

Handling a message saved from the driver display

Whether saved from the driver display or the centre display, messages are managed in the centre display.



Saved messages can be seen in the **Car Status** app.

Messages that are shown in the driver display and that need to be saved are added in the **Car Status** app in the centre display. The message **Car message stored in Car Status application** is shown in the centre display in conjunction with this.

Reading a saved message

To read a saved message immediately:

– Press the button to the right of the **Car message stored in Car Status application** message in the centre display.
  > The saved message is shown in the **Car Status** app.

To read a saved message later:

1. Open the **Car Status** app from the app view in the centre display.
   > The app is opened in the bottom subview of the home view.
2. Select the **Messages** tab in the app.
   > A list of saved messages is shown.
3. Tap on a message to expand/minimise.
   > More information on the message is shown in the list and the image to the left in the app shows information about the message graphically.

Managing a saved message

In maximised mode, some messages have two buttons available to book service or read the owner's manual.

To book service for a saved message:

– In maximised mode for the message, press **Request appoint.Call to make Appointment**[4] for help in booking service.
  > With **Request appoint.**: The **Appointments** tab opens in the app and creates a request to book service and repair work.

  With **Call to make Appointment**: The phone app is initiated and calls a service centre to book service and repair work.

To read the owner's manual for a saved message:

– In maximised mode for the message, press **Owner's manual** to read about the message in the owner's manual.
  > The owner's manual opens in the centre display and shows information linked to the message.

Saved messages in the app are deleted automatically each time the engine is started.

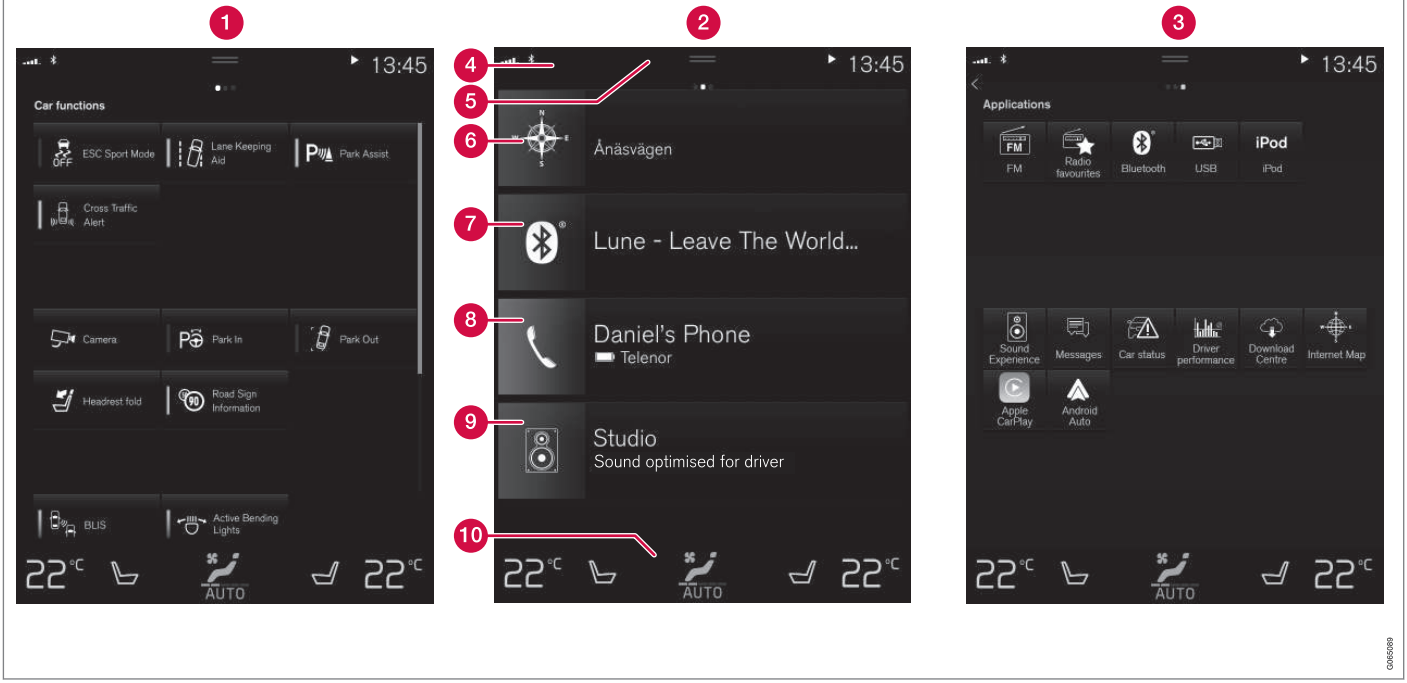
Related information

- Messages in the driver display (p. 96)
- Managing messages in the driver display (p. 97)
- Message in centre display (p. 130)

4 Market dependent. Volvo ID and selected workshop also need to be registered.

Overview of centre display

Many of the car's functions are controlled from the centre display. Presented here is the centre display and its options.



Three of the centre display's basic views. Swipe right or left to access the function or app view respectively[5].

1 Function view - car functions that are activated or deactivated with a press. Certain functions are also so-called trigger functions, which means they open a window

[5] The views are reversed for right-hand drive cars.

with setting options. Examples of these include **Camera**.

2. Home view - the first view that is shown when the screen is started.
3. Application view (app view) - apps that have been downloaded (third-party apps) and apps for embedded functions, such as **FM radio**. Tap on an app icon to open the app.
4. Status bar - the activities in the car are shown right at the top of the screen. Network and connection information is shown on the left-hand side of the status bar, while media-related information, the clock and indication about on-going background activity are shown on the right.
5. Top view - drag the tab down in order to access the top view. **Settings**, **Owner's manual**, **Profile** and the car's saved messages are accessed from here. In some cases contextual settings (e.g. **Navigation Settings**) and the contextual owner's manual (e.g. **Navigation Manual**) can also be accessed in the top view.
6. Navigation - leads to map navigation, with e.g. Sensus Navigation*. Tap on the subview to expand it.
7. Media - recently used apps associated with media. Tap on the subview to expand it.
8. Phone - the phone function can be reached from here. Tap on the subview to expand it.
9. Extra subview - recently used apps or car functions that do not belong in any of the other subviews. Tap on the subview to expand it.
10. Climate row - information and direct interaction to set temperature and seat heating for example*. Tap on the symbol in the centre of the climate row in order to open the climate view with more setting options.

NOTE

If necessary, the climate control can be used to cool the media system in the centre display. In these cases, the message **Climate system Cooling the infotainment system** is shown in the driver display.

Related information

- Managing the centre display (p. 102)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 105)
- Function view in centre display (p. 112)
- Apps (p. 489)
- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 114)
- Other settings in the centre display's top view (p. 122)
- Open contextual setup in the centre display (p. 123)
- Owner's manual in centre display (p. 17)
- Media player (p. 498)
- Phone (p. 514)
- Climate controls (p. 197)
- Switching off and changing the volume of the system sound in the centre display (p. 121)
- Changing the appearance in the centre display (p. 121)
- Changing system language (p. 122)
- Changing system units (p. 122)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 629)
- Message in centre display (p. 130)

Managing the centre display

Many of the car's functions are controlled and regulated from the centre display. The centre display is a touch screen that reacts to touch.

Using the touch screen functionality in the centre display

The screen reacts differently depending on whether it is touched by dragging, swiping, or tapping. Actions such as browsing between different views, marking objects and scrolling in a list can be performed by touching the screen in different ways.

An infrared light curtain just above the surface of the screen enables the screen to detect a finger that is just in front of the screen. This technology makes it possible to use the screen even with gloves on.

Two people can interact with the screen at the same time, e.g. to adjust the climate for the driver and passenger side respectively.

IMPORTANT

Do not use sharp objects on the screen as they may scratch it.

The table below presents the different procedures for operating the screen:

Procedure	Execution	Result
	Press once.	Highlights an object, confirms a selection or activates a function.
	Press twice in quick succession.	Zooms in on a digital object, such as the map.
	Press and hold.	Grabs an object. Can be used to move apps or map points on the map. Press and hold your finger against the screen and at the same time drag the object to the desired location.
	Tap once with two fingers.	Zooms out from a digital object, such as the map.

Procedure	Execution	Result
	Drag	Changes between different views, scrolls a list, text or view. Hold depressed and drag in order to move apps or map points on the map. Drag horizontally or vertically across the screen.
	Swipe/drag quickly	Changes between different views, scrolls a list, text or view. Drag horizontally or vertically across the screen. Note that touching the upper section of the screen may cause the top view to open.
	Drag apart	Zooms in.
	Drag together	Zooms out.

Returning to home view from another view

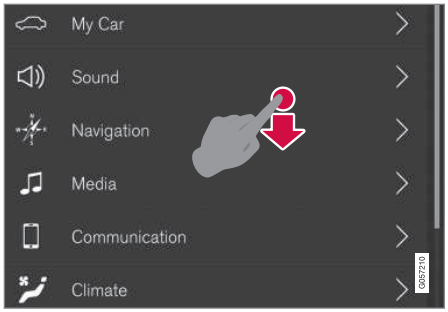
1. Briefly press the home button below the centre display.
   > The last position of the home view is shown.
2. Briefly press again.
   > All subviews of the home view are set to their default mode.

NOTE

In home view standard mode - briefly press the home button. An animation that describes access to the different views is shown on the screen.

Scrolling in a list, article or view

When a scroll indicator is visible in the screen, it is possible to scroll downward or upward in the view. Swipe downwards/upwards anywhere in the view.



The scroll indicator appears in the centre display when it is possible to scroll in the view.

Using the controls in the centre display

Temperature control.

The control is used for many of the car's functions. Regulate e.g. temperature by means of one of the following:

- drag the control to the desired temperature,
- tap on + or – in order to raise or lower the temperature gradually, or
- tap on the desired temperature on the control.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating centre display (p. 105)
- Moving apps and buttons in centre display (p. 114)
- Keyboard in centre display (p. 116)

Activating and deactivating centre display

The centre display can be dimmed and reactivated using the home button beneath the screen.

Home button for the centre display.

The effect of using the home button that the screen dims and the touchscreen no longer reacts to touch. The climate row will still be shown. All functions connected to the screen are still running, such as climate, audio, guidance* and apps. When the centre display is dimmed, it is a good opportunity to clean the screen. The dimming function can also be used to fade the screen so that it does not disturb while driving.

1. Give a long press on the physical home button below the screen.
   > The screen goes dark except for the climate row, which continues to be shown. All functions connected to the screen are still running.
2. Reactivate the screen - briefly tap on the home button.
   > The view that was displayed before the screen was switched off will be shown again.

NOTE

The screen cannot be deactivated when a prompt to perform an action is shown on the screen.

NOTE

The centre display deactivates automatically when the engine is off and the driver's door is opened.

Related information

- Cleaning the centre display (p. 629)
- Changing the appearance in the centre display (p. 121)
- Overview of centre display (p. 99)

Navigating in the centre display's views

There are five different basic views in the centre display: home view, top view, climate view, app view and function view. The screen is started automatically when the driver's door is opened.

Home view

Home view is the view that is shown when the screen is started. It consists of four subviews: **Navigation**, **Media**, **Phone** and an extra subview.

An app or car function selected from the app or function view starts in the respective subview of the home view. E.g. **FM radio** starts in the **Media** tile.

The extra tile shows the last used app or car function that is not associated with any of the other three areas.

The subviews show brief information about each different app.

NOTE

When the car is started, the home view's various sub-views show information on the current status of apps.

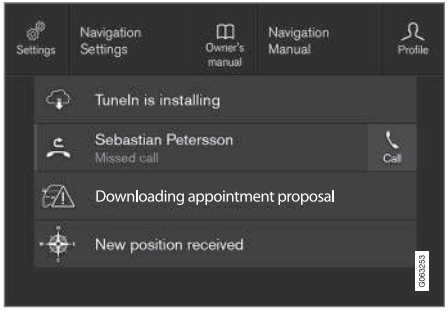
NOTE

In home view standard mode - briefly press the home button. An animation that describes access to the different views is shown on the screen.

Status bar

The activities in the car are shown at the top of the screen. Network and connection information is shown on the left-hand side of the status bar, while media-related information, the clock and indication that background activity is in progress are shown on the right.

Top view



Top view dragged down.

A tab is located in the centre of the status bar at the top of the screen. Open the top view by pressing on the tab or by dragging/swiping from the top downwards across the screen.

In the top view, access is always available to:

- **Settings**
- **Owner's manual**
- **Profile**
- The car's saved messages.

In the top view, access is given to the following in some cases:

- Contextual setting (e.g. **Navigation Settings**). Change settings directly in the top view when an app (e.g. navigation) is running.
- Contextual Owner's Manual (e.g. **Navigation Manual**). Gain access directly in the top view to articles in the digital owner's manual that are related to the content displayed on screen.

Exit the top view - press outside the top view, on the home button or at the bottom of the top view and drag upward. The underlying view is then visible and available for use again.

NOTE

The top view is not available during starting/shutdown or when a message is shown on the screen. It is also not available when climate view is shown.

Climate view

The climate row is always visible at the bottom of the screen. The most common climate settings can be made directly there, such as setting temperature and seat heating*.

Press the symbol in the centre of the climate row to open the climate view and gain access to more climate settings.

Press the symbol to close the climate view and return to the previous view.

* Option/accessory.

App view

App view with the car's apps.

Swipe from right to left[6] across the screen in order to access the app view from the home view. Apps that have been downloaded (third-party apps) and apps for embedded functions, such as **FM radio**, are found here. Certain apps show brief information directly in the app view, such as the number of unread text messages for **Messages**.

Tap on an app to open it. The app then opens in the tile to which it belongs, e.g. **Media**.

You can scroll down in the app view, depending on the number of apps. Do this by swiping/dragging from the bottom and up.

Go back to the home view again by swiping from left to right[6] across the screen, or by pressing the home button.

Function view

The function view with buttons for different car functions.

Swipe from left to right[6] across the screen in order to access the function view from the home view. From here you can activate or deactivate different car functions, e.g. **BLIS***, **Lane Keeping Aid*** and **Park Assist***.

[6] Applies to left-hand drive cars. For right-hand drive cars - swipe in the opposite direction.

Depending on the amount of functions, it is also possible here to scroll downward in the view. Do this by swiping/dragging from the bottom and up.

Unlike in app view, where an app is opened with a press, a function is activated or deactivated by pressing the relevant function button. Some functions (trigger functions) open in a new window when pressed.

Go back to the home view again by swiping from right to left[6] across the screen, or by pressing the home button.

Related information

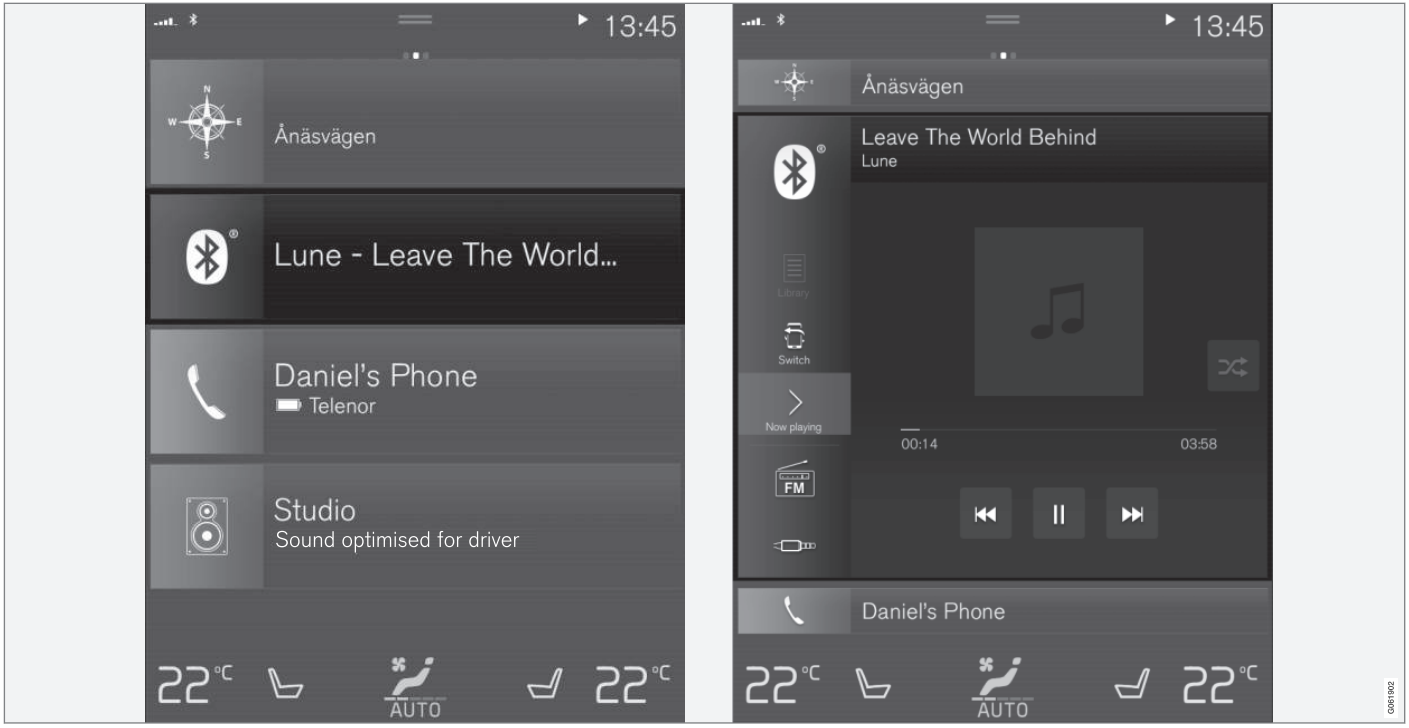
- Managing subviews in centre display (p. 109)
- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 114)
- Other settings in the centre display's top view (p. 122)
- Open contextual setup in the centre display (p. 123)
- Owner's manual in centre display (p. 17)
- Driver profiles (p. 126)
- Climate controls (p. 197)
- Apps (p. 489)
- Function view in centre display (p. 112)
- Overview of centre display (p. 99)

6 Applies to left-hand drive cars. For right-hand drive cars - swipe in the opposite direction.

Managing subviews in centre display

Home view consists of four subviews: **Navigation**, **Media**, **Phone** and an extra subview. These views can be expanded.

Expanding a subview from default mode



Standard mode and expanded mode of a subview in the centre display.

Expanding a subview:

– For tiles **Navigation**, **Media** and **Phone**: Press anywhere on the subview. When a tile is expanded, the extra tile in the home view is temporarily forced away. The other two tiles are minimised and only certain information is shown. When the extra tile is tapped, the other three tiles are minimised and only certain information is displayed.

  The expanded view provides access to the basic functions of the app.

Closing an expanded subview:

– The subview can be closed in three different ways.
  - Tap on the upper part of the expanded subview.
  - Tap on another tile (this tile will then open in expanded mode instead).
  - Briefly press the physical home button below the centre display.

Opening or closing a subview in full screen mode

The extra tile[7] and the tile for **Navigation** can be opened out in full screen mode, with even more information and more setting options.

When a new subview is opened in full-screen mode, no information from the other subviews is shown.

In expanded mode, open the app in full screen - press on the symbol.

Press on the symbol to go back to the expanded mode, or press the home button at the bottom of the screen.

Home button for the centre display.

There is always the option to go back to home view by pressing the home button. To go back to the home view's standard view from full screen mode – press twice on the home button.

Related information

- Managing the centre display (p. 102)
- Activating and deactivating centre display (p. 105)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 105)

[7] Does not apply to all apps or car functions opened via the extra tile.

Function view in centre display

All the buttons for car functions are located in the function view, one of the centre display's basic views. Navigate to the function view from home view by swiping from left to right across the screen[8].

Different types of buttons

There are three different types of buttons for car functions; see below:

Type of button	Property	Affects car function
Function buttons	Have on/off positions. When a function is running, an LED indicator illuminates to the left of the icon for the button. Press the button to activate/deactivate a function.	Most buttons in function view are function buttons.
Trigger buttons	Do not have on/off positions. When a trigger button is depressed, a window for the function is opened. For example, it may be a window to change seat position.	• **Camera** • **Headrest Fold**
Parking buttons	Have on, off and scan modes. Similar to the function buttons but with an extra position for parking scanning.	• **Park In** • **Park Out**

8 Applies to left-hand drive cars. For right-hand drive cars - swipe in the opposite direction.

The buttons' different modes

When the LED indicator illuminates in green on a function or parking button, the function is activated. When a function is activated, extra text with an explanation for certain functions is shown. The text is shown for a few seconds and then the button is shown with the LED indicator illuminated.

For **Lane Keeping Aid**, the text **Works only at certain speeds** is shown, for example, when the button is depressed.

Press the button once briefly to activate or deactivate the function.

The function is deactivated when the LED indicator is extinguished.

When a warning triangle is shown in the right-hand section of the button there is something not working as intended.

Related information

- Managing the centre display (p. 102)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 105)

Moving apps and buttons in centre display

The apps and buttons for car functions in the app view and function view respectively can be moved and organised as desired.

1. Swipe from right to left[9] to access the app view, or swipe from left to right[9] to access the function view.
2. Tap on an app or button and hold it down.
   > The app or button changes size and becomes slightly transparent. It is then possible to move it.
3. Drag the app or button to a vacant space in the view.

The maximum number of rows available for use in order to position apps or buttons is 48. To move an app or button outside the visible view, drag it to the bottom of the view. New rows are then added, where the app or button can be located.

An app or button can thus be located further down and is then not visible in the normal mode for the view.

Swipe across the screen to scroll up or down in the view.

NOTE

Hide the apps that you rarely or never use by moving them to the bottom, off the visible screen. This way it will be easier to find the apps you use more often.

NOTE

Apps and car function buttons cannot be added to locations that are already occupied.

Related information

- Function view in centre display (p. 112)
- Apps (p. 489)
- Managing the centre display (p. 102)

Symbols in the centre display's status bar

Overview of the symbols that can be shown in the centre display's status bar.

The status bar shows activities in progress and, in some cases, their status. Not all symbols are shown all the time due to the limited space in the status bar.

Symbol	Specification
	Connected to the Internet.
	Roaming activated.
	Signal strength in mobile phone network.
	Bluetooth device connected.
	Bluetooth activated but no device connected.
	Information sent to and from GPS.
	Connected to Wi-Fi network.
	Tethering activated (Wi-Fi hotspot). The car then shares the available connection.

[9] Applies to left-hand drive cars. For right-hand drive cars - swipe in the opposite direction.

Symbol	Specification
	Car modem activated.
	USB sharing active.
	Phone charging wirelessly.
	Process in progress.
	Timer for preconditioning active.
	Audio source being played back.
	Audio source stopped.
	Phone call in progress.
	Audio source muted.
NEWS	News is received from the radio channel.
TP	Traffic information is received.
15:45	Clock.

Related information

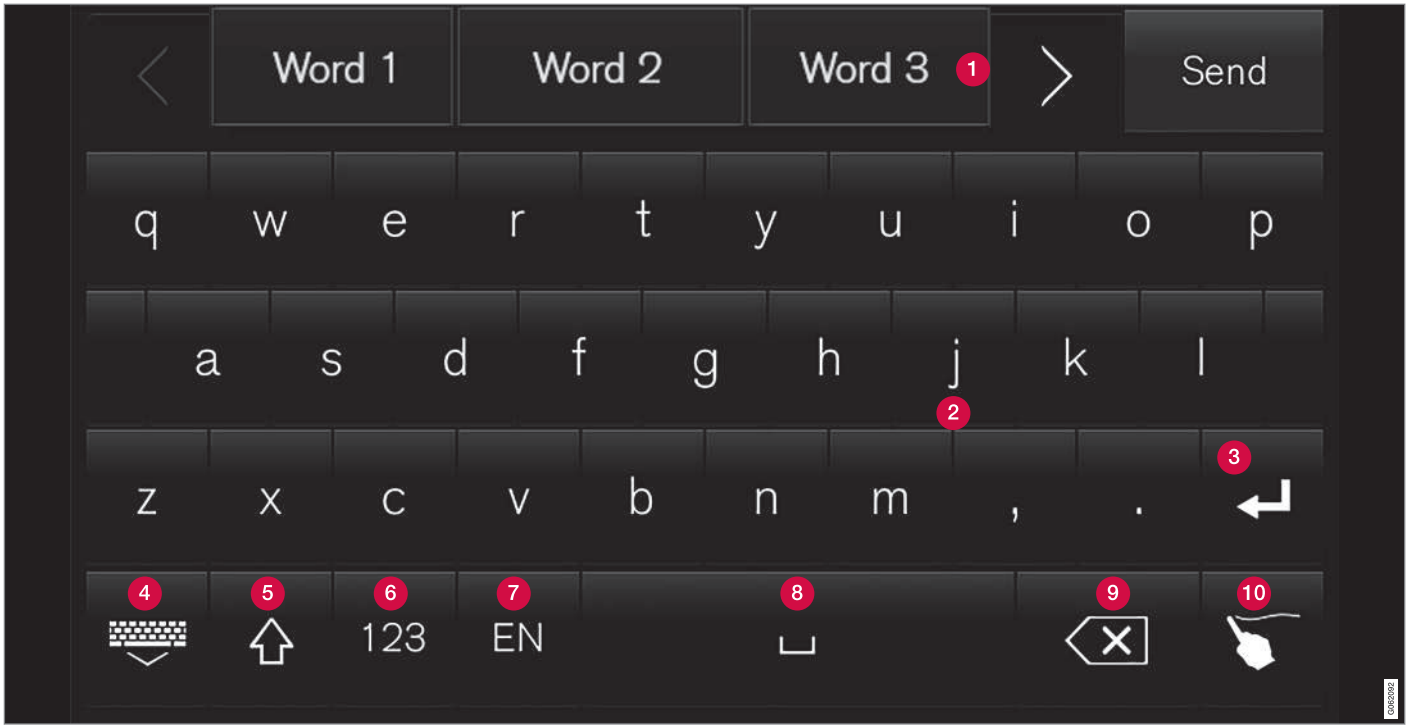
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 105)
- Message in centre display (p. 130)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Connecting a device via USB port (p. 505)
- Wireless phone charger* (p. 523)
- Phone (p. 514)
- Date and time (p. 86)

Keyboard in centre display

The centre display keyboard makes it possible make entries using keys. It is also possible to "draw in" letters and characters on the screen by hand.

The keyboard can be used to enter characters, letters and numbers, e.g. to write text messages from the car, enter passwords or search for articles in the digital owner's manual.

The keyboard is only shown when entries can be made on the screen.



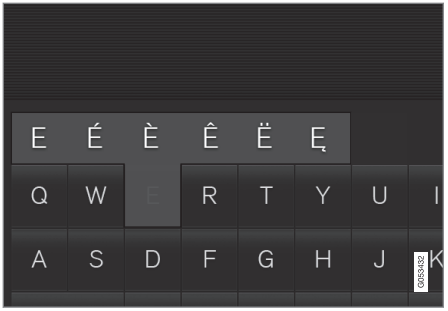
The image shows an overview of some of the buttons which may be shown in the keyboard. The appearance varies depending on language settings and the context in which the keyboard is being used.

1. Row of suggested words or characters[10]. The suggested words are adjusted as new letters are being entered. Browse among the suggestions by pressing on the right and left arrows. Tap on a suggestion to select it. Note that this function is not supported by all language selections. If not available, the row will not be shown on the keyboard.
2. The characters available on the keyboard depend on which language was selected (see point 7). Tap on a character to enter it.
3. The button works in different ways, depending on the context in which the keyboard is used - either to enter **@** (when an email address is entered) or to **create a new row** (for normal text input).
4. Hides the keyboard. If this is not possible, the button is not shown.
5. Used to enter capital letters. Press again to enter one capital letter and then continue with lower-case letters. Another press makes all letters capital letters. The next press restores the keyboard to lower-case letters. In this mode, the first letter after a full stop, exclamation mark or question mark is a capital letter. The first letter in the text field is also a capital letter. In text fields intended for names or addresses, each word automatically starts with a capital letter. In text fields for password, web address or email address entry, all letters are automatically lower case unless otherwise set with the button.
6. Number entry. The keyboard (2) is then shown with numbers. Press ABC, which in number mode is shown instead of 123, to return to the letter keyboard, or #\~ to open the keyboard with special characters.
7. Changes text input language, e.g. **EN**. The available characters and word suggestions (1) vary depending on the selected language. To make it possible to change languages for the keyboard, the languages must first be added under Settings.
8. Space.
9. Undoes entered text. Pressing briefly deletes one character at a time. Hold the button depressed to delete characters more quickly.
10. Changes keyboard mode to write letters and characters by hand instead.

Pressing the confirmation button above the keypad (not visible in the illustration) confirms the entered text. The appearance of the button differs depending on context.

10 Applies to Asiatic languages.

Variants of a letter or character



Variants of a letter or character, e.g. **é** or **è**, can be entered by holding down the letter or character. A box is displayed showing possible variants of letters or characters. Press the required variant. If no variant is selected, the original letter/character is entered.

Related information

- Changing keyboard language in centre display (p. 119)
- Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display (p. 119)
- Managing the centre display (p. 102)
- Managing text messages (p. 520)

Changing keyboard language in centre display

To make it possible to switch between different languages for the keyboard, the languages must first be added under **Settings**.

Adding or deleting languages in settings

The keyboard is automatically set to the same languages as the system language. The keyboard language can be manually adapted without affecting the system language.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **System** ➔ **System Languages and Units** ➔ **Keyboard Layouts**.
3. Select one or more languages from the list.
   > It is now possible to switch between the selected languages directly from the keyboard for text input.

If no languages have been actively selected under **Settings**, the keyboard retains the same language as the car's system language.

Switching between different languages in the keyboard

When a number of languages have been selected in **Settings**, the button in the keyboard is used to switch between the different languages.

To change keyboard language with list:

1. Give a long press on the button.
   > A list opens.
2. Select the required language. If more than four languages have been selected under **Settings**, it is possible to scroll in the list from the keyboard.
   > The keyboard is adapted to the selected language and other word suggestions are given.

To change the keyboard language without displaying the list:

– One short press of the button.
  > The keyboard is adapted to the next language in the list without displaying the list.

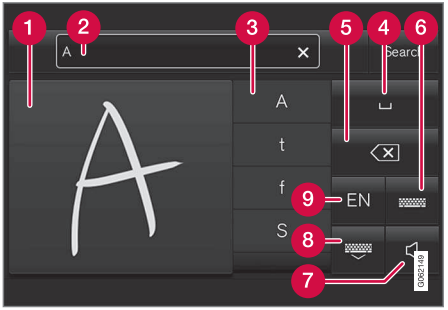
Related information

- Changing system language (p. 122)
- Keyboard in centre display (p. 116)

Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display

The centre display keyboard allows you to enter characters, letters and words on the screen by "drawing" by hand.

Press the button on the keyboard to change from typing with the keys to entering letters and characters by hand.



1. Area for writing characters/letters/words/parts of word.
2. The text field where the characters or word suggestions[11] appear as they are written on screen (1).

11 Applies to certain system languages.

3. Suggestions for characters/letters/word/part of word. It is possible to scroll through the list.
4. Space. A space can also be created by entering a dash (-) in the area for hand-written letters (1). See the heading "Entering a space in the free text field with handwriting recognition" below.
5. Undo entered text. Press briefly to delete one character/one letter at a time. Wait a moment before pressing again to delete the next character/letter, etc.
6. Return to the keyboard with regular character input.
7. Switch off/on sound when entering.
8. Hide the keyboard. If this is not possible, the button is not shown.
9. Change text input language.

Writing characters/letters/words by hand

1. Write a character, a letter, a word or parts of a word in the area for hand-written letters (1). Write a word or parts of a word above each other or on a line.
   > A number of suggested characters, letters or words is shown (3). The most likely choice is found at the top of the list.

IMPORTANT

Do not use sharp objects on the screen as they may scratch it.

2. Enter the character/letters/word by waiting a moment.
   > The character/letter/word at the top of the list is entered. It is also possible to select a different character by pressing the required character, letter or word in the list.

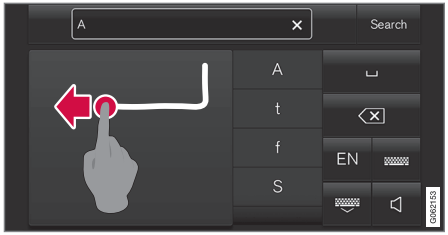
Deleting/changing characters/letters written by hand

Delete all characters in the text field (2) by swiping across the handwriting field (1).

– There are several options for deleting/changing characters/letters:
  - Press the intended letter or word in the list (3).
  - Press the text undo button (5) to delete the letter and begin again.
  - Swipe horizontally from right to left[12] over the area for handwritten letters (1). Delete multiple letters by swiping over the area several times.
  - Pressing the X in the text field (2) deletes all of the entered text.

12 For Arabic keyboard - swipe in the opposite direction. Swiping from right to left creates a space.

Changing row in the free text field with handwriting



Change row by hand by drawing the above character in the handwriting field[13].

Entering a space in the free text field with handwriting recognition

Enter a space by drawing a dash from left to right[14].

Related information

- Keyboard in centre display (p. 116)

Changing the appearance in the centre display

The appearance of the screen in the centre display can be changed by selecting a theme.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Displays** ➔ **Display Themes**.
3. Then select a theme, e.g. **Minimalistic** or **Chrome Rings**.

As a supplement to these appearances, it is possible to choose between **Normal** and **Bright**. With **Normal**, the screen background is dark and the text is light. This alternative is the default for all themes. A light variant can also be selected, in which the background is light and the text is dark. This alternative can be useful in e.g. strong daylight.

This alternative is always available for the user and is not affected by the surrounding lighting.

Related information

- Other settings in the centre display's top view (p. 122)
- Activating and deactivating centre display (p. 105)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 629)

Switching off and changing the volume of the system sound in the centre display

The centre display can be used to change the volume of the system sound or switch off the system sound altogether.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Sound** ➔ **System Volumes**.
3. Under **Touch Sounds**, drag the control to change the volume/switch off screen touch sounds. Drag the control to the desired volume.

Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 99)
- Other settings in the centre display's top view (p. 122)
- Audio settings (p. 488)

13 For Arabic keyboards - draw the same character, but reversed.
14 For Arabic keyboard - draw the dash from right to left.

Changing system units

Units settings are defined in the centre display's **Settings** menu.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Continue to **System ➔ System Languages and Units ➔ Units of Measurement**.
3. Select a unit standard:
   - **Metric** - kilometres, litres and degrees Celsius.
   - **Imperial** - miles, gallons and degrees Celsius.
   - **US** - miles, gallons and degrees Fahrenheit.

   > The units in the driver display and centre display are changed.

Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 99)
- Other settings in the centre display's top view (p. 122)
- Changing system language (p. 122)

Changing system language

Language settings are defined in the centre display menu **Settings**.

NOTE

Changing the language in the centre display may mean that some owner's information is not compliant with national or local laws and regulations. Do not switch to a language that is difficult to understand as this may make it difficult to find your way back through the screen structure.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Continue to **System ➔ System Languages and Units**.
3. Select **System Language**.

   Languages that support voice recognition have a voice recognition symbol.

   > The language in the driver display and centre display are changed.

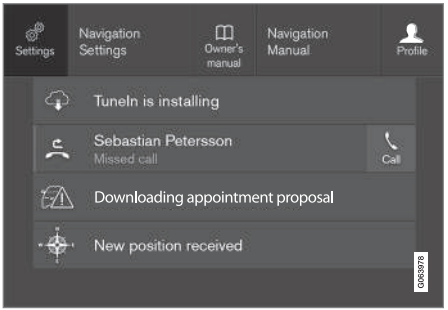
Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 99)
- Other settings in the centre display's top view (p. 122)
- Changing system units (p. 122)

Other settings in the centre display's top view

You can change settings and information for many of the car's functions via the centre display.

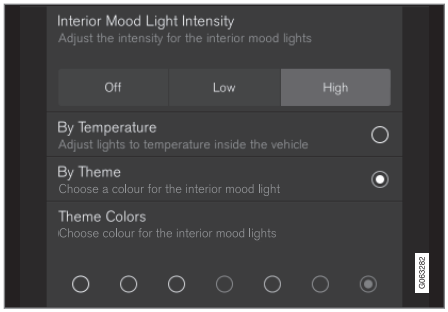
1. Open the top view by pressing on the tab at the top or by dragging/swiping from the top downwards across the screen.
2. Press **Settings** to open the settings menu.



Top view with button for **Settings**.

3. Press on one of the categories and the subcategories to navigate to the required setting.
4. Change one or more settings. Different types of setting are changed in different ways.

   > The changes are saved immediately.



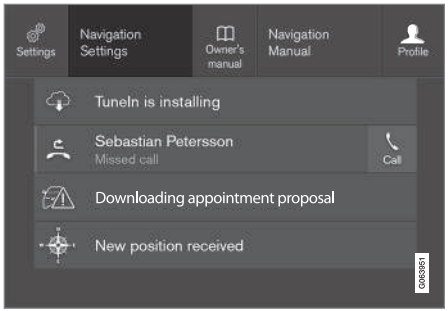
A subcategory in the settings menu with different types of settings (here, a multi-selector button and radio buttons).

Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 99)
- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 124)
- Table showing centre display settings (p. 125)

Open contextual setup in the centre display

It is possible to use contextual setup for most of the car's basic apps so that you can change settings directly in the top view in the centre display.



Top view with button for contextual setting.

Contextual setting is a shortcut for accessing a specific setting relating to the active function shown on screen. The apps installed in the car from the beginning, e.g. **FM radio** and **USB**, are a part of Sensus and are part of the car's embedded functions. The settings for these apps can be changed directly via contextual setting in the top view.

When contextual setup is available:

1. Drag down top view when an app is in expanded mode, e.g. **Navigation**.
2. Press **Navigation Settings**.
   > A navigation settings page opens.
3. Change settings as desired and confirm the selections.

Press **Close** or the physical home button beneath the centre display to close setup view.

Most of the car's basic apps have this contextual setting option, but not all.

Third party apps

Third party apps are not included in the car's system from the beginning, but are the type that can be downloaded e.g. **Volvo ID**. Here the settings are always made inside the app and not from the top view.

Related information

- Other settings in the centre display's top view (p. 122)
- Overview of centre display (p. 99)
- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 124)
- Downloading apps (p. 490)

Resetting user data for change of ownership

In the event of a change of ownership, user data and system settings should be restored to factory settings.

The settings in the car can be reset at different levels. Restore all user data and system settings to the original factory settings in the event of a change of ownership. In the event of a change of ownership it is also important to change the owner of the Volvo On Call* service.

Related information

- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 124)
- Resetting settings in the driver profiles (p. 130)

Resetting settings in the centre display

It is possible to reset the defaults for all settings defined in the centre display settings menu.

Two types of reset

There are two different types of restore operation in the settings menu:

- **Factory reset** - clears all data and files and resets all settings to their default values.
- **Reset Personal Settings** - clears personal data and resets personal settings to their default values.

Resetting settings

Follow these instructions to reset your settings.

NOTE

Factory reset is only possible when the car is stationary.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Continue to **System** ➔ **Factory reset**.
3. Select the required reset type.
   > A pop-up window is shown.
4. Press **OK** to confirm the reset.

   For **Reset Personal Settings**, the reset must be confirmed by pressing **Reset for the active profile** or **Reset for all profiles**.
   > Selected settings are reset.

Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 99)
- Other settings in the centre display's top view (p. 122)
- Table showing centre display settings (p. 125)

* Option/accessory.

Table showing centre display settings

The settings menu in the centre display has a number of main categories and subcategories where settings and information for many of the car's functions are collected.
There are seven main categories: **My Car**, **Sound**, **Navigation**, **Media**, **Communication**, **Climate** and **System**.

In turn, each category contains a number of subcategories and setting options. The tables below show the first level of subcategories. The setting options for a function or area are described in more detail in the corresponding section of the owner's manual.

Some settings are personal, which means that they can be saved to **Driver Profiles**. Other settings are global, which means they are not linked to a driver profile.

My Car

Subcategories
Displays
IntelliSafe
Drive Preferences/Individual Drive Mode*
Lights and Lighting
Mirrors and Convenience
Locking
Parking Brake and Suspension
Wipers

Sound

Subcategories
Tone
Balance
System Volumes

Navigation

Subcategories
Map
Route and Guidance
Traffic

Media

Subcategories
AM/FM radio
DAB*
Gracenote ®
TV*
Video

Communication

Subcategories
Phone
Text Messages
Android Auto*
Apple CarPlay*
Bluetooth Devices
Wi-Fi
Car Wi-Fi Hotspot
Car Modem Internet*
Volvo On Call*
Volvo Service Networks

Climate

The main category **Climate** has no subcategories.

System

Subcategories
Driver Profile
Date and Time
System Languages and Units
Privacy and Data
Keyboard Layouts
Voice Control*
Factory reset
System Information

Related information

- Overview of centre display (p. 99)
- Other settings in the centre display's top view (p. 122)
- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 124)

Driver profiles

Many of the settings made in the car can be adapted according to the driver's personal preferences and can be saved in one or more driver profiles.

The personal settings are automatically saved in the active driver profile. Each key can be linked to a driver profile. When the linked key is used, the car is adapted to the settings of that specific driver profile.

What settings are saved in the driver profiles?

Many of the settings defined in the car will be saved automatically in the active driver profile unless the profile is protected. In the car, the settings defined are either personal or global. Only personal settings are saved in driver profiles.

Settings that can be saved in a driver profile include, amongst other things, screens, mirrors, front seats, navigation*, audio and media system, language and voice control.

Some settings, referred to as global settings, can be changed but are not saved to a specific driver profile. Changes to global settings affect all profiles.

Global settings

The global settings are not changed when changing between driver profiles. They remain the same regardless of which driver profile is active.

Keyboard layout settings are an example of global settings. If driver profile X is used to add additional languages to the keyboard, these remain available for use even if driver profile Y is used. The keyboard layout settings are not saved to a specific driver profile - the settings are global.

Personal preferences

If driver profile X was used to e.g. set centre display brightness, driver profile Y is not affected by this setting. It has been saved to driver profile X - the brightness setting is a personal setting.

Related information

- Selecting driver profile (p. 127)
- Renaming a driver profile (p. 127)
- Linking remote control key to driver profile (p. 128)
- Protect driver profile (p. 128)
- Resetting settings in the driver profiles (p. 130)
- Table showing centre display settings (p. 125)

* Option/accessory.

Selecting driver profile

When the centre display has been started, the selected driver profile is shown at the top of the screen. The driver profile last used is the one that will be active next time the car is unlocked. It is possible to change to another driver profile after the car has been unlocked. However, if the remote control key has been linked to a driver profile then this is what is selected when the car is started.

There are three options for changing to another driver profile.

Option 1:

1. Tap on the name of the driver profile shown in the top of the centre display when the display has been started.
   > A list of selectable driver profiles is shown.
2. Select the driver profile required.
3. Press **Confirm**.
   > The driver profile is selected and the system loads the settings for the new driver profile.

Option 2:

1. Drag down the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Profile**.
   > The same list as for Option 1 is shown.
3. Select the driver profile required.
4. Press **Confirm**.
   > The driver profile is selected and the system loads the settings for the new driver profile.

Option 3:

1. Drag down the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
3. Press **System ➔ Driver Profiles**.
   > A list of selectable driver profiles is shown.
4. Select the driver profile required.
   > The driver profile is selected and the system loads the settings for the new driver profile.

Related information

- Driver profiles (p. 126)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 105)
- Renaming a driver profile (p. 127)
- Linking remote control key to driver profile (p. 128)

Renaming a driver profile

It is possible to change the name of the different driver profiles used in the car.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **System ➔ Driver Profiles**.
3. Select **Edit Profile**.
   > A menu opens, where the profile can be edited.
4. Tap in the box **Profile Name**.
   > A keyboard appears, and it is possible to change the name. Tap on ⌨ to close the keyboard.
5. Save the name change by pressing **Back** or **Close**.
   > The name has now been changed.

NOTE

A profile name cannot start with a space, as the profile name will not then be saved.

Related information

- Selecting driver profile (p. 127)
- Keyboard in centre display (p. 116)

Protect driver profile

In some cases it is preferable not to save various settings defined in the car to the active driver profile. In this case, it is possible to protect the driver profile.

NOTE

Protecting a driver profile is only possible when the car is stationary.

To protect a driver profile:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **System** ➔ **Driver Profiles**.
3. Select **Edit Profile**.
   > A menu opens, where the profile can be edited.
4. Select **Protect Profile** to protect the profile.
5. Save your profile protection option by pressing **Back/Close**.
   > When the profile is protected, settings defined in the car will not be saved automatically to the profile. Instead, your changes must be saved manually under **Settings** ➔ **System** ➔ **Driver Profiles** ➔ **Edit Profile** by pressing **Save current settings to the profile**. When the profile is unprotected, on the other hand, your settings will be saved automatically to the profile.

Related information

- Driver profiles (p. 126)

Linking remote control key to driver profile

It is possible to link your key to a driver profile. The driver profile along with all of its settings will then be automatically selected every time the car is used with that specific remote control key.

The first time the remote control key is used, it is not linked to any specific driver profile. When the car is started, the **Guest** profile will automatically be activated.

A driver profile can be selected manually without linking it to the key. When the car is unlocked, the last active driver profile is activated. Once the key has been linked to a driver profile, a driver profile does not need to be selected when that specific key is used.

Linking a remote control key to a driver profile

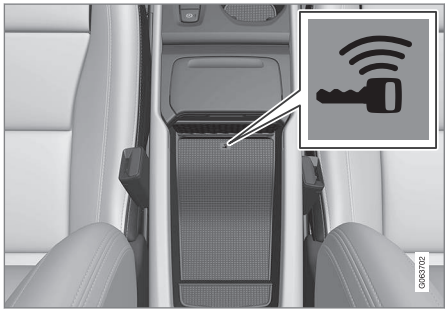
NOTE

Connecting a remote control key to a driver profile is only possible when the car is stationary.

First select the profile to be linked to the key, if the profile to be linked is not already active.

The active profile can then be linked to the key.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **System** ➔ **Driver Profiles**.
3. Select the desired profile. The display returns to the home view. The **Guest** profile cannot be linked to a key.
4. Drag down the top view again and tap on **Settings** ➔ **System** ➔ **Driver Profiles** ➔ **Edit Profile**.
5. Select **Connect key** to link the profile with the key. It is not possible to link a driver profile to a different key than the one currently being used in the car. If there are multiple keys in the car, the message **More than one key is found, put the key you want to connect on backup reader** will be displayed.



The backup reader's location in the storage compartment.

   > When the message **Profile connected to key** is shown, the key and the driver profile are linked.
6. Press **OK**.
   > This key is now linked to the driver profile and will remain linked as long as the **Connect key** box is not unticked.

Related information

- Driver profiles (p. 126)
- Renaming a driver profile (p. 127)
- Remote control key (p. 226)

Resetting settings in the driver profiles

Settings that have been saved to one or more driver profiles can be reset if the car is stationary.

NOTE

Factory reset is only possible when the car is stationary.

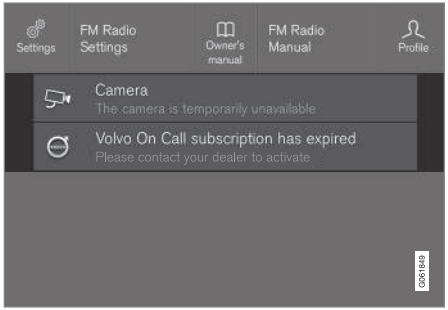
1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **System** ➔ **Factory reset** ➔ **Reset Personal Settings**.
3. Select one of the options **Reset for the active profile**, **Reset for all profiles** or **Cancel**.

Related information

- Driver profiles (p. 126)
- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 124)

Message in centre display

The centre display can show messages to inform or assist the driver in the event of different events.



Example of a message in the centre display's top view.

The centre display shows messages that are of lower priority for the driver.

Most messages are shown above the centre display's status bar. After a while, or when any required action related to the message has been taken, the message disappears from the status bar. If a message needs to be saved, it is positioned in the top view in the centre display.

Message composition may vary and they can be shown together with graphics, symbols or a button for activating/deactivating a function linked to the message.

Pop-up messages

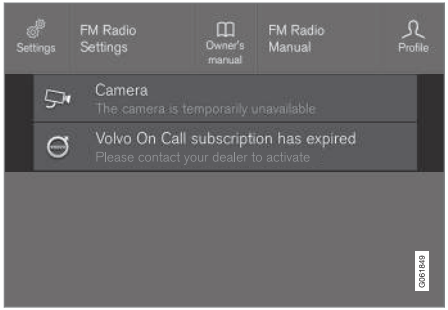
In some cases, a message is shown in the form of a pop-up window. Pop-up messages have higher priority than messages shown in the status bar and require acknowledgement/action before they disappear.

Related information

- Managing messages in the centre display (p. 131)
- Handling a message saved from the centre display (p. 131)
- Messages in the driver display (p. 96)

Managing messages in the centre display

Messages in the centre display are handled in centre display views.



Example of a message in the centre display's top view.

Some messages in the centre display have a button (or several buttons in pop-up messages) for e.g. activating/deactivating a function linked to the message.

Managing a new message

For messages with buttons:

– Press the button to perform the action or allow the message to close automatically after a while.
  > The message disappears from the status bar.

For messages without buttons:

– Close the message by tapping on it, or allow the message to close automatically after a while.
  > The message disappears from the status bar.

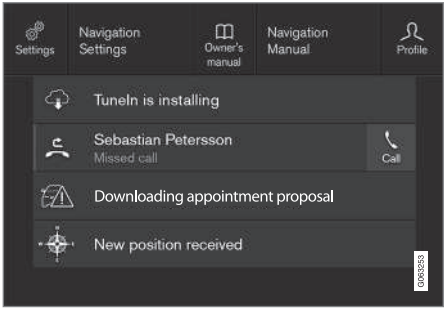
If a message needs to be saved, it is positioned in the top view in the centre display.

Related information

- Message in centre display (p. 130)
- Handling a message saved from the centre display (p. 131)
- Messages in the driver display (p. 96)

Handling a message saved from the centre display

Whether saved from the driver display or the centre display, messages are managed in the centre display.



Examples of saved messages and possible options in the top view.

Messages that are shown in the centre display that need to be saved are added in the top view of the centre display.

Reading a saved message

1. Open the top view in the centre display.
   > A list of saved messages is shown. Messages with an arrow to the right can be maximised.
2. Tap on a message to expand/minimise.
   > More information on the message is shown in the list and the image to the left in the app shows information about the message graphically.

Managing a saved message

Some messages have a button for e.g. activating/deactivating a function linked to the message.

– Press the button to perform the action.

Saved messages in the top view are deleted automatically when the car is switched off.

Related information

- Message in centre display (p. 130)
- Managing messages in the centre display (p. 131)
- Messages in the driver display (p. 96)

Voice recognition

Voice control[15] allows you to control functions in the car, e.g. climate system, radio or a Bluetooth-connected phone with spoken commands. In cars equipped with Sensus Navigation*, the navigation system can also be controlled with voice recognition.

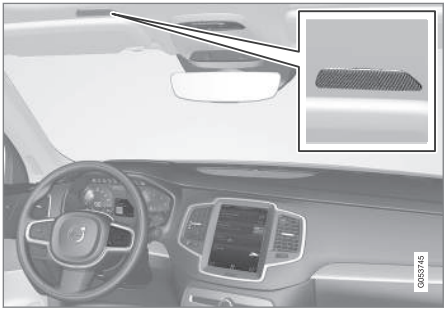
What is voice control?

Voice control is an aid that can facilitate the use of different commands in your car. In principle, it works like a normal application in which you enter information in a fixed sequence in order to perform a task, but instead of typing on a keyboard you use voice commands. It may therefore be a good idea to learn how, and in what order, a voice command should be spoken in order to achieve the desired result.

The voice control system allows you to control certain infotainment and climate functions using voice commands. The system can respond with speech and by showing information in the driver display.

⚠ WARNING

The driver always holds overall responsibility for driving the vehicle in a safe manner and complying with all applicable rules of the road.



Voice control system microphone

System updating

The voice recognition system is continuously improved. It is recommended to always have the latest version installed.

Download updates at volvocars.com/support.

15 Applies to certain markets.

* Option/accessory.

NOTE

Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

Related information

- Using voice recognition (p. 133)
- Controlling a telephone with voice recognition (p. 135)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 136)
- Controlling the climate control system using voice control (p. 188)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 136)

Using voice recognition

Start voice control[16]

To give commands via the voice control system, you have a "dialogue" with the system. Depress the steering wheel button for voice recognition to activate the system and initiate a dialogue using voice commands. After you have pressed the button, a beep tone can be heard and the voice control symbol is shown in the driver display.

This shows that the system has started to listen and you can start to say the commands. As soon as you start to talk, the system is trained to recognise and understand your voice. This takes several seconds and is done automatically, which means that you do not need to start any voice training manually.

Remember the following:

- Speak after the tone with a normal voice at a normal tempo.
- Do not speak while the system is replying (the system cannot understand commands during this time).
- Avoid background noise in the passenger compartment by having the doors, windows and panoramic roof* closed.

NOTE

Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

In general, the system works by listening for a basic command which is followed by more detailed commands that specify what you want the system to do.

To change the system audio volume, turn the rotary volume knob when the voice speaks. It is possible to use other buttons during voice control. However, other sounds will be silenced during dialogue with the system, which means that it is not possible to execute any functions linked with audio using the buttons.

16 Applies to certain markets.

Cancel voice control

Voice control can be cancelled in different ways:

- Tap briefly on and say "**Cancel**".
- Give a long press on the steering wheel button for voice control until you hear two beeps. This stops voice recognition even when the system is speaking.

Voice control is also cancelled if you do not reply during a dialogue. The system will first ask for a reply three times and if there is still no response then voice control will be cancelled automatically.

To speed up communication and skip the prompts from the system, press the steering wheel button for voice control . This cancels the system voice and you can say the next command.

Example of voice recognition control

1. Press .
2. Say "**Call [Forename] [Surname] [number category]**", e.g. "**Call Robin Smith Mobile**".
   > The system dials the selected contact from the phonebook. If the contact has several phone numbers (e.g. home, mobile, work), the right category must be referred to.

Commands/phrases

The following commands can generally be used, regardless of the situation:

- "**Repeat**" - repeats the last voice instruction in the ongoing dialogue.
- "**Cancel**" - discontinue the dialogue.[17]
- "**Help**" - starts a help dialogue. The system replies with the commands available in the current situation, a prompt or an example.

Commands for specific functions such as phone and radio are described in specific sections.

Digits

The number commands are stated differently depending on the function to be controlled:

- **Phone numbers and postcodes** must be spoken individually, number by number, e.g. "zero, three, one, two, two, four, four, three" (03122443).
- **House numbers** can be spoken individually or in groups, e.g. "two, two" or "twenty-two" (22). For English and Dutch, several groups can be said in sequence, e.g. "twenty-two, twenty-two" (22 22). For English, double or triple can be used, e.g. "double zero" (00). Numbers can be given within the range 0-2300.
- **Frequencies** can be spoken as "ninety eight point eight" (98.8), "a hundred and four point two" or "hundred four point two" (104.2).

Speed and repetition mode

It is possible to adjust the speed if the system is speaking too quickly.

Repetition mode can be enabled so that the system repeats what you have said.

To change the speed or activate/deactivate repetition mode:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **System** ➔ **Voice Control** and select settings.
   - **Repeat Voice Command**
   - **Speech Rate**

[17] Note that this only stops the dialogue when the system is not speaking. To do that, give a long press on until two beep tones are heard.

Related information

- Voice recognition (p. 132)
- Controlling a telephone with voice recognition (p. 135)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 136)
- Controlling the climate control system using voice control (p. 188)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 136)

Controlling a telephone with voice recognition[18]

Call a contact, have messages read aloud or dictate brief messages with voice control commands to a Bluetooth connected telephone.

To specify a contact in the phone book, the voice recognition command must include contact information that is entered in the phone book. If a contact, e.g. **Robyn Smith**, has several phone numbers then the number category can also be stated, e.g. **Home** or **Mobile**: "**Call Robin Smith Mobile**".

Press and say one of the following commands:

- "**Call [contact]**" - dials the selected contact from the phone book.
- "**Call [phone number]**" - dials the phone number.
- "**Recent calls**" - displays the call list.
- "**Read message**" - message is read out. If there are several messages - select which message should be read out.
- "**Message to [contact]**" – the user is requested to say a brief message. The message is then repeated aloud and the user can choose to send[19] or revise the message. For this function to work, the car must be connected to the Internet.

NOTE

Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

Related information

- Voice recognition (p. 132)
- Using voice recognition (p. 133)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 136)
- Controlling the climate control system using voice control (p. 188)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 136)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)

18 Applies to certain markets.
19 Only certain phones can send messages via the car. For information on which phones are compatible, see volvocars.com/support.

Voice control of radio and media[20]

Commands for radio and media player device control are shown below.

Tap on and say one of the following commands:

- "**Media**" - starts a dialogue for media and radio and shows examples of commands.
- "**Play [artist]**" - plays back music by the selected artist.
- "**Play [song title]**" - plays back the selected song.
- "**Play [song title] from [album]**" - plays back the selected song from the selected album.
- "**Play [radio station]**" - starts playing back the selected radio channel.
- "**Tune to [frequency]**" - starts the selected radio frequency in the current frequency band. If no radio source is active, the FM band is started by default.
- "**Tune to [frequency] [wavelength]**" - starts the selected radio frequency in the selected frequency band.
- "**Radio**" - starts FM radio.
- "**Radio FM**" - starts FM radio.
- "**DAB** " - starts DAB radio*.
- "**USB**" - starts playback from USB.
- "**iPod**" - starts playback from iPod.
- "**Bluetooth**" - starts playback from a Bluetooth-connected media source.
- "**Similar music**" — plays back music similar to the music currently playing back from USB devices.

NOTE

Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

Related information

- Voice recognition (p. 132)
- Using voice recognition (p. 133)
- Controlling a telephone with voice recognition (p. 135)
- Controlling the climate control system using voice control (p. 188)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 136)

Settings for voice recognition[21]

Settings for the voice control system are selected here.

Settings ➔ System ➔ Voice Control

Settings can be made within the following areas:

- **Repeat Voice Command**
- **Gender**
- **Speech Rate**

Audio settings

Select audio settings under:

Settings ➔ Sound ➔ System Volumes ➔ Voice Control

Language settings

Voice recognition is not possible for all languages. Languages available for voice recognition are marked with an icon in the language list - .

Changing the language also affects menu, message and help texts.

Settings ➔ System ➔ System Languages and Units ➔ System Language

20 Applies to certain markets.

* Option/accessory.

Related information

- Voice recognition (p. 132)
- Using voice recognition (p. 133)
- Controlling a telephone with voice recognition (p. 135)
- Controlling the climate control system using voice control (p. 188)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 136)
- Audio settings (p. 488)
- Changing system language (p. 122)

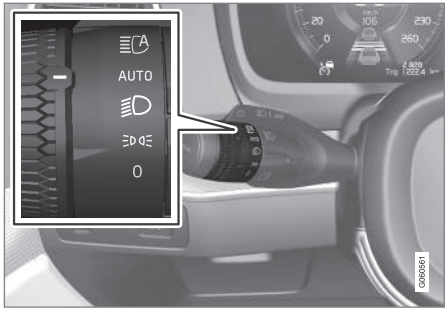
21 Applies to certain markets.

LIGHTING

Lighting control

The different lighting controls are used to control both exterior and interior lighting. The left-hand stalk switch activates and adjusts the exterior lighting. The interior brightness is adjusted using a thumbwheel on the instrument panel.

Exterior lighting



Rotating ring in the left-hand stalk switch.

When the car's electrical system is in ignition position **II**, the following functions are available for the rotating ring's different positions:

Position	Specification
0	Daytime running lights. Main beam flash can be used.
≡D⊂≡	Daytime running lights and position lamps. Position lamps when the car is parked.[A] Main beam flash can be used.
≡D	Dipped beam and position lamps. Main beam can be activated. Main beam flash can be used.
AUTO	Daytime running lights and position lamps in daylight. Dipped beam and position lamps in weak daylight or darkness, or when the front fog lamp* and/or rear fog lamp are activated. The Active main beam function can be activated. Main beam can be activated when dipped beam is switched on. Main beam flash can be used.
≡A	Active main beam on/off.

[A] If the car is stationary but running, the rotating ring can be moved to ≡D⊂≡ position from another position to switch on only the position lamps instead of other lighting.

Volvo recommends that AUTO mode is used when the vehicle is driven.

* Option/accessory.

⚠ WARNING

The car's lighting system is not able to determine when daylight is too weak or sufficiently strong, e.g. in fog and rain, in all situations.

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the car is driven with a beam pattern suitable for the traffic situation and in accordance with applicable traffic regulations.

Thumbwheel in instrument panel

Thumbwheel (to left) for adjusting interior brightness.

Related information

- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 141)
- Interior lighting (p. 151)
- Position lamps (p. 142)
- Using direction indicators (p. 146)
- Using main beam (p. 144)
- Dipped beam (p. 143)
- Front fog lamps/cornering lights* (p. 147)
- Rear fog lamp (p. 148)
- Active bending lights* (p. 146)
- Brake lights (p. 149)
- Emergency brake lights (p. 149)
- Hazard warning flashers (p. 149)

Adjusting light functions via the centre display

Several light functions can be adjusted and activated via the centre display. This applies to active main beam, home safe lighting and approach light, for example.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Lights and Lighting**.
3. Select **Exterior Lights** or **Interior Lighting** and then select the function that needs to be adjusted.

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 140)
- Active main beam (p. 145)
- Using home safe lighting (p. 150)
- Approach light duration (p. 150)
- Using direction indicators (p. 146)
- Other settings in the centre display's top view (p. 122)
- Function view in centre display (p. 112)

Adapting the headlamp pattern from the headlamps

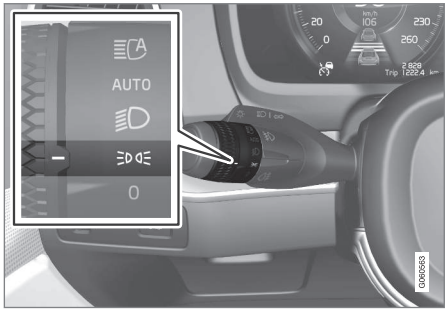
This car does not need to reset the headlamp pattern when changing from right to left-hand traffic, and vice versa.

Related information

- Other settings in the centre display's top view (p. 122)
- Function view in centre display (p. 112)
- Active bending lights* (p. 146)

Position lamps

Position lamps can be used so that other road users can see the car if it stops or is parked. The position lamp is switched on with the rotating ring on the stalk switch.



Stalk switch rotating ring in position lamps position.

Turn the rotating ring to the position - the position lamps are switched on (number plate lighting is switched on at the same time).

If the car's electrical system is in ignition position **II** then the daytime running lights are switched on instead of the front position lamps. When the rotating ring is in this position, the position lamps are switched on regardless of the ignition position of the car's electrical system.

If the car is stationary but running, the rotating ring can be moved to the position lamp position from another position to switch on only the position lamps instead of other lighting.

When driving for more than 30 seconds at max. 10 km/h (approx. 6 mph), or if the speed exceeds 10 km/h (approx. 6 mph), the daytime running lights are switched on. The driver should turn to a position other than .

If the tailgate is opened when it is dark outside, the rear position lamps come on (if not already switched on) to warn road users approaching from behind. This takes place irrespective of the position of the rotating ring or the ignition position of the car's electrical system.

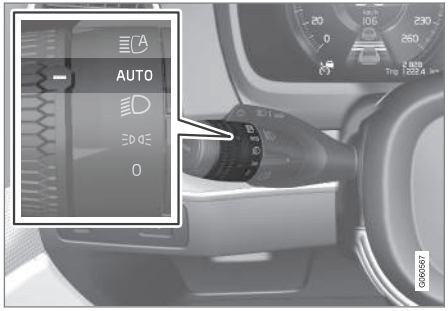
Related information

- Lighting control (p. 140)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)

* Option/accessory.

Daytime running lights

The car has sensors that detect the light conditions in the surroundings. The daytime running lights are switched on when the rotating ring on the stalk switch is in position 0 , ≡D◇≡ or AUTO as well as when the car's electrical system is in ignition position **II**. In position AUTO , the headlamps change automatically to dipped beam in weak daylight or darkness.



Stalk switch rotating ring in **AUTO** position.

If the stalk switch rotating ring is in the AUTO position, the daytime running lights (DRL[1]) are switched on when the car is driven in daylight. The car automatically changes lighting from daytime running light to dipped beam in weak daylight or darkness. Changing to dipped beam also takes place if the front fog lamp* and/or rear fog lamp are activated.

WARNING

This system help to save energy - it cannot determine in all situations when daylight is too weak or sufficiently strong, e.g. in mist and rain.

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the car is driven with the correct beam pattern for the traffic situation and in accordance with applicable traffic regulations.

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 140)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)
- Dipped beam (p. 143)

Dipped beam

When driving with the stalk switch's rotating ring in the AUTO position, dipped beam is activated automatically in weak daylight or darkness or when the car's electrical system is in ignition position **II**.

Stalk switch rotating ring in **AUTO** position.

With the stalk switch's rotating ring in AUTO position, dipped beam is also activated automatically if the rear fog lamp is activated.

With the stalk switch's rotating ring in the ≡D position, dipped beam is always activated when the car's electrical system is in ignition position **II**.

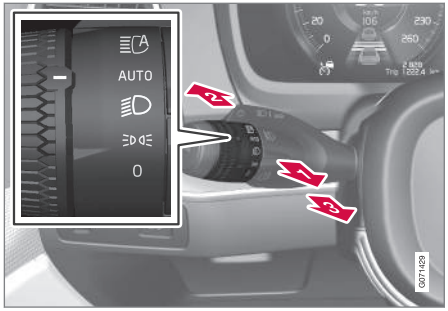
1 Daytime Running Lights

Tunnel detection
The car detects when it is driven into a tunnel and switches from daytime running lights to dipped beam.

Note that the rotating ring in the left-hand stalk switch must be in AUTO mode for tunnel detection to work.

Related information
- Lighting control (p. 140)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)
- Daytime running lights (p. 143)

Using main beam
Main beam is operated with the left-hand stalk switch. Main beam is the car's strongest lighting and should be used when driving in the dark for better visibility, as long as it does not dazzle other road users.



Steering wheel stalk switch with rotating ring.

Main beam flash
1. Move the stalk switch backwards slightly to main beam flash position. Main beam comes on until the stalk switch is released.

Main beam
2. Main beam can be activated when the steering wheel stalk switch's rotating ring is in position AUTO [2] or . Activate main beam by moving the stalk switch forwards.
3. Deactivate by moving the stalk switch backwards.

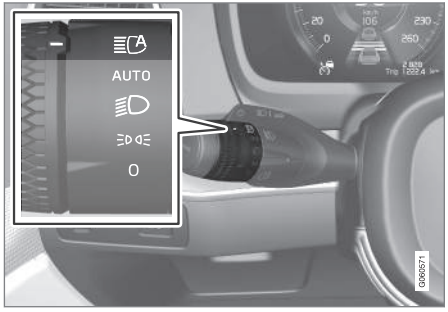
When main beam has been activated the symbol illuminates in the driver display.

Related information
- Lighting control (p. 140)
- Active main beam (p. 145)

[2] When dipped beam is activated.

Active main beam

Active main beam is a function which uses a camera sensor at the top edge of the windscreen to detect the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights of vehicles in front, and then switches from main beam to dipped beam.



The symbol represents active main beam.

The function can start while driving in the dark when the car's speed is approx. 20 km/h (approx. 12 mph) or higher. The function can also take streetlights into account. When the camera sensor no longer detects any oncoming car or car in front, main beam is switched on again after about a second.

Activate active main beam

Active main beam is activated and deactivated by turning the left-hand stalk switch to position . The rotating ring then returns to position AUTO. When active main beam is activated, the symbol illuminates with a white glow in the driver display. When main beam is activated, the symbol shines blue.

If active main beam is deactivated while main beam is on, the lighting is immediately reset to dipped beam.

Active main beam does not need to be reactivated every time the car is started.

Limitations for active main beam

The camera sensor on which the function is based has limitations.

If this symbol is shown in the driver display, together with the message **Active High Beam Temporarily unavailable**, then switching between main and dipped beam must be performed manually. The symbol extinguishes when these message are shown.

The same applies if this symbol is shown together with the message **Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual**.

Active main beam may be temporarily unavailable e.g. in situations with dense fog or heavy rain. When active main beam becomes available again, or the windscreen sensors are no longer blocked, the message goes out and the symbol illuminates.

WARNING

Active main beam is an aid for using the optimum beam pattern when conditions are favourable.

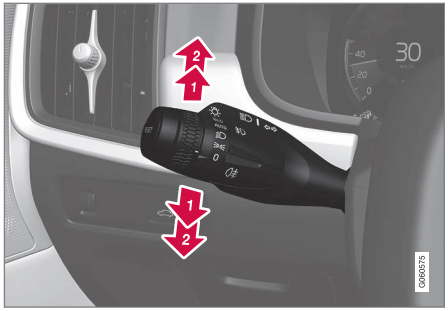
The driver always bears responsibility for manually switching between main and dipped beam when traffic situations or weather conditions so require.

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 140)
- Using main beam (p. 144)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)

Using direction indicators

The car's direction indicators are operated with the left-hand stalk switch. The direction indicator lamps flash three times or continuously, depending on how far up or down the stalk switch is moved.



Direction indicators.

Short flash sequence

1. Move the stalk switch up or down to the first position and release. The direction indicator lamps flash three times. If the function is deactivated via the centre display, the lamps will flash once.

NOTE

- This automatic flashing sequence can be stopped by moving the stalk switch immediately in the opposite direction.
- If the symbol for direction indicators in the driver display flashes more quickly than normal - see the message in the driver display.

Continuous flash sequence

2. Move the stalk switch up or down to its end position.

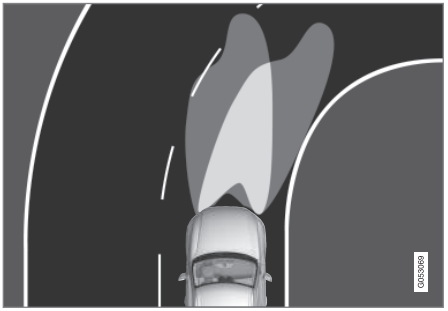
The stalk switch remains in its position and is moved back manually, or automatically by the steering wheel movement.

Related information

- Hazard warning flashers (p. 149)
- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 141)
- Replacing the rear direction indicator bulb (p. 625)

Active bending lights*

Active bending lights are designed to provide additional illumination in bends and junctions. Cars with LED[3] headlamps* can have active bending lights, depending on the car's equipment level.



Headlamp pattern with function deactivated (left) and activated (right) respectively.

Active bending lights follow steering wheel movements to provide additional illumination in bends and junctions and can thereby provide the driver with improved visibility.

The function is activated automatically when the car is started. In the event of a fault in the function, the symbol illuminates in the driver display at the same time as the driver display shows an explanatory text.

3 LED (Light Emitting Diode)

* Option/accessory.

The function is only active in weak daylight or darkness and only when the car is moving and dipped beam is switched on.

Deactivating/activating the function

The function is activated when the car is supplied from the factory and can be deactivated/activated via the centre display's function view.

Press the **Active Bending Lights** button.

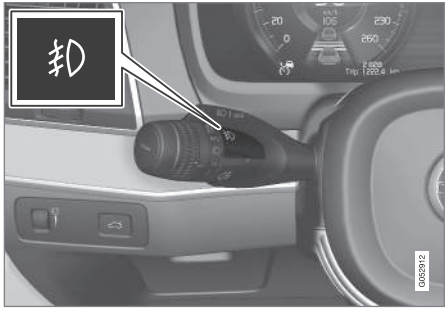
Related information

- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 141)
- Front fog lamps/cornering lights* (p. 147)

Front fog lamps/cornering lights*

The fog lights are activated manually when driving in fog and automatically when reversing in order to complement the reversing light.

If the car is fitted with cornering lights*, the fog lights come on automatically in dull daylight or darkness in order to light up the area diagonally in front of the car.



Button for front fog lamps.

The rear fog lamps can only be switched on when the car's electrical system is in ignition position **II** and the rotating ring on the stalk switch is in position AUTO, or .

Press the button to activate and deactivate. The symbol illuminates in the driver display when the front fog lamps are switched on.

The front fog lamps switch off automatically when the car is switched off or when the rotating ring on the stalk switch is set to the 0 position.

> **NOTE**
>
> Regulations on the use of fog lamps vary from country to country.

Cornering lights*

The front fog lamps can include the cornering lights function, which temporarily illuminates the area diagonally in front of the car in the direction the steering wheel is turned on a sharp bend, or in the direction shown by the direction indicators.

The function is activated in weak daylight or darkness when the stalk switch's rotating ring is in the AUTO or position and the speed of the car is lower than approx. 30 km/h (approx. 20 mph).

In addition, both cornering lights are switched on as a supplement to the reversing lamp during reversing.

The function is activated when the car is supplied from the factory and can be activated and deactivated via the centre display.

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 140)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)
- Rear fog lamp (p. 148)
- Active bending lights* (p. 146)
- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 141)

Rear fog lamp

The rear fog lamp is considerably stronger than the normal rear lights and should only be used in reduced visibility due to fog, snow, smoke or dust so that other road users have an early warning of a vehicle ahead.

Button for rear fog lamp.

The rear fog lamp is a lamp at the rear of the car, on the driver's side.

The rear fog lamp can only be switched on when ignition position **II** is active and the rotating ring on the stalk switch is in position AUTO or .

Press the button to switch the lights on/off. The symbol in the driver display illuminates when the rear fog lamp is switched on.

The rear fog lamp switches off automatically when the car is switched off or when the rotating ring on the stalk switch is set to the 0 or position.

NOTE

Regulations on the use of rear fog lamps vary from country to country.

Related information

- Lighting control (p. 140)
- Front fog lamps/cornering lights* (p. 147)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)
- Replacing the rear fog lamp bulb (p. 627)

* Option/accessory.

Brake lights

The brake light automatically comes on during braking.

The brake light is illuminated when the brake pedal is depressed and when the car is braked automatically by one of the driver support systems.

Related information

- Emergency brake lights (p. 149)
- Brake functions (p. 435)
- Changing brake light bulb (p. 626)
- Driving support systems (p. 274)

Emergency brake lights

Emergency brake lights are activated to alert vehicles behind about heavy braking.

The function means that the brake light flashes instead of - as in normal braking - shining with a constant glow.

The emergency brake lights are activated during heavy braking or if the ABS system is activated at high speeds.

After the driver brakes to a low speed and then releases the brake, the brake light returns to normal glow.

The car's hazard warning flashers are activated at the same time. These flash until the driver accelerates the car to a higher speed again or switches off the car's hazard warning flashers.

Related information

- Brake lights (p. 149)
- Foot brake (p. 435)
- Hazard warning flashers (p. 149)

Hazard warning flashers

Hazard warning flashers warn other road users by means of all of the car's direction indicators being activated simultaneously. The function can be used to give a warning in the event of traffic hazards.

Button for hazard warning flashers.

Press the button to activate the hazard warning flashers.

The hazard warning flashers are automatically activated when the car brakes so powerfully that the emergency brake lights are activated and the speed is low. The hazard warning flashers start to flash after the emergency brake lights have stopped flashing and are then deactivated automatically when the car drives away again or are deactivated if the button is depressed.

NOTE

Regulations for the use of hazard warning flashers may vary between countries.

Related information

- Emergency brake lights (p. 149)
- Using direction indicators (p. 146)

Using home safe lighting

Some of the exterior lighting can be kept switched on to work as home safe lighting after the car has been locked.

To activate the function:

1. Switch off the car.
2. Move the left-hand stalk switch forward toward the instrument panel and release.
3. Get out of the car and lock the door.
   > A symbol in the driver display is illuminated to indicate that the function is activated and outer lighting is switched on: Position lamps, headlamp beams, number plate lighting and lighting in outer handles*.

The length of time that home safe lighting remains on can be set via the centre display.

Related information

- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 141)
- Approach light duration (p. 150)

Approach light duration

Approach lighting is switched on when the car is unlocked and is used to switch on the car's lighting at a distance.

The function is activated when the remote control key is used for unlocking. In daylight, position lamps, interior roof lamps, floor lights and cargo area lighting are activated. In weak daylight or darkness, number plate lighting and lighting in the outer handles are also activated* with their light source aimed towards the ground.

The lighting stays on for approx. 2 minutes if no doors are opened. If a door is opened within the activation time, the time for the interior lighting and lighting in the outer handles* will be extended.

The function can be activated and deactivated via the centre display.

Related information

- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 141)
- Using home safe lighting (p. 150)
- Remote control key (p. 226)

* Option/accessory.

Interior lighting

The passenger compartment is equipped with several types of lighting, e.g. general interior lighting, adjustable decor illumination and reading lighting.

All lighting in the passenger compartment can be switched on and off manually at least 5 minutes from when:

- the car has been switched off and its electrical system is in ignition position **0**
- the car has been unlocked but it has not yet been started.

Front roof lighting

Controls in roof console for the front reading lamps and passenger compartment lighting.

1. Reading lamp, left-hand side
2. Passenger compartment lighting
3. Auto function for passenger compartment lighting
4. Reading lamp, right-hand side

Reading lighting

The reading lamps on the right and left-hand sides can be turned on and off by briefly pressing the buttons in the roof console. Brightness is adjusted by holding the button pressed in.

Passenger compartment lighting

The floor lighting and interior roof lighting are switched on or off with a short press on the button in the roof console.

Auto function for passenger compartment lighting

The automatic function is activated by a short press on the **AUTO** button in the roof console. With the automatic system activated, the light indicator in the button illuminates and the passenger compartment lighting is switched on and off according to the following.

The passenger compartment lighting comes on when:

- The car is unlocked
- The car is switched off
- A side door is opened.

The passenger compartment lighting goes off when:

- The car is locked
- The car is started
- A side door is closed
- A side door has remained open for approx. 2 minutes.

Rear roof lighting*

The rear area of the car has reading lighting, which is also used as passenger compartment lighting.

Reading lamps above the rear seat.

In cars with panoramic roof* there are two lamp units, one on each side of the roof.

The reading lamps are switched on or off by briefly pressing the button on the lamp. Brightness is adjusted by holding the button pressed in.

Glovebox lighting

Glovebox lighting is switched on and off respectively when the lid is opened or closed.

Sun visor mirror lighting*

The lighting for the mirror in the sun visor is switched on and off respectively when the cover is opened or closed.

Ground lighting*

The ground lighting is switched on or off when the corresponding door is opened or closed.

Lighting in the cargo area

The lighting in the cargo area is switched on or off when the tailgate is opened or closed.

Decor lighting

The ambient light is switched on when you open the doors and is switched off when the car is locked. The intensity of the decor lighting can be adapted in the centre display and also precisely adjusted using the thumbwheel in the instrument panel.

Ambience lights*

The car is equipped with LEDs that make it possible to change the colour of the light. These lights are switched on when the car is running. The ambience light can be adapted in the centre display and also precisely adjusted using the thumbwheel in the instrument panel.

Lighting in storage compartments in doors

The lighting in the storage compartments in the doors is switched on when you open the doors and is switched off when the car is locked. The brightness can be precisely adjusted using the thumbwheel in the instrument panel.

Lighting in the tunnel console's front cup holder

The lighting in the front cup holders is switched on when the car is unlocked and is switched off when the car is locked. The brightness can be precisely adjusted using the thumbwheel in the instrument panel.

Related information

- Adjusting interior lighting (p. 153)
- Lighting control (p. 140)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)
- Passenger compartment interior (p. 576)

* Option/accessory.

Adjusting interior lighting

The lamps inside the car come on differently depending on the ignition position used. The interior lighting can be adjusted with a thumbwheel in the instrument panel, and certain light functions can also be adjusted via the centre display.

The thumbwheel on the instrument panel, to the left of the steering wheel, is used to adjust the brightness of the display lighting, controls lighting, ambient decor illumination and ambience light*.

Adjusting ambient decor illumination

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Lights and Lighting** ➔ **Interior Lighting**.
3. Choose between the following settings:
   - Under **Ambient Light Intensity**, select from **Off**, **Low** and **High**.
   - Under **Ambient Light Level**, select from **Reduced** and **Full**.

Adjusting ambience light*

The car is equipped with a number of LEDs that make it possible to change the colour of the light. These lights are switched on when the car is running.

Changing the brightness of the lights

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Lights and Lighting** ➔ **Interior Lighting** ➔ **Interior Mood Lighting**.
3. Under **Interior Mood Light Intensity**, select from **Off**, **Low** and **High**.

Changing the colour of the light

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Lights and Lighting** ➔ **Interior Lighting** ➔ **Interior Mood Lighting**.
3. Choose between **By Temperature** and **By Colour** in order to change the colour of the light.

   With the **By Temperature** option, the light changes according to the set passenger compartment temperature.

   With the **By Colour** option, the **Theme Colours** subcategory can be used to adjust further.

Related information

- Interior lighting (p. 151)
- Adjusting light functions via the centre display (p. 141)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)

WINDOWS, GLASS AND MIRRORS

Windows, glass and mirrors

The car contains several different windows, glass panes and mirrors. Some of the windows in the car are laminated.

The windscreen has laminated glass, and laminated glass is available as an option for certain other glass areas. Laminated glass is reinforced, which provides better protection against break-ins and improved sound insulation in the passenger compartment.

The panoramic roof* also has laminated glass.

The symbol is shown on the windows where the glass is laminated.[1]

Related information

- Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds (p. 156)
- Panoramic roof* (p. 162)
- Power windows (p. 157)
- Rearview and door mirrors (p. 159)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 167)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 170)
- Activating and deactivating the heated windscreen* (p. 203)
- Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors (p. 205)

Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds

All power windows and sun blinds* have pinch protection which is deployed if they are blocked by any object while opening or closing.

In the event of blocking, the movement stops and then reverses automatically to approx. 50 mm (approx. 2 inches) from the blocked position (or to full ventilation position).

It is possible to force pinch protection when closing has been cancelled, e.g. when ice is formed, by continuing to press the control in one and the same direction.

If any fault arises with the pinch protection, a reset sequence can be tested.

⚠ WARNING

If the starter battery is disconnected, the automatic opening and closing function must be reset to work properly. A reset must take place for pinch protection to work.

Related information

- Reset sequence for pinch protection (p. 157)
- Operating power windows (p. 158)
- Operating the panoramic roof* (p. 164)

[1] Does not apply to the windscreen or panoramic roof* which are always laminated and thus do not have this symbol.

* Option/accessory.

Reset sequence for pinch protection

If a problem occurs with the electrical functions for the electric windows, a reset sequence can be tested.

WARNING

If the starter battery is disconnected, the automatic opening and closing function must be reset to work properly. A reset must take place for pinch protection to work.

In the event of problems with the panoramic roof, contact a workshop.[2]

Reset the power window

1. Start with the window in closed position.
2. Then operate the controls in the manual position 3 times upwards to closed position.
   > The system is initialised automatically.

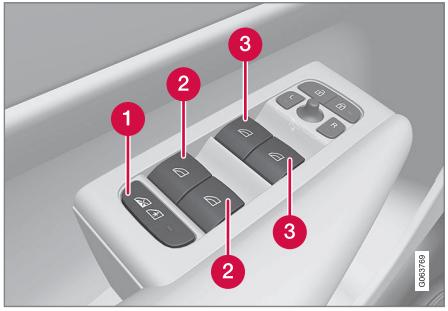
If problems persist, contact a workshop.

Related information

- Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds (p. 156)
- Operating power windows (p. 158)

Power windows

Each door has a control panel for the electrically-driven power windows. The driver's door has controls for operating all windows and also to activate the child safety locks.



Driver's door control panel.

1. Electric child safety locks* that deactivate the controls in the rear doors to prevent doors or windows from being opened from the inside.
2. Controls for rear windows.
3. Controls for front windows.

WARNING

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember to always switch off the power supply to the power windows by setting the car's electrical system in ignition position **0**, and then take the key with you when leaving the car.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.

Related information

- Operating power windows (p. 158)
- Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds (p. 156)
- Reset sequence for pinch protection (p. 157)

[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Operating power windows

Using the driver's door control panel, all power windows can be operated - using the control panels in the other doors operates the power window in the individual door.

The power windows are equipped with pinch protection. If any fault arises with the pinch protection, a reset sequence can be tested.

WARNING

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember to always switch off the power supply to the power windows by setting the car's electrical system in ignition position **0**, and then take the key with you when leaving the car.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.

Operating the power windows.

1. Operating without auto. Move one of the controls gently up or down. The power windows move up or down as long as the control is held in position.
2. Operating with auto. Move one of the controls up or down to the end position and release it. The window runs automatically to its end position.

In order for the power windows to be used, the ignition position must be **I** or **II**. The power windows can be operated for a few minutes after the car has been switched off and after the ignition has been switched off - although not after a door has been opened. It is only possible to operate one control at a time.

It can also be operated using a remote control key or keyless opening* with the door handle.

WARNING

Check that children or other passengers are not at risk of crushing when all the windows are closed with a remote control key or keyless opening* with a door handle.

NOTE

One way to reduce the pulsating wind noise when the rear windows are open is to also open the front windows slightly.

NOTE

The windows cannot be opened at speeds above approx. 180 km/h (approx. 112 mph), but they can be closed.

The driver always bears responsibility for following traffic regulations in force.

NOTE

It may not be possible to operate windows at low temperatures.

Related information

- Power windows (p. 157)
- Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds (p. 156)
- Reset sequence for pinch protection (p. 157)

* Option/accessory.

- Keyless locking and unlocking* (p. 257)
- Locking and unlocking with the remote control key (p. 228)

Rearview and door mirrors

The rearview mirrors and door mirrors can be used to give the driver better visibility to the rear.

Interior rearview mirror

The interior rearview mirror is equipped with HomeLink*, automatic dimming* and compass*.

The interior rearview mirror is adjusted by angling it manually.

Door mirrors

WARNING

Both mirrors are bent to provide optimal vision. Objects may appear to be further away than they actually are.

The door mirror positions are adjusted with the joystick in the driver's door control panel.

There are also a number of automatic settings that can be linked to the memory function buttons for the power seat*.

Related information

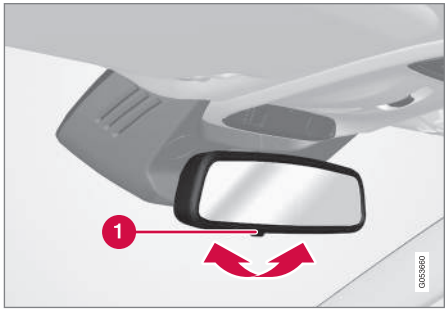
- HomeLink®* (p. 480)
- Compass* (p. 484)
- Adjusting rearview mirror dimming (p. 160)
- Angling adjustment of the door mirrors (p. 161)
- Storing a position for seat and door mirrors (p. 176)
- Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors (p. 205)

Adjusting rearview mirror dimming

Bright light from behind could be reflected in the rearview mirrors and dazzle the driver. Use dimming when disturbed by light from behind.

Manual dimming

The interior rearview mirror can be dimmed with a control in the mirror's lower edge.



1 Control for manual dimming.

1. Use dimming by moving the control in towards the passenger compartment.
2. Return to normal mode by moving the control towards the windscreen.

The control for manual dimming is not available on mirrors with automatic dimming.

Automatic dimming*

If bright light comes from behind, the rearview mirrors automatically dim when it is dark outside or when the light is limited, for example when driving in tunnels. Automatic dimming is always active while driving, apart from when gearbox reverse position is selected.

NOTE

When sensitivity is changed there is no immediately noticeable change in dimming, but the change takes place gradually.

Dimming sensitivity will affect both the interior rearview mirror and the door mirrors.

To change dimming sensitivity:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Mirrors and Convenience**.
3. Under **Rearview Mirror Auto Dimming**, select **Normal**, **Dark** or **Light**.

The interior rearview mirror contains two sensors - one forward facing and one rearward facing - that work together to identify and eliminate dazzling light. The forward facing sensor detects ambient light, while the rearward facing sensor detects the light from vehicle headlights behind.

For the door mirrors to be equipped with automatic dimming, the interior rearview mirror must also be equipped with automatic dimming.

NOTE

If the sensors are obscured by e.g. parking permits, transponders, sun visors or objects in the seats or in the cargo area in such a way that light is prevented from reaching the sensors, then the dimming function of the interior rearview and door mirrors is reduced.

Related information

- Rearview and door mirrors (p. 159)
- Angling adjustment of the door mirrors (p. 161)

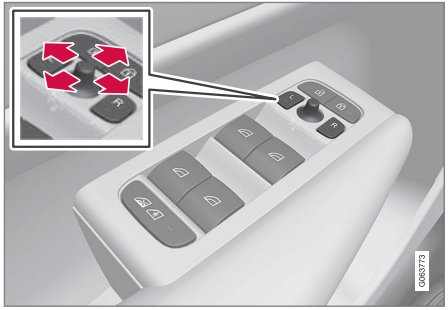
* Option/accessory.

Angling adjustment of the door mirrors

To ensure better visibility to the rear, the door mirrors need to be set to the preferences of the driver.

There are a number of automatic settings that can also be linked to the memory function buttons for the power seat*.

Using controls for door mirrors



Controls for door mirrors.

The door mirror positions are adjusted with the joystick in the driver's door control panel. Ignition position must be at least **I**.

1. Press the **L** button for the left-hand door mirror or the **R** button for the right-hand door mirror. The light in the button illuminates.
2. Adjust the position with the joystick in the centre.
3. Press the **L** or **R** button again. The light should no longer be illuminated.

Folding in rearview mirrors electrically*

The mirrors can be retracted for parking/driving in narrow spaces.

1. Depress the **L** and **R** buttons simultaneously.
2. Release them after approximately 1 second. The mirrors automatically stop in the fully retracted position.

Fold out the mirrors by pressing down the **L** and **R** buttons simultaneously. The mirrors automatically stop in the extended position with the previous setting.

Resetting to neutral

Mirrors that have been moved out of position by an external force must be reset electrically to their original position for electric retracting/extending* to work correctly.

1. Fold in the door mirrors by pressing down the **L** and **R** buttons simultaneously.
2. Fold them out again by pressing the **L** and **R** buttons simultaneously.
3. Repeat the above procedure as necessary.

The mirrors are returned to the original position.

Angling during parking[3]

A door mirror can be angled down for the driver to view the side of the road when parking, for example.

– Engage reverse gear and press the **L** or **R** button.

Note that the button may need to be pressed twice, depending on whether it was already preselected. The button flashes when the door mirror is angled down. When reverse gear is disengaged, the door mirror automatically starts to return after approx. 3 seconds and then reaches its original position after approx. 8 seconds.

Automatic angling during parking[3]

With this setting, the door mirror is automatically angled down when reverse gear is selected. The folded position is preset and cannot be adjusted.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Mirrors and Convenience**.

[3] Only in combination with power seat with memory buttons*.

3. Under **Exterior Mirror Tilt at Reverse**, select **Off**, **Driver**, **Passenger** or **Both** to activate/deactivate and to select which review mirror should be angled.

You can make the door mirror return to its original position by pressing the **L** or **R** button twice.

Automatic retraction when locking*

In the centre display, you can set all the rear-view and door mirrors to retract/extend automatically when the car is locked/unlocked using the key.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Mirrors and Convenience**.
3. Select **Fold Mirror When Locked** to activate/deactivate.

NOTE

If you manually fold the mirrors with the **L** and **R** buttons and then lock the car, they will not fold out automatically when you unlock the car, even if this setting has been made. They must be manually folded out.

Related information

- Rearview and door mirrors (p. 159)
- Adjusting rearview mirror dimming (p. 160)
- Storing a position for seat and door mirrors (p. 176)
- Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors (p. 205)

Panoramic roof*

The panoramic roof is divided into two glass sections. The front section can be opened vertically at the rear edge (ventilation position) or horizontally (open position). The rear section is fixed roof glass.

The panoramic roof has a wind deflector and a sun blind made of perforated fabric and located under the glass roof to provide extra protection from factors such as strong sunlight.

The panoramic roof and sun blind are operated with a control located in the roof.

In order that the panoramic roof and the sun blind can be operated, the car's electrical system must be in ignition position **I** or **II**.

* Option/accessory.

WARNING

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember to always switch off the power supply to the power windows by setting the car's electrical system in ignition position **0**, and then take the key with you when leaving the car.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.

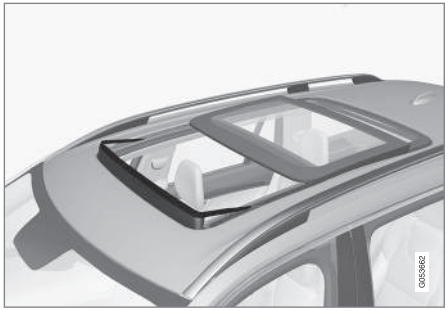
IMPORTANT

- Do not open the panoramic roof when load carriers are fitted.
- Do not place any heavy objects on the panoramic roof.

IMPORTANT

- Remove ice and snow before opening the panoramic roof. Take care not to scratch surfaces or damage strips.
- Do not operate the panoramic roof if it has frozen closed.

Wind deflector



The panoramic roof has a wind deflector that is raised when the panoramic roof is in the open position.

Related information

- Operating the panoramic roof* (p. 164)
- Automatic closing of the panoramic roof's* sun blind (p. 166)
- Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds (p. 156)
- Keyless locking and unlocking* (p. 257)
- Locking and unlocking with the remote control key (p. 228)

Operating the panoramic roof*

The panoramic roof and sun blind are operated with a control in the roof panel and both are equipped with pinch protection.

WARNING

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember to always switch off the power supply to the power windows by setting the car's electrical system in ignition position **0**, and then take the key with you when leaving the car.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.

IMPORTANT

- Do not open the panoramic roof when load carriers are fitted.
- Do not place any heavy objects on the panoramic roof.

IMPORTANT

- Remove ice and snow before opening the panoramic roof. Take care not to scratch surfaces or damage strips.
- Do not operate the panoramic roof if it has frozen closed.

In order that the panoramic roof and the sun blind can be operated, the car's electrical system must be in ignition position **I** or **II**.

It can also be operated using a remote control key or keyless opening* with the door handle.

WARNING

Check that children or other passengers are not at risk of crushing when all the windows are closed with a remote control key or keyless opening* with a door handle.

IMPORTANT

Check that the panoramic roof is properly closed when closing.

The movement of the roof is stopped if the control is released during manual operation, or when the glass reaches the comfort position[4] or the maximum opening or closing position.

The movement of both panoramic roof and sun blind are also stopped if the roof control is operated again in the opposite direction to the current direction of movement.

The panoramic roof and the sun blind are also equipped with pinch protection. If any fault arises with the pinch protection, a reset sequence can be tested.

NOTE

For manual opening, the sun blind must be fully open before the panoramic roof can be opened. When the procedure is reversed, the panoramic roof must be fully closed before the sun blind can be fully closed.

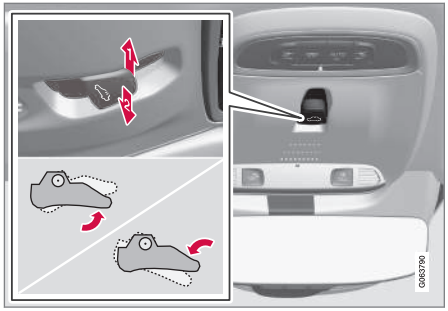
NOTE

It may not be possible to operate windows at low temperatures.

4 Comfort position is a position where wind noise and resonance noise are at a comfortably low level while driving.

* Option/accessory.

Open and close ventilation position



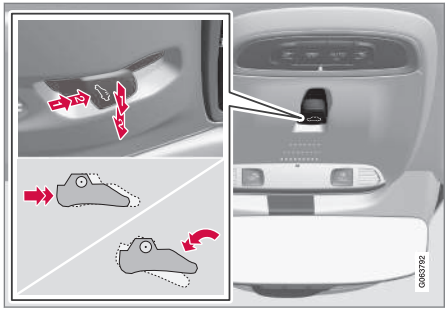
Ventilation position, vertically at the rear edge.

1. Open by pressing the control upward once.
2. Close by pressing the control downward once.

When the ventilation position is selected the front glass cover is raised at its rear edge. If the sun blind is fully closed when ventilation position is selected, then it opens automatically approx. 50 mm (approx. 2 inches).

The sun blind follows automatically if the panoramic roof is closed from ventilation position.

Fully open and close the panoramic roof using the roof control



1. Operation, manual mode
2. Operation, automatic mode

Manual operation

1. To open the sun blind - press the control backwards to the position for manual opening.
2. Open the panoramic roof to comfort position - press the control backwards a second time to the position for manual opening.
3. Open the panoramic roof to maximum position - press the control backwards a third time to the position for manual opening.

Close by repeating the preceding procedure in reverse order - press the control forward/downward to the manual closing position instead.

Automatic operation

1. Open the sun blind to maximum position - press the control backward to the position for automatic opening and release.
2. Open the panoramic roof to comfort position - press the control backwards a second time to the position for automatic opening and release.
3. Open the panoramic roof to maximum position - press the control backwards a third time to the position for automatic opening and release.

Close by repeating the preceding procedure in reverse order - press the control forward/downward to the automatic closing position instead.

Automatic operation - rapid opening or closing

The panoramic roof and sun blind can be opened or closed simultaneously:

- To open - press the control rearward to the automatic operation position twice and release.
- To close - press the control forward/downward to the automatic operation position twice and release.

Related information

- Panoramic roof* (p. 162)
- Automatic closing of the panoramic roof's* sun blind (p. 166)
- Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds (p. 156)
- Keyless locking and unlocking* (p. 257)
- Locking and unlocking with the remote control key (p. 228)

Automatic closing of the panoramic roof's* sun blind

With this function, the sun blind is closed automatically 15 minutes after the car has been locked if it is parked in hot weather. This is in order to lower the passenger compartment temperature and protect the car's upholstery from sun-fading.

The function is deactivated when the car is supplied from the factory and can be activated or deactivated in the centre display.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Locking**.

   Select **Auto Close Sunroof Curtain** to activate/deactivate.

NOTE

The sun blind is also closed when all windows are closed using the remote control key or keyless opening* with a door handle.

Related information

- Panoramic roof* (p. 162)
- Operating the panoramic roof* (p. 164)
- Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds (p. 156)
- Keyless locking and unlocking* (p. 257)
- Locking and unlocking with the remote control key (p. 228)

* Option/accessory.

Wiper blades and washer fluid

Together with the washer fluid, the wipers aim to improve visibility as well as headlamp pattern.

The washer nozzles are heated* automatically in cold weather to prevent the washer fluid from freezing.

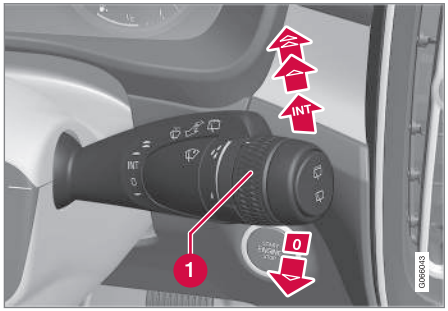
Information indicating that the washer fluid needs topping up appears in the driver display when there is approx. 1 litre (1 qt) of washer fluid remaining.

Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 168)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 170)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 172)
- Activating and deactivating the rain sensor's memory function (p. 169)
- Using the rear window wiper and rear window washer (p. 171)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 645)
- Set the wiper blades in service position (p. 644)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 643)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 642)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 167)

Using windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers are designed to clean the windscreen. Different settings for the windscreen wipers are set using the right-hand stalk switch.



Right-hand stalk switch.

1 The thumbwheel is used to set rain sensor sensitivity and wiper swipe frequency.

Single sweep

Lower the stalk switch and release to make one sweep.

Windscreen wipers off

0 Move the stalk switch to position **0** to switch off the windscreen wipers.

Intermittent wiping

INT Move the lever up to switch the wipers to intermittent wiping. Set the number of sweeps per time unit with the thumbwheel when intermittent wiping is selected.

Continuous wiping

Raise the stalk switch for the wipers to sweep at normal speed.

Raise the stalk switch further for the wipers to sweep at high speed.

IMPORTANT

Before activating the wipers - ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen in, and that any snow or ice on the windscreen and rear window is scraped away.

IMPORTANT

Use plenty of washer fluid when the wipers are cleaning the windscreen. The windscreen must be wet when the windscreen wipers are operating.

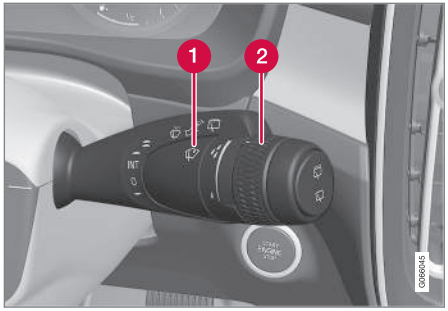
Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 168)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 170)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 172)

- Wiper blades and washer fluid (p. 167)
- Activating and deactivating the rain sensor's memory function (p. 169)
- Using the rear window wiper and rear window washer (p. 171)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 645)
- Set the wiper blades in service position (p. 644)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 643)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 642)

Using the rain sensor

The rain sensor automatically starts the windscreen wipers based on how much water it detects on the windscreen. Rain sensor sensitivity can be adjusted with the thumbwheel on the right-hand stalk switch.



Right-hand stalk switch.

1. Rain sensor button
2. Thumbwheel sensitivity/frequency

When the rain sensor is activated, the rain sensor symbol is shown in the driver display.

Activating the rain sensor

When activating the rain sensor, the car must be running or in ignition position **I** or **II** while the windscreen wiper stalk switch is in position **0** or in the position for a single sweep.

Activate the rain sensor by pressing the rain sensor button .

Move the lever down to make the wipers move.

Turn the thumbwheel upward for higher sensitivity and downward for lower sensitivity. An extra sweep is made when the thumbwheel is turned upward.

Deactivating the rain sensor

Deactivate the rain sensor by pressing the rain sensor button or moving the stalk switch up to another wiper program.

The rain sensor is deactivated automatically in ignition position **0** or when the engine is switched off.

The rain sensor is deactivated automatically when wiper blades are set in service position. The rain sensor is reactivated when service mode has been deactivated.

IMPORTANT

The windscreen wipers could start and be damaged in an automatic car wash. Deactivate the rain sensor while the car is running or when the car's electrical system is in ignition position **I** or **II**. The symbol in the driver display extinguishes.

Related information

- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 170)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 172)
- Wiper blades and washer fluid (p. 167)
- Activating and deactivating the rain sensor's memory function (p. 169)
- Using the rear window wiper and rear window washer (p. 171)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 645)
- Set the wiper blades in service position (p. 644)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 643)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 642)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 167)

Activating and deactivating the rain sensor's memory function

The rain sensor automatically starts the windscreen wipers based on how much water it detects on the windscreen.

When the memory function is activated, the rain sensor button does not need to be pressed every time the vehicle is started:

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Wipers**.
3. Select **Rain Sensor Memory** to activate/deactivate the memory function.

Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 168)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 170)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 172)
- Wiper blades and washer fluid (p. 167)
- Using the rear window wiper and rear window washer (p. 171)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 645)
- Set the wiper blades in service position (p. 644)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 643)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 642)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 167)

Using windscreen and headlamp washers

Windscreen and headlamp washers are designed to clean the windscreen and headlamps. Windscreen and headlamp washers are started using the right-hand stalk switch.

Starting windscreen and headlamp washers

Washing function, right-hand stalk switch.

– Move the right-hand stalk switch toward the steering wheel to start the windscreen and headlamp washers.
  > The windscreen wipers will make several more sweeps once the stalk switch has been released.

IMPORTANT

Avoid activating the washer system when it is frozen or the washer reservoir is empty, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the pump.

Headlamp washing*

To save fluid, the headlamps are washed automatically at a defined interval when the headlamps are switched on.

Reduced washing

If only approx. 1 litre (1 qt) of washer fluid remains in the reservoir and the message **Washer fluid Level low, refill**, together with the symbol, is shown in the driver display, then the supply of washer fluid to the headlamps is switched off. This is to prioritise cleaning the windscreen and the visibility through it. The headlamps are only washed if main or dipped beam is switched on.

Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 168)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 172)
- Wiper blades and washer fluid (p. 167)
- Activating and deactivating the rain sensor's memory function (p. 169)
- Using the rear window wiper and rear window washer (p. 171)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 645)
- Set the wiper blades in service position (p. 644)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 643)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 642)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 167)

* Option/accessory.

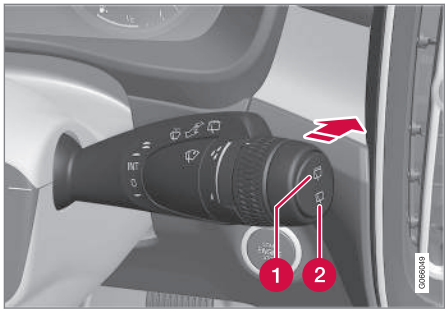
Using the rear window wiper and rear window washer

The rear window wiper and rear window washer are designed to clean the rear window. Washing/wiping is started and settings are changed by means of the right-hand steering wheel stalk switch.

Activating the rear window wiper and rear window washer

NOTE

The rear window wiper motor is equipped with overheating protection which means that it is switched off if it overheats. The rear window wiper works again after a cooling-down period.



1. Select for intermittent wiping with the rear window wiper.
2. Select for continuous speed with the rear window wiper.

– Move the right-hand steering wheel stalk switch forward to start rear window washing and wiping.

Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 168)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 170)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 172)
- Activating and deactivating the rain sensor's memory function (p. 169)
- Wiper blades and washer fluid (p. 167)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 645)
- Set the wiper blades in service position (p. 644)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 643)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 642)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 167)

Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing

Engaging reverse gear while the windscreen wipers are switched on initiates rear window wiping. The function stops when reverse gear is disengaged.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car ➔ Wipers**.
3. Select **Auto Rear Wiper** to activate/deactivate wiping when reversing.

If the rear windscreen wiper is already operating at a constant speed then no change takes place when reverse gear is engaged.

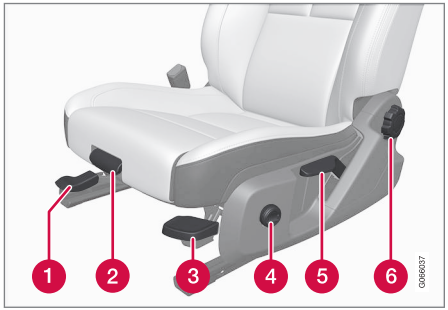
Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 168)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 170)
- Wiper blades and washer fluid (p. 167)
- Activating and deactivating the rain sensor's memory function (p. 169)
- Using the rear window wiper and rear window washer (p. 171)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 645)
- Set the wiper blades in service position (p. 644)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 643)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 642)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 167)

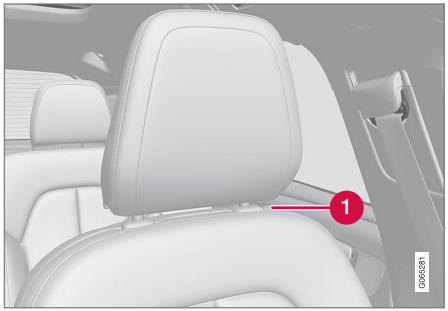
SEATS AND STEERING WHEEL

Manual front seat

The car's front seats have a range of setting options in order to enhance comfort.



1. Adjust the seat forward/backward by lifting the handle and adjusting the distance to the steering wheel and pedals. Check that the seat is locked after the position has been adjusted.
2. Change the length* of the seat cushion by pulling the lever up and moving the seat cushion forward/backward by hand.
3. Raise/lower the front edge of the seat cushion* by pumping up/down.[1]
4. Change the lumbar support* by pressing the button upward/downward/forward/back.
5. Raise/lower the seat by means of pumping the lever up/down.
6. Change the backrest inclination by turning the control knob.



1. You can manually adjust the height of the head restraints by pressing in the button.

WARNING

Adjust the position of the driver's seat before setting off, never while driving. Make sure that the seat is in locked position in order to avoid personal injury in the event of heavy braking or an accident.

Related information

- Power* front seat (p. 175)
- Adjusting the power* front seat (p. 175)
- Storing a position for seat and door mirrors (p. 176)
- Using a stored position for seat and door mirrors (p. 177)
- Adjusting* the length of the seat cushion in the front seat (p. 178)
- Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat (p. 178)

[1] Only applies to the driver's seat.

Power* front seat

The car's front seats have a range of setting options in order to enhance comfort. The power seat can be moved forwards/backwards and upwards/downwards. The front edge of the seat cushion can be raised/lowered and the backrest inclination can be changed. The lumbar support* can be adjusted upwards/downwards/forwards/backwards. Seat cushion length is adjusted manually*.

Seat setup can take place when the engine is running and within a certain time after unlocking the door without the engine running. Adjustment can also be performed within a certain time after the engine has been switched off.

IMPORTANT

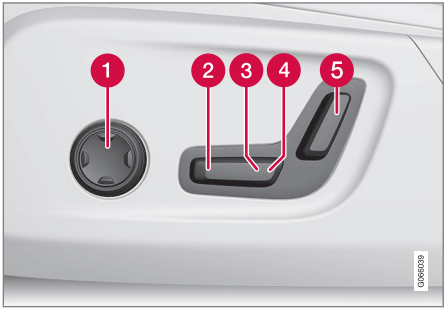
The power seats have overload protection that is triggered if any seat is blocked by an object. If this happens, remove the object and then move the seat again.

Related information

- Manual front seat (p. 174)
- Adjusting the power* front seat (p. 175)
- Storing a position for seat and door mirrors (p. 176)
- Using a stored position for seat and door mirrors (p. 177)
- Adjusting* the length of the seat cushion in the front seat (p. 178)
- Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat (p. 178)

Adjusting the power* front seat

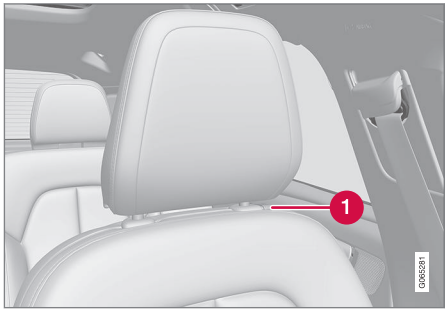
Set to desired sitting position using the control on the front seat's seating section. Activate the lumbar support* by pressing the four-way control.



1. Activate and use the lumber support control by pressing the four-way control up/down/forwards/back.
2. Raise/lower the seat cushion front edge by adjusting the control up/down.
3. Raise/lower the seat by means of adjusting the control up/down.
4. Move the seat forward/backward by adjusting the control forward/backward.
5. Change the backrest inclination by adjusting the control forward/backward.

Only one movement (forward/back/up/down) can be made at a time.

The backrests of the front seats cannot be lowered fully forward.



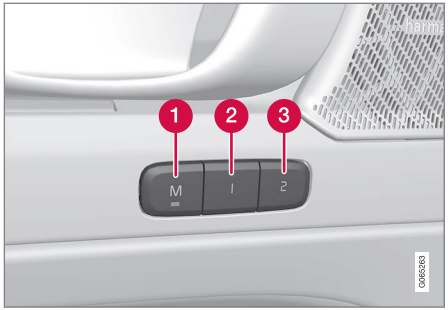
1 You can manually adjust the height of the head restraints by pressing in the button.

Related information

- Manual front seat (p. 174)
- Power* front seat (p. 175)
- Storing a position for seat and door mirrors (p. 176)
- Using a stored position for seat and door mirrors (p. 177)
- Adjusting* the length of the seat cushion in the front seat (p. 178)
- Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat (p. 178)

Storing a position for seat and door mirrors

You can store the position for power* seat and door mirrors in the memory buttons. Store two different positions for the power seat* and the door mirrors using the memory buttons. The buttons are located on the inside of one of the front doors or both*.



1 Button **M** for storing settings.

2 Memory button.

3 Memory button.

Storing a position

1. Adjust seat and door mirrors to the desired position.
2. Press and hold the **M** button depressed. The light indicator in the button illuminates.
3. Within three seconds, press and hold the **1** or **2** button.
   > When the position has been stored in the selected memory button, an acoustic signal can be heard and the light indicator in the **M** button extinguishes.

If none of the memory buttons is depressed within three seconds then the **M** button extinguishes and no storing takes place.

The seat or the door mirrors must be readjusted before a new memory can be set.

Related information

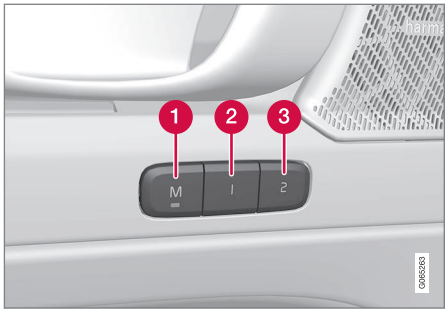
- Manual front seat (p. 174)
- Power* front seat (p. 175)
- Adjusting the power* front seat (p. 175)
- Using a stored position for seat and door mirrors (p. 177)
- Adjusting* the length of the seat cushion in the front seat (p. 178)
- Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat (p. 178)
- Angling adjustment of the door mirrors (p. 161)

* Option/accessory.

Using a stored position for seat and door mirrors

If the positions for the power* seat and the door mirrors have been stored, they can be activated by using the memory buttons.

Using a stored setting



A stored setting can be used with the front door either open or closed:

Open front door

– Depress one of the memory buttons **1** (2) or **2** (3) with a short press. Power seat and door mirrors move and then stop at the positions stored in the selected memory button.

Closed front door

– Hold one of the memory buttons **1** (2) or **2** (3) depressed until seat and door mirrors stop in the positions that are stored in the selected memory button.

If the memory button is released, the movement of the seat and door mirrors will be stopped.

WARNING

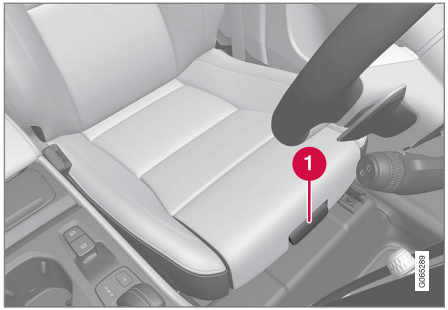
- Because the driver's seat can be adjusted with the ignition off, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.
- Movement of the seat can be STOPPED at any time by pressing any button on the power seat control panel.
- Do not adjust the seat while driving.
- Make sure there is nothing under the seats when they are being adjusted.

Related information

- Manual front seat (p. 174)
- Power* front seat (p. 175)
- Adjusting the power* front seat (p. 175)
- Storing a position for seat and door mirrors (p. 176)
- Adjusting* the length of the seat cushion in the front seat (p. 178)
- Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat (p. 178)
- Angling adjustment of the door mirrors (p. 161)

Adjusting* the length of the seat cushion in the front seat

For increased comfort, you can adjust the length of the seat cushion.



Control for seat cushion adjustment.

1. Grip the handle 1 on the front of the seat and pull upwards.
2. Adjust the length of the seat cushion.
3. Release the handle and make sure that the seat cushion has reached the correct position.

Related information

- Manual front seat (p. 174)
- Power* front seat (p. 175)
- Adjusting the power* front seat (p. 175)
- Storing a position for seat and door mirrors (p. 176)
- Using a stored position for seat and door mirrors (p. 177)
- Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat (p. 178)

Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat

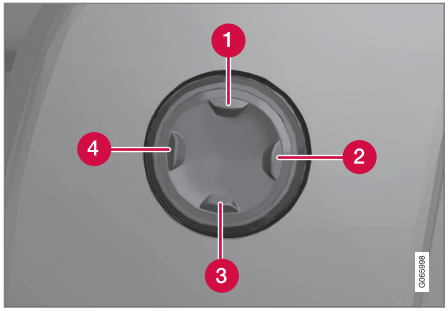
The lumbar support is adjusted using a control on the side of the seat cushion.

Four-way button, located on the side of the seat's seating section.

The four-way lumbar support is adjusted using the four-way button (the round one) which is located on the side of the seat's seating section. The lumbar support can be adjusted forwards/backwards and upwards/downwards.

* Option/accessory.

Adjusting the lumbar support



- Press the four-way button up 1/down 3 to move the lumbar support upwards/downwards.
- Press the front section 4 of the four-way button to increase lumbar support.
- Press the rear section 2 of the four-way button to decrease lumbar support.

Related information

- Manual front seat (p. 174)
- Power* front seat (p. 175)
- Adjusting the power* front seat (p. 175)
- Storing a position for seat and door mirrors (p. 176)
- Using a stored position for seat and door mirrors (p. 177)
- Adjusting* the length of the seat cushion in the front seat (p. 178)

Lowering the backrests in the rear seat

The rear seat's backrest is divided into two parts. The two parts can be folded forward individually.

WARNING

- Adjust the seat and fix it before driving away. Take care when adjusting the seat. Uncontrolled or careless adjustment can lead to trapping injuries.
- When loading long objects, they must always be strapped in securely to avoid injury and damage during sudden braking.
- Always switch off the engine and apply the parking brake when loading and unloading the car.
- For cars with automatic gearbox, set the gear selector in **P** to prevent it from being moved by mistake.

IMPORTANT

There must be no objects on the rear seat when the backrest is to be folded down. The seat belts must not be connected either. Otherwise there is a risk of damaging the rear seat upholstery.

IMPORTANT

The armrest* for the centre seat must be raised before lowering the seat.

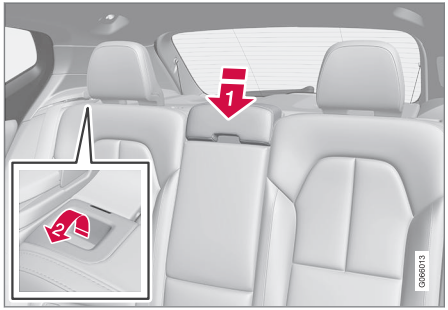
Through-load hatch* in the rear seat must be closed before lowering.

NOTE

The front seats may need to be pushed forwards, and/or the backrests adjusted upwards, in order that the rear backrests can be fully folded forward.

Lowering the backrest

To facilitate folding of the rear seat, the car must be stationary and at least one rear door open.



Ensure that there are no occupants or objects in the rear seat.

1. Lower the centre seat's head restraint manually.
2. Pull the handles located on the car's left and right-hand backrests forwards to fold down the left and right-hand part of the rear seat respectively.
3. The backrest disengages from the lock and needs to be lowered manually to the horizontal position.

Raising the backrest

Raising the backrest to upright position is carried out manually:

1. Move the backrest up/back.
2. Press the backrest until the lock engages.
3. Raise the head restraints manually.
4. If necessary, raise the centre seat's head restraint.

WARNING

When the backrest has been raised, the red indicator should no longer be showing. If it is still showing then the backrest is not locked in place.

WARNING

Check that the backrests and head restraints in the rear seat are locked properly after being folded up.

The head restraints of the outer seats must always be raised when there are passengers on any of the rear seats.

Related information

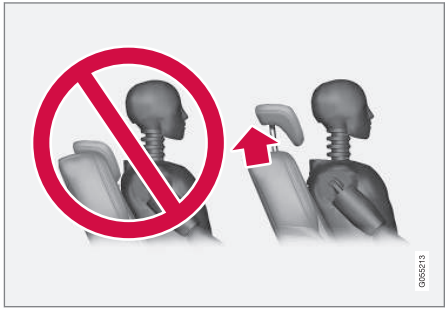
- Adjusting the head restraints in the rear seat (p. 181)
- Private locking (p. 267)
- Activating and deactivating private locking (p. 267)

* Option/accessory.

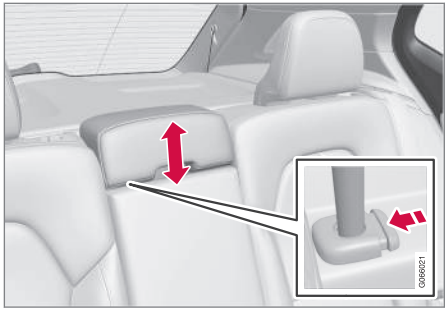
Adjusting the head restraints in the rear seat

Adjust the centre seat head restraint according to the height of the passenger. Fold down the outer seat head restraints* to improve rearward visibility.

Adjust the head restraint for the centre seat



The centre seat's head restraint must be adjusted according to the passenger's height so that, if possible, the whole of the back of the head is covered. Slide it up manually as required.



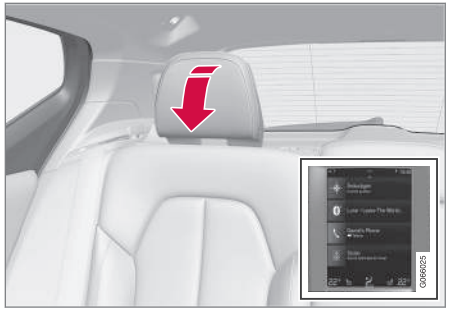
To lower the head restraint, the button (see illustration) must be depressed while the restraint is carefully moved down.

WARNING

The centre seat head restraint must be in its lowest position when the centre seat is not used. When the centre seat is used, the head restraint must be correctly adjusted to the height of the passenger so that it covers the whole of the back of the head if possible.

Fold down the rear seat's outer head restraints via the centre display*

The outer head restraints can be retracted via the centre display's function view. You can lower the head restraints in ignition position **0**.



Press the **Headrest Fold** button to activate/deactivate lowering.

Move the head restraint back manually until a click is heard.

WARNING

Do not lower the outer head restraints if there are passengers in any of the outer rear seats.

WARNING

The head restraint must be in locked position after being folded up.

Related information

- Lowering the backrests in the rear seat (p. 179)

Steering wheel controls and horn

The steering wheel houses the horn and controls for e.g. the driver support systems and voice control.

Keypads and paddles* in the steering wheel.

1. Controls for driver support systems.[2]
2. Paddle shifter* for manual gear changing in an automatic gearbox.
3. Controls for voice control and menu, message and phone handling.

Horn

The horn is located in the centre of the steering wheel.

Related information

- Steering lock (p. 183)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 183)

[2] Speed Limiter, Cruise Control, Adaptive Cruise Control*, Distance Warning* and Pilot Assist.

* Option/accessory.

Steering lock

The steering wheel lock makes it difficult to steer the car if it is stolen, for example. A mechanical noise can be perceived when the steering lock is locked or unlocked.

Activating the steering lock

The steering lock is activated when the car is locked from the outside and the engine is switched off. If the car is left unlocked then the steering lock will be activated automatically after a while.

Deactivating the steering lock

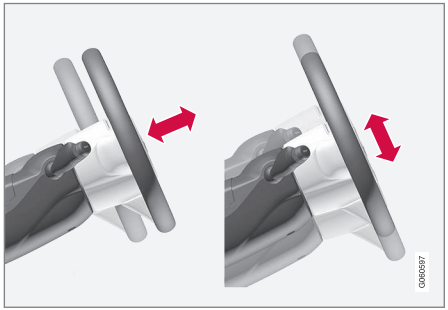
The steering lock is deactivated when the car is unlocked from outside. If the car is not locked, the steering wheel lock will be deactivated as long as the remote control key is in the passenger compartment and the car is started.

Related information

- Steering wheel controls and horn (p. 182)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 183)

Adjusting the steering wheel

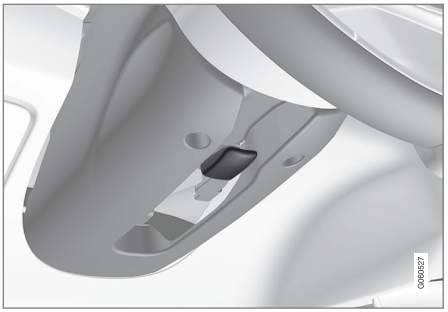
The steering wheel can be adjusted in different positions.



The steering wheel can be adjusted for height and for depth.

WARNING

Adjust the steering wheel and fix it before driving away. The steering wheel must never be adjusted while driving.



Lever for steering wheel adjustment.

1. Push the lever forwards to release the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the position that suits you.
3. Pull the lever back to fix the steering wheel in place. If the lever is stiff, press or raise the steering wheel slightly at the same time as you move the lever back.

Related information

- Steering lock (p. 183)
- Steering wheel controls and horn (p. 182)
- Adjusting the power* front seat (p. 175)
- Speed-dependent steering force (p. 274)

CLIMATE

Climate

The car is equipped with electronic climate control. The climate control system cools or heats as well as dehumidifies the air in the passenger compartment.

All climate control system functions are controlled from the centre display and physical buttons in the centre console.

Some functions for the rear seat can also be controlled from the climate controls* at the rear of the tunnel console.

> **NOTE**
>
> If necessary, the climate control can be used to cool the media system in the centre display. In these cases, the message **Climate system Cooling the infotainment system** is shown in the driver display.

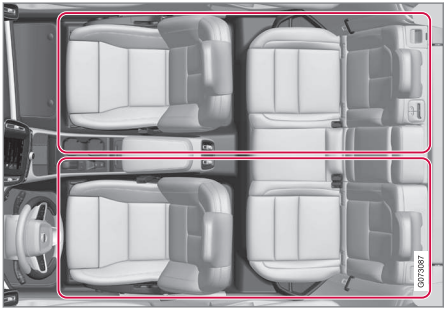
Related information

- Climate zones (p. 186)
- Climate control - sensors (p. 187)
- Perceived temperature (p. 187)
- Controlling the climate control system using voice control (p. 188)
- Parking climate (p. 208)
- Heater (p. 218)
- Air quality (p. 189)
- Air distribution (p. 192)
- Climate controls (p. 197)

Climate zones

The number of climate zones that the car is divided into governs the options for setting different temperatures for different parts of the passenger compartment.

2-zone climate



Climate zones with 2-zone climate.

With 2-zone climate, the temperature in the passenger compartment can be set separately for the left and right-hand sides.

Related information

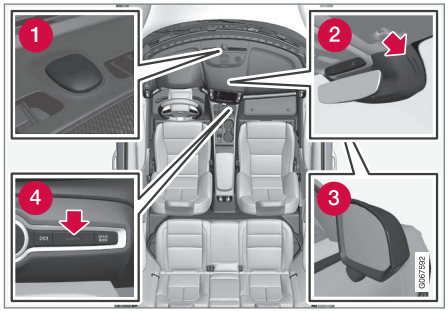
- Climate (p. 186)

* Option/accessory.

Climate control - sensors

The climate control system has a number of sensors to help control the climate in the car. Do not cover or block the sensors with clothing or other objects.

Sensor location



1. Sun sensor - on the upper side of the instrument panel.
2. Moisture sensor - in the casing by the interior rearview mirror.
3. Outside temperature sensor - in the right-hand door mirror.
4. Temperature sensor for the passenger compartment - by the physical buttons in the centre console.

With the Interior Air Quality System* there is also an air quality sensor that is fitted into the climate control system air intake.

Related information

- Climate (p. 186)
- Interior Air Quality System* (p. 190)

Perceived temperature

The climate control system regulates the climate in the passenger compartment based on the perceived temperature, not on actual temperature.

The temperature you select in the passenger compartment corresponds to the physically perceived temperature as affected by factors such as the ambient temperature, air speed, humidity, solar radiation, etc. in and around the car at the time.

The system includes a sun sensor which detects on which side the sun is shining into the passenger compartment. This means that the temperature can differ between the right and left-hand side's air vents despite the controls being set for the same temperature on both sides.

Related information

- Climate (p. 186)

Controlling the climate control system using voice control[1]

Commands for voice control of the climate control system in order to e.g. change temperature, activate a heated seat* or change fan level.

Tap on and say one of the following commands:

- "**Climate**" - starts a dialogue for climate control and shows examples of commands.
- "**Set temperature to X degrees**" - sets the desired temperature.
- "**Raise temperature**"/"**Lower temperature**" - raise/lower the temperature setting one step.
- "**Sync temperature**" - synchronises the temperature for all climate zones in the car with the temperature set for the driver's side.
- "**Air on feet**"/"**Air on body**" - opens the desired air flow.
- "**Air on feet off**"/"**Air on body off**" - closes the desired air flow.
- "**Set fan to max**"/"**Turn off fan**" - changes the air flow to **Max/Off**.
- "**Raise fan speed**"/"**Lower fan speed**" - raises/lowers the fan level one step.
- "**Turn on auto**" - activates automatic climate regulation.
- "**Air condition on**"/"**Air condition off**" - activates/deactivates the air conditioning.
- "**Recirculation on**"/"**Recirculation off**" - activates/deactivates the air circulation.
- "**Turn on defroster** "/"**Turn off defroster**" - activates/deactivates defrosting of windows and door mirrors.
- "**Turn on max defroster**"/"**Turn max defroster off**" - activates/deactivates the max defroster.
- "**Turn on electric defroster**"/"**Turn off electric defroster**" - activates/deactivates the heated windscreen*.
- "**Turn on rear defroster**"/"**Turn off rear defroster**" - activates/deactivates the heated rear window and door mirrors.
- "**Turn steering wheel heat on**"/"**Turn steering wheel heat off**" - activates/deactivates the heated steering wheel*.
- "**Raise steering wheel heat**"/"**Lower steering wheel heat**" - raises/lowers the setting for the heated steering wheel* one step.
- "**Turn on seat heat**"/"**Turn off seat heat**" - activates/deactivates the heated seat*.
- "**Raise seat heat**"/"**Lower seat heat**" - raises/lowers the setting for the heated seat* one step.

NOTE

Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

Related information

- Climate (p. 186)
- Voice recognition (p. 132)
- Using voice recognition (p. 133)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 136)

[1] Applies to certain markets.

* Option/accessory.

Air quality

The materials selected for the passenger compartment and the air cleaning system ensure that the air quality in the passenger compartment is high.

Materials in the passenger compartment

The interior of the passenger compartment is designed to be pleasant and comfortable, even for people with contact allergies and for asthma sufferers.

Tested materials have been developed in order to reduce the quantity of dust in the passenger compartment and to contribute to making the passenger compartment easier to keep clean.

The carpets in both the passenger compartment and the cargo area are removable and easy to remove and clean.

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo to clean the interior.

Air cleaning system

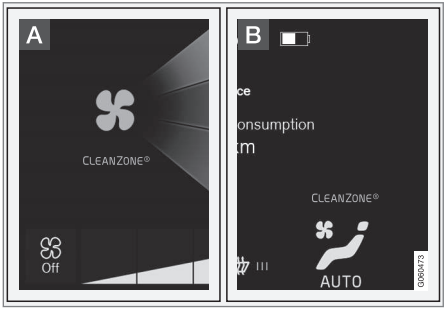
In addition to the passenger compartment filter, the car is equipped with an air cleaning system that helps to maintain high air quality in the passenger compartment.

Related information

- Climate (p. 186)
- CleanZone* (p. 189)
- Clean Zone Interior Package* (p. 190)
- Interior Air Quality System* (p. 190)
- Passenger compartment filter (p. 191)

CleanZone*

The CleanZone function checks and indicates whether or not all conditions have been met for good air quality in the passenger compartment.



A The indicator is visible in the climate view in the centre display.

B The indicator is visible in the climate row when the climate view is not open.

If the conditions have not been met then the **Clean Zone** text is white. When all conditions have been met, this is indicated by the text changing colour to blue.

Conditions that need to be met:

- That all doors and the tailgate are closed.
- That all side windows and the panoramic roof* are closed.

- That the air quality system Interior Air Quality System* is activated.
- That the ventilation fan is activated.
- That the air recirculation is deactivated.

NOTE

CleanZone does not indicate that the air quality is good. It only indicates that the conditions for good air quality have been met.

Related information

- Air quality (p. 189)
- Clean Zone Interior Package* (p. 190)
- Interior Air Quality System* (p. 190)
- Passenger compartment filter (p. 191)

Clean Zone Interior Package*

Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP) comprises a series of modifications that keep the passenger compartment even clearer from allergy and asthma-inducing substances, among other things.
The following is included:

- An enhanced fan function that means that the fan starts when the car is unlocked with the remote control key. The fan fills the passenger compartment with fresh air. The function starts when required and is disengaged automatically after a time or when one of the passenger compartment doors is opened. The amount of time the fan runs is reduced gradually due to reduced need up until the car is 4 years old.
- The fully automatic air quality system Interior Air Quality System (IAQS).

Related information

- Air quality (p. 189)
- CleanZone* (p. 189)
- Interior Air Quality System* (p. 190)
- Passenger compartment filter (p. 191)

Interior Air Quality System*

Interior Air Quality System (IAQS) is a fully automatic air quality system that separates gases and particles to reduce the levels of odours and contaminants in the passenger compartment.
IAQS is a part of the Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP) and cleans the air in the passenger compartment from contaminants such as particles, hydrocarbons, nitrous oxides and ground-level ozone.

If the air quality sensor senses that the outside air is contaminated, the air intake is closed and air recirculation is activated.

NOTE

The air quality sensor must always be enabled to ensure the best air in the passenger compartment.

In a cold climate recirculation is limited so as to prevent misting.

In the event of misting, the defrost functions for windscreen, side windows and rear window should be used.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the air quality sensor* (p. 191)
- Air quality (p. 189)
- CleanZone* (p. 189)

* Option/accessory.

- Clean Zone Interior Package* (p. 190)
- Passenger compartment filter (p. 191)

Activating and deactivating the air quality sensor*

The air quality sensor is part of the fully automatic air quality system Interior Air Quality System (IAQS).
It is possible to set whether the air quality sensor should be activated/deactivated.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Air Quality Sensor** to activate/deactivate the air quality sensor.

Related information

- Interior Air Quality System* (p. 190)

Passenger compartment filter

All air entering the car's passenger compartment is cleaned with a filter.

Replacing the passenger compartment filter

To maintain high climate system performance, the filter must be changed at regular intervals. Follow the Volvo Service Programme for the recommended replacement intervals. If the car is used in a severely contaminated environment, it may be necessary to replace the filter more often.

NOTE

There are different types of passenger compartment filter. Make sure that the correct filter is fitted.

Related information

- Air quality (p. 189)
- CleanZone* (p. 189)
- Clean Zone Interior Package* (p. 190)
- Interior Air Quality System* (p. 190)

Air distribution

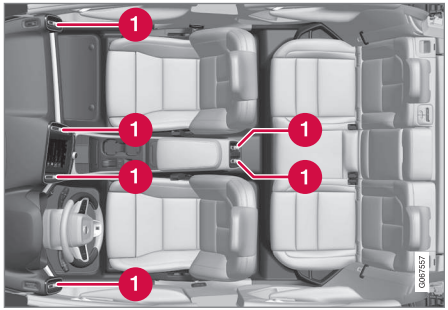
The climate control system distributes the incoming air via a number of different vents in the passenger compartment.

Automatic and manual air distribution

With auto-regulated climate running the air distribution takes place automatically. If necessary, the air distribution can be controlled manually.

Adjustable air vents

Some of the air vents in the car are adjustable, which means that you can open/close the vent to aim the air flow.



Location of adjustable air vents in the passenger compartment.

1. Four on the instrument panel and two at the rear of the tunnel console.

NOTE

At low ambient temperatures, no air is distributed from the adjustable air vents on the rear of the tunnel console.

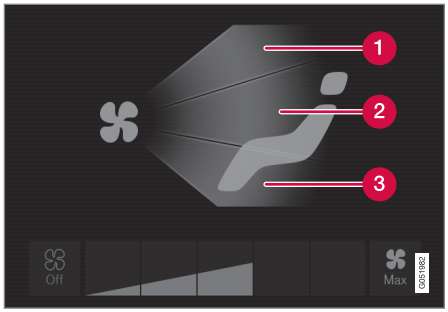
Related information

- Climate (p. 186)
- Changing air distribution (p. 192)
- Opening, closing and aiming the air vents (p. 193)
- Table of air distribution options (p. 194)

Changing air distribution

The air distribution can be changed manually if required.

1. Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.



The air distribution buttons in the climate view.

1. Air distribution - windscreen defroster vents
2. Air distribution - air vents in instrument panel and centre console
3. Air distribution - air vents in the floor

2. Press one or more of the air distribution buttons in order to open/close the corresponding air flow.
   > The air distribution is changed and the buttons illuminate/extinguish.

Related information

- Air distribution (p. 192)
- Opening, closing and aiming the air vents (p. 193)
- Table of air distribution options (p. 194)

Opening, closing and aiming the air vents

Some air vents in the passenger compartment can be opened, closed and aimed individually.

If the car's outer vents are aimed at the side windows then misting can be eliminated.

If the car's outer vents are aimed inwards then, in a hot climate, a comfortable environment is obtained in the passenger compartment.

Opening and closing the air vents

– Turn the rotary knob in the middle of the air vent to open/close the air flow from the vent.

  The air flow is at maximum when the marking on the knob is in vertical position.

Aiming the air vents

– Move the lever in the middle of the air vent horizontally/vertically to direct the air flow from the vent.

Related information

- Air distribution (p. 192)
- Changing air distribution (p. 192)
- Table of air distribution options (p. 194)

Table of air distribution options

The air distribution can be changed manually if required. The following options are available for setting.

	Air distribution	Purpose
	If all air distribution buttons are deselected in manual mode, the climate control system returns to automatically regulated climate control.	
	Main air flow from the defroster vents. Some air flows from other air vents.	Counteracts misting and icing in a cold and humid climate (to achieve this, fan level must not be low).
	Main air flow from the air vents in the instrument panel. Some air flows from other air vents.	Provides efficient cooling in a hot climate.
	Main air flow from the air vents at the floor. Some air flows from other air vents.	Provides heat or cooling to the floor.

	Air distribution	Purpose
	Main air from the defroster vents and air vents in the instrument panel. Some air flows from other air vents.	Provides good comfort in hot and dry climates.
	Main air flow from the defroster vents and air vents at the floor. Some air flows from other air vents.	Provides good comfort and good demisting in a cold or humid climate.
	Main air flow from the air vents in the instrument panel and air vents at the floor. Some air flows from other air vents.	Provides good comfort in sunny weather with cool outdoor temperatures.
	Main air flow from the defroster vents, from the air vents in the instrument panel and air vents at the floor.	Gives balanced comfort in the passenger compartment.

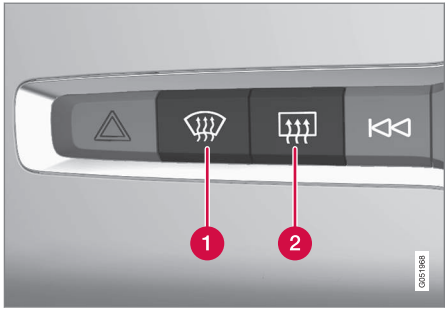
Related information

- Air distribution (p. 192)
- Opening, closing and aiming the air vents (p. 193)
- Changing air distribution (p. 192)

Climate controls

The climate control system's functions are controlled from physical buttons in the centre console, the centre display and the climate controls at the rear of the tunnel console*.

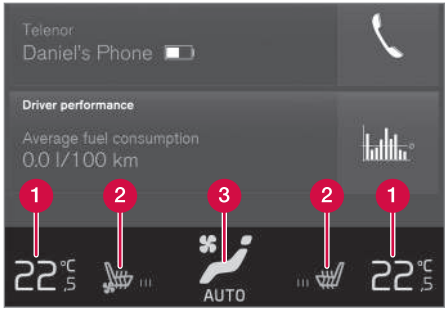
Physical buttons in centre console



1. Button for heated windscreen* and max defroster.
2. Button for heated rear window and door mirrors.

Climate row in centre display

The most common climate functions can be regulated from the climate row.



1. Temperature controls for driver and passenger side.
2. Controls for heated* and ventilated* driver and front passenger seat, as well as heated steering wheel*.
3. Button for access to the climate view. The graphic on the button shows activated climate settings.

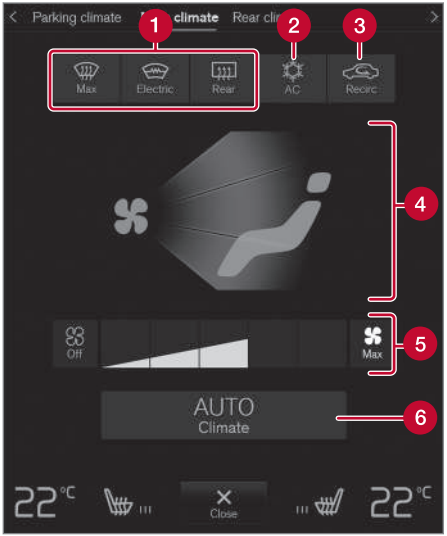
Climate view in centre display

Open climate view by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

Depending on equipment level, the climate view can be divided into several tabs. Change between the tabs by swiping left/right or by pressing the respective heading.

Main climate

In addition to the climate row's functions, other main climate functions can also be controlled in the **Main climate** tab.



1. **Max**, **Electric**, **Rear** - Controls for defrosting the windows and door mirrors.
2. **AC** - Controls for air conditioning.
3. **Recirc** - Controls for air recirculation.
4. Controls for air distribution.

5 Fan control.

6 **AUTO** - Auto regulating the climate.

Parking climate*
The car's parking climate control can be regulated in the **Parking climate** tab.

Climate controls at rear of tunnel console*
If the car is equipped with heated rear seats* there are physical buttons at the rear of the tunnel console for controlling this function.

Related information
- Climate (p. 186)
- Activating and deactivating heated front seat* (p. 198)
- Activating and deactivating heated rear seat* (p. 199)
- Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel* (p. 200)
- Activating auto climate control (p. 201)
- Activating and deactivating air recirculation (p. 201)
- Activating and deactivating max defroster (p. 202)
- Activating and deactivating the heated windscreen* (p. 203)
- Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors (p. 205)
- Regulating fan level for front seat (p. 206)
- Synchronising temperature (p. 207)
- Activating and deactivating air conditioning (p. 208)

Activating and deactivating heated front seat*
The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for driver and passengers when it is cold.

1. Press the left or right-hand side's steering wheel and seat button in the climate row in the centre display in order to open the controls for seat and steering wheel.

   If the car is not equipped with ventilated seats or heated steering wheel (for the driver's side), the button for heated seats is immediately available in the climate row.

2. Repeatedly press the button for heated seats in order to change between the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** and **Low**.
   > The level changes and the button shows the set level.

* Option/accessory.

WARNING

Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 197)
- Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated front seat* (p. 199)

Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated front seat*

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for driver and passengers when it is cold.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated seats should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start in the event of low ambient temperature.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Driver Seat Heating Level** and **Auto Passenger Seat Heating Level** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated driver's and passenger seat.
   > An "A" is shown at each button for heated front seats in the climate row when automatic starting has been activated.
4. Select **Low**, **Medium** or **High** to select level after the function has been activated.

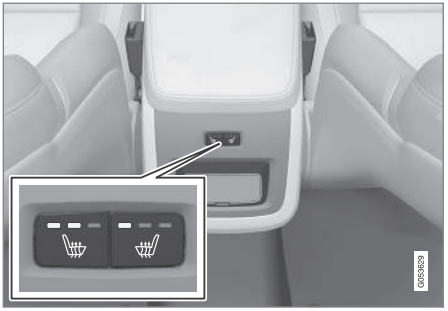
Related information

- Climate controls (p. 197)
- Activating and deactivating heated front seat* (p. 198)

Activating and deactivating heated rear seat*

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for driver and passengers when it is cold.

Activating and deactivating the heated rear seat from the rear seat



Buttons for heated seats at the rear of the tunnel console.

– Press repeatedly on the left or right-hand side's physical buttons for heated seats at the rear of the tunnel console to switch between the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** and **Low**.
  > The level changes and the LEDs in the button show the set level.

WARNING

Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 197)

Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel*

The steering wheel can be heated in order to increase comfort for the driver when it is cold.

1. Press the driver's side steering wheel and seat button in the climate row of the centre display in order to open the controls for seat and steering wheel.

   If the car is not equipped with heated seats or ventilated seats, the button for heated steering wheel is immediately available in the climate row.

2. Repeatedly press the button for heated steering wheel in order to change between the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** and **Low**.
   > The level changes and the button shows the set level.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 197)
- Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated steering wheel* (p. 200)

Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated steering wheel*

The steering wheel can be heated in order to increase comfort for the driver when it is cold.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated steering wheel should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start in the event of low ambient temperature.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Steering Wheel Heating Level** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated steering wheel.
   > An "A" is shown at the button for heated steering wheel in the climate row when automatic starting has been activated.
4. Select **Low**, **Medium** or **High** to select level after the function has been activated.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel* (p. 200)

* Option/accessory.

Activating auto climate control

With auto climate control activated, multiple climate functions are controlled automatically.

1. Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.
2. Give a short or long press on **AUTO Climate**.
   - Short press - air recirculation, air conditioning and air distribution are controlled automatically.
   - Long press - air recirculation, air conditioning and air distribution are controlled automatically, temperature and fan speed are changed to standard settings: 22 °C (72 °F) and level **3**.

   > Auto-regulation of the climate is activated and the button illuminates.

NOTE

Temperature and fan speed can be changed without deactivating the automatically-regulated climate control system. The automatically-regulated climate control system is deactivated when the air distribution is changed manually or when maximum defroster is activated.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 197)

Activating and deactivating air recirculation

Air recirculation shuts out bad air, exhaust gases, etc. from outside the car by the climate control system reusing the air in the passenger compartment.

1. Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2. Press **Recirc**.

   > Air recirculation is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

IMPORTANT

If the air in the car is recirculated for too long then there is a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

NOTE

It is not possible to activate air recirculation when max defroster is activated.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 197)
- Activating and deactivating time setting for air recirculation (p. 202)

Activating and deactivating time setting for air recirculation

Air recirculation shuts out bad air, exhaust gases, etc. from outside the car by the climate control system reusing the air in the passenger compartment.
It is possible set whether the air recirculation timer should be activated/deactivated. When the timer is activated, air recirculation is automatically switched off after 20 minutes.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Recirculation Timer** to activate/deactivate the air recirculation timer.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating air recirculation (p. 201)

Activating and deactivating max defroster

Max defroster is used to quickly remove mist and ice from windows.
Max defroster deactivates auto-regulation of the climate and air recirculation, activates air conditioning and changes the fan level to **5** and the temperature to **HI**.

NOTE

Changing the fan level to **5** increases the noise level.

When max defroster is deactivated, the climate control system returns to the previous settings.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from centre console

There is a physical button in the centre console for quick access to max defroster.

With heated windscreen* the max defroster can only be activated individually from the climate view in the centre display.

* Option/accessory.

Physical button in the centre console.

Cars without heated windscreen:

– Press the button.
  > Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Cars with heated windscreen:

– Press the button repeatedly in order to switch between the three levels:
  - Activated heated windscreen
  - Activated heated windscreen and max defroster
  - Deactivated.

  > Heated windscreen and max defroster are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

NOTE

Max defroster starts with a certain delay in order to avoid a short increase in fan level if the heated windscreen is deactivated by two quick presses of the button.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from centre display

1. Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2. Press **Max**.
   > Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 197)

Activating and deactivating the heated windscreen*

A heated windscreen is used to quickly remove mist and ice from the window.

Activating and deactivating heated windscreen from centre console

In the centre console is a physical button for rapid access to the heated windscreen.

Physical button in the centre console.

– Press the button repeatedly in order to switch between the three levels:
  - Activated heated windscreen
  - Activated heated windscreen and max defroster
  - Deactivated.

  > Heated windscreen and max defroster are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Activating and deactivating heated windscreen from centre display

1. Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2. Press **Electric**.
   > Heated windscreen is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

NOTE

A triangular area at the end of each side of the windscreen is not electrically heated, where de-icing may take longer.

NOTE

The heated windscreen may affect the performance of transponders and other communication equipment.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 197)
- Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated windscreen* (p. 204)

Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated windscreen*

A heated windscreen is used to quickly remove mist and ice from the window.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated windscreen should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start when there is a risk of ice or misting on the windscreen/window. The heating switches off automatically when the windscreen/window is sufficiently warm and the ice or misting is gone.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Front Defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated windscreen.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the heated windscreen* (p. 203)

* Option/accessory.

Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove mist and ice from the windows and mirrors.

Activating and deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors from centre console

In the centre console is a physical button for rapid access to the heated rear window and door mirrors.

Physical button in the centre console.

– Press the button.
  > Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Activating and deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors from centre display

1. Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2. Press **Rear**.
   > Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 197)
- Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors (p. 205)

Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove mist and ice from the windows and mirrors.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated rear window and door mirrors should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start when there is a risk of ice or misting on the windscreen/window. The heating switches off automatically when the windscreen/window is sufficiently warm and the ice or misting is gone.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Rear Defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated rear window and door mirrors.

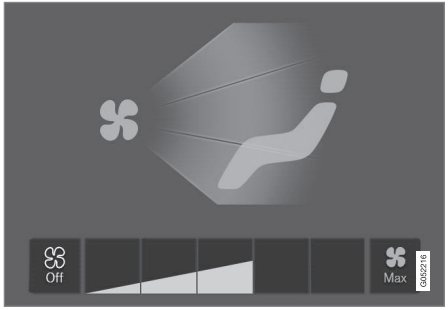
Related information

- Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors (p. 205)

Regulating fan level for front seat[2]

The fan can be set to several different automatically controlled fan speeds for the front seat.

1. Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.



Fan control buttons in the climate view.

2. Tap on the desired fan level, **Off**, **1-5** or **Max**.
   > Fan level is changed and the buttons for the selected level illuminate.

IMPORTANT

If the fan is fully switched off then the air conditioning is not engaged, which results in a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

NOTE

The climate control system automatically adjusts the air flow within the selected fan level based on requirements. This means that the fan speed may change even though the fan level is the same.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 197)

Regulating temperature for front seat[3]

The temperature can be set to the desired number of degrees for the front seat's climate zones.

Temperature buttons in the climate row.

1. Press the left or right-hand side temperature button in the centre display's climate row to open the controls.

2 For 2-zone climate, also rear seat.
3 For 2-zone climate, also rear seat.

Temperature control.

2. Regulate the temperature by either of the following:
   - drag the control to the desired temperature, or
   - press +/– to raise/lower the temperature gradually.
   > The temperature changes and the button shows the set temperature.

NOTE

Heating or cooling cannot be hastened by selecting a higher or lower temperature than the actual desired temperature.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 197)

Synchronising temperature

The temperature in the car's different climate zones can be synchronised with the temperature set on the driver's side.

Synchronisation button on the driver's side temperature controls.

1. Press the driver's side temperature button in the centre display's climate row in order to open the controls.
2. Press **Synchronise temperature**.
   > The temperature for all zones in the car is synchronised with the temperature set for the driver's side and the synchronisation symbol is shown adjacent to the temperature button.

The synchronisation is stopped by means of a further press on **Synchronise temperature** or by means of changing the temperature settings for a climate zone other than the driver's.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 197)

Activating and deactivating air conditioning

The air conditioning cools and dehumidifies incoming air as required.

When the air conditioning is activated, the climate control system automatically controls starting and switching off as required.

1. Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2. Press **AC**.
   > Air conditioning is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

NOTE

Close all side windows and the panoramic roof* so that the air conditioning should work as well as possible.

NOTE

It is not possible to activate the air conditioning when the fan control is in **Off** position.

Related information

- Climate controls (p. 197)

Parking climate

Parking climate control is a generic term for various functions that improve the passenger compartment climate when the car is parked, e.g. preconditioning.

Functions belonging to the parking climate control are controlled from the **Parking climate** in climate view in the centre display. Open climate view by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

Related information

- Climate (p. 186)
- Preconditioning (p. 209)
- Climate comfort when parking (p. 214)
- Symbols and messages for parking climate control (p. 216)

* Option/accessory.

Preconditioning

Preconditioning is a climate function which, if possible, attempts to reach comfort temperature in the passenger compartment before departure.

Preconditioning can use direct start or be set via the timer.

The function utilises several systems in different cases:

- In a cold climate, the parking heater warms up the passenger compartment to a comfortable temperature.
- The air conditioning, in a hot climate, cools the passenger compartment to the comfort temperature.
- Activation of heated steering wheel* and heated seats* for driver and passenger can be selected.
- Heated windscreen, rear window and door mirrors are automatically activated as required.

During preconditioning in a hot climate, condensation from the air conditioning may drip under the car. This is normal.

NOTE

Preconditioning is only available when the car is connected to an electrical socket.[4] A charging station that is not constantly active, due to a timer, may result in preconditioning failure.

If the car is not connected to an electrical socket, it is still possible to cool the passenger compartment briefly in a warm climate by starting preconditioning directly.

NOTE

During preconditioning of the passenger compartment, the car works to reach comfort temperature and not the temperature set in the climate control system.

Related information

- Parking climate (p. 208)
- Start and switch off preconditioning (p. 209)
- Preconditioning time setting (p. 211)

Start and switch off preconditioning

Preconditioning heats or cools the passenger compartment, if possible, prior to driving. The function can use direct start from the centre display or a mobile phone.

Start and switch off from car

1. Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Select whether seat heating and steering wheel heating should be activated during preconditioning by ticking/unticking the boxes for the respective function.
4. Press **Preconditioning**.
   > Preconditioning is started/switched off and the button is illuminates/extinguishes.

[4] Not applicable to fuel-driven auxiliary heater.

NOTE

Preconditioning is only available when the car is connected to an electrical socket.[5] A charging station that is not constantly active, due to a timer, may result in pre-conditioning failure.

If the car is not connected to an electrical socket, it is still possible to cool the passenger compartment briefly in a warm climate by starting preconditioning directly.

NOTE

The car's doors and windows should be closed during the preconditioning of the passenger compartment.

WARNING

Do not use preconditioning[6]:

- In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
- In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
- When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow under the front part of the car can obstruct the heater's ventilation.

Remember that the preconditioning can be started by a timer that has been set for a long time in advance.

Starting from the app

Starting the pre-conditioning, as well as information on selected settings, can be managed from a device that has the Volvo On Call* app. Preconditioning heats or cools the compartment (with the car's air conditioning) until a comfortable temperature is reached.

The passenger compartment can also be preconditioned with the car remote start function (Engine Remote Start - ERS)[7] via the Volvo On Call* app.

Related information

- Parking climate (p. 208)
- Preconditioning (p. 209)
- Preconditioning time setting (p. 211)

5 Not applicable to fuel-driven auxiliary heater.
6 Applicable to fuel-driven auxiliary heater.
7 Certain markets.

Preconditioning time setting

The timer can be set so that the preconditioning is finished at a predetermined time.

The timer can handle up to 8 different settings for

- a time on a single date
- a time on one or more days of the week, with or without repetition.

NOTE

Preconditioning is only available when the car is connected to an electrical socket.[8] A charging station that is not constantly active, due to a timer, may result in preconditioning failure.

If the car is not connected to an electrical socket, it is still possible to cool the passenger compartment briefly in a warm climate by starting preconditioning directly.

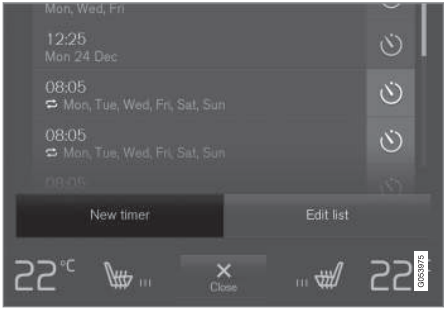
Related information

- Preconditioning (p. 209)
- Adding and editing time setting for preconditioning (p. 211)
- Activating and deactivating time setting for preconditioning (p. 213)
- Removing time setting for preconditioning (p. 213)

Adding and editing time setting for preconditioning

The timer for preconditioning can manage up to 8 time settings.

Adding a time setting



The button to add a time setting in the **Parking climate** tab in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.

[8] Not applicable to fuel-driven auxiliary heater.

3. Press **Add timer**.
   > A pop-up window is shown.

NOTE

It is not possible to add a time setting if there already are 8 settings entered for the timer. Delete a time setting in order to be able to add a new one.

4. Tap on **Date** to set the time for a single date.

   Tap on **Days** to set the time for one or more days of the week.

   With **Days**: Activate/deactivate repetition by ticking/unticking the box for **Repeat weekly**.
5. With **Date**: Select the date for preconditioning by scrolling the date list with the arrows.

   With **Days**: Select the days of the week for preconditioning by tapping on the buttons for the days of the week.
6. Set the time when the preconditioning should be finished by scrolling with the arrows.
7. Tap on **Confirm** in order to add the time setting.
   > The time setting is added to the list and is activated.

WARNING

Do not use preconditioning[9]:

- In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
- In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
- When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow under the front part of the car can obstruct the heater's ventilation.

Remember that the preconditioning can be started by a timer that has been set for a long time in advance.

Editing a time setting

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Press the time setting that is to be changed.
   > A pop-up window is shown.
4. Edit the time setting in the same way as described in "Adding a time setting" above.

Related information

- Preconditioning (p. 209)
- Preconditioning time setting (p. 211)
- Activating and deactivating time setting for preconditioning (p. 213)
- Removing time setting for preconditioning (p. 213)

9 Applicable to fuel-driven auxiliary heater.

Activating and deactivating time setting for preconditioning

A time setting in the timer for preconditioning can be activated or deactivated based on need.

The timer buttons in the **Parking climate** tab in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Activate/deactivate a time setting by tapping on the timer button to the right of the setting.
   > The time setting is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

WARNING

Do not use preconditioning[10]:

- In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
- In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
- When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow under the front part of the car can obstruct the heater's ventilation.

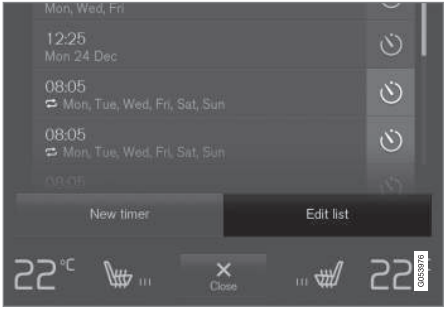
Remember that the preconditioning can be started by a timer that has been set for a long time in advance.

Related information

- Preconditioning (p. 209)
- Preconditioning time setting (p. 211)
- Adding and editing time setting for preconditioning (p. 211)
- Removing time setting for preconditioning (p. 213)

Removing time setting for preconditioning

A time setting for preconditioning that is no longer required can be deleted.



The button for editing the list/deleting the time setting in the tab **Parking climate** in the climate view.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Press **Edit list**.
4. Press the delete icon to the right in the list.
   > The icon changes to the text **Delete**.
5. Press **Delete** to confirm.
   > The time setting is removed from the list.

10 Applicable to fuel-driven auxiliary heater.

Related information

- Preconditioning (p. 209)
- Preconditioning time setting (p. 211)
- Adding and editing time setting for preconditioning (p. 211)
- Activating and deactivating time setting for preconditioning (p. 213)

Climate comfort when parking

The climate in the car's passenger compartment can be maintained while the car is parked, e.g. if the engine needs to be switched off but the driver or passenger(s) wants to remain in the car and maintain the level of climate comfort.

Starting climate comfort retention is only possible via direct start from the centre display.

The function utilises several systems in different cases:

- Residual heat from the engine, in a cold climate, heats the passenger compartment to comfort temperature.
- When it is warm, the ventilation cools the passenger compartment by blowing in air from outside the car.

NOTE

Climate comfort retention is switched off when the car is locked from the outside to avoid using residual heat unnecessarily. Use of the function is intended to maintain climate comfort when driver or passengers remain inside the car.

There is a limit to how long climate comfort can be maintained in a cold climate, which depends on the amount of residual heat available.

Related information

- Parking climate (p. 208)
- Starting and switching off climate comfort when parking (p. 215)

Starting and switching off climate comfort when parking

Climate comfort retention maintains the climate in the passenger compartment after driving. The function can use direct start from the centre display.

1. Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Press **Keep climate comfort**.
   > Climate comfort retention is started/switched off and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

NOTE

It is not possible to start climate comfort retention if there is not enough residual heat in the engine to maintain the passenger compartment climate, or if the outside temperature is above approx. 20°C (68°F).

NOTE

Climate comfort retention is switched off when the car is locked from the outside to avoid using residual heat unnecessarily. Use of the function is intended to maintain climate comfort when driver or passengers remain inside the car.

There is a limit to how long climate comfort can be maintained in a cold climate, which depends on the amount of residual heat available.

Related information

- Climate comfort when parking (p. 214)

Symbols and messages for parking climate control

A number of symbols and messages regarding parking climate control can be shown in the driver display.

Messages relating to parking climate control can also be displayed in a device which has the Volvo On Call* app.

This symbol illuminates in the driver display when the parking heater is active.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Parking climate **Service required**	Parking climate control is disengaged. Contact a workshop[A] to check the function as soon as possible.
	Parking climate **Temporarily unavailable**	Parking climate control is temporarily disengaged. If the problem persists for some time, contact a workshop[A] to check the function.
	Parking climate **Unavailable Fuel level too low**[B]	Parking climate control cannot be activated when the fuel level is too low to start the parking heater. Fill the vehicle's fuel tank.
	Parking climate **Unavailable Charge level too low**	Parking climate control cannot be activated if the charge level of the hybrid battery is too low to start the parking heater. Start the car.

* Option/accessory.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Parking climate **Unavailable, not connected to the mains**[C]	The parking climate control cannot be activated if the charging cable is not connected. Connect the charging cable.
	Parking climate **Limited Charge level too low**	The running time for parking climate control is limited when the state of charge in the hybrid battery is low. Start the car.

A An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
B Applies to fuel-driven heater.
C Applies to the high-voltage heater.

Related information

- Parking climate (p. 208)

Heater

The heater has two subfunctions that help to heat the passenger compartment or engine in different situations.

The heater has two subfunctions:

- Parking heater - heats the passenger compartment, if necessary, when the parking climate control's preconditioning is activated.
- Additional heater - heats the passenger compartment and engine, if necessary, during driving.

Either a fuel-driven heater or a high-voltage heater is used, depending on the market.[11]

The heater is fitted inside the engine compartment.

NOTE

When the heater is running[12], smoke may be emitted from under the front part of the car and a low hum may be heard. A ticking sound from the fuel pump may also be heard from the rear section of the car. This is perfectly normal.

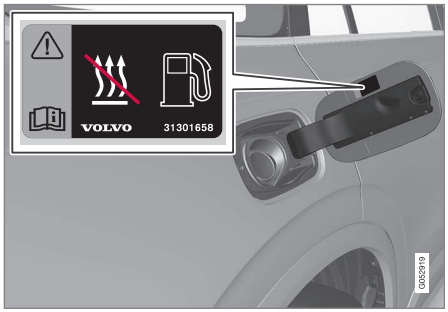
Battery and charging

The heater is powered by the car's hybrid battery. If the charge level of the hybrid battery is too low, then the heater is switched off automatically and the driver display shows a message.

NOTE

Make sure that there is enough charge in the battery if the heater needs to be used. The car must be connected to an electrical socket for the heater to be used for preconditioning.

Fuel and refuelling[13]



Warning label on fuel filler flap.

The heater uses fuel from the car's normal fuel tank.

If the car is parked on a steep incline, this may limit the supply of fuel to the heater.

If the level in the fuel tank is too low then the heater is switched off automatically and the driver display shows a message.

NOTE

Make sure there is enough fuel in the car's fuel tank if the heater needs to be used.

WARNING

Fuel which spills out could be ignited. Switch off the fuel-driven heater before starting to refuel.

Check in the driver display that the heater is switched off. This symbol is lit when it is working as a parking heater.

Related information

- Climate (p. 186)
- Parking heater (p. 219)
- Additional heater (p. 220)

11 An authorised Volvo dealer has information regarding which markets use which type of heater.
12 Applicable to fuel-driven auxiliary heater.
13 Applies to fuel-driven heater.

Parking heater

The parking heater heats the passenger compartment as necessary before driving if the car's preconditioning is activated.

The parking heater is one of two subfunctions of the car's heater. The heater is fitted inside the engine compartment.

When this symbol illuminates in the driver display, the parking heater may be active.[14]

NOTE

When the heater is running[15], smoke may be emitted from under the front part of the car and a low hum may be heard. A ticking sound from the fuel pump may also be heard from the rear section of the car. This is perfectly normal.

The parking heater starts automatically if the parking climate's preconditioning is activated and the passenger compartment needs to be heated up.

Depending on factors such as fuel availability, battery level, passenger compartment temperature and ambient temperature, the heater has different running times, but never longer than 30 minutes.

NOTE

Make sure there is enough fuel in the car's fuel tank if the parking heater needs to be used.[16]

Make sure that there is enough charge in the hybrid battery if the parking heater needs to be used. The car must be connected to an electrical socket for the heater to be used for preconditioning.

WARNING

Do not use preconditioning[17]:

- In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
- In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
- When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow under the front part of the car can obstruct the heater's ventilation.

Remember that the preconditioning can be started by a timer that has been set for a long time in advance.

WARNING

If there is a smell of fuel, unusual amounts of smoke, black smoke, or unusual sounds coming from the parking heater[18], switch off the heater and, if possible, pull out its fuse. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair.

14 Applies to fuel-driven heater.
15 Applicable to fuel-driven auxiliary heater.
16 Applicable to fuel-driven auxiliary heater.
17 Applicable to fuel-driven auxiliary heater.
18 Applicable to fuel-driven auxiliary heater.

Related information
- Heater (p. 218)
- Additional heater (p. 220)

Additional heater

The auxiliary heater helps to heat the passenger compartment and engine while driving.
The additional heater is one of two subfunctions of the car's heater. The heater is fitted inside the engine compartment.

> **NOTE**
>
> When the heater is running[19], smoke may be emitted from under the front part of the car and a low hum may be heard. A ticking sound from the fuel pump may also be heard from the rear section of the car. This is perfectly normal.

The additional heater starts and is controlled automatically when heating is required while the car is being driven.

It switches off automatically when the car is switched off.

> **NOTE**
>
> Make sure there is enough fuel in the car's fuel tank if the auxiliary heater needs to be used.[20]

Related information
- Heater (p. 218)
- Parking heater (p. 219)
- Activating and deactivating automatic start of auxiliary heater (p. 221)

19 Applicable to fuel-driven auxiliary heater.
20 Applicable to fuel-driven auxiliary heater.

Activating and deactivating automatic start of auxiliary heater

The auxiliary heater helps to heat the passenger compartment and engine while driving.
It is possible to set whether automatic start for the additional heater should be activated/deactivated.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Additional Heater** to activate/deactivate automatic start of the additional heater.

NOTE

Volvo recommends that the automatic start for the additional heater should be switched off for short driving distances.[21]

NOTE

If the auxiliary heater's automatic starting is deactivated, this may impede comfort in the passenger compartment as the climate control system will then have no heat source during electrical operation.

Related information

- Additional heater (p. 220)

21 Applicable to fuel-driven auxiliary heater.

KEY, LOCKS AND ALARM

Locking and unlocking

The car can be locked and unlocked in several different ways.

The car can be locked and unlocked

- using the buttons on the remote control key
- using the detachable key blade (if the battery in the remote control key is exhausted)
- without a key* (Passive Entry), the remote control key must be within range
- from the inside of the car using the locking controls in the doors
- remote unlocking with Volvo On Call*.

There are two types of remote control keys to the car.

For cars equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*, a slightly smaller, lighter and button-less key (Key Tag) is supplied.

Related information

- Locking and unlocking with the remote control key (p. 228)
- Keyless locking and unlocking* (p. 257)
- Locking and unlocking from inside the car (p. 260)
- Private locking (p. 267)
- Alarm* (p. 268)

Lock confirmation

The car indicates with hazard warning flashers when the car is locked or unlocked.

Exterior indication

Locking

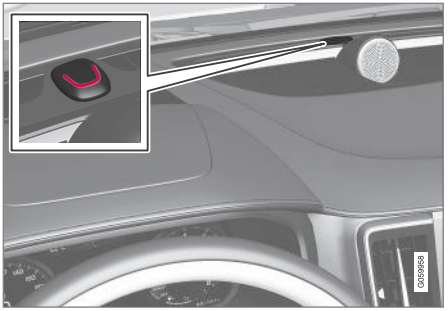
- The car's hazard warning flashers indicate locking by flashing and retracting the door mirrors[1].

Unlocking

- The car's hazard warning flashers indicate unlocking by two flashes and extending the door mirrors[1].

All doors, the tailgate and the bonnet must be closed for the car to indicate that it is locked. If locking takes place with just the driver door closed[2], locking will take place but the lock indication with hazard warning flashers will only take place when all doors, the tailgate and the bonnet have been closed.

Lock and alarm indicator on the instrument panel



The lock and alarm indicator shows the status of the locking system:

- A long flash indicates locking.
- Short flashes indicate that the car is locked.
- Rapid flashes after disarming the alarm* indicate that the alarm has been triggered.

* Option/accessory.

Indication in lock buttons

Front door

Lock buttons with indicator lamp in the front door.

An illuminated indicator lamp in the lock button of either front door indicates that all doors are locked. If any door is opened, the lamp will extinguish in both doors.

Rear door*

Lock button with indicator lamp in the rear door.

An illuminated indicator lamp in the lock button for one of the doors indicates that the door in question is locked. If any door is unlocked, its lamp will extinguish while the others will continue to illuminate.

Other indication

The home safe lighting and approach light functions can also be activated when locking and unlocking.

Related information

- Lock indication setting (p. 225)
- Locking and unlocking (p. 224)
- Approach light duration (p. 150)
- Using home safe lighting (p. 150)

Lock indication setting

It is possible to select various options for how the car confirms locking and unlocking in the settings menu in the centre display.

To change the locking response setting:

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Locking**.
3. Press **Visible Locking Feedback** to select when the car is to give a visible response:
   - **Lock**
   - **Unlock**
   - **Both**

   Or switch off the function by selecting **Off** .

To change the setting for retractable rearview mirrors* when locking:

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Mirrors and Convenience**.
3. Select **Fold Mirror When Locked** to activate or deactivate the function.

[1] Only for cars with retractable power door mirrors.
[2] Not applicable to with cars equipped with keyless locking/unlocking*.

Related information

- Lock confirmation (p. 224)

Remote control key

The remote control key locks and unlocks the doors and tailgate. The remote control key needs to be inside the car for it to be started.

Remote control key[3], Care Key or respective key tag (Key Tag)*.

The remote control key is not physically used when starting since the car is equipped with support for keyless starting (Passive Start) as standard. You simply need to have the key in the front part of the passenger compartment.

For cars equipped with keyless locking and unlocking (Passive Entry)* the key can be anywhere in the car to start the car. In this case, a slightly smaller, lighter key tag (Key Tag) is also supplied.

The remote control keys can be linked to different driver profiles to save personal preferences in the car.

WARNING

The remote control key contains a button cell battery. Keep new and used batteries out of the reach of children. If someone swallows a battery it may cause serious injury.

If damage is discovered, e.g. if the battery cover cannot be closed properly, then the product should not be used. Keep defective products out of the reach of children.

[3] The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

* Option/accessory.

Remote control key buttons

The remote control key has four buttons - one on the left-hand side and three on the right-hand side.

Locking - Pressing the button locks the doors, tailgate and fuel filler flap and also arms the alarm*.

Press and hold to close all of the windows and the panoramic roof* simultaneously.

Unlocking - Pressing the button unlocks the doors, tailgate and fuel filler flap and also deactivates the alarm.

A longer press opens all windows simultaneously. This total airing function can be used, for example, to quickly air the car in hot weather.

Tailgate - Unlocks the tailgate only and disarms its alarm. On cars with power operated tailgate*, the tailgate is opened automatically when the button is held depressed. The tailgate is also closed with a long press – acoustic warning signals sound.

Panic function - Used to attract attention in an emergency. Press and hold the button for at least 3 seconds or press it twice within 3 seconds to activate the direction indicators and the horn. The function can be turned off with the same button once it has been active for at least 5 seconds. Otherwise the function switches off automatically after 3 minutes.

WARNING

If anyone is left in the car, make sure the power windows and panoramic roof* are de-energised by always taking the remote control key with you when you leave the car.

NOTE

Be aware of the risk of locking the remote control key in the car.

- A remote control key or key tag left in the car will be deactivated when the car is locked and the alarm is armed using another valid key. The "Double lock" function is also deactivated. The key left behind is reactivated when the car is unlocked.
- A Care Key left in the car will be deactivated even when the car is locked using Volvo On Call, and reactivated when the car is unlocked using Volvo On Call or with another valid key.

Button-less key (Key Tag)*

The key tag provided with the keyless locking and unlocking function works in the same way as the standard remote control key as regards keyless starting and locking and unlocking. The key is waterproof to a depth of approx. 10 metres (30 feet) for up to 60 minutes. It has no detachable key blade and the battery cannot be replaced.

Care Key - restricted remote control key

A Care Key allows the car owner to set a limit for the speed of the car. The limitation is

intended to encourage the car to be driven in a safe manner, e.g. when being loaned out.

Interference

Remote control key functions for keyless starting and keyless locking and unlocking* can be disrupted by electromagnetic fields and screening.

NOTE

Avoid storing the remote control key close to metal objects or electronic apparatus, e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers - preferably no closer than 10-15 cm (4-6 inches).

If there is still interference - use the remote control key's detachable key blade to unlock and then place the key in the backup reader in the storage compartment to disarm the car and allow the car to be started.

NOTE

When the remote control key is positioned in the backup reader in the storage compartment, make sure that there are no car keys, metal objects or electronic apparatus nearby (e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers). Several car keys close to one another in the storage compartment may cause interference with each other.

Related information

- Starting the car (p. 430)
- Locking and unlocking with the remote control key (p. 228)
- Remote control key range (p. 231)
- Replacing the battery in the remote control key (p. 231)
- Detachable key blade (p. 237)
- Care Key - restricted remote control key (p. 236)
- Immobiliser (p. 240)
- Linking remote control key to driver profile (p. 128)

Locking and unlocking with the remote control key

The buttons on the remote control key can be used to lock and unlock all doors and the tailgate simultaneously.

Locking with the remote control key

The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

– Press the remote control key button to lock the car.

For the lock sequence to be activated, the driver door must be closed[4]. If any of the other doors or the tailgate are open, these are locked and alarmed* only when they are closed. The alarm's movement detectors* are activated when all the doors and the tailgate are closed and locked.

* Option/accessory.

NOTE

Be aware of the risk of locking the remote control key in the car.

- A remote control key or key tag left in the car will be deactivated when the car is locked and the alarm is armed using another valid key. The "Double lock" function is also deactivated. The key left behind is reactivated when the car is unlocked.
- A Care Key left in the car will be deactivated even when the car is locked using Volvo On Call, and reactivated when the car is unlocked using Volvo On Call or with another valid key.

Locking when the tailgate is open

NOTE

If the car has been locked while the tailgate is open, be careful not to leave the remote control key in the cargo area when the tailgate is closed and the car is completely locked[5].

Unlocking with the remote control key

– Press the remote control key button to unlock the car.

Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within 2 minutes of unlocking, they are locked automatically. This function prevents the car from being left unlocked unintentionally.

When the remote control key does not work

NOTE

Always try moving closer to the car and making another unlock attempt.

If it is not possible to lock or unlock with the remote control key, the battery may be discharged - in which case, lock or unlock the driver's door with the detachable key blade.

Related information

- Settings for remotely controlled and inside unlocking (p. 230)
- Unlocking the tailgate with the remote control key (p. 230)
- Remote control key (p. 226)
- Replacing the battery in the remote control key (p. 231)
- Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade (p. 238)

4 If the car is equipped with keyless locking/unlocking* then all side doors must be closed.
5 If the car is equipped with keyless locking/unlocking and the key is detected inside the car, the tailgate will not lock when it is closed.*

Settings for remotely controlled and inside unlocking

It is possible to select different sequences for remotely controlled unlocking.
To change setting:

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Locking** ➔ **Remote and Interior Unlock**.
3. Select option:
   - **All Doors** - unlocks all doors simultaneously.
   - **Single Door** - unlocks the driver's door. Unlocking all of the doors requires two presses on the remote control key's unlock button.

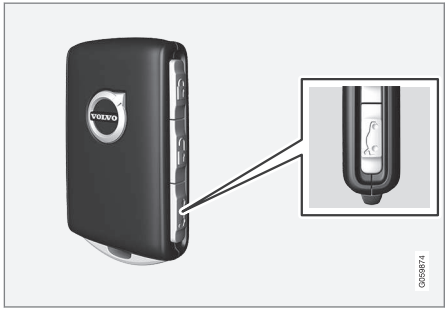
The settings made here also affect central unlocking via opening handles from the inside.

Related information

- Locking and unlocking with the remote control key (p. 228)
- Locking and unlocking from inside the car (p. 260)

Unlocking the tailgate with the remote control key

It is possible to unlock just the tailgate by pressing a button on the remote control key.



1. Press the remote control key's button.
   > The tailgate is unlocked but remains closed.

   The side doors are still locked and the alarm is armed*. The lock and alarm indicator on the instrument panel extinguishes in order to show that the entire car is not locked.

   Lightly grasp the rubberised pressure plate beneath the tailgate handle to open the tailgate. If the tailgate is not opened within 2 minutes then it is relocked and the alarm is re-armed.
2. With the power operated tailgate option* -

   Long press (approx. 1.5 seconds) on the remote control key's button
   > The tailgate is unlocked and opened, while the side doors remain locked and their alarm functions armed.

Related information

- Locking and unlocking with the remote control key (p. 228)

* Option/accessory.

Remote control key range

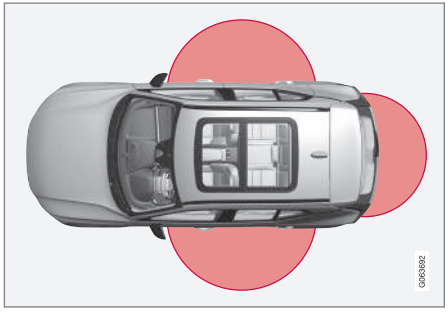
In order for the remote control key to work properly it needs to be within a certain distance from the car.

For manual use

The remote control key's functions for e.g. locking/unlocking that are activated by pressing on or have a range that extends approx. 20 metres (65 feet) from the car.

If the car does not verify a button being pressed - move closer and try again.

For keyless* use



For keyless use, a remote control key or the button-less key (Key Tag) must be within a semicircular area with a radius of approx. 1.5 metres (5 feet) on both long sides and approx. 1 metre (3 feet) from the tailgate.

NOTE

The remote control key functions may be disrupted by surrounding radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions, etc. The car can always be locked/unlocked with the key blade.

If the remote control key is removed from the car

If the remote control key is removed from the car when the engine is running, the warning message **Car key not found Removed from car** is shown in the driver display and an acoustic reminder sounds when the last door is closed.

The message extinguishes when the key is returned to the car, followed by a press of the right-hand keypad's **O** button, or when the last door is closed.

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 226)
- Antenna locations for the start and lock systems (p. 259)
- Keyless and touch-sensitive surfaces* (p. 256)

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

The battery in the remote control key needs to be replaced when it has become discharged.

NOTE

All batteries have a limited service life and must eventually be replaced (does not apply to Key Tag). The service life of the battery varies depending on how often the vehicle/key is used.

The battery for the remote control key should be replaced if

- the information symbol illuminates and the message **Car key battery low** is shown in the driver display
- the locks repeatedly do not react to signals from the remote control key within 20 metres (65 feet) of the car.

NOTE

Always try moving closer to the car and making another unlock attempt.

The battery in the button-less key[6] (Key Tag) cannot be replaced - a new key can be ordered from an authorised Volvo workshop.

IMPORTANT

A discharged Key Tag must be handed over to an authorised Volvo workshop. The key must be deleted from the car since it is still possible to use it to start the car via back-up start.

Opening the key and changing the battery

1 1 Hold the remote control key with the front visible and the Volvo logo facing the right way - slide the button at bottom edge by the key ring to the right. Slide the front side's shell a few millimetres upwards.

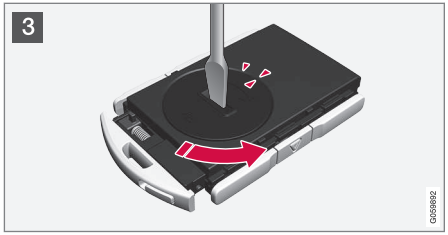
2 The shell will then come free and can be lifted off the key.

2 1 Turn the key, move the button to the side and slide the back shell a few millimetres upwards.

2 The shell will then come free and can be lifted off the key.

6 Supplied with cars equipped with keyless locking/unlocking*.

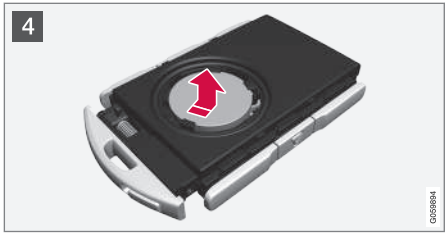
* Option/accessory.



3 Use a screwdriver or similar to turn the battery cover anticlockwise until the markings meet at the **OPEN** text.

Carefully lift away the battery cover by pressing e.g. a fingernail into the recess.

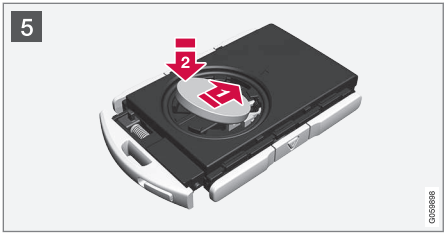
Then prize the battery cover upwards.



4 The battery (**+**) side is facing upwards. Then carefully prize loose the battery as illustrated.

IMPORTANT

Avoid touching new batteries and their contact surfaces with your fingers as this may impair their function.



5 Install a new battery with the (**+**) side up. Avoid touching the remote control key's battery contacts with your fingers.

1 Place the battery in the holder with the edge down. Then slide the battery forwards so that it fastens under the two plastic catches.

2 Press the battery down so that it fastens under the upper black plastic catch.

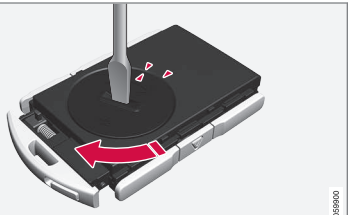
NOTE

Use batteries with the designation CR2032, 3 V.

NOTE

Volvo recommends that the batteries to be used in the remote control key fulfil UN Manual of Test and Criteria, Part III, sub-section 38.3. Batteries fitted in the factory or replaced by an authorised Volvo workshop fulfil the above criteria.

6



6 Refit the battery cover and turn it clockwise until the marking aligns with the **CLOSE** text.

7

7 1 Reposition the rear side's shell and press it down until a clicking sound can be heard.

2 Then slide the shell back.

> A further click will indicate that the shell is properly positioned and securely attached.

8

8 1 Turn the remote control key over and refit the front side's shell by pressing it down until a clicking sound can be heard.

2 Then slide the shell back.

> A further click will indicate that the shell is securely attached.

WARNING

Check that the battery is fitted correctly with the correct polarity. If the remote control key shall not been used for a long time, remove the battery to avoid battery leakage and damage. Batteries with damage or leaks may cause corrosive injury on contact with the skin. Therefore, use protective gloves when handling damaged batteries.

- Keep batteries out of the reach of children.
- Do not leave batteries lying around since they can be swallowed by children or pets.
- Batteries must not: be dismantled, short-circuited or thrown into open flames.
- Do not charge non-rechargeable batteries, this may cause an explosion.

Before use, the remote control key should be checked to avoid causing damage. If damage is discovered, e.g. if the battery cover cannot be closed properly, then the product should not be used. Keep defective products out of the reach of children.

IMPORTANT

Make sure that exhausted batteries are disposed of in a manner which is kind to the environment.

Related information

- Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade (p. 238)
- Starting the car (p. 430)
- Remote control key (p. 226)

Ordering more remote control keys

The car is supplied with two remote control keys. A button-less key is supplied if the car is equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*. Additional keys can be ordered.

A total of twelve keys can be programmed and used for one single car. If additional keys are ordered, additional driver profiles are added - one per new remote control key. This also applies for the key tag.

Loss of a remote control key

If you lose a remote control key then a new one can be ordered at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. The remaining remote control keys must be taken to the workshop. The code of the missing key must be erased from the system as a theft prevention measure.

The current number of keys registered to the car can be checked via driver profiles in the centre display's top view, select **Settings** ➔ **System** ➔ **Driver Profiles**.

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 226)

Care Key - restricted remote control key

A Care Key allows the car owner to set a limit for the speed of the car. The limitation is intended to encourage the car to be driven in a safe manner such as when being loaned out, for example.

For a Care Key, you can set your car's maximum speed. Other functions of the key are the same as those of a normal remote control key.

The limits are intended to act as measures to reduce the risk of accidents, thereby making it feel safer to hand over the car to e.g. young drivers, valet parking or a workshop.

Ordering Care Key

One or more Care Key can be ordered from a Volvo dealer. A total of eleven keys with restrictions can be programmed and used for a single car - at least one must be a normal remote control key.

Limitations of Care Key

The key is linked to a special Care Key driver profile, and when it is active, the key's settings cannot be changed. It is not possible to change to another driver profile either; this requires a normal remote control key.

The driver profile is activated when the car is unlocked with a Care Key without a normal remote control key in the vicinity.

NOTE

In the event of a change of driver, the car must be locked and unlocked in order to activate a new driver profile.

Setting options

The following limitations are available to be set:

- speed interval: 50-180 km/h (30-112 mph)
- Increments: 1 km/h (1 mph)

Symbol	Specification
	Speed limitation is active.

Related information

- Care Key settings (p. 237)
- Remote control key (p. 226)

Care Key settings

Change the maximum speed of a Care Key via the centre display.

1. Unlock the car with the normal remote control key.
2. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
3. Press **System** ➔ **Driver Profiles** ➔ **Care Key**.
4. Change the settings you want.

Related information

- Care Key - restricted remote control key (p. 236)

Detachable key blade

The remote control key contains a detachable key blade of metal with which a number of functions can be activated and some operations carried out.

The key blade's unique code is provided by authorised Volvo workshops, which are recommended when ordering new key blades.

The key blade's application areas

Using the remote control key's detachable key blade

- the left-hand[7] front door can be opened manually if central locking cannot be activated with the remote control key
- all doors are emergency-locked
- the rear doors' mechanical child lock can be activated and deactivated.

The button-less key[8] does not have a detachable key blade. If necessary, use the detachable key blade from the normal remote control key.

Detaching the key blade

1 1 Hold the remote control key with the front visible and the Volvo logo facing the right way - slide the button at bottom edge by the key ring to the right. Guide the front side's shell a few millimetres upwards.

2 The shell will then come free and can be lifted off the key.

[7] This applies whether the car is left-hand drive or right-hand drive.
[8] Supplied with cars equipped with keyless locking/unlocking*.

2 1 Detach the key blade by angling it up.

3 Return the key blade to its intended position in the remote control key after use.

1 Refit the shell by pressing it downward until a clicking sound is heard.

2 Then slide the shell back.

> A further click will indicate that the shell is securely attached.

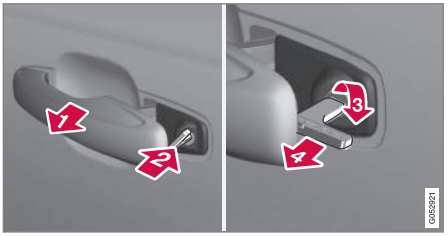
Related information

- Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade (p. 238)
- Remote control key (p. 226)

Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade

Amongst other things, the detachable key blade can be used to unlock the car from the outside - e.g. if the remote control key's battery has become discharged.

Unlocking



1 Pull out the front door handle on the left-hand side to its end position so that the lock cylinder becomes visible[9].

2 Insert the key in the lock cylinder.

3 Turn clockwise 45 degrees so that the key blade is pointing straight back.

[9] This applies whether the car is right-hand drive or left-hand drive.

4. Turn the key back 45 degrees to its starting position. Remove the key from the lock cylinder and release the handle so that the rear section of the handle is resting against the car again.
5. Pull out the handle.
   > The door opens.

NOTE

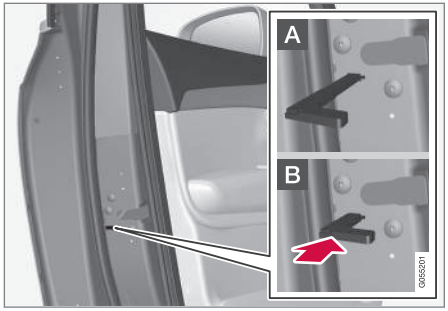
When the door is unlocked using the key blade and is then opened, the alarm is triggered. The alarm must be deactivated manually, see separate section.

Locking

The left-hand front door can be locked with its lock cylinder and the detachable key blade.

The other doors have a locking switch at the end that must be pushed in using the key blade – then they are mechanically locked/inhibited from opening from outside.

The doors can still be opened from the inside.



Manual locking of the door. Not to be confused with the child safety lock.

1. Remove the detachable key blade from the remote control key.
2. Insert the key blade in the hole for lock reset.
3. Press in the key until the key bottoms, approximately 12 mm (0.5 inches).

A The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

B The door is blocked against opening from the outside. To return to position A, the inner door handle must be opened.

NOTE

- A door's lock reset only locks that particular door - not all doors simultaneously.
- A manually locked rear door with child lock activated cannot be opened from inside or outside. The door can then only be unlocked with the key buttons, central locking button, the keyless locking system* or Volvo On Call*.

Related information

- Detachable key blade (p. 237)
- Activating and deactivating alarms* (p. 270)
- Starting the car (p. 430)
- Replacing the battery in the remote control key (p. 231)
- Remote control key (p. 226)

Immobiliser

The electronic immobiliser is a theft protection system that prevents an unauthorised person from starting the car.

The car can only be started with the correct remote control key.

The following error message in the driver display is related to the electronic immobiliser:

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Car key not found **See Owner's manual**	Error reading the remote control key during starting - place the key on the key symbol in the storage compartment and try again.

Related information

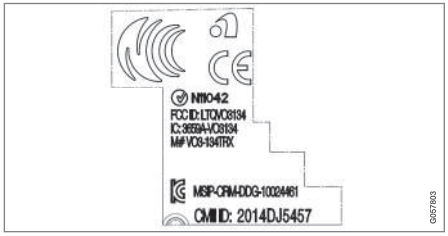
- Remote control key (p. 226)
- Ordering more remote control keys (p. 235)

Type approval for the remote control key system

Type approval for the car's remote key system can be seen in the following tables.

For detailed information on type approval, go to volvocars.com.

Lock system keyless start (Passive Start) and keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry*)



CEM marking for the remote control key system. For supplementary type approval numbers, see following tables.

Country/Area	Type approval	
Argentina	CNC ID: C-14771	
Brazil	MT-3245/2015	

Country/Area	Type approval	
Europe	Delphi Deutschland GmbH, 42367 Wuppertal hereby declares that this CV1-134TRX conforms to the essential property requirements and other relevant provisions contained in directive 2014/53/EU (RED). The full text of the EU declaration of conformity can be found at volvocars.com	
The United Arab Emirates	ER37847/15 DA0062437/11	
Indonesia	Nomor: 38301/SDPPI/2015	
Jordan	TRC/LPD/2014/250	
Malaysia	RAAT/37A/1215/S(15-5198)	
Mexico	IFETEL: RLVDEVO15-0396	
Namibia	TA-2016-02	

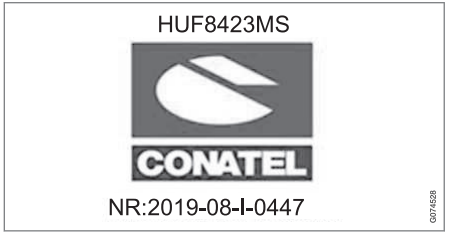
Country/Area	Type approval	
Russia		
Serbia	P1614120100	
South Africa	TA-2014-1868	

Remote control key

Country/Area	Type approval	
Europe	Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG hereby declares that this type of radio equipment HUF8423MS conforms to directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity can be found at volvocars.com Wavelength: 433.92 MHz Maximum radiated transmission power: 10 mW Manufacturer: Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG, Steeger Str. 17, 42551 Velbert, Germany	
Argentina	CNC ID: H-23694	
Brazil	Anatel: 06768-19-06643 Modelo: HUF8423MS Este equipomento opera em caráter secundário isto é não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.	

Country/Area	Type approval	
Philippines	ESD-1919938C	
The United Arab Emirates		
Ghana	NCA Approved: ZRO-M8-7E3-138	
Indonesia[A]	Sertifikat Nomor: 65073/SDPPI/2019 PLG ID: 8093	

Country/Area	Type approval	
CU (Customs Union) Kazakhstan, Russia		
Morocco	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 20402 ANRT 2019 Date d'agrément: 10/07/2019	
Moldova		
Nigeria	Connection and use of this communication equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission	
Oman		

Country/Area	Type approval	
Paraguay	HUF8423MS	
Serbia		
Singapore	Complies with IMDA Standards DA103787	
South Africa	TA-2019/772	
Taiwan	本產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 第十二條、第十四條等條文規定 .1 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不 。得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能 .2 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾 。現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用 。前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信 低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設 。備之干擾	

Country/Area	Type approval	
Ukraine	.Справжнім Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co KG заявляє, що тип радіообладнання відповідає Технічному[HUF8423MS] регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст -декларації про відповідність доступний на веб :сайті за такою адресою For detailed information on type approval, go to volvocars.com. Робоча частота: 433,92 ГГц	
Vietnam		

Country/Area	Type approval	
Belarus		
Zambia		

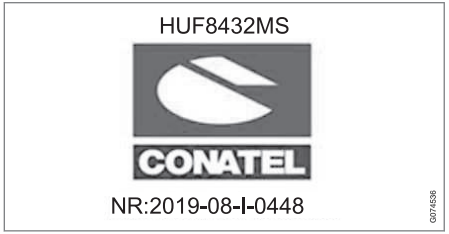
A Only applies to Indonesia.

Key Tag

Country/Area	Type approval	
Europe	Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG hereby declares that this type of radio equipment HUF8432MS conforms to directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity can be found at volvocars.com. Wavelength: 433.92 MHz Maximum radiated transmission power: 10 mW Manufacturer: Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG, Steeger Str. 17, 42551 Velbert, Germany	
Argentina	CNC ID: H-23695	
Brazil	Anatel: 04362-16-06643 Modelo: HUF8432MS Este equipo opera em caráter secundário isto é não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.	
Ghana	NCA Approved: ZRO-M8-7E3-139	

Country/Area	Type approval	
Philippines	ESD-1919939C	
The United Arab Emirates		
CU (Customs Union) Kazakhstan, Russia		

Country/Area	Type approval	
Indonesia[A]	Sertifikat Nomor: 65072/SDPPI/2019 PLG ID: 8093	
Morocco	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 20403 ANRT 2019 Date d'agrément: 10/07/2019	
Moldova		024
Nigeria	Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission	
Oman		OMAN - TRA R/7758/19 D172249

Country/Area	Type approval	
Paraguay	HUF8432MS	
Serbia		
Singapore	Complies with IMDA Standards DA103787	
South Africa	TA-2019-773	
Taiwan	本產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 第十二條、第十四條等條文規定 .1 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不 。得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能 .2 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾 。現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用 。前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信 低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設 。備之干擾	

Country/Area	Type approval	
Ukraine	.Справжнім Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co KG заявляє, що тип радіообладнання відповідає Технічному[HUF8432MS] регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст -декларації про відповідність доступний на веб :сайті за такою адресою For detailed information on type approval, go to volvocars.com. Робоча частота: 433,92 ГГц	
Vietnam		

Country/Area	Type approval	
Belarus		
Zambia		

A Only applies to Indonesia.

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 226)

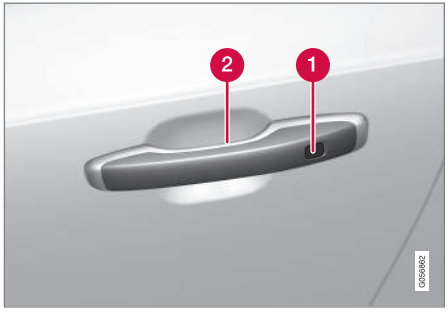
Keyless and touch-sensitive surfaces*

With the keyless locking and unlocking function, carrying the remote control key in a pocket or bag will suffice. The car is locked or unlocked via a touch-sensitive surface on the door handle.

Touch-sensitive surfaces

Door handle

The outside of the door handles contains a recess for locking, while the inside contains a touch-sensitive surface for unlocking.



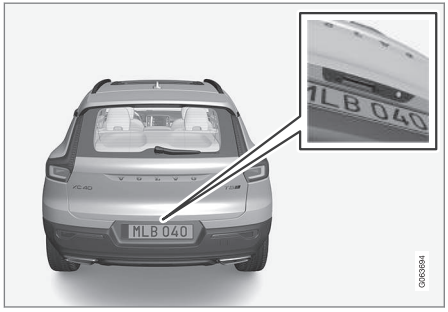
1. Touch-sensitive recess for locking
2. Touch-sensitive surface for unlocking

NOTE

It is important that only one touch-sensitive surface is activated at a time. Gripping the handle while touching the lock surface risks giving double commands. This means that the requested activity (locking/unlocking) will not be executed, or will be executed with a delay.

Tailgate handle

The tailgate handle has a rubberised pressure plate that is only used for unlocking.



NOTE

Be aware that the system may be activated in connection with car washing if the remote control key is in range.

Related information

- Keyless locking and unlocking* (p. 257)
- Keyless unlocking of the tailgate* (p. 258)

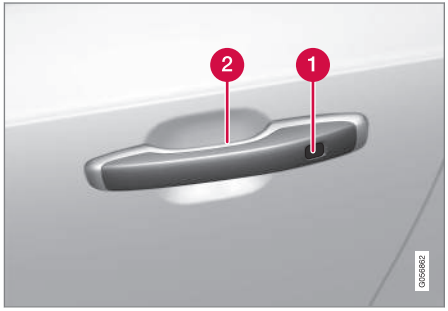
* Option/accessory.

Keyless locking and unlocking*

With keyless locking and unlocking, it is sufficient to touch the door handle's touch-sensitive surface to lock or unlock the car.

NOTE

One of the car's remote control keys must be within range for locking and unlocking to work.



1. Touch-sensitive recess for locking
2. Touch-sensitive surface for unlocking

NOTE

Be aware that the system may be activated in connection with car washing if the remote control key is in range.

Keyless locking

All side doors must be closed to be able to lock the car. The tailgate, on the other hand, can be open when locking the car with a side door handle.

– Touch the marked surface towards the rear on the outside of a door handle after the door has been closed. Or press the button on the underside of the tailgate before it closes.
  > The lock indicator on the instrument panel starts to flash to indicate the car is locked.

To close all side windows and the panoramic roof* simultaneously - place a finger against the touch-sensitive recess on the outside of the door handle and hold it there until all of the side windows and the panoramic roof have been closed.

Locking when the tailgate is open

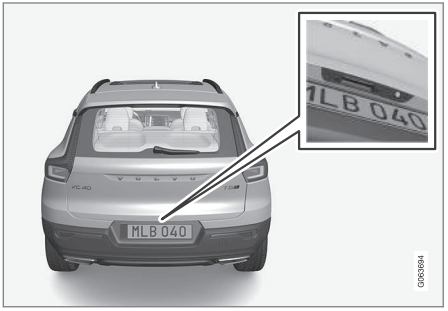
If the car has been locked and the tailgate is still open, make sure that the remote control key is not left in the cargo area when the tailgate is closed.

NOTE

If the key is detected inside the car, the tailgate will not lock when it is closed.

Keyless unlocking

– Grasp a door handle or gently press the rubberised pressure plate beneath the tailgate handle to unlock the car.
  > The lock indicator on the instrument panel stops flashing to indicate that the car is unlocked.



Rubberised pressure plate on the tailgate can only be used for unlocking.

Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within 2 minutes of unlocking, they are locked automatically. This function prevents the car from being left unlocked unintentionally.

Related information

- Settings for Keyless entry* (p. 258)
- Keyless unlocking of the tailgate* (p. 258)
- Keyless and touch-sensitive surfaces* (p. 256)

Settings for Keyless entry*

It is possible to select different sequences for Keyless entry.

To change setting:

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Tap on **My Car** ➔ **Locking** ➔ **Keyless Unlock**.
3. Select option:
   - **All Doors** - unlocks all doors simultaneously.
   - **Single Door** - unlocks selected door.

Related information

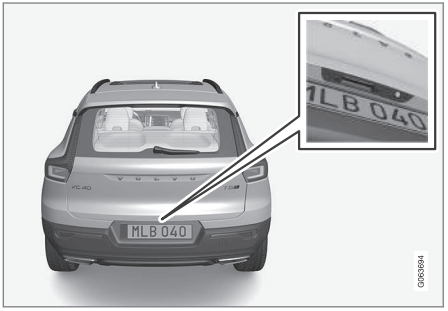
- Keyless locking and unlocking* (p. 257)
- Keyless and touch-sensitive surfaces* (p. 256)

Keyless unlocking of the tailgate*

With keyless locking and unlocking, it is sufficient to press lightly on the rubberized pressure plate on the tailgate handle to unlock.

NOTE

One of the car's remote control keys must be within range behind the car for unlocking to work.



The tailgate is held closed by an electrical lock.

To open:

1. Press gently on the rubberised pressure plate beneath the tailgate handle.
   > The lock is released.

* Option/accessory.

2. Lift by the outside handle in order to open the tailgate.

IMPORTANT

- Minimal force is required to release the rear hatch lock - just gently press the rubberised panel.
- Do not place the lift force on the rubber panel when opening the rear hatch - lift the handle. Using too much force may damage the electrical contacts on the rubber panel.

It is also possible to unlock the tailgate hands-free with a foot movement under the rear bumper, see separate section.

WARNING

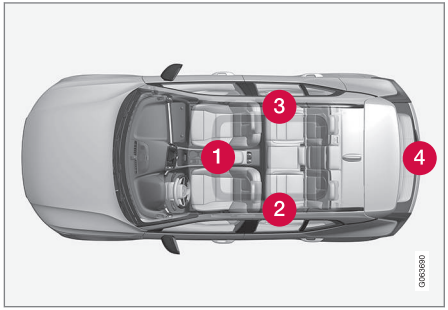
Do not drive with an open tailgate! Toxic exhaust fumes could be drawn into the car through the cargo area.

Related information

- Keyless locking and unlocking* (p. 257)
- Keyless and touch-sensitive surfaces* (p. 256)
- Remote control key range (p. 231)
- Operating the tailgate with foot movement* (p. 265)

Antenna locations for the start and lock systems

An antenna for the keyless starting system and antennas for the keyless locking system* are built into the car.



Antenna locations:

1. In the storage compartment in the tunnel console
2. In the upper front section of the left-hand rear door[10]
3. In the upper front section of the right-hand rear door[10]
4. In the cargo area[10]

WARNING

People with pacemaker operations should not come closer than 22 cm (9 inches) to the keyless system's antennas with their pacemaker. This is to prevent interference between the pacemaker and the keyless system.

Related information

- Keyless and touch-sensitive surfaces* (p. 256)
- Remote control key range (p. 231)

Locking and unlocking from inside the car

The doors and tailgate can be locked and unlocked from inside using the central locking controls in the front doors.

Central locking

Locking and unlocking button with indicator lamp in the front door.

Unlocking using a button in the front door

– Press the button to unlock all side doors and the tailgate.

Alternative unlocking method

Opening handle for alternative unlocking in the side door[11].

– Pull the opening handle on one of the side doors and release.

  > Depending on the settings in the remote control key, either all doors will be unlocked or only the selected door will be unlocked and opened.

  To change this setting, tap on **Settings ➔ My Car ➔ Locking ➔ Remote and Interior Unlock** in the centre display's top view.

Locking using a button in the front door

– Press the button - both front doors must be closed.

  > All doors and the tailgate are locked.

Locking using a button in the rear door*

Locking button with indicator lamp in the rear door.

The rear door lock buttons lock their respective rear door.

Unlocking the rear door

– Pull the opening handle.

  > The rear door is unlocked and opened[12].

10 Only in cars equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*.
11 The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.
12 Provided that the child lock is not activated.

Related information

- Settings for remotely controlled and inside unlocking (p. 230)
- Unlocking the tailgate from the inside of the car (p. 261)
- Activating and deactivating child safety locks (p. 261)

Unlocking the tailgate from the inside of the car

The tailgate can be unlocked from inside by pressing the button on the instrument panel.

– Brief press on the button on the instrument panel.

  > The tailgate can be unlocked and opened from the outside by grasping the rubberised pressure plate.

With the power operated tailgate option*:

– Long press on the button on the instrument panel.

  > The tailgate is opened.

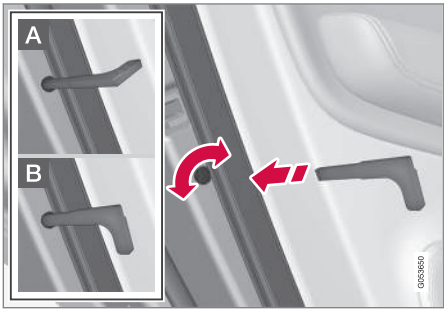
Related information

- Locking and unlocking from inside the car (p. 260)

Activating and deactivating child safety locks

The child safety lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from inside.
The child lock can be either manual or electrical*.

Manual child lock



Manual child lock. Not to be confused with manual door locks.

– Use the remote control key's detachable key blade to turn the knob.

A The door is blocked against opening from the inside.

B The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

NOTE

- A door's knob control only blocks that particular door - not both rear doors simultaneously.
- Cars with an electric child safety lock do not have a manual child lock.

Electric child lock*

The electric child lock can be activated and deactivated in all ignition positions above **0**. Activation and deactivation can be performed up to 2 minutes after switching off the car, provided that no door is opened.

Activation and deactivation button.

- Lamp lit – the lock is activated.
- Lamp not lit - the lock is deactivated.

When the child lock is activated, the following is possible, the rear:

- windows are only opened with the buttons in the driver's door.
- doors cannot be opened from inside.

If the child lock is activated when the car is switched off, it will remain activated the next time the car is started.

Symbols and messages

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Rear child lock Activated	The child lock is activated.
	Rear child lock Deactivated	The child lock is deactivated.

Related information

- Locking and unlocking from inside the car (p. 260)
- Detachable key blade (p. 237)

Automatic locking when driving

The doors and tailgate are locked automatically when the car starts to move.
To change this setting:

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Locking**.
3. Select **Auto Lock Doors While Driving** to deactivate or activate this function.

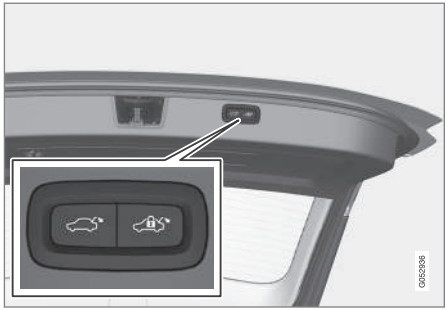
Related information

- Locking and unlocking from inside the car (p. 260)

* Option/accessory.

Closing and locking tailgate with button*

The buttons on the underside of the tailgate can close and lock the car automatically.



Location of the button/buttons on the underside of the tailgate.

IMPORTANT

During manual tailgate operation, open or close it slowly. Do not use force to open/close it if there is resistance. It may be damaged and stop working correctly.

Closing[13]

– Press the button on the underside of the tailgate.
  > The tailgate closes automatically and remains unlocked.

NOTE

- The button is active 24 hours after the hatch has been left open. Thereafter, it must be closed manually.
- If the flap has been open for more than 30 minutes, it will close at a slow speed.

Locking[14]

1. Press the button on the underside of the tailgate.
2. Close the hatch manually.
   > The tailgate and the doors are locked[15].

Closing and locking[16]

– Press the button on the underside of the tailgate.
  > The tailgate is closed automatically and the car is locked[15].

NOTE

- One of the car's remote control keys must be within range for locking and unlocking to work.
- When using keyless* locking or closing, three signals will sound if the key is not detected sufficiently close to the tailgate.

13 Applies to cars with power operated boot lid.
14 Applies to cars with the keyless locking/unlocking option.
15 All doors must be closed for locking the car.
16 Applies to cars with keyless locking/unlocking and power operated tailgate.

Cancel closing

- Press the button on the instrument panel.
- Press the remote control key's button.
- Press the closing button on the underside of the tailgate[13].
- Press the rubberised pressure plate beneath the outside handle.
- Using a foot movement*.

The tailgate's movement is interrupted and stops. The tailgate can then be operated manually.

If the tailgate is stopped close to closed position, the next activation will open the tailgate.

Pinch protection

If something with sufficient resistance prevents the tailgate from opening or closing then the pinch protection is activated.

- During opening - movement is interrupted, the tailgate stops and a long acoustic signal sounds.
- During closing - movement is interrupted, the tailgate stops, a long acoustic signal sounds and the tailgate returns to the programmed max. position.

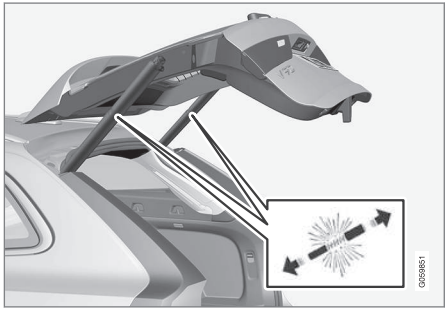
WARNING

Watch out for the risk of crushing when opening and closing.

Check that there is nobody near the tailgate before starting to open or close it as a crush injury may have severe consequences.

Always operate the tailgate with caution.

Pre-tensioned springs



The pre-tensioned springs for the power operated tailgate.

WARNING

Do not open the pre-tensioned springs for the power operated tailgate. They are pre-tensioned with high pressure and can cause injury if opened.

Related information

- Setting the max. opening for electrically operated tailgate* (p. 265)
- Operating the tailgate with foot movement* (p. 265)
- Remote control key range (p. 231)

13 Applies to cars with power operated boot lid.

* Option/accessory.

Setting the max. opening for electrically operated tailgate*

Adjust the max opening of the tailgate, e.g. to make it easier if the car is in a garage with limited space.

To adjust max. opening

1. Open the tailgate manually - and stop it in the desired opening position.
2. Press and hold button on the bottom of the tailgate for approx. 3 seconds.
   > Two acoustic signals sound to indicate that the set position has been saved.

NOTE

It is not possible to program an opening position lower than half-open tailgate.

Reset max. opening

1. Open the tailgate manually to the fully open position.
2. Press and hold the button on the underside of the tailgate for approx. 3 seconds.
   > Two acoustic signals sound to indicate that the set position has been cleared.

NOTE

- If the system has been operating continuously for a long time, it is switched off to avoid overload. It can be used again after about 2 minutes.

Operating the tailgate with foot movement*

A function which allows the tailgate to open and close by moving a foot under the rear bumper makes life easier when your hands are full.

If the car is equipped with keyless locking and unlocking* then you can unlock the tailgate with a foot movement.

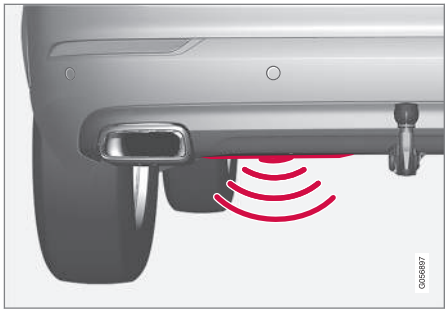
The function with both opening and closing of the tailgate is also available when the car is equipped with power operated tailgate*.

NOTE

The foot-operated tailgate function is available in two versions:

- Opening and closing with foot movement
- Only unlocking with foot movement (lift up the tailgate manually to open it)

Note that the function for opening and closing with foot movement requires power operated tailgate*.



The sensor is located on left of centre in the bumper.

One of the car's remote control keys must be within range behind the car, approx. 1 metre (3 feet), for opening and closing to be possible. This also applies to an already unlocked car in order to avoid accidental opening e.g. in a car wash.

Opening and closing with foot movement

Kicking motion within the detector's activation area.

– Make **one** forward kicking motion under the left part of the rear bumper. Then take a step back. The bumper must not be touched.
  > A short acoustic signal sounds when opening or closing is activated - the tailgate is opened/closed.

If several kicking motions take place without an approved remote control key being located behind the car, opening will not be possible until after a certain delay.

Do not leave your foot positioned under the car during the kicking motion. This could cause activation to fail.

Cancelling opening or closing with foot movement

– Make **one** forward kicking motion while opening or closing is in progress in order to stop the movement of the tailgate.

The remote control key does not have to be in the vicinity of the car to cancel opening or closing of the tailgate.

If the tailgate is stopped close to closed position, the next activation will open the tailgate.

NOTE

There is a risk of reduced function, or no function, if the rear bumper is loaded with large amounts of ice, snow, dirt or similar. For this reason, make sure you keep it clean.

NOTE

Pay attention to the possibility that the system may be activated in a car wash or similar if the remote key is within range.

Related information

- Keyless and touch-sensitive surfaces* (p. 256)
- Remote control key range (p. 231)

* Option/accessory.

Private locking

The tailgate can be locked with the private locking function which prevents it from being opened, e.g. when the car is taken in for service, left at a hotel or similar.

The private locking function button is located in the centre display function view. Depending on the current status of the lock, **Private Locking Unlocked** or **Private Locking Locked** is shown.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating private locking (p. 267)

Activating and deactivating private locking

Private locking is activated with a function button in the centre display and an optional PIN code.

NOTE

The car needs to be in ignition mode **I** as a minimum for the private locking function to be activated.

Private locking has two codes:

- A security code is created the first time the function is used.
- A new PIN code is selected every time the function is activated.

Enter the security code before using for the first time

A security code needs to be selected during the first time the function is used. It can then be used to deactivate private locking if the selected PIN code has been forgotten or lost. The security code acts as a PUK code for all subsequent PIN codes set for the private locking function.

Save the security code in a safe place.

To create a security code:

1. Press the button for private locking in the function view.

   > A pop-up window is shown.
2. Enter the preferred security code and press **Confirm**.
   > The security code is saved. The private locking function is now ready for activation.

Activate private locking

1. Press the button for private locking in the function view.

   > A pop-up window is shown.

2. Enter the code to be used in order to unlock the tailgate after locking and tap on **Confirm**.
   > The tailgate is locked. Confirmation of locking takes place by means of a green indicator being shown by the button in the function view.

Deactivate private locking

1. Press the button for private locking in the function view.

   > A pop-up window is shown.
2. Enter the code that was used for locking and tap on **Confirm**.
   > The tailgate is unlocked. Confirmation of unlocking takes place by means of the green indicator by the button in the function view extinguishing.

Forgotten PIN code

If the PIN code has been forgotten or the wrong PIN code has been entered more than three times, the security code can be used to deactivate private locking.

If the car is unlocked via Volvo On Call* or the Volvo On Call app, private locking will be deactivated automatically.

Forgotten security code

If the security code has also been forgotten, contact an authorised Volvo dealer for help with deactivating private locking.

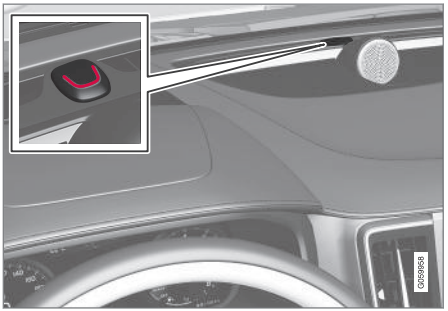
Related information

- Private locking (p. 267)

Alarm*

The alarm provides audible and visual warnings if anyone enters the car without a valid remote control key or manipulates the starter battery or alarm siren.

Alarm indicator



A red LED on the instrument panel indicates the alarm system's status:

- LED not lit – alarm not armed.
- The LED flashes once every other second – alarm is armed.
- After the alarm has been disarmed, the LED flashes rapidly for a maximum of 30 seconds or until ignition position **I** has been activated - the alarm has been triggered.

* Option/accessory.

When armed, the alarm is triggered if:

- a door, the bonnet or the tailgate is opened[17]
- a movement is detected in the passenger compartment (if fitted with a movement detector*)
- the car is raised or towed away (if fitted with a tilt detector*)
- the starter battery's cable is disconnected
- the siren is disconnected.

Alarm signals

When the alarm has been triggered, the following happens:

- A siren sounds for 30 seconds or until the alarm is switched off.
- Hazard warning flashers flash for 5 minutes or until the alarm is switched off.

If the cause of alarm activation is not rectified, the alarm cycle is repeated up to 10 times[17].

Movement and tilt sensors*

Movement and tilt detectors react to movements inside the car[18] e.g. if the window is broken or if anyone tries to tow the car away.

To avoid triggering the alarm unintentionally:

- Close all windows when leaving the car.
- Close the panoramic roof.
- If the climate control is used – aim the airflow so that it does not point upwards in the passenger compartment.

It is also possible to reduce the alarm level in the centre display.

Symbols and messages

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Alarm system failure Service required	Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

NOTE

Do not attempt to repair or alter components in the alarm system yourself. Any such attempts may affect the terms of the insurance.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating alarms* (p. 270)
- Reduced alarm level* (p. 270)
- Double lock* (p. 271)

17 Applies to certain markets.
18 Airflows from the climate control are also registered.

Activating and deactivating alarms*

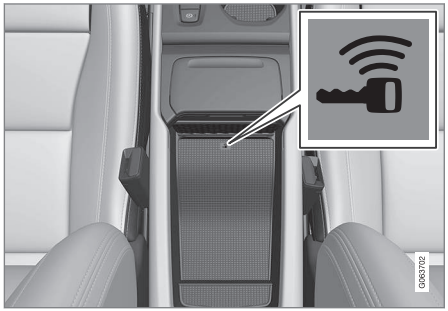
The alarm is activated when the car is locked, and is deactivated when the car is unlocked. It is also possible to deactivate the alarm without a working key.

Activating and deactivating alarms

The alarm is activated when the car is locked, and is deactivated when the car is unlocked.

Deactivate the alarm without a functioning remote control key

The car can be unlocked and disarmed even if the remote control key does not work e.g. if the remote control key's battery is dead.

1. Open the driver's door with the detachable key blade.
   > The alarm is triggered.
2. 
   Place the remote control key on the key symbol in the backup reader in the tunnel console's storage compartment.
3. Press the start button.
   > The alarm is deactivated.

Switching off a triggered alarm

– Press the remote control key's unlock button or set the car in ignition position **I** by pressing the start button.

Related information

- Alarm* (p. 268)

Reduced alarm level*

Reduce the alarm level, e.g. when travelling on a car ferry.

The alarm's movement and tilt detectors react to movements inside the car. These detectors are switched off in reduced alarm level.

Activating reduced alarm level

– Press the **Reduced Guard** button in the centre display function view.
  > The function is now activated.

Related information

- Alarm* (p. 268)
- Double lock* (p. 271)

* Option/accessory.

Double lock*

Double lock means that all opening handles are released mechanically when locking from the outside, which makes it impossible to open the doors from the inside.

Double lock is activated when locking with a remote control key or with keyless locking*, and takes place with a delay of approx. 10 seconds after the doors have locked. If a door is opened within the delay time then the sequence is interrupted and the alarm is deactivated.

The car can only be unlocked with a remote control key, keyless unlocking* or the Volvo On Call app * when double lock is activated.

The front left door can also be unlocked with the detachable key blade. If the car is unlocked with the detachable key blade, the alarm will be triggered.

⚠ WARNING

Do not lock the car from the outside while there is anyone left in the car.

Related information

- Reduced alarm level* (p. 270)
- Alarm* (p. 268)

DRIVER SUPPORT

Driving support systems

The car is equipped with different driver support systems which can assist the driver in different situations, either actively or passively.

For example, the systems can help the driver to:

- maintain a set speed
- maintain a certain time interval to the vehicle ahead
- prevent a collision by giving a warning to the driver and braking the car
- help the driver to park.

Some of the systems are fitted as standard while others are options – which alternative applies is market dependent.

Related information

- IntelliSafe – driver support and safety (p. 31)
- Speed-dependent steering force (p. 274)
- Electronic stability control (p. 275)
- Connected Safety (p. 280)
- City Safety™ (p. 334)
- Road Sign Information* (p. 282)
- Speed limiter (p. 289)
- Automatic speed limiter (p. 292)
- Cruise control (p. 295)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 299)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 309)
- Overtaking Assistance* (p. 321)
- Lane assistance (p. 327)
- Steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 347)
- Rear Collision Warning* (p. 353)
- BLIS* (p. 354)
- Driver Alert Control (p. 358)
- Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 360)
- Park Assist* (p. 365)
- Park assist camera* (p. 371)
- Radar unit (p. 390)
- Camera unit (p. 399)

Speed-dependent steering force

Speed related power steering causes the steering wheel force to increase with the speed of the car so as to be able to give the driver enhanced sensitivity. On motorways the steering is firmer. When parking and at low speed steering is light and requires less effort.

Reduced power

In rare situations, the power steering may need to work at reduced power, and turning the steering wheel may then seem slightly heavier. This may occur when the power steering becomes too hot and then needs temporary cooling. It may also occur if the power supply is disrupted.

In the event of reduced power, the message **Power steering Assistance temporarily reduced** is shown, as well as this symbol in the driver display.

While the power steering is working at reduced power, the driver support functions and steering assistance systems are not available.

* Option/accessory.

WARNING

If the temperature increases too much, the servo may be forced to switch off completely. In such a situation, the driver display shows the **Power steering failure Stop safely** message, combined with a symbol.

Change the steering force level*

Steering wheel resistance can be adjusted when using INDIVIDUAL drive mode.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Select **My Car** ➔ **Drive Modes** ➔ **Steering Force**.

Steering wheel resistance selection can only be accessed if the car is stationary or is moving at low speed and in a straight line.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Drive modes (p. 451)

Electronic stability control

Electronic Stability Control (ESC[1]) helps the driver to avoid skidding and improves the car's traction.

The driver display shows this symbol when the system is engaged.

Braking from the system may be heard as a pulsing sound, and the car may accelerate more slowly than expected when applying the throttle.

The system consists of the following subfunctions:

- Stability function[2]
- Spin control and traction control system
- Engine Drag Control
- Roll Stability Control

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Stability function[2]

The function checks the driving and brake force of the wheels individually in order to stabilise the car.

1 Electronic Stability Control
2 Also known as Active Yaw Control.

Spin control and traction control system

The function is active at low speed and brakes the drive wheels that spin so that additional traction shall be transferred to the drive wheels that are not spinning.

The function can also prevent the driving wheels from spinning against the road surface during acceleration.

Engine Drag Control

Engine Drag Control (EDC[3]) can prevent involuntary wheel locking, e.g. after shifting down or engine braking when driving in low gear on slippery road surfaces.

Involuntary wheel locking while driving can, amongst other things, impair the driver's ability to steer the car.

Trailer stability assist*[4]

Trailer stability assist (TSA[5]) stabilises a car towing a trailer in situations where they begin snaking.

NOTE

Trailer Stability Assist is deactivated if **ESC Sport Mode** is activated.

Roll Stability Control

This function reduces the risk of overturning, for example during a sudden evasive manoeuvre or if the car skids. The system registers if and how much the car's lateral inclination changes. This information is used to calculate the risk of the car overturning. If the car is at risk, its electronic stability control system engages, the engine torque is reduced and one or more wheels are braked until the car has regained its stability.

WARNING

Under normal driving conditions, the system improves the car's road safety, but this must not be taken as a reason to increase speed. Always follow the normal precautions for safe driving.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Activating or deactivating sport mode for electronic stability control (p. 277)
- Symbols and messages for electronic stability control (p. 278)
- Trailer stability assist* (p. 475)

Electronic Stability Control in sport mode

The stability system (ESC[6]) is always activated – it cannot be switched off. However, the driver can select **ESC Sport Mode**, which allows for a more active driving experience.

With the **ESC Sport Mode** subfunction selected, intervention from the system is reduced and the car is allowed to skid more and greater control than normal is thus transferred to the driver.

When **ESC Sport Mode** is selected, the function can be considered as deactivated, despite the function continuing to help the driver in many cases.

NOTE

With **ESC Sport Mode** selected, Trailer Stability Assist (TSA[7]) is deactivated.

ESC Sport Mode also provides more traction even if the car has become bogged down or is driving on a loose surface, such as in sand or deep snow.

3 Engine Drag Control
4 Trailer stability assist is included when the Volvo genuine towbar is installed.
5 Trailer Stability Assist
6 Electronic Stability Control

* Option/accessory.

Related information

- Electronic stability control (p. 275)
- Activating or deactivating sport mode for electronic stability control (p. 277)
- Trailer stability assist* (p. 475)

Activating or deactivating sport mode for electronic stability control

The stability system (ESC[8]) is always activated – it cannot be switched off. However, the driver can select sport mode, which allows for a more active driving experience.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

- Illuminated button indication – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button indication – the function is deactivated.

The driver display indicates activated **ESC Sport Mode** by displaying this symbol with a constant glow until the function is deactivated or the engine is switched off. The next time the engine is started, the system is back in its normal mode again.

The **ESC Sport Mode** function cannot be selected when one of the following functions is activated:

- Speed limiter
- Cruise control
- Adaptive cruise control*
- Pilot Assist*

Related information

- Electronic Stability Control in sport mode (p. 276)
- Electronic stability control (p. 275)

7 Trailer Stability Assist
8 Electronic Stability Control

Symbols and messages for electronic stability control

A number of symbols and messages regarding electronic stability control (ESC[9]) can be shown on the driver display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Constant glow for approx. 2 seconds	System check when the engine is started.
	Flashing light	The system is being activated.
	Constant glow	Sport mode is activated. **NOTE:** The system is not deactivated in this mode – it is partly reduced.

9 Electronic Stability Control

Symbol	Message	Specification
	ESC **Temporarily off**	The system has been temporarily reduced due to excessive brake temperature - the function is reactivated automatically when the brakes have cooled.
	ESC **Service required**	The system is disengaged. Stop the car in a safe place, switch off the engine and start it again.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains: Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Electronic stability control (p. 275)

Connected Safety[10]

Connected Safety communicates information between your own car and other vehicles via the Internet[11]. The function is intended to make a driver aware that there may be a potentially dangerous traffic situation further ahead on the same road.

The function can inform the driver whether another vehicle further ahead on the same road has activated its hazard warning flashers or detected slippery driving conditions. Information about slippery driving conditions is also given if your own car detects slippery surfaces.

Connected Safety can help the driver with the following:

- Alarm on hazard warning flashers
- Alarm on slippery driving conditions

Connected Safety communication between vehicles only works for vehicles equipped with the function and which have it activated.

Alarm on hazard warning flashers

If your own car's hazard warning flashers are activated, information about this can be sent to vehicles approaching your own car's position.

When your own car is approaching a vehicle with flashing hazard warning flashers, this symbol is shown on the driver display.

Alarm on slippery driving conditions

If your own car detects reduced friction between your tyres and the road, information on this can be sent to vehicles approaching your own car's position.

If an ice alert is triggered, this symbol is displayed on the Driver display when a vehicle approaches the slippery road section, both in your own car and in other vehicles that have received the information via Connected Safety.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Activating or deactivating Connected Safety (p. 281)
- Limitations of Connected Safety (p. 281)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)

10 Not available on all markets.
11 Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the Internet, and this may involve a cost.

* Option/accessory.

Activating or deactivating Connected Safety

For Connected Safety to be able to share information on road conditions with other vehicles, the function needs to be activated. The function can be deactivated if you do not want to share information.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

- Illuminated button indication – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button indication – the function is deactivated.

When activated, special terms and conditions that appear on the display must be acknowledged by the driver before a connection to the Internet[12] can be made. For example, a situation where the driver must accept data being sent from the car using his/her mobile phone.

If there is no Internet connection, your own car will still inform you, the driver, that slippery driving conditions have been detected by your own car. For Connected Safety to work fully, your own car needs to be connected to the Internet.

Related information

- Connected Safety (p. 280)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- User terms and conditions and data sharing (p. 535)
- Limitations of Connected Safety (p. 281)

Limitations of Connected Safety

Information about vehicles with activated hazard warning flashers or which have detected slippery driving conditions is not always communicated between all vehicles within the same area.

This can be because for example:

- Poor or no contact with the Internet.
- Vehicles on slippery surfaces make manoeuvres that are too weak for friction between tyres and road surface to be detectable, e.g. steering wheel movement, acceleration or braking.
- Vehicles that have detected slippery surfaces, or have activated their hazard warning flashers, do not have the function activated.
- Vehicles that have detected slippery surfaces, or have activated their hazard warning flashers, are not equipped with the function.
- There may be no warning due to missing or defective global positioning/satellite navigation.
- Detection of slippery surfaces or activation of hazard warning flashers has taken place

12 Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the Internet, and this may involve a cost.

on a road which is missing from Volvo Cars database.

- Connected Safety is not available in all markets and does not cover all areas - a retailer for Volvo has information on current areas.

WARNING

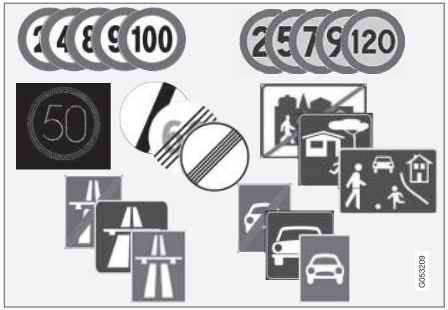
- In certain situations, the function may give incorrect warnings for slippery driving conditions.
- The function cannot always detect other vehicles with activated hazard warning flashers or detect all sections of road with slippery surfaces.

Related information

- Connected Safety (p. 280)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)

Road Sign Information*

The Road Sign Information function (RSI[13]) can help the driver to observe speed-related road signs and certain prohibition signs.



Examples of readable signs[14].

RSI can provide information about such things as current speed, when a motorway or road is starting/ending, when overtaking is prohibited or when the direction of travel is one-way.

If the car passes a speed limit sign, it will be shown on the driver display.

Road sign information (RSI[15]) also includes subfunctions that can warn the driver if a speed limit has been exceeded or in connection with speed cameras.

NOTE

In certain markets, the Road Sign Information function* is only available in combination with Sensus Navigation*.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

13 Road Sign Information
14 Road signs are market-dependent - illustrations in these instructions only show a few examples.
15 Road Sign Information

* Option/accessory.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Activating or deactivating road sign information* (p. 283)
- Display mode for road sign information* (p. 284)
- Road Sign Information and Sensus Navigation* (p. 286)
- Warning for speed limitation and speed camera from road sign information* (p. 286)
- Limitations of Road Sign Information* (p. 288)

Activating or deactivating road sign information*

The Road Sign Information function (RSI[16]) is optional – the driver can choose to activate or deactivate this function.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

- Illuminated button indication – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button indication – the function is deactivated.

Road Sign Information is activated automatically each time the engine is started.

NOTE

- If the automatic speed limiter function is activated, road sign information is shown in the driver display even if the Road Sign Information function is not activated.
- To remove road sign information from the driver display, you must deactivate **both** the automatic speed limiter and Road Sign Information.
- When the automatic speed limiter function is activated but Road Sign Information is deactivated, no warnings are given from Road Sign Information. Road Sign Information must also be activated in order to receive warnings.

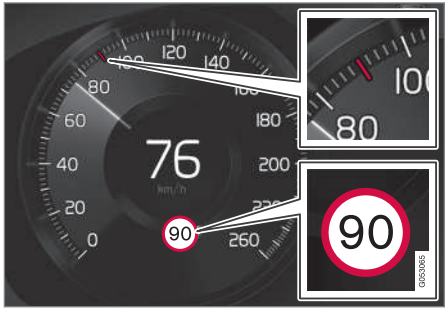
Related information

- Road Sign Information* (p. 282)
- Automatic speed limiter (p. 292)
- Limitations of Road Sign Information* (p. 288)

16 Road Sign Information

Display mode for road sign information*

The Road Sign Information function (RSI[17]) shows road signs in different ways depending on the sign and the situation.

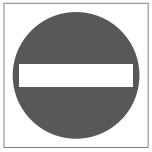


Example[18] of detected speed information.

When the function detects a road sign with an imposed speed limit, the driver display shows the sign as a symbol combined with a coloured indication on the speedometer.

If the car is fitted with Sensus Navigation*, speed-related information is also obtained from map data, which means that the driver display can show or change information on the speed limit without having passed a speed-related sign.

An additional sign, such as "no overtaking", may be shown together with the speed limit symbol.



If the driver enters a road marked with a no-entry sign at the roadside, the symbol for this sign flashes on and off on the driver display as a warning.

If the car is equipped with Sensus Navigation*, information from map data is used to determine whether the car is being driven in the wrong direction.

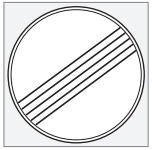
The driver can also get an acoustic warning when driving towards a road marked with a no-entry sign if the **Road Sign Audio Warning** function is activated.

Speed limit or end of motorway

When the function detects an "indirect speed limit sign" stating the end of the current speed limit – e.g. at the end of a motorway – a symbol appears with the corresponding road sign in the driver's display.

If the car is equipped with Sensus Navigation*, direct speed limit signs are normally displayed – indirect speed limit signs are only displayed if map data has no information on the speed limit for the road section in question.

Example of indirect speed limit sign:



End of all restrictions.

End of motorway.

The driver display symbol extinguishes after 10-30 seconds and remains so until the next speed related sign is passed.

Changed speed limit

When passing a direct speed limit sign when a speed limit changes, a symbol with the corresponding road sign appears in the driver's display.

17 Road Sign Information
18 Road signs are market-dependent - the illustrations in these instructions only show examples.

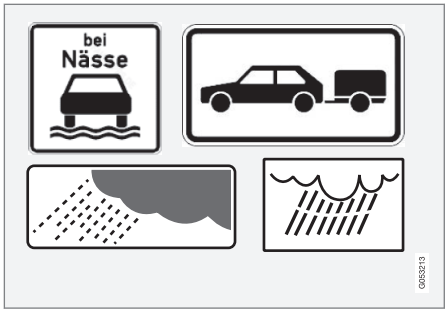
* Option/accessory.

Example of direct speed limit sign.

The driver display symbol extinguishes after about 5 minutes until the next speed-related sign is passed.

If the car is fitted with Sensus Navigation*, speed limit signs are shown in the driver display when map data contains information on the speed limit for the road section in question, even if no direct sign has been passed. If there is no information in map data, the sign is extinguished approx. 3 minutes after the last passing of a speed limit sign.

Additional signs

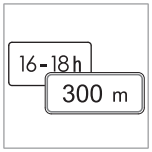


Examples of additional signs.

Sometimes different speed limits are signed for the same road - an additional sign then indicates the circumstances under which the different speeds apply. The road section may be particularly susceptible to accidents in rain and/or fog, for example.

An additional sign relating to rain is displayed only if the windscreen wipers are in use.

If a trailer is connected to the car's electrical system and you pass a speed sign with the additional sign "trailer", the indicated speed will appear on the driver display.



Some speed limits only apply after a certain distance or at a certain time of day. The driver's attention is drawn to this fact by means of a symbol for an additional sign below the speed symbol. The additional symbol in the driver display will show either “DIST” or “TIME”.

Sign for "School" and "Children at play"

If a warning sign for "School" or "Children at play" is included in the satellite navigator's map data[19], the driver display shows a sign of this type.

Related information

- Road Sign Information* (p. 282)
- Limitations of Road Sign Information* (p. 288)

19 Only in cars with Sensus Navigation*.

Road Sign Information and Sensus Navigation*

If the car is equipped with Sensus Navigation*, speed information is read from the navigation unit in the following cases:

- On detection of signs that indirectly indicate a speed limit, such as motorway, dual carriageway and city limit signs.
- If a previously detected speed sign is assumed not to apply any longer, but no new sign has been detected.

NOTE

In certain markets, the Road Sign Information function* is only available in combination with Sensus Navigation*.

NOTE

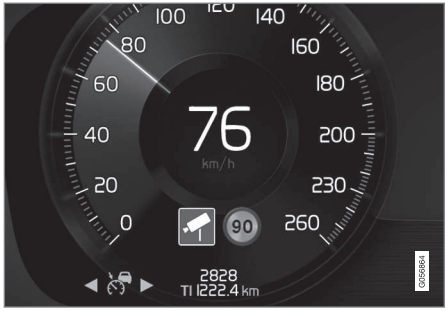
If a downloaded third-party app is used for navigation then there is no support for speed-related information.

Related information

- Road Sign Information* (p. 282)

Warning for speed limitation and speed camera from road sign information*

Road sign information (RSI[20]) includes subfunctions that can warn the driver if a speed limit has been exceeded or in connection with speed cameras.



Examples of information on speed camera and speed limit in the driver display

Warning for speed limit

The speed warning is given by the driver display symbol[21] showing the applicable maximum permitted speed temporarily flashing when this speed is exceeded.

A speed warning is always given if the speed limit is exceeded in connection with speed camera information.

Speed Limit Warning warns the driver when the applicable speed limit or stored maximum speed is exceeded – this warning is repeated once after approx. 30 seconds within the same speed limit area unless the driver reduces the speed.

Another warning is available only when the driver has reduced the speed by at least 5 km/h (3 mph) and then exceeds the speed limit again, or when the car reaches a new/different speed limit area.

NOTE

To get an acoustic warning if you exceed the required speed, the **Speed Limit Warning** function must be activated and the **Road Sign Audio Warning** subfunction must be set to **On**. An acoustic warning is then given if the car's speed exceeds the speed indicated by the Road Sign Information function in the driver display.

20 Road Sign Information
21 Road signs are customised for each market – the one shown here is just an example.

* Option/accessory.

Warning for speed camera

A car equipped with road sign information and Sensus Navigation can provide information on an upcoming speed camera in the driver display[22].

If the car exceeds a detected speed limit with the **Speed Limit Warning** function activated, a speed warning is given when the car approaches a speed camera, provided that the navigation map for the area in question contains information on speed cameras.

NOTE

An option is available to receive an acoustic warning for speed cameras independently of the car's speed and exceeded speed limit, even if the **Road Sign Audio Warning** function is deactivated.

Related information

- Road Sign Information* (p. 282)
- Activating or deactivating warnings from road sign information* (p. 287)
- Limitations of Road Sign Information* (p. 288)

Activating or deactivating warnings from road sign information*

The subfunction **Speed Limit Warning** for Road Sign Information (RSI[23]) is optional – the driver can choose to activate or deactivate this subfunction.

Activating speed warning

1. Select **Settings** ➔ **My Car** ➔ **IntelliSafe** ➔ **Road Sign Information** in the centre display's top view.
2. Select **Speed Limit Warning**.
   > The function is activated and a speed limit selector appears.

Adjust the limit for Speed Warning

The driver can select to receive a warning at a higher speed than the signed speed.

1. Select **Settings** ➔ **My Car** ➔ **IntelliSafe** ➔ **Road Sign Information** in the centre display's top view.
2. Select **Speed Limit Warning**.
   > The function is activated and a speed limit selector appears.
3. Adjust the limit for Speed Warning by pressing the up/down arrows on the screen.

Note that the function does not give any consideration to selected limit adjustment when the driver display shows the speed camera symbol.

Activating acoustic warning in connection with speed warning

1. Select **Settings** ➔ **My Car** ➔ **IntelliSafe** ➔ **Road Sign Information** in the centre display's top view.
2. Select/deselect **Road Sign Audio Warning** to activate/switch off the acoustic warning.

With the **Road Sign Audio Warning** function activated, the driver is also warned when driving towards one-way traffic/no-entry entrance.

Activate speed camera warning

If the car is fitted with Sensus Navigation* and map data contains information on speed cameras, the driver can opt to receive an audible warning when approaching a speed camera.

22 Information on speed cameras on the navigation map is not available for all markets/areas.
23 Road Sign Information

1. Select **Settings** ➔ **My Car** ➔ **IntelliSafe** ➔ **Road Sign Information** in the centre display's top view.
2. Select/deselect **Speed Camera Audio Warning** to activate/switch off the audible speed camera warning.

Related information

- Road Sign Information* (p. 282)
- Warning for speed limitation and speed camera from road sign information* (p. 286)
- Limitations of Road Sign Information* (p. 288)

Limitations of Road Sign Information*

The Road Sign Information (RSI[24]) function may have limitations in certain situations. Examples of what can reduce the function are as follows:

- Faded signs
- Signs positioned on bends
- Rotated or damaged signs
- Signs positioned high above the roadway
- Fully/partially obscured or poorly positioned signs
- Signs completely or partly covered with frost, snow and/or dirt
- Digital road maps[25] are out-of-date, inaccurate or have no speed information[26]

NOTE

In certain markets, the Road Sign Information function* is only available in combination with Sensus Navigation*.

NOTE

The RSI function may interpret some types of bicycle rack, connected to the electrical socket for trailers, as a connected trailer. In such cases, the driver display may show incorrect speed information.

NOTE

This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

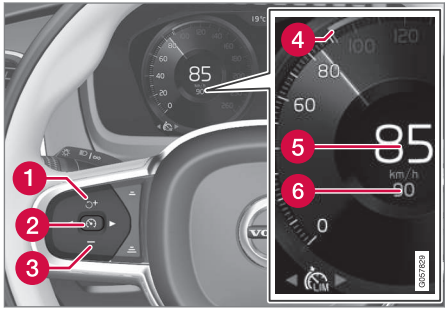
Related information

- Road Sign Information* (p. 282)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)

24 Road Sign Information
25 In cars equipped with Sensus Navigation*.
26 Map data with speed information does not exist for all areas.

Speed limiter

A speed limiter (SL[27]) can be likened to a reverse cruise control - the driver regulates the speed using the accelerator pedal but is prevented from accidentally exceeding a pre-selected/set maximum speed by the speed limiter.



Buttons and symbols for the function.

1. : Activates the speed limiter from standby mode and resumes stored maximum speed
1. + : Increases the stored maximum speed
2. : **From standby mode** – activates the speed limiter and stores current speed
2. : **From active mode** – deactivates/changes the speed limiter to standby mode
3. – : Reduces stored maximum speed
4. Marker for stored max speed
5. The car's current speed
6. Stored maximum speed

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Related information

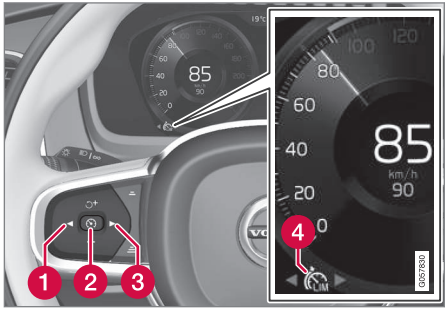
- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Limitations for speed limiter (p. 292)
- Selecting and activating speed limiter (p. 290)
- Deactivating the speed limiter (p. 291)

27 Speed Limiter

- Temporary deactivation of speed limiter (p. 291)
- Set the stored speed for driver support (p. 323)
- Automatic speed limiter (p. 292)

Selecting and activating speed limiter

The speed limiter function (SL[28]) must first be selected and activated in order to be able to regulate the speed.



The speed limiter cannot be activated until after the engine has been started. The lowest maximum speed that can be stored is 30 km/h (20 mph).

1. Press ◂ (1) or ▸ (3) to scroll to the symbol for the speed limiter (4).
   > The symbol is grey – the speed limiter is in standby mode.
2. When speed limiter is selected – press the steering wheel button (2) to activate.
   > The symbol is white – the speed limiter is started and the current speed is stored as maximum speed.

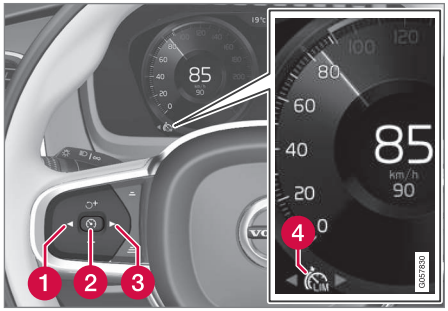
Related information

- Speed limiter (p. 289)
- Deactivating the speed limiter (p. 291)
- Temporary deactivation of speed limiter (p. 291)

28 Speed Limiter

Deactivating the speed limiter

The speed limiter (SL[29]) can be deactivated and switched off.



1. Press the steering wheel button (2).
   > The symbol and indicators turn grey – the speed limiter is set in standby mode and the driver can exceed the set speed limit.
2. Press the steering wheel button ◂ (1) or ▸ (3) to change to another function.
   > The driver display's symbol and indicator for speed limiter (4) are switched off – which deletes the stored maximum speed.

Related information

- Speed limiter (p. 289)
- Selecting and activating speed limiter (p. 290)
- Temporary deactivation of speed limiter (p. 291)

Temporary deactivation of speed limiter

The speed limiter (SL[30]) can be temporarily deactivated and set in standby mode.
The speed limiter can also be temporarily deactivated and overridden with the accelerator pedal without the speed limiter first having to be set in standby mode - e.g. to be able to quickly accelerate the car out of a situation.

In which case, proceed as follows:

1. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and release it to interrupt acceleration when the desired speed has been reached.
   > In this mode, the speed limiter is still activated and the driver display's symbol is therefore WHITE.
2. Fully release the accelerator pedal when the temporary acceleration is finished.
   > The car is then engine-braked automatically to below the last stored maximum speed.

Related information

- Speed limiter (p. 289)
- Selecting and activating speed limiter (p. 290)
- Deactivating the speed limiter (p. 291)

29 Speed Limiter
30 Speed Limiter

Limitations for speed limiter

Speed limiter (SL[31]) has certain general limitations.

On steep downhill gradients the speed limiter's braking effect may be inadequate and hence the stored maximum speed may be exceeded. In this case, the driver is alerted by the message **Speed limit exceeded** in the driver display.

NOTE

A text message that the maximum speed is exceeded will be activated if the speed has been exceeded by at least 3 km/h (approx. 2 mph).

Related information

- Speed limiter (p. 289)

Automatic speed limiter

The Automatic Speed Limiter (ASL[32]) function helps the driver to adapt the car's maximum speed to the speed shown on the road signs.

The Speed Limiter function (SL[33]) can be changed to Automatic Speed Limiter (ASL).

The automatic speed limiter uses speed information from the Road Sign Information* (RSI[34]) function to automatically adapt the car's maximum speed.

WARNING

Even if the driver clearly sees the speed-related road sign, the speed information from the Road Sign Information* (RSI) function to ASL may be incorrect – in such cases the driver must intervene him/herself and accelerate or brake to a suitable speed.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

31 Speed Limiter
32 Automatic Speed Limiter
33 Speed Limiter
34 Road Sign Information

* Option/accessory.

Symbol for automatic speed limiter

The sign symbol (displayed alongside the stored speed, "70", in the centre of the speedometer) can be shown in three colours with the following meanings:

Colour of sign symbol	Meaning
Greenish yellow	The automatic speed limiter is active.
Grey	The automatic speed limiter is set in standby mode.
Orange	Automatic speed limiter is in temporary standby mode - e.g. due to a road sign not being read.

Symbol for which speed limiter function is active

The symbol display in the driver display changes depending on whether it is cruise control or automatic cruise control that is active.

Symbol	SL	ASL
WHITE symbol: Function active, GREY symbol: Standby mode.	✓	✓
Sign symbol after "70" = Automatic Speed Limiter is activated.		✓

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Activating or deactivating the automatic speed limiter (p. 293)
- Changing the tolerance for the automatic speed limiter (p. 294)
- Limitations for automatic speed limiter (p. 295)
- Speed limiter (p. 289)
- Road Sign Information* (p. 282)

Activating or deactivating the automatic speed limiter

The automatic speed limiter function (ASL[35]) can be activated and deactivated as a supplement to the speed limiter (SL[36]).

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

- GREEN button indication – the function is activated. Press the steering wheel button to start the automatic speed limiter with the current speed.
- GREY button indication – the function is deactivated. Normal speed limiter is activated instead.

35 Automatic Speed Limiter
36 Speed Limiter

NOTE

- If the automatic speed limiter function is activated, road sign information (RSI[37]) is shown in the driver display even if the Road Sign Information is not activated.
- To remove road sign information from the driver display, you must deactivate **both** the automatic speed limiter and Road Sign Information.
- When the automatic speed limiter function is activated but Road Sign Information is deactivated, no warnings are given from Road Sign Information. Road Sign Information must also be activated in order to receive warnings.

Deactivating the automatic speed limiter

To deactivate the automatic speed limiter:

– Tap on the button in the function view.
  > GREY button indication – ASL is switched off and SL is activated instead.

WARNING

After switching from ASL to SL the car will no longer follow the signed speed limit but only the stored maximum speed.

Related information

- Speed limiter (p. 289)
- Automatic speed limiter (p. 292)
- Limitations for automatic speed limiter (p. 295)
- Road Sign Information* (p. 282)

Changing the tolerance for the automatic speed limiter

The Automatic Speed Limiter function (ASL[38]) can be set for different tolerance levels. The tolerance is adjusted in the same way as the speed setting is in the speed limiter. If, for example, the car follows a signed speed limit of 70km/h (43 mph) the driver can instead choose to allow the car to maintain 75 km/h (47 mph).

Buttons and symbols for the function

37 Road Sign Information
38 Automatic Speed Limiter

* Option/accessory.

– Press the steering wheel button + (1) until 70 km/h (43 mph) in the centre of the speedometer (2) changes to 75 km/h (47 mph).
  > After which, the car uses the selected tolerance 5 km/h (4 mph) as long as signs passed are showing 70 km/h (43 mph).

The tolerance is followed until a road sign with a lower or higher speed is passed - then the car follows the new signed speed limit instead and the tolerance is deleted from the memory.

NOTE

The maximum selectable tolerance is +/- 10 km/h (5 mph).

Related information

- Automatic speed limiter (p. 292)
- Limitations for automatic speed limiter (p. 295)
- Road Sign Information* (p. 282)

Limitations for automatic speed limiter

Automatic speed limitation (ASL[39]) takes place using speed information from the Road Sign Information function* (RSI[40]) – not from the speed limit road signs that the car passes.

If road sign information cannot interpret and provide speed information to the driver support systems, the automatic speed limiter is set in standby mode and changes to normal speed limiter. In such cases the driver must intervene and brake to a suitable speed.

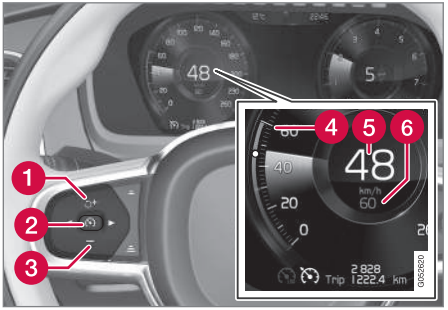
The automatic speed limiter will be reactivated when road sign information can once again interpret and provide speed information.

Related information

- Speed limiter (p. 289)
- Automatic speed limiter (p. 292)
- Road Sign Information* (p. 282)

Cruise control

The cruise control (CC[41]) helps the driver maintain an even speed, which can result in more relaxed driving on motorways and long, straight roads in regular traffic flows.



Buttons and symbols for the function

1 : Activates cruise control from standby mode and resumes stored speed

1 + : Increases the stored speed

2 : **From standby mode** – activates cruise control and stores current speed

2 : **From active mode** – deactivates/ changes cruise control to standby mode

3 – : Reduces stored speed

39 Automatic Speed Limiter
40 Road Sign Information – RSI
41 Cruise Control

4. Marker for stored speed
5. The car's current speed
6. Stored speed

NOTE

In cars equipped with adaptive cruise control* (ACC[42]), it is possible to switch between cruise control and adaptive cruise control.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Using engine braking instead of the foot brake

With Cruise Control, speed is regulated with less frequent application of the foot brake. On a downhill gradient it may sometimes be desirable to start moving a little faster and limit the acceleration by engine braking. In this case the driver can temporarily disable foot brake application by Cruise Control.

To do so, proceed as follows:

– Depress the accelerator pedal about halfway down and release.
  > Cruise Control will disengage its automatic foot braking and then uses engine braking only.

Related information

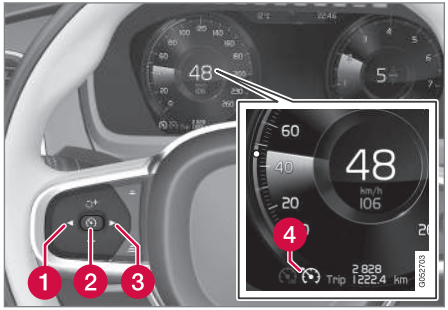
- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Selecting and activating cruise control (p. 297)
- Deactivating cruise control (p. 297)
- Standby mode for cruise control (p. 298)
- Set the stored speed for driver support (p. 323)
- Change between cruise control and adaptive cruise control* in the centre display (p. 305)

42 Adaptive Cruise Control

* Option/accessory.

Selecting and activating cruise control

The cruise control function (CC[43]) must first be selected and activated in order to be able to regulate the speed.



In order to start the cruise control from the standby mode, the car's current speed must be 30 km/h (20 mph) or higher.

1. Press ◂ (1) or ▸ (3) to scroll to the symbol for cruise control (4).
   > The symbol is grey – cruise control is in standby mode.
2. When cruise control is selected – press the steering wheel button (2) to activate.
   > The symbol is white – cruise control is started and the current speed is stored as maximum speed. The lowest speed that can be stored is 30 km/h (20 mph).

Reactivating cruise control to the last stored speed

– When cruise control is selected – press the steering wheel button to activate.
  > The cruise control markings and symbols in the driver display change colour from GREY to WHITE — the car will now follow the most recently stored speed again.

WARNING

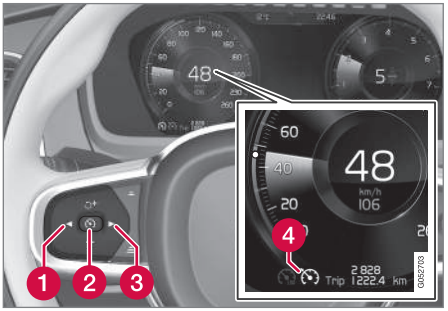
A significant increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the steering wheel button.

Related information

- Cruise control (p. 295)
- Deactivating cruise control (p. 297)
- Standby mode for cruise control (p. 298)

Deactivating cruise control

Cruise control (CC[44]) can be deactivated and switched off.



1. Press the steering wheel button (2).
   > The symbol and indicators turn grey – cruise control is set in standby mode.
2. Press the steering wheel button ◂ (1) or ▸ (3) to change to another function.
   > The driver display's symbol and indicator for cruise control (4) are switched off – which deletes the stored maximum speed.

43 Cruise Control
44 Cruise Control

Related information

- Cruise control (p. 295)
- Change between cruise control and adaptive cruise control* in the centre display (p. 305)
- Selecting and activating cruise control (p. 297)
- Standby mode for cruise control (p. 298)

Standby mode for cruise control

Cruise control (CC[45]) can be deactivated and set in standby mode. This can take place due to driver intervention or automatically.
Standby mode means that the function is selected in the driver display but not activated. In this case, cruise control does not regulate speed.

Standby mode on driver intervention

Cruise control is deactivated and set to standby mode if any of the following occur:

- The foot brake is used.
- The gear selector is moved to **N** position.
- The clutch pedal is held depressed for longer than 1 minute.
- The driver maintains a speed higher than the stored speed for longer than 1 minute.

The driver must then control the speed himself/herself.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Automatic standby mode

Activation of automatic standby mode can be due to one of the following:

- The wheels are losing traction.
- The engine speed is too low/high.
- Brake temperature is too high.
- Speed falls below 30 km/h (20 mph).

The driver must then control the speed himself/herself.

Related information

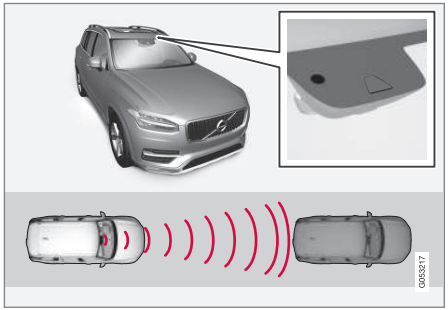
- Cruise control (p. 295)
- Selecting and activating cruise control (p. 297)
- Deactivating cruise control (p. 297)

45 Cruise Control

* Option/accessory.

Adaptive cruise control*[46]

The adaptive cruise control (ACC[47]) can help the driver to maintain a constant speed, combined with a preset time interval to the vehicle ahead.



The camera and radar unit measures the distance to the vehicle ahead.

An adaptive cruise control can provide a more relaxing driving experience on long journeys on motorways and long straight main roads in smooth traffic flows.

The driver selects the desired speed and a time interval to the vehicle ahead. If the camera and radar unit detects a slower vehicle in front of the car, the speed is adapted automatically via the preset time interval to the vehicle.

When the road is clear again the car returns to the selected speed.

The adaptive cruise control aims to:

- regulate the speed smoothly. In situations that demand sudden braking the driver must brake himself/herself. This applies in cases of large speed differences or if the vehicle in front brakes suddenly. Due to the limitations of the radar unit, braking may come unexpectedly or not at all.
- follow the vehicle ahead in the same lane at a time interval set by the driver. If the radar unit cannot see any vehicle in front then the car will instead maintain the speed set and stored by the driver. This also takes place if the speed of the vehicle ahead increases and exceeds the stored speed.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

IMPORTANT

Maintenance of driver support components must only be performed at a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

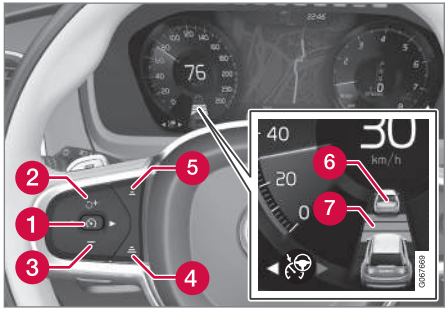
46 This function can come as either standard or an option depending on the market.
47 Adaptive Cruise Control

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Controls for adaptive cruise control* (p. 300)
- Display mode for adaptive cruise control* (p. 301)
- Selecting and activating adaptive cruise control* (p. 302)
- Limitations for adaptive cruise control* (p. 305)
- Symbols and messages for adaptive cruise control* (p. 307)
- Warning from driver support in the event of a collision risk (p. 322)
- Set time interval to vehicle ahead (p. 324)
- Set the stored speed for driver support (p. 323)
- Automatic braking with driver support (p. 326)
- Change of target with driver support (p. 323)
- Overtaking Assistance* (p. 321)

Controls for adaptive cruise control*[48]

A summary of how adaptive cruise control (ACC[49]) is controlled using the left-hand keypad on the steering wheel and how the function is shown in the display.



1 : **From standby mode** - activates and stores the current speed

1 : **From active mode** - deactivates/changes to standby mode

2 : Activates the function from standby mode and resumes stored speed

2 + : Increases the stored speed

3 − : Reduces stored speed

4 Increases the time interval to vehicles ahead

5 Reduces the time interval to vehicles ahead

6 Target vehicle indicator: The function has detected and is following a target vehicle at the preset time interval

7 Symbol for time interval to vehicles ahead

Related information

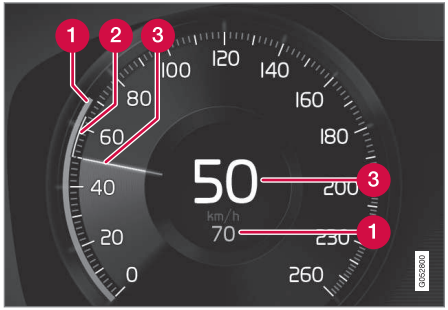
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 299)
- Limitations for adaptive cruise control* (p. 305)

48 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.
49 Adaptive Cruise Control

Display mode for adaptive cruise control*[50]

The following image example shows how Adaptive cruise control (ACC[51]) can be shown in the display in the different context.

Speed



Indication of speeds

1. Stored speed
2. Speed of vehicle ahead
3. Current speed of your car

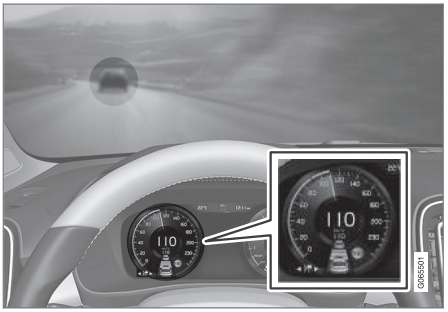
Time interval

The time interval is only adjusted to the vehicle ahead by the Adaptive cruise control when the distance symbol shows two vehicles. At the same time a speed range is marked.

When driving

In the following illustrative example, the road sign information* (RSI[52]) function informs the driver that the maximum permitted speed is 130 km/h (80 mph).

The previous illustration shows that the adaptive cruise control is set to maintain 110 km/h (68 mph) and that there is no vehicle ahead to follow.



The previous illustration shows that the adaptive cruise control is set to maintain 110 km/h (68 mph) and at the same time is following a vehicle ahead which is keeping the same speed.

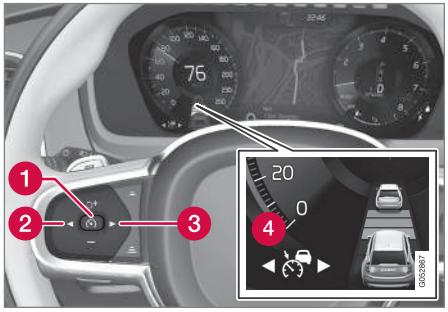
Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 299)
- Limitations for adaptive cruise control* (p. 305)

50 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.
51 Adaptive Cruise Control
52 Road Sign Information

Selecting and activating adaptive cruise control*[53]

Adaptive cruise control (ACC[54]) must first be selected and then activated to enable it to control speed and distance.



To start the function requires the following:

- The driver's seatbelt must be buckled and the driver's door must be closed.
- There must be a vehicle (the "target vehicle") within reasonable distance in front of the car, or the current speed must be at least 15 km/h (9 mph).
- For cars with manual gearbox. Speed must be at the lowest 30 km/h (20 mph).

1. Press the steering wheel button ◂ (2) or ▸ (3) to scroll to the adaptive cruise control symbol (4).
   > The symbol is grey – the adaptive cruise control is in standby mode.
2. When speed limiter is selected – press the steering wheel button (1) to activate.
   > The symbol is white – the speed limiter is started and the current speed is stored as maximum speed.

Reactivating adaptive cruise control to the last stored speed

– When the adaptive cruise control is selected – press the steering wheel button to activate.
  > The cruise control markings and symbols in the driver display change colour from GREY to WHITE — the car will now follow the most recently stored speed again.

WARNING

A significant increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the steering wheel button.

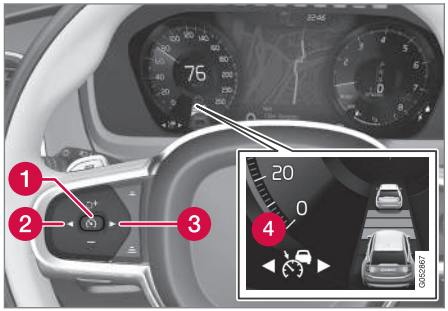
Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 299)
- Deactivating adaptive cruise control* (p. 303)
- Change between cruise control and adaptive cruise control* in the centre display (p. 305)
- Limitations for adaptive cruise control* (p. 305)

53 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.
54 Adaptive Cruise Control

Deactivating adaptive cruise control*[55]

The adaptive cruise control (ACC[56]) can be deactivated and switched off.



1. Press the steering wheel button (1).
   > The symbol and indicators turn grey – the adaptive cruise control is set in standby mode. The indicator for time interval and symbol for target vehicle, if activated, are also switched off.
2. Press the steering wheel button ◂ (2) or ▸ (3) to change to another function.
   > The driver display's symbol and indicator for adaptive cruise control (4) are switched off – which deletes the stored maximum speed.

WARNING

- With the adaptive cruise control is in standby mode, the driver must intervene and regulate both speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.
- When the adaptive cruise control is in standby mode and the car comes too close to a vehicle ahead, the driver may be warned of the short distance by the Distance Warning* function instead.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 299)
- Selecting and activating adaptive cruise control* (p. 302)
- Change between cruise control and adaptive cruise control* in the centre display (p. 305)
- Limitations for adaptive cruise control* (p. 305)

Standby mode for adaptive cruise control*[57]

Adaptive cruise control (ACC[58]) can be deactivated and set to standby mode. This can take place due to driver intervention or automatically.

Standby mode means that the function is selected in the driver display but not activated. Adaptive cruise control does not then regulate the speed or distance to the vehicle in front.

Standby mode on driver intervention

The adaptive cruise control is deactivated and set in standby mode if any of the following occurs:

- The foot brake is used.
- The gear selector is moved to **N** position.
- The driver maintains a speed higher than the stored speed for longer than 1 minute.
- The clutch pedal is depressed for approx. 1 minute - applies to cars with manual gearbox.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

55 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.
56 Adaptive Cruise Control

WARNING

- With the adaptive cruise control is in standby mode, the driver must intervene and regulate both speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.
- When the adaptive cruise control is in standby mode and the car comes too close to a vehicle ahead, the driver may be warned of the short distance by the Distance Warning* function instead.

Automatic standby mode

WARNING

With automatic standby mode, the driver is warned via an acoustic signal and a message on the driver display.

- The driver must then regulate the car's speed, apply the brakes as needed and maintain a safe distance to other vehicles.

Automatic standby mode may be engaged in the event of one of the following:

- One of the systems that Adaptive cruise control is dependent on stops working, e.g. stability control / anti-skid (ESC[59]).
- The driver opens the door.
- The driver takes off the seatbelt.
- The engine speed is too low/high.
- One or more wheels lose traction.
- The brake temperature is high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The camera and radar unit is covered by e.g. snow or heavy rainfall (camera lens/ radio waves are blocked).
- The speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and ACC is uncertain whether the vehicle ahead is a stationary vehicle or an object, such as a speed bump.
- The speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns off so that ACC no longer has a vehicle to follow.
- The speed is reduced to below 30 km/h (20 mph) - only applies to cars with manual gearbox.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 299)
- Selecting and activating adaptive cruise control* (p. 302)
- Deactivating adaptive cruise control* (p. 303)
- Limitations for adaptive cruise control* (p. 305)

57 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.
58 Adaptive Cruise Control
59 Electronic Stability Control

Limitations for adaptive cruise control*[60]

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC[61]) may have limitations in certain situations.

Steep roads and/or heavy load

Bear in mind that the adaptive cruise control is primarily intended for use when driving on level road surfaces. The function may have difficulty in keeping the correct distance from the vehicle ahead when driving on steep downhill slopes - in which case, be extra attentive and ready to brake.

Do not use adaptive cruise control if the car has a heavy load or a trailer is connected to the car.

Drive mode unavailable

Drive mode **Off Road** cannot be selected when the adaptive cruise control is activated.

WARNING

- This is not a collision avoidance system. The driver is always responsible and must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle ahead.
- The function does not brake for humans or animals, and not for small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles. Nor for low trailers, oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles and objects.
- Do not use the function in demanding situations, such as in city traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads or on slip roads.

NOTE

This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 299)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)

Change between cruise control and adaptive cruise control*[62] in the centre display

When the normal cruise control (CC[63]) is selected in the driver display, it is possible to change to adaptive cruise control (ACC[64]) in the centre display's function view.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

- GREEN button indication – adaptive cruise control is deactivated and normal cruise control is set in standby mode.
- GREY button indication – normal cruise control is deactivated and adaptive cruise control is set in standby mode.

A symbol in the driver display shows which cruise control is active:

Cruise control (CC)	Adaptive cruise control (ACC)
A	A

A WHITE symbol: Function active, GREY symbol: Standby mode

60 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.
61 Adaptive Cruise Control
62 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.
63 Cruise Control

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 299)
- Cruise control (p. 295)

64 Adaptive Cruise Control

* Option/accessory.

Symbols and messages for adaptive cruise control*[65]

A number of symbols and messages regarding the Adaptive cruise control (ACC[66]) can be shown in the driver display.

65 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.
66 Adaptive Cruise Control

Symbol	Message	Specification
	The symbol is WHITE	The car is maintaining the stored speed.
	Adaptive Cruise Contr. **Unavailable** The symbol is GREY	Adaptive cruise control is set to standby mode.
	Adaptive Cruise Contr. **Service required** The symbol is GREY	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
	Windscreen sensor **Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual**	Clean the windscreen in front of the camera and radar unit's detectors.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains: Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

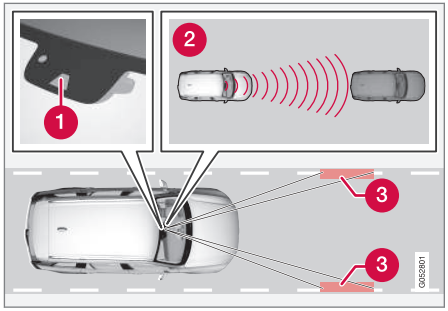
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 299)

* Option/accessory.

Pilot Assist*[67]

Pilot Assist can help the driver to drive the car between the lane's side markings as well as to maintain an even speed, combined with a preselected time interval to the vehicle ahead.

Get to know Pilot Assist



The camera and radar unit measures the distance to the vehicle ahead and detects side markings.

1. Camera and radar unit
2. Distance readers
3. Readers, side markings

Pilot Assist helps to control your car and you may need to drive a few kilometres with Pilot Assist before you feel completely at home with the function. It is important to know about all of the function's applications and limitations in order to safely use all of the advantages.

The Pilot Assist function is primarily intended for use on motorways and similar major roads where it can contribute to more comfortable driving and a more relaxed driving experience.

The driver selects the desired speed and a time interval to the vehicle ahead. Pilot Assist scans the distance to the vehicle ahead and the lane's side markings on the road surface using the camera unit. The preset time interval is maintained with automatic speed adjustment whilst the steering assistance helps to position the car in the lane.

Pilot Assist regulates the speed with acceleration and braking. It is normal for the brakes to emit a low sound when they are being used to adjust the speed.

Pilot Assist strives to:

- regulate the speed smoothly. In situations that demand sudden braking the driver must brake himself/herself. This applies in cases of large speed differences or if the car in front brakes suddenly. Due to the limitations of the camera and radar unit, braking may come unexpectedly or not at all.
- follow the vehicle ahead in the same lane at a time interval set by the driver. If the radar unit cannot see any vehicle in front then the car will instead maintain the speed set and stored by the driver. This also takes place if the speed of the vehicle ahead increases and exceeds the stored speed.

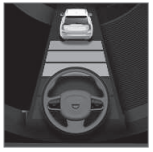
Position of the car in the lane

When Pilot Assist helps to steer, it attempts to place the car halfway between the visible lane markings. For a smoother drive, it is a good idea to allow the car to find a good position. The driver can always adjust the position him/herself by increasing the steering input. It is important that the driver checks to make sure the car is positioned safely in the lane.

If Pilot Assist does not position the car in an appropriate way in the lane, it is recommended to turn Pilot Assist off or switch to adaptive cruise control*.

67 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

Steering assistance



The current status of steering assistance is indicated by the colour of the steering wheel's symbol:

• GREEN steering wheel indicates active steering assistance

• GREY steering wheel (as in illustration) indicates deactivated steering assistance.

Pilot Assist steering assistance takes into account the speed of the preceding car and the lane markings. The driver can at any time ignore the Pilot Assist steering recommendation and steer in another direction, e.g. to change lane or avoid an obstruction on the road.

If Pilot Assist cannot interpret the lane unambiguously, e.g. if the camera and radar unit does not see the lane's side markings, Pilot Assist temporarily deactivates steering assistance, but resumes it if the lane can be interpreted again - although the speed and distance control functions remain active. The steering wheel vibrates slightly when deactivated temporarily in order to alert the driver to the change.

WARNING

Pilot Assist steering assistance is automatically deactivated and is resumed without prior warning.

Round bends and when the road splits

Pilot Assist interacts with the driver, who should therefore not wait for the steering assistance from Pilot Assist but should always be prepared to increase his/her own steering input, especially in bends.

When the car approaches an exit or if the lane splits, the driver should steer towards the desired lane so that Pilot Assist can detect the desired direction.

Hands on the steering wheel

In order for Pilot Assist to function, the driver's hands must be on the steering wheel. It is also important for the driver always to carry on being active and alert when driving as Pilot Assist is unable to read all situations and the function may toggle between off and on without prior warning.

If Pilot Assist detects that the driver does not keep his/her hands on the steering wheel, the system gives a warning with a symbol and text message in the driver display in order to prompt the driver to actively steer the car.

If the driver's hands still cannot be detected on the steering wheel after a few seconds, the prompt to actively steer the car is repeated, supplemented by an acoustic signal.

If Pilot Assist cannot detect the driver's hands on the steering wheel after a further few seconds, the warning signal becomes intensive and the steering function is deactivated. Pilot Assist must then be restarted using the steering wheel button .

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

IMPORTANT

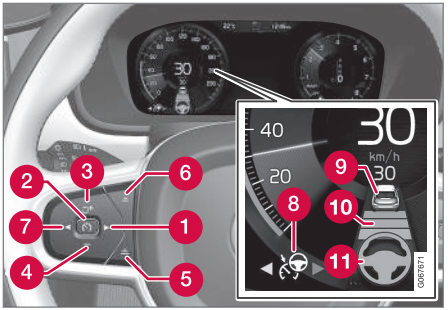
Maintenance of driver support components must only be performed at a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Selecting and activating Pilot Assist* (p. 314)
- Display mode for Pilot Assist* (p. 312)
- Limitations of Pilot Assist* (p. 317)
- Symbols and messages for Pilot Assist* (p. 320)
- Controls for Pilot Assist* (p. 311)
- Warning from driver support in the event of a collision risk (p. 322)
- Change of target with driver support (p. 323)
- Set time interval to vehicle ahead (p. 324)
- Set the stored speed for driver support (p. 323)
- Automatic braking with driver support (p. 326)
- Overtaking Assistance* (p. 321)

Controls for Pilot Assist*[68]

A summary of how Pilot Assist is controlled using the left-hand keypad on the steering wheel and how the function is shown in the display.



Buttons and symbols for the function.

1. ▸: Switches from adaptive cruise control* to Pilot Assist
2. : **From standby mode** - activates Pilot Assist and stores the current speed
2. : **From active mode** - deactivates/ changes Pilot Assist to standby mode
3. : Activates Pilot Assist from standby mode and resumes the stored speed and time interval
3. + : Increases the stored speed

68 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

4. — : Reduces stored speed
5. Increases the time interval to vehicles ahead
6. Reduces the time interval to vehicles ahead
7. ◂: Switches from Pilot Assist to adaptive cruise control
8. Function symbol
9. Symbols for target car
10. Symbol for time interval to vehicles ahead
11. Symbol for activated/deactivated steering assistance

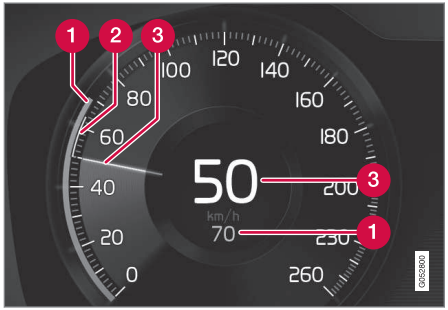
Related information

- Pilot Assist* (p. 309)

Display mode for Pilot Assist*[69]

The following image example shows how Pilot Assist can be shown in the display in different contexts.

Speed



Indication of speeds.

1. Stored speed
2. Speed of vehicle ahead
3. Current speed of your car

Time interval

Pilot Assist only regulates the time interval to the vehicle ahead when the distance symbol shows a vehicle (1) above the steering wheel symbol.

Pilot Assist steering assistance is only active when the steering wheel symbol (2) has changed from GREY to GREEN.

When driving

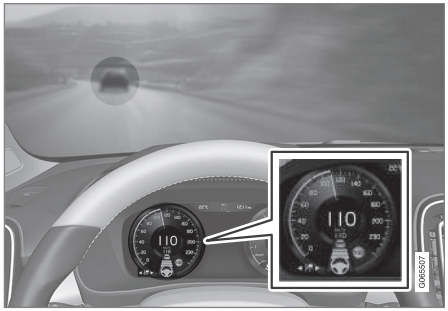
In the following illustrative example, the road sign information (RSI[70]) function informs the driver that the maximum permitted speed is 130 km/h (80 mph).

69 This function can come as either standard or an option depending on the market.
70 Road Sign Information

* Option/accessory.

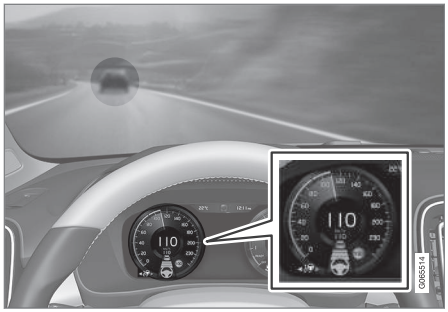
The previous illustration shows that Pilot Assist is set to maintain 110 km/h (68 mph) and that there is no vehicle ahead to follow.

Pilot Assist provides no steering assistance since the lane's side markings cannot be detected.



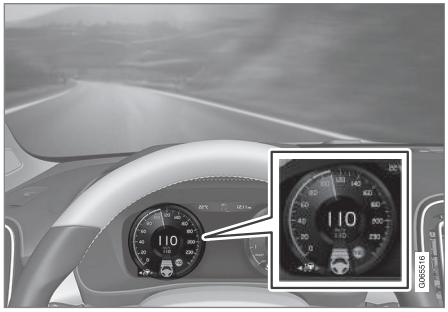
The previous illustration shows that Pilot Assist is set to maintain 110 km/h (68 mph) and at the same time is following a vehicle ahead which is keeping the same speed.

Pilot Assist provides no steering assistance since the lane's side markings cannot be detected.



The previous illustration shows that Pilot Assist is set to maintain 110 km/h (68 mph) and at the same time is following a vehicle ahead which is keeping the same speed.

Here, Pilot Assist also provides steering assistance since the lane's side markings can be detected.



The previous illustration shows that Pilot Assist is set to maintain 110 km/h (68 mph) and that there is no vehicle ahead to follow.

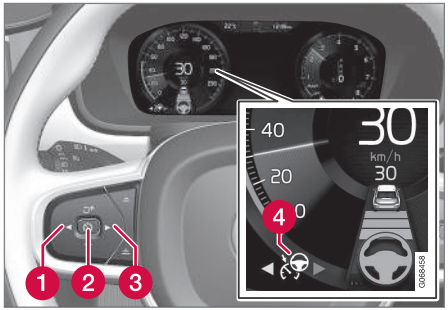
Pilot Assist provides steering assistance as the lane markings can be detected.

Related information

- Pilot Assist* (p. 309)
- Limitations of Pilot Assist* (p. 317)

Selecting and activating Pilot Assist*[71]

Pilot Assist must first be selected and then activated to be able to control speed and distance and to give steering assistance.



Green steering wheel indicates that Pilot Assist is providing steering assistance.

In order to start the Pilot Assist it is required that.

- The driver's seatbelt must be buckled and the driver's door must be closed.
- The lane's edge markings must be clear and must be detected by the car.
- There must be a vehicle (the "target vehicle") within reasonable distance in front of the car, or the current speed must be at least 15 km/h (9 mph).
- The speed must not exceed 140 km/h (87 mph).
- The driver must keep his/her hands on the steering wheel.
- There must be a vehicle (the "target vehicle") within reasonable distance in front of the car, or the current speed must be at least 15 km/h (9 mph).
- For cars with manual gearbox. Speed must be at the lowest 30 km/h (20 mph).

1. Press ◂ (1) or ▸ (3) to scroll to the symbol for Pilot Assist (4).
   > The symbol is grey – Pilot Assist is in standby mode.
2. When Pilot Assist is selected – press the steering wheel button (2) to activate.
   > The symbol is white – Pilot Assist is started and the current speed is stored as maximum speed.

Reactivating Pilot Assist to last stored speed

– When Pilot Assist is selected – press the steering wheel button to activate.
  > The cruise control markings and symbols in the driver display change colour from GREY to WHITE — the car will now follow the most recently stored speed again.

WARNING

A significant increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the steering wheel button.

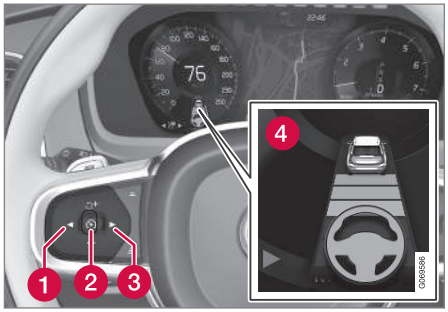
Related information

- Pilot Assist* (p. 309)
- Deactivate Pilot Assist* (p. 315)
- Limitations of Pilot Assist* (p. 317)

71 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

Deactivate Pilot Assist*[72]

Pilot Assist can be deactivated and switched off.



Green steering wheel indicates that Pilot Assist is providing steering assistance.

1. Press the steering wheel button (2).
   > The symbol and indicators turn grey – Pilot Assist is set in standby mode. The indicator for time interval and symbol for target vehicle, if activated, are also switched off.
2. Press the steering wheel button ◂ (1) or ▸ (3) to change to another function.
   > The driver display's symbol and indicator for Pilot Assist (4) are switched off – which deletes the stored maximum speed.

WARNING

- With Pilot Assist in standby mode, the driver must intervene and steer, regulating both speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.
- When Pilot Assist is in standby mode and the car comes too close to a vehicle ahead, the driver is warned of the short distance by the distance warning* function instead.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 299)
- Selecting and activating adaptive cruise control* (p. 302)
- Change between cruise control and adaptive cruise control* in the centre display (p. 305)
- Limitations for adaptive cruise control* (p. 305)
- Temporary disabling of steering assistance with Pilot Assist* (p. 316)

Standby mode for Pilot Assist*[73]

Pilot Assist can be deactivated and set in standby mode. This can take place due to driver intervention or automatically.

Standby mode means that the function is selected in the driver display but not activated. In this case, Pilot Assist does not regulate the speed or distance to the vehicle in front, or provide steering assistance.

Standby mode on driver intervention

Pilot Assist is deactivated and set in standby mode if any of the following occurs:

- The foot brake is used.
- The gear selector is moved to **N** position.
- The direction indicators are used for longer than 1 minute.
- The driver maintains a speed higher than the stored speed for longer than 1 minute.
- The clutch pedal is depressed for approx. 1 minute - applies to cars with manual gearbox.

72 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

Automatic standby mode

WARNING

With automatic standby mode, the driver is warned via an acoustic signal and a message on the driver display.

- The driver must then regulate the car's speed, apply the brakes as needed and maintain a safe distance to other vehicles.

Automatic standby mode may be engaged in the event of one of the following.

- One of the systems that Pilot Assist is dependent on stops working, e.g. stability control / anti-skid [74].
- Hands not holding the steering wheel.
- The driver opens the door.
- The driver takes off the seatbelt.
- The engine speed is too low/high.
- One or more wheels lose traction.
- The brake temperature is high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The camera and radar unit is covered by e.g. snow or heavy rainfall (camera lens/ radio waves are blocked).
- The speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and Pilot Assist is uncertain whether the vehicle ahead is a stationary vehicle or an object, such as a speed bump.
- The speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns off so that Pilot Assist no longer has a vehicle to follow.
- The speed is reduced to below 30 km/h (20 mph) - only applies to cars with manual gearbox.

Related information

- Pilot Assist* (p. 309)
- Selecting and activating Pilot Assist* (p. 314)
- Deactivate Pilot Assist* (p. 315)
- Limitations of Pilot Assist* (p. 317)

Temporary disabling of steering assistance with Pilot Assist*[75]

Pilot Assist steering assistance can be temporarily disabled and resumed without prior warning.

When the direction indicators are used, Pilot Assist steering assistance is temporarily disengaged. When the direction indicator is switched off, steering assistance is reactivated automatically if the lane's edge markings can still be detected.

If Pilot Assist is unable to interpret the lane clearly, e.g. if the camera or radar unit is unable to see the side markings for the lane, Pilot Assist temporarily disables steering assistance – speed and distance regulation functions remain active. Steering assistance is resumed when the lane can be interpreted again. In these situations, slight vibration in the steering wheel may alert the driver to the fact that steering assistance has been deactivated temporarily.

Related information

- Pilot Assist* (p. 309)
- Selecting and activating Pilot Assist* (p. 314)

73 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.
74 Electronic Stability Control
75 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

- Deactivate Pilot Assist* (p. 315)
- Limitations of Pilot Assist* (p. 317)

Limitations of Pilot Assist*[76]

The Pilot Assist function may have limitations in certain situations.

The Pilot Assist function is an aid which can help the driver in many situations. But the driver is at all times responsible for maintaining a safe distance to surrounding objects and a correct position in the lane.

⚠ WARNING

In certain situations, Pilot Assist steering assistance may have difficulty helping the driver in the right way or it may be automatically deactivated - in which case, the use of Pilot Assist is not recommended. Examples of such situations may be that:

- the lane markings are unclear, worn, missing, or they cross each other, or if there are several sets of lane markings.
- the lane division is changed, e.g. when the lanes split or merge, as well as on slip roads.
- at roadworks and sudden changes in the roadway, e.g. when the lines may stop marking the correct route.
- edges or other lines than lane markings are present on or near the road, e.g. kerbs, joints or repairs to the road surface, edges of barriers, roadside edges or strong shadows.
- the lane is narrow or winding.
- the lane contains ridges or holes.
- weather conditions are poor, e.g. rain, snow or fog or slush or impaired view

76 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

with poor light conditions, back-lighting, wet road surface etc.

The driver should also note that Pilot Assist has the following limitations:

- High kerbs, roadside barriers, temporary obstacles (traffic cones, safety barriers, etc.) are not detected. Alternatively, they may be detected incorrectly as lane markings, with a subsequent risk of contact between the car and such obstacles. The driver must ensure him/herself that the car is at a suitable distance from such obstacles.
- The camera and radar sensor does not have the capacity to detect all oncoming objects and obstacles in traffic environments, e.g. potholes, stationary obstacles or objects which completely or partially block the route.
- Pilot Assist does not "see" pedestrians, animals, etc.
- The functions steering assist is force limited, which means that Pilot Assist cannot always help the driver to steer and keep the car within the lane.
- In cars equipped with Sensus Navigation*, the function has the option of using information from map data, which may result in varied performance.
- Pilot Assist is switched off if the power steering for speed related steering force is working with reduced power – e.g. during cooling due to overheating.

WARNING

Pilot Assist must only be used if there are clear lane lines painted on each side of the lane. All other use involves increased risk of contact with surrounding obstacles that cannot be detected by the function.

WARNING

- This is not a collision avoidance system. The driver is always responsible and must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle ahead.
- The function does not brake for humans or animals, and not for small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles. Nor for low trailers, oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles and objects.
- Do not use the function in demanding situations, such as in city traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads or on slip roads.

The driver always has the possibility of correcting or adjusting a steering intervention imposed by Pilot Assist and can turn the steering wheel to the desired position.

Steep roads and/or heavy load

Bear in mind that Pilot Assist is primarily intended for use when driving on level road surfaces. The function may have difficulty in keeping the correct distance from the vehicle ahead when driving on steep downhill slopes - in which case, be extra attentive and ready to brake.

Do not use Pilot Assist if the car has a heavy load or a trailer is connected to the car.

NOTE

Pilot Assist cannot be activated if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is connected to the car's electrical system.

Drive mode unavailable

Off Road drive mode cannot be selected when Pilot Assist is activated.

NOTE

This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

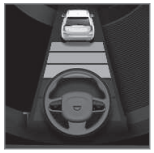
* Option/accessory.

Related information

- Pilot Assist* (p. 309)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)
- Speed-dependent steering force (p. 274)
- Drive modes (p. 451)

Symbols and messages for Pilot Assist*[77]

A number of symbols and messages regarding Pilot Assist can be shown via the driver display.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Grey steering wheel symbol	Indicates deactivated steering assistance. When Pilot Assist provides steering assistance, the steering wheel is green.
	Symbol for hands on the steering wheel	The system cannot detect whether the driver has his/her hands on the steering wheel. Place your hands on the steering wheel and actively steer the car.
	Windscreen sensor **Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual**	Clean the windscreen in front of the camera and radar unit's detectors.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains: Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Pilot Assist* (p. 309)
- Limitations of Pilot Assist* (p. 317)

77 This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

Overtaking Assistance*

Overtaking Assistance can help the driver when overtaking other vehicles. The function can be used with adaptive cruise control* or Pilot Assist*.

When adaptive cruise control or Pilot Assist is following another vehicle and the driver indicates the intention to overtake by activating the direction indicator[78], the systems help by accelerating the vehicle towards the vehicle ahead **before** the driver's vehicle reaches the overtaking lane.

The function then delays reducing speed in order to avoid premature braking when the driver's car is approaching a slower vehicle.

The function remains active until the driver's vehicle has cleared the overtaken vehicle.

WARNING

Be aware that this function can be activated in more situations than during overtaking, e.g. when a direction indicator is used to indicate a change of lane or exit to another road – the car will then accelerate briefly.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Use Overtaking Assistance (p. 321)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 299)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 309)

Use Overtaking Assistance

Overtaking assistance can be used with adaptive cruise control* or Pilot Assist*. There are a number of criteria if Overtaking Assistance is to be used.

The following conditions must exist for Overtaking Assistance to be activated:

- there must be a vehicle in front (the "target vehicle")
- your car's **current speed** is at least 70 km/h (43 mph)
- **the stored speed** must be high enough for overtaking to take place safely.

To start the Overtaking Assistance:

– Activate the direction indicator.

Use the left-hand direction indicator in a left-hand drive car right in a right-hand drive car.

> Overtaking Assistance is started.

78 On left flash only in left-hand-drive car, or right flash in right-hand-drive car.

WARNING

When using the Overtaking Assistance System, the driver should be aware that there may be undesired acceleration if the conditions suddenly change.

Some situations should therefore be avoided, such as if:

- the car is approaching an exit to turn-off in the same direction as overtaking would normally occur.
- the vehicle ahead slows down before the driver's car has crossed over into the overtaking lane.
- the traffic in the overtaking lane slows down.
- a right-hand drive car is driven in a county with left-hand traffic (or vice versa).

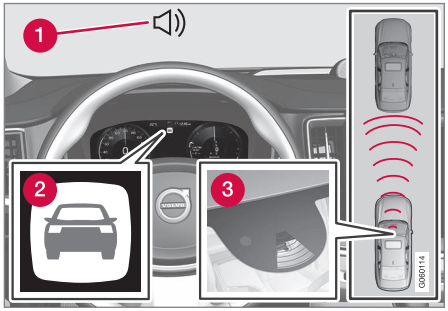
Situations of this kind can be avoided by temporarily setting adaptive cruise control or Pilot Assist in standby mode.

Related information

- Overtaking Assistance* (p. 321)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 299)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 309)
- Standby mode for adaptive cruise control* (p. 303)
- Standby mode for Pilot Assist* (p. 315)

Warning from driver support in the event of a collision risk

The driver support systems of adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* can warn the driver if the distance to the vehicle ahead suddenly becomes too short.



Audio and symbol for collision warning

1. Acoustic signal in the event of a risk of collision
2. Warning signal in the event of a risk of collision
3. Distance measurement with the camera and radar unit

Adaptive cruise control and Pilot Assist use approx. 40% of the capacity of the foot brake. If the car needs to be braked more heavily than the driver support is capable of and the driver does not brake, the warning lamp and acoustic warning are activated to alert the driver that immediate intervention is required.

WARNING

The driver support systems only warn of vehicles which their radar unit has detected – hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay. Never wait for a warning. Apply the brakes when the situation requires.

Related information

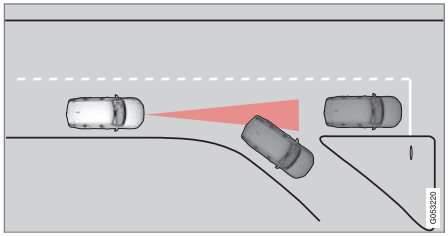
- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 299)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 309)

* Option/accessory.

Change of target with driver support

The driver supports of adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist*, in combination with automatic transmission, have a change of target function at certain speeds.

Change of target



If the target vehicle in front suddenly turns then there may be stationary traffic in front.

When the driver supports are following another vehicle at speeds **below** 30 km/h (20 mph) and changes target vehicle – from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle – the driver supports will slow down for the stationary vehicle.

WARNING

When the driver supports are following another vehicle at speeds **in excess of** approx. 30 km/h (20 mph) and the target is changed from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle, the driver supports will **ignore** the stationary vehicle and instead accelerate to the stored speed.

- The driver must then intervene him/herself and brake.

Automatic standby mode with change of target

The driver supports are disengaged and set in standby mode:

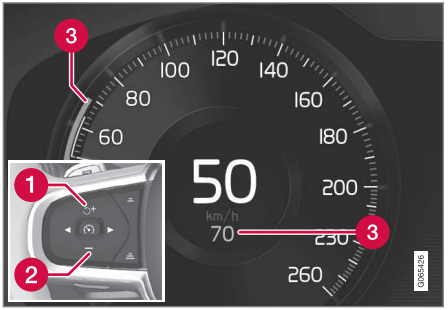
- when the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the driver supports are uncertain whether the target object is a stationary vehicle or another object, such as a speed bump.
- when the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns off so that the driver supports no longer have a vehicle to follow.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 299)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 309)

Set the stored speed for driver support

It is possible to set stored speed for the speed limiter, cruise control, adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* functions.



1. **+** : Increases the stored speed
2. **−** : Reduces stored speed
3. Stored speed

– Change a set speed with short presses on the steering wheel buttons + (1) or − (2) or by pressing and holding them.
  - **Short** presses: Each press changes the speed in increments of +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph).
  - **Press** and **hold**: Release the button when the speed indicator (3) has moved to the desired speed.
  > The speed set after the last button press is stored in the memory.

Effect of the accelerator pedal

If the driver increases the car's speed using the accelerator pedal before pressing the steering wheel button + (1), the speed stored will be the car's speed when the button is depressed, provided the driver's foot is on the accelerator pedal at the moment when the button is depressed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Possible speed

Automatic gearbox

The driver support functions can follow another vehicle at speeds from 0 km/h up to 200 km/h (125 mph).

Pilot Assist can give steering assistance from almost stationary up to 140 km/h (87 mph).

Note that the lowest programmable speed is 30 km/h (20 mph) – even though it is capable of following another vehicle down to 0 km/h, a speed lower than 30 km/h (20 mph) cannot be selected/stored.

Manual gearbox

the driver support functions can follow another vehicle at speeds from 30 km/h (20 mph) up to 200 km/h (125 mph).

Pilot Assist can give steering assistance from 30 km/h (20 mph) up to 140 km/h (87 mph).

The lowest programmable speed is 30 km/h (20 mph) – the maximum speed is 200 km/h (125 mph).

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Speed limiter (p. 289)
- Cruise control (p. 295)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 299)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 309)

Set time interval to vehicle ahead

It is possible to set the time interval to the vehicle ahead to be maintained by the adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* functions.

Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the driver display as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line represents about 1 second to the vehicle in front, 5 lines represents about 3 seconds.

NOTE

When the symbol in the driver display shows a car and a steering wheel, Pilot Assist follows a vehicle in front at a preset time gap.

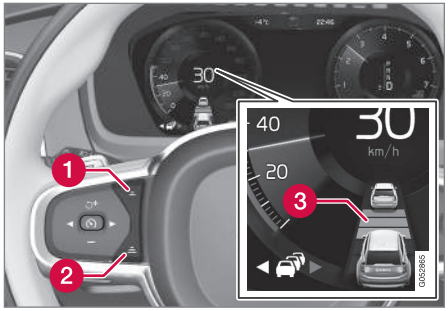
When only one steering wheel is shown, there is no vehicle within a reasonable distance ahead.

* Option/accessory.

NOTE

When the symbol in the driver display shows two cars, adaptive cruise control is following the vehicle in front at a pre-set time interval.

When only one car is shown, there is no vehicle within a reasonable distance ahead.



Control for time interval.

1. Decrease time interval
2. Increase time interval
3. Distance indicator

– Press the steering wheel button (1) or (2) to increase or decrease the time interval.
  > The distance indicator (3) shows the current time interval.

The adaptive cruise control allows the time interval to vary significantly in certain situations in order to allow the car to follow the vehicle in front smoothly and comfortably. At low speed, when the distances are short, the adaptive cruise control increases the time interval slightly.

NOTE

- The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.
- Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.
- If the driver supports do not seem to respond with a speed increase when activated, it may be because the time window to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the set time window.

WARNING

- Only use a time window that suits the current traffic conditions.
- The driver should be aware that short time windows limit the amount of time available to react and take action in an unexpected traffic situation.

Related information

- Drive modes when using time interval to vehicles (p. 326)
- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 299)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 309)

Drive modes when using time interval to vehicles

The driver can select different driving styles for how driver support should maintain the preset time interval to the vehicle ahead.
Selection is made via the drive mode control **DRIVE MODE**.

Select one of the following options:

- **Pure** – The driver support focuses on good fuel economy, which means longer time interval to the vehicle ahead.
- **Hybrid** – The driver support focuses on following the set time interval to the vehicle ahead as smoothly as possible.
- **Power** – The driver support focuses on following the set time interval to the vehicle ahead more closely, which in certain cases may mean heavier acceleration and braking.

Related information

- Set time interval to vehicle ahead (p. 324)
- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Drive modes (p. 451)

Automatic braking with driver support

The driver supports of adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* have a special brake function in slow traffic and while stationary. In certain situations, the parking brake is applied in order to keep the car stationary.

Brake function in slow queues and while stationary

For shorter stops in connection with inching in slow traffic or at traffic lights, driving is automatically resumed if the stops do not exceed approx. 3 seconds - if it takes longer before the vehicle in front starts moving again then the driver support function is set in standby mode with automatic braking.

– The function is reactivated in one of the following ways:

- Press the steering wheel button .
- Depress the accelerator pedal.

> The function resumes following the vehicle ahead if it starts moving forward within approx. 6 seconds.

WARNING

A significant increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the steering wheel button.

WARNING

Driver supports only warn of obstacles which their radar unit has detected – hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay.

- Never wait for a warning or intervention. Apply the brakes when the situation requires.

NOTE

The driver supports can hold the car stationary for a maximum of 10 minutes – then the parking brake is applied and the function is disengaged.

Before the driver supports can be reactivated, the parking brake must be released.

* Option/accessory.

Cessation of automatic braking

In some situations, automatic braking ceases on coming to a standstill and the function is set in standby mode. This means that the brakes are released and the car may start to roll - the driver must therefore intervene and brake the car himself/herself to keep it stationary.

This may take place in any of the following situations:

- The driver puts his/her foot on the brake pedal.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The gear selector is moved to **P**, **N**, or **R** position.
- The driver sets the adaptive cruise control or Pilot Assist to standby mode.

Automatic activation of parking brake

The Parking brake is applied if the function is holding the car stationary with the foot brake and:

- The driver opens the door or takes off his/her seatbelt.
- The function has kept the car stationary for more than approx. 10 minutes.
- The brakes have overheated.
- The driver switches the engine off.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 299)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 309)
- Brake functions (p. 435)

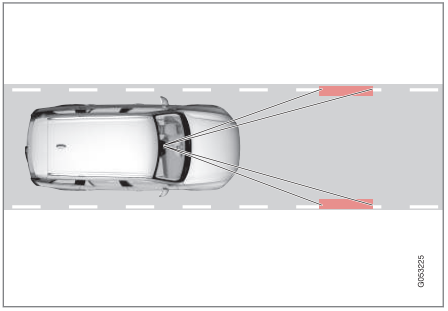
Lane assistance

The function of the Lane Keeping Aid (LKA[79]) is to help the driver to reduce the risk of the car accidentally leaving its own lane on motorways and similar major routes.

Lane Keeping Aid steers the car back into its lane and/or alerts the driver with vibrations in the steering wheel.

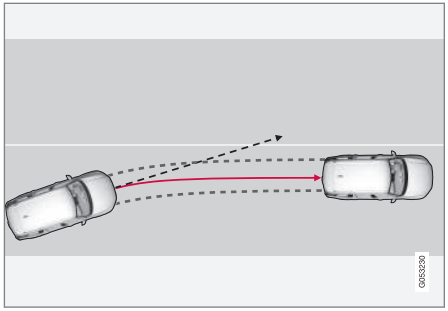
Lane Keeping Aid is active within the speed range 65–200 km/h (40–125 mph) on roads with clearly visible side lines.

On narrow roads the function may be unavailable, in which case it goes into standby mode. The function becomes available again when the road is wide enough.

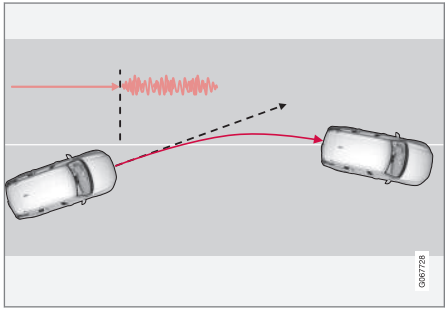


A camera reads the side lines of the road/lane.

79 Lane Keeping Aid



Lane assistance steers the car back into its lane.



Lane assistance warns with steering wheel vibrations.

Depending on settings, lane assistance acts in accordance with the following:

- **Assist** activated: When the car is approaching a lane line, the function will actively steer the car back into its lane by applying a slight torque to the steering wheel.
- **Warning** activated: If the car is about to cross a lane line, the driver is warned by means of vibrations in the steering wheel.

There is also an option where both steering assistance and warning are activated simultaneously.

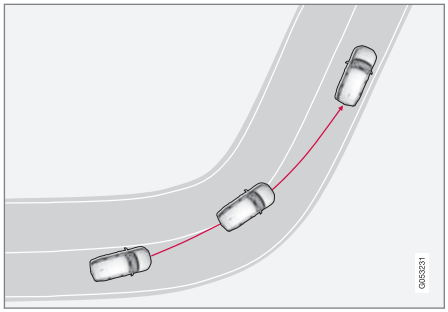
NOTE

When a direction indicator/flasher is switched on, there are no steering corrections or alerts from lane assistance.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Lane assistance does not intervene



Lane assistance does not engage on sharp inside curves.

In some situations, lane assistance allows lane lines to be crossed without intervening with either steering assistance or a warning – e.g. when using the direction indicators or if the car is allowed to cut the corners in bends.

Hands on the steering wheel

For steering assistance with lane assistance to work, the driver must have his/her hands on the steering wheel, which the system will continue to monitor.

If the driver does not keep his/her hands on the steering wheel, a warning signal is heard and a message encourages the driver to steer the car actively:

- **Lane Keeping Aid Apply steering**

If the driver follows the prompt to start steering, the function is set in standby mode and this message is shown:

- **Lane Keeping Aid Standby until steering applied**

The function will then be unavailable until the driver starts to steer the car again.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Activating or deactivating lane assistance (p. 329)
- Limitations of Lane assistance (p. 330)
- Symbols and messages for lane assistance (p. 331)

Activating or deactivating lane assistance

The Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) function (LKA[80]) is optional – the driver can choose to activate or deactivate this function.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

- GREEN button indication – the function is activated.
- GREY button indication – the function is deactivated.

Related information

- Lane assistance (p. 327)
- Selecting assistance option for lane assistance (p. 330)
- Limitations of Lane assistance (p. 330)

Selecting assistance option for lane assistance

The driver can select how the Lane Keeping Aid (LKA[81]) should react if the car leaves its lane.

1. Select **Settings** ➔ **My Car** ➔ **IntelliSafe** in the centre display's top view.
2. In the event of **Lane Keeping Aid Mode**, select how the function should react:
   - **Assist** – the driver is given steering assistance without a warning.
   - **Warning** – the driver is only warned by steering wheel vibration.
   - **Both** – the driver is given a warning both from the steering wheel vibrating and from steering assistance.

Related information

- Lane assistance (p. 327)

Limitations of Lane assistance

In certain demanding conditions lane assistance (LKA[82]) may have difficulty helping the driver correctly. In such cases it is recommended to switch off this function.

Examples of such conditions are:

- road works
- winter road conditions
- poor road surface
- a very “sporty” driving style
- poor weather with reduced visibility
- roads with unclear or non-existent side markings
- sharp edges or lines other than the lane's side markings
- as the steering servo for speed-dependent steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power – e.g. when cooling due to overheating.

The function is unable to detect barriers, rails or similar obstacles at the side of the carriageway.

NOTE

This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Related information

- Lane assistance (p. 327)
- Speed-dependent steering force (p. 274)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)

80 Lane Keeping Aid
81 Lane Keeping Aid
82 Lane Keeping Aid

Symbols and messages for lane assistance

A number of symbols and messages regarding lane assistance (LKA[83]) can be shown on the driver display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Driver support system **Reduced functionality Service required**	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[A].
	Windscreen sensor **Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual**	The ability of the camera to scan the roadway in front of the car is reduced.

83 Lane Keeping Aid

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Lane Keeping Aid **Apply steering**	The LKA steering assistance does not function if the driver does not have his/her hands on the steering wheel. Follow the instruction and steer the car.
	Lane Keeping Aid **Standby until steering applied**	LKA is set in standby mode until the driver starts to steer the car again.

A An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message persists, contact a workshop[A].

Related information

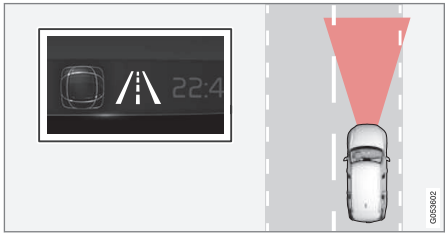
- Lane assistance (p. 327)
- Display mode for lane assistance (p. 333)
- Limitations of Lane assistance (p. 330)

Display mode for lane assistance

Lane assistance (LKA[84]) is visualised by symbols in the driver display depending on the situation.

Here are some examples of symbols and the situations in which they are shown:

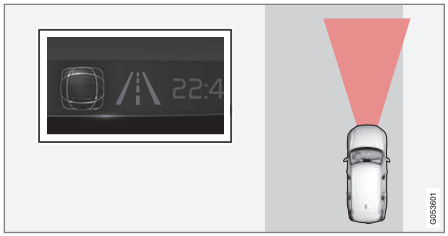
Available



Available — the lane lines in the symbol are WHITE.

Lane assistance is scanning one or both lane lines.

Unavailable



Unavailable — the lane lines in the symbol are GREY.

The Lane assistance cannot detect the lane lines, the speed is too low or the road is too narrow.

Indication of steering assistance/warning

Steering assistance/warning - the lane lines in the symbol are COLOURED.

Lane assistance indicates that the system is giving a warning and/or attempting to steer the car back into the lane.

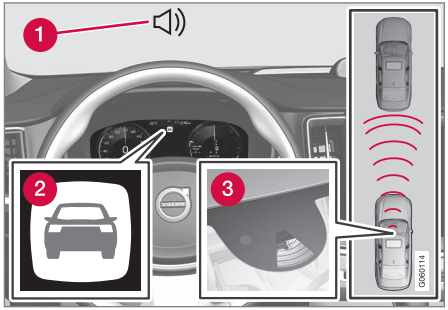
Related information

- Lane assistance (p. 327)
- Limitations of Lane assistance (p. 330)

84 Lane Keeping Aid

City Safety™

City Safety[85] can use lights, sound and a brake pulse warning to alert the driver to pedestrians, cyclists, larger animals and vehicles.



Function overview

1. Acoustic signal in the event of a risk of collision
2. Warning signal in the event of a risk of collision
3. Distance measurement with the camera and radar unit

The function can help the driver avoid a collision when, for example, driving in heavy traffic, where changes in the traffic ahead coupled with inattentiveness can lead to an incident. City Safety then activates brief, heavy braking and the car normally stops just behind the vehicle in front.

The function helps the driver by automatically braking the car in the event of an imminent risk of collision if the driver does not react in time by braking and/or swerving.

City Safety is activated in situations where the driver should have started braking earlier, which is why it cannot help the driver in every situation. The function is designed to be activated as late as possible in order to avoid unnecessary intervention. Automatic braking takes place only after or at the same time as the collision warning.

The driver or passengers are not normally aware of City Safety - it only intervenes in a situation where a collision is immediately imminent.

⚠ WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Subfunctions for City Safety (p. 335)
- Setting the warning distance for City Safety (p. 337)

85 The function is not available in all markets.

- Detection of obstacles with City Safety (p. 338)
- City Safety brakes for oncoming vehicles (p. 342)
- Automatic braking in the event of an impeded evasive manoeuvre with City Safety (p. 341)
- City Safety in cross traffic (p. 340)
- Limitations of City Safety (p. 343)
- Messages for City Safety (p. 346)

Subfunctions for City Safety

City Safety[86] can help to prevent a collision or reduce the collision speed. The function consists of several subfunctions.

Ability to reduce speed

If the speed difference between the driver's car and the obstacle is greater than the following specified speeds, the City Safety autobrake function cannot prevent a collision but it can mitigate the consequences of a collision.

Vehicles

For a vehicle in front, City Safety can reduce the speed by up to 60 km/h (37 mph).

Cyclists

For a cyclist, City Safety can reduce the speed by up to 50 km/h (30 mph).

Pedestrians

For a pedestrian, City Safety can reduce speed by up to 45 km/h (28 mph).

Large animals

In the event of a risk of a collision with a large animal, City Safety can reduce the car's speed by up to 15 km/h (9 mph).

The brake function for large animals is primarily intended to reduce the force of the impact at higher speeds and is most effective at speeds above 70 km/h (43 mph) but less effective at lower speed.

The steps of City Safety

City Safety carries out three steps in the following order:

1. Collision warning
2. Brake support
3. Auto Brake

1 - Collision warning

The driver is first warned of a potentially imminent collision.

City Safety can detect pedestrians, cyclists or vehicles that are stationary or moving in the same direction as the car and are ahead. City Safety can also detect pedestrians, cyclists or large animals that are crossing the road in front of the car.

In the event of a risk of collision with a pedestrian, larger animal, cyclist or vehicle, the driver is alerted by means of a visual, acoustic and brake pulse warning. There is no brake pulse warning at lower speeds, sudden driver braking or acceleration. The brake pulse frequency varies according to the car's speed.

86 The function is not available in all markets.

2 - Brake support
If the risk of collision has increased further after the collision warning then the brake support is activated.

Brake support reinforces the driver's braking action if the system considers that the braking is not sufficient to avoid a collision.

3 - Auto Brake
The automatic brake function is activated last.

If in this situation the driver has not yet started to take evasive action and the risk of collision is imminent then the automatic braking function is deployed - this takes place irrespective of whether or not the driver brakes. Braking then takes place with full brake force in order to reduce collision speed, or with limited brake force if it is sufficient to avoid a collision.

The seatbelt tensioner can be activated in connection with the engagement of the automatic brake function.

In some situations, the action of Auto-brake may begin with light braking and then progress to full brake action.

When City Safety has prevented a collision with a stationary object, the car remains stationary in anticipation of positive action by the driver. If the car has been braked to avoid collision with a slower vehicle in front, its speed is reduced to match that of the vehicle in front.

NOTE

On cars with manual gearbox, the engine stops when the Auto-brake function has stopped the car, unless the driver has managed to depress the clutch pedal beforehand.

The driver can always interrupt a braking intervention by firmly depressing the accelerator pedal.

NOTE

When City Safety brakes, the brake lights come on.

When City Safety is activated and brakes the vehicle, the driver display shows a text message to the effect that the function is/has been active.

WARNING

City Safety must not be used by the driver to change his/her driving style - the driver must not rely on City Safety alone and allow it to do the braking.

Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 334)
- City Safety in cross traffic (p. 340)
- City Safety brakes for oncoming vehicles (p. 342)
- Limitations of City Safety (p. 343)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 49)

Setting the warning distance for City Safety

City Safety[87] is always activated, but the driver can select the warning distance for the function.

NOTE

The City Safety function cannot be deactivated. It is activated automatically when the engine/electric operation is started and remains switched on until the engine/electric operation is switched off.

The warning distance determines the sensitivity of the system and regulates the distance at which a visual, acoustic and brake pulse warning should be deployed.

To select warning distance:

1. Select **Settings** ➔ **My Car** ➔ **IntelliSafe** in the centre display's top view.
2. Under **City Safety Warning**, select either **Late**, **Normal** or **Early** to set the desired warning distance.

If the **Early** setting produces too many warnings, which could be perceived as irritating in certain situations, the **Normal** or **Late** warning distance can be selected.

When warnings are perceived as being too frequent or disturbing, the warning distance can be reduced, which reduces the total number of warnings and instead leads to City Safety giving a warning at a later stage.

The **Late** warning distance should therefore only be used in exceptional cases, as in dynamic driving.

WARNING

- No automatic system can guarantee 100% correct function in all situations. Therefore, never test City Safety by driving at people, animals or vehicles - this may cause severe damage and injury and risk lives.
- City Safety warns the driver when there is a risk of a collision, but it cannot shorten the driver's reaction time.
- Even if the warning distance has been set to **Early** warnings could be perceived as being late in certain situations, e.g. when there are large differences in speed or if vehicles ahead suddenly brake heavily.
- With the warning distance set at **Early**, the warnings will come more in advance. This may mean that the warnings come more frequently than at the warning distance **Normal**, but it is recommended since it can make City Safety more effective.

Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 334)
- Limitations of City Safety (p. 343)
- Rear Collision Warning* (p. 353)

87 The function is not available in all markets.

Detection of obstacles with City Safety

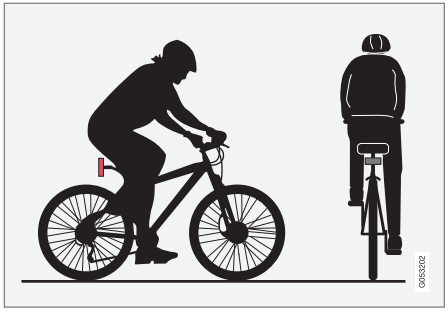
City Safety[88] can help the driver to detect vehicles, cyclists, large animals and pedestrians.

Vehicles

City Safety detect most vehicles that are stationary or moving in the same direction as the driver's own car. This function can also detect oncoming vehicles and cross traffic in certain cases.

In order that City Safety shall be able to detect a vehicle in the dark, the vehicle's front and rear lights must be working and clearly illuminated.

Cyclists



Examples of what City Safety interprets as a cyclist — with clear body outline and bicycle outline.

Good performance requires that the system function that detects a cyclist must receive the clearest possible information about the body and bicycle outline, requiring the ability to identify the bicycle, head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body plus a normal human pattern of movement.

If large parts of the cyclist's body or bicycle are not visible to the function's camera then the system cannot detect a cyclist.

For the function to be able to detect a cyclist, he/she must be an adult and riding a bicycle designed for adults.

⚠ WARNING

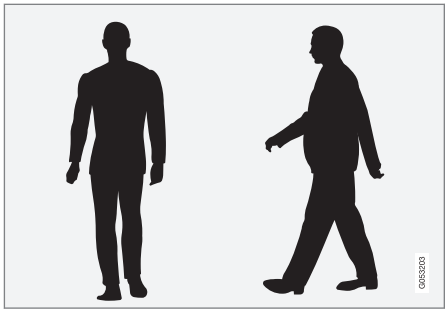
City Safety is supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all cyclists in all situations and, for example, cannot see:

- partially obscured cyclists.
- cyclists if the background contrast for the cyclists is poor.
- cyclists wearing clothing that obscures the body outline.
- bicycles loaded with large objects.

Warnings and brake interventions could be late or not occur at all. The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

88 The function is not available in all markets.

Pedestrians



Examples of what the system regards as pedestrians with clear body outlines.

Good performance requires that the system function that detects a pedestrian must receive the clearest possible information about the body outline, requiring the ability to identify the head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body plus a normal human pattern of movement.

In order that it shall be possible to detect a pedestrian there must be a contrast with the background and this will be affected by such things as clothes, the background and the weather. With poor contrast the pedestrian may either be detected late or not at all, which may mean that warnings and braking are late or omitted.

City Safety can also detect pedestrians in the dark if they are illuminated by the car's headlamps.

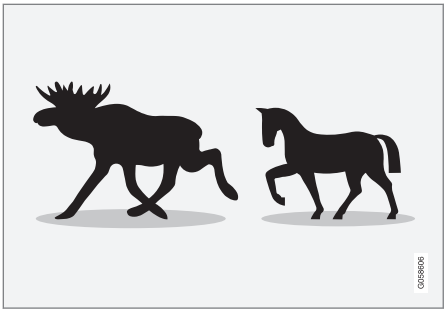
WARNING

City Safety is supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all pedestrians in all situations and, for example, cannot see:

- partially obscured pedestrians, people in clothing that hides their body contour or pedestrians shorter than 80 cm (32 in.).
- pedestrians if the background contrast for the pedestrians is poor.
- pedestrians who are carrying larger objects.

Warnings and brake interventions could be late or not occur at all. The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

Large animals



Examples of what City Safety interprets as large animals - standing still or walking slowly and with clear body outline.

Good performance requires that the system function that detects a large animal (e.g. elk and horse) must receive the clearest possible information about the body outline, requiring the ability to identify the animal directly from the side in combination with what is a normal pattern of movement for the animal.

If parts of the animal's body are not visible to the function's camera then the system cannot detect the animal.

City Safety can also detect large animals in the dark if they are illuminated by the car's headlamps.

WARNING

City Safety is supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all large animals in all situations and, for example, cannot see:

- partially obscured large animals.
- larger animals seen from the front or from behind.
- large animals that run or move quickly.
- large animals if the background contrast for the animals is poor.
- small animals such as dogs and cats, for example.

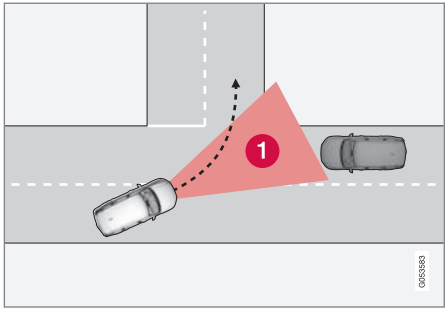
Warnings and brake interventions could be late or not occur at all. The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 334)
- Limitations of City Safety (p. 343)

City Safety in cross traffic

City Safety[89] can help the driver when turning and crossing the path of another oncoming vehicle at an intersection.



1 Sector in which City Safety can detect oncoming crossing vehicles.

For City Safety to detect an oncoming vehicle on a collision course, the oncoming vehicle must first enter the sector in which City Safety can analyse the situation.

The following further criteria must also be fulfilled:

- your car must be travelling at no less than 4 km/h (3 mph)
- your car must turn to the left in markets with right-hand traffic (or to the right in left-hand traffic)
- the oncoming vehicle must have its headlamps switched on.

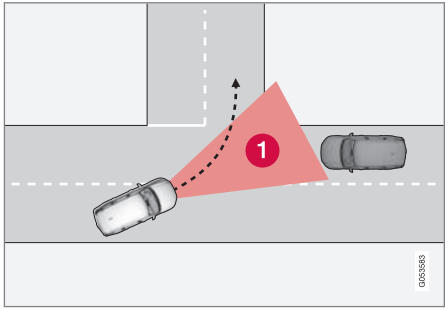
Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 334)
- Limitations of City Safety (p. 343)

89 The function is not available in all markets.

Limitations for City Safety in cross traffic

In some cases City Safety may have difficulty helping the driver deal with collision risks due to oncoming cross traffic.



Examples are:

- Stability control ESC intervenes in the event of slippery driving conditions.
- If the oncoming vehicle is detected too late.
- If the oncoming vehicle is obscured by something.
- If the oncoming vehicle has headlamps switched off.
- If the oncoming vehicle drives in an unpredictable manner, for example, abruptly changes lanes at a late stage.

90 The function is not available in all markets.

NOTE

This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

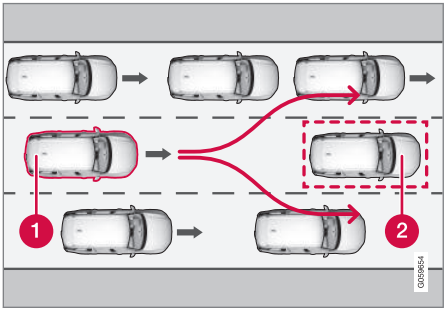
Related information

- City Safety in cross traffic (p. 340)
- Limitations of City Safety (p. 343)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)

Automatic braking in the event of an impeded evasive manoeuvre with City Safety

City Safety[90] has the facility to assist the driver by automatically braking the car earlier when it is not possible to avoid a collision by only steering away.

City Safety assists the driver by continuously attempting to anticipate whether there are "escape routes" to the side in case a slow or stationary vehicle ahead is discovered at a late stage.



Your car (1) "sees" no options for evading the vehicle ahead (2) and can therefore auto-brake earlier.

1. Your car
2. Slow/stationary vehicle

City Safety does not intervene with the auto-brake function as long as the driver him/herself has the opportunity to avoid a collision via a steering manoeuvre.

However, if City Safety anticipates that an evasive manoeuvre is not possible due to traffic in an adjacent lane, the function can assist the driver by automatically starting to brake at an earlier stage.

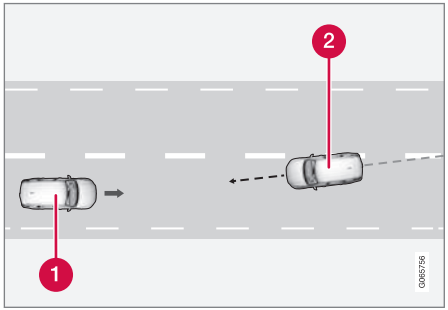
Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 334)
- Limitations of City Safety (p. 343)

City Safety brakes for oncoming vehicles

City Safety can assist the driver to use emergency braking for an oncoming vehicle in your car's lane.

If an oncoming vehicle enters your car's lane and a collision is unavoidable, City Safety can reduce the car's speed with a view to reducing the violence of the impact.



1. Your car
2. Oncoming vehicles

For this function to work, the following criteria must be met:

- your car must be travelling at more than 4 km/h (3 mph)
- the road section must be straight
- your car's lane must have clear lane markings
- your car must be positioned straight in its own lane
- the oncoming vehicle must be within your car's lane markings
- the oncoming vehicle must have its headlamps switched on
- this function can only handle "front to front" collisions
- this function can only detect vehicles with four wheels.

WARNING

Warnings and brake interventions due to an impending collision with an oncoming vehicle always come very late.

Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 334)
- Limitations of City Safety (p. 343)

Limitations of City Safety

The City Safety[91] function may have limitations in certain situations.

Surroundings

Low objects

Low-hanging objects, e.g. a flag/pennant for projecting load, or accessories such as auxiliary lamps and bull bars that are higher than the bonnet limit the function.

Skidding

On slippery road surfaces the braking distance is extended, which may reduce the capacity of City Safety to avoid a collision. In such situations, the anti-lock brakes and the stability control ESC[92] are designed to give the best possible braking force with maintained stability.

Oncoming light

The visual warning signal in the windscreen may be difficult to notice in the event of strong sunlight, reflections, when sunglasses are being worn or if the driver is not looking straight ahead.

Heat

In the event of high passenger compartment temperature, caused by e.g. strong sunlight, the visual warning signal in the windscreen may be temporarily disengaged.

The camera and radar unit's field of view

The camera's field of vision is limited, which is why pedestrians, large animals, cyclists and vehicles in some situations cannot be detected, or they are detected later than anticipated.

Dirty vehicles may be detected later than others and if it is dark, motorcycles may be detected late or not at all.

If a text message in the driver display indicates that the camera or radar unit is obstructed, City Safety may be unable to detect pedestrians, large animals, cyclists, vehicles or road lines ahead of the car. This means that the functionality of City Safety may be reduced.

However, an error message is not shown in all situations where the windscreen sensors are obstructed. The driver must therefore take care to keep the area of windscreen in front of the camera and radar unit clear.

IMPORTANT

Maintenance of driver support components must only be performed at a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Driver intervention

Reversing

When your own car is reversing, City Safety is temporarily deactivated.

Low speed

City Safety is not activated at very low speeds - below 4 km/h (3 mph) - and the system therefore does not intervene in situations where your car is approaching a vehicle ahead very slowly, e.g. when parking.

Active driver

Driver commands are always prioritised, which is why City Safety does not intervene or postpone warning/intervention in situations where the driver is steering and accelerating in a decisive manner, even if a collision is unavoidable.

Active and aware driving behaviour can therefore delay a collision warning and intervention in order to minimise unnecessary warnings.

91 The function is not available in all markets.
92 Electronic Stability Control

Important warnings

WARNING

Driver supports only warn of obstacles which their radar unit has detected – hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay.

- Never wait for a warning or intervention. Apply the brakes when the situation requires.

WARNING

- Warnings and brake interventions could be implemented late or not at all if a traffic situation or external influences mean that the camera and radar unit cannot detect pedestrians, cyclists, large animals or vehicles correctly.
- For vehicles to be detected at night, their headlamps and rear lamp cluster must be switched on and shining clearly.
- The camera and radar unit has a limited range for pedestrians and cyclists. The system can provide effective warnings and brake interventions as long as the relative speed is below 50 km/h (30 mph). For stationary or slow-moving vehicles, warnings and brake interventions are effective at vehicle speeds up to 70 km/h (43 mph). Speed reduction for large animals is less than 15 km/h (9 mph) and can be achieved at vehicle speeds above 70 km/h (43 mph). The warning and brake intervention for large animals is less effective at lower speeds.
- Warnings for stationary or slow-moving vehicles as well as large animals may be disengaged due to darkness or poor visibility.
- Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians and cyclists are deactivated at vehicle speeds exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Do not place, stick or mount anything on the outside or inside of the windscreen in front of or around the camera and radar unit — this can interfere with camera-dependent functions.
- Objects, snow, ice or dirt in the area of the camera sensor may reduce its functionality, fully deactivate it or give incorrect function response.

WARNING

- The City Safety auto-brake function can prevent a collision or reduce collision speed, but to ensure full brake performance the driver should always depress the brake pedal – even when the car auto-brakes.
- The warning is only activated if there is a high risk of collision – you must therefore never wait for a collision warning.
- The warning and brake intervention for pedestrians and cyclists are deactivated at vehicle speeds exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).
- City Safety does not activates any auto-brake functions in the event of heavy acceleration.

NOTE

This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Market limitation

City Safety is not available in all countries. If City Safety does not appear in the centre display's **Settings** menu, the car is not equipped with this function.

Search path in the top view of the centre display:

- **Settings ➔ My Car ➔ IntelliSafe**

Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 334)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)

Messages for City Safety

A number of messages regarding City Safety can be shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Message	Specification
City Safety **Automatic intervention**	When City Safety brakes or has done an automatic braking, several of the driver display symbols may be illuminated in connection with a text message being shown.
City Safety **Reduced functionality Service required**	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[A].

[A] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message persists, contact a workshop[A].

Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 334)

Steering assistance at risk of collision

The function **Collision avoidance** can help the driver reduce the risk of the car leaving its lane unintentionally and/or colliding with another vehicle or obstacle by actively steering the car back into its lane and/or swerving.
The function consists of these subfunctions:

- Steering assistance upon risk of run-off
- Steering assistance upon risk of head-on collision
- Steering assistance upon risk of rear-end collision*

After automatic engagement, the driver display indicates that this has occurred via a text message:

Collision avoidance Automatic intervention

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

NOTE

It is always the driver who decides how much the car should steer – the car can never take command.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Activating or deactivating steering assistance in the event of a collision risk (p. 348)
- Steering assistance upon risk of run-off (p. 348)
- Steering assistance upon risk of head-on collision (p. 349)
- Steering assistance upon risk of rear-end collision* (p. 350)
- Limitations for steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 351)
- Symbols and messages for steering assistance upon risk of collision (p. 352)

Activating or deactivating steering assistance in the event of a collision risk

The steering assistance function is optional – the driver can choose to activate or deactivate it.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

- GREEN button indication – the function is activated.
- GREY button indication – the function is deactivated.

This function is activated automatically each time the engine is started[93].

NOTE

When the **Collision avoidance** function is deactivated, all subfunctions are switched off:

- Steering assistance at risk of road departure
- Steering assistance at risk of oncoming collision
- Steering assistance at risk of rear-end collision*

Even though it is possible to deactivate the function, it is advisable for the driver to always have it activated since it improves driving safety in most cases.

Related information

- Steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 347)
- Limitations for steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 351)

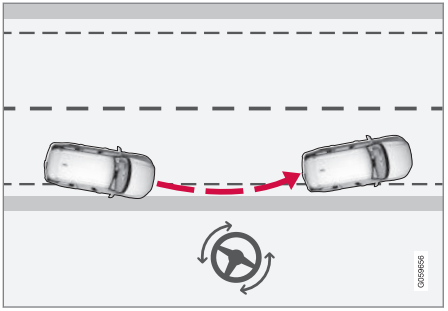
Steering assistance upon risk of run-off

Steering assistance has a number of subfunctions. Steering assistance in the event of run-off risk can help the driver and reduce the risk of the car accidentally leaving the road by actively steering the car back onto the road.

The function has two activation levels on intervention:

- Steering assistance only
- Steering assistance with brake intervention

Steering assistance only

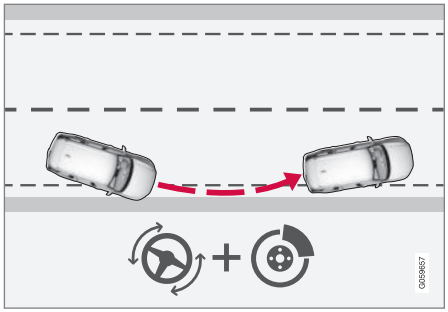


Intervention with steering assistance

93 In certain markets, the setting used when the engine is switched off is reactivated.

* Option/accessory.

Steering assistance with brake intervention



Intervention with steering assistance and braking

Brake intervention helps in situations where steering assistance alone is not sufficient. The brake force is adapted automatically depending on the situation at the time of road run-off.

The function is active within the speed range 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane markings/lines.

A camera scans the edges of the road and the painted side markings. If the car is about to leave the side of the road, the car is steered back onto the road and if the steering intervention is not enough to avoid run-off, the brakes are also activated.

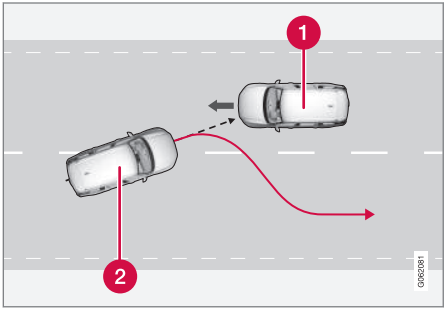
However, the function does **not** intervene with either steering assistance or brake intervention if the direction indicators are used. And if the function detects that the driver is actively driving the car, activation of the function will be delayed.

Related information

- Steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 347)
- Limitations for steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 351)

Steering assistance upon risk of head-on collision

Steering assistance has a number of subfunctions. Steering assistance upon risk of head-on collision can help a distracted driver who does not notice that the car is heading into the opposite lane.



The function can assist by guiding the car back to its own lane.

1 Oncoming vehicles

2 Your car

At the same time as steering intervention is activated, collision warning for driver support is also activated. However, the brake pulse included in the collision warning will not be activated.

The function is active within the speed range 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane markings/lines.

If the car is about to leave its own lane while an oncoming vehicle is approaching at the same time, the function can help the driver to steer the car back into its own lane.

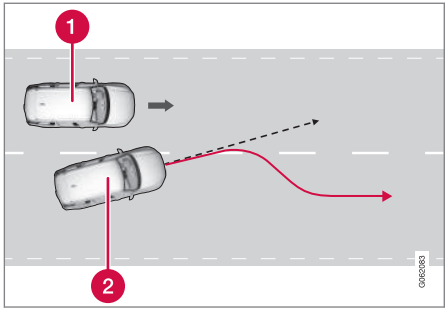
However, the function does **not** intervene with steering assistance if the direction indicator is used. And if the function detects that the driver is actively driving the car, activation of the function will be delayed.

Related information

- Steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 347)
- Warning from driver support in the event of a collision risk (p. 322)
- Limitations for steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 351)

Steering assistance upon risk of rear-end collision*

Steering assistance has a number of subfunctions. Steering assistance if there is a risk of rear-end collision can help a distracted driver who does not notice that the car is about to leave its own lane while an oncoming vehicle is approaching at the same time, either from behind or in the blind spot.



The function can assist by steering the car back to its own lane.

1. Other vehicle in the blind spot
2. Your car

If the car is about to leave its own lane while another vehicle is in the blind spot, or another vehicle is approaching rapidly in an adjacent lane at the same time, the function can help the driver to steer the car back into its own lane.

The function can even assist if the driver intentionally changes lanes using direction indicators without noticing that another vehicle is approaching.

The function is active within the speed range 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane markings/lines.

The lamps in the door mirrors flash during steering intervention, regardless of whether the BLIS[94] function is activated. An acoustic signal can also be heard.

Related information

- Steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 347)
- BLIS* (p. 354)
- Limitations for steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 351)

94 Blind Spot Information

* Option/accessory.

Limitations for steering assistance at risk of collision

In certain situations the function may have limited functionality and fail to intervene in the following cases, for example:

- for small vehicles, such as motorcycles
- if the majority of the car has steered into the adjacent lane
- on roads/in lanes with unclear or non-existent lane markings
- outside the speed range 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph)
- as the steering servo for speed-dependent steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power – e.g. when cooling due to overheating.

Other demanding situations can include:

- road works
- winter road conditions
- narrow roads
- poor road surface
- a very “sporty” driving style
- poor weather with reduced visibility.

In these demanding situations, the function may have difficulty helping the driver correctly. In such cases it is recommended to switch off this function.

NOTE

This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Related information

- Steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 347)
- Steering assistance upon risk of run-off (p. 348)
- Steering assistance upon risk of head-on collision (p. 349)
- Steering assistance upon risk of rear-end collision* (p. 350)

Symbols and messages for steering assistance upon risk of collision

A number of symbols and messages regarding steering assistance may be shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Collision avoidance **Automatic intervention**	When the function is activated, a message is shown to the driver indicating that the system has been activated.
	Windscreen sensor **Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual**	The ability of the camera to scan the roadway in front of the car is reduced.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains: Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 347)
- Limitations for steering assistance at risk of collision (p. 351)

Rear Collision Warning*[95]

The Rear Collision Warning[96] (RCW) function can help the driver to avoid being hit by a vehicle approaching from behind.
Drivers in vehicles behind can be warned about an imminent collision by the function flashing intensively with the direction indicators.

If, at a speed below 30 km/h (20 mph), the function detects that the car is in danger of being hit from behind, the seatbelt tensioners may tension the front seatbelts. The Whiplash Protection System is also activated in the event of a collision.

Immediately before a collision from behind, this function may also activate the foot brake in order to reduce the forward acceleration of the car during the collision. However, the foot brake is only activated if the car is stationary. The foot brake releases immediately if the accelerator pedal is depressed.

This function is activated automatically each time the engine is started.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Limitations of Rear Collision Warning* (p. 353)
- Whiplash Protection System (p. 45)

Limitations of Rear Collision Warning*[97]

In certain cases the Rear Collision Warning (RCW) may have difficulty helping the driver in the event of a collision risk.
This can, for example, be if:

- the vehicle approaching from behind is detected too late
- the vehicle approaching from behind changes lane at the last moment
- a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is connected to the car's electrical system - the function is then deactivated automatically.

NOTE

In certain markets, RCW does **not** give a warning with the direction indicators due to local traffic regulations - in such cases, this part of the function is deactivated.

NOTE

This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

95 Rear collision warning.
96 The function is not available in all markets.
97 Rear collision warning.

Related information

- Rear Collision Warning* (p. 353)
- Setting the warning distance for City Safety (p. 337)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)

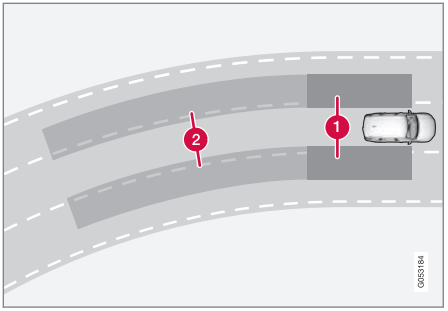
BLIS*

The BLIS[98] function is intended to help the driver detect vehicles diagonally behind and to the side of the car so as to provide assistance in heavy traffic on roads with several lanes in the same direction.

Location of BLIS lamp

BLIS is a driver aid intended to give a warning of:

- vehicles in the car's blind spot
- quickly approaching vehicles in the left and right lanes closest to the car.



Principle of BLIS

1. Zone in blind spot
2. Zone for quickly approaching vehicle

The system is designed to react when:

- your car is overtaken by other vehicles
- another vehicle is quickly approaching your car.

When BLIS detects a vehicle in Zone 1 or a quickly approaching vehicle in Zone 2, the indicator lamp on the door mirror on the affected side illuminates with a constant glow. If the driver activates the direction indicator on the same side as the warning, the indicator lamp will change over from a constant glow to flashing with a more intense light.

98 Blind Spot Information

* Option/accessory.

BLIS is active when the driver's vehicle is travelling at a speed above 10 km/h (6 mph).

If passing vehicles drive more than 15 km/h (9 mph) faster than the driver's vehicle, BLIS will not react.

NOTE

The lamp illuminates on the side of the car where the system has detected the vehicle. If the car is overtaken on both sides at the same time then both lamps illuminate.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Activating or deactivating BLIS (p. 355)
- Limitations of BLIS (p. 356)
- Messages for BLIS (p. 357)

Activating or deactivating BLIS

The BLIS[99] function can be activated or deactivated.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

- GREEN button indication – the function is activated.
- GREY button indication – the function is deactivated.

If BLIS is activated when starting the engine, the function is confirmed by the door mirror indicator lamps blinking once.

If BLIS was deactivated when the engine was switched off, it will continue to be deactivated when the engine is next started and no indicator lights will then be illuminated.

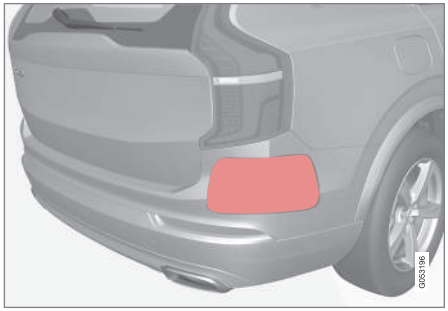
Related information

- BLIS* (p. 354)
- Limitations of BLIS (p. 356)

99 Blind Spot Information

Limitations of BLIS

The BLIS[100] function may have limitations in certain situations.



Keep the surface indicated clean – on both the left and right-hand sides of the car[101].

Examples of limitations:

- Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may reduce the functions and deactivate alerts.
- The BLIS function is automatically deactivated if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is connected to the car's electrical system.
- For good performance of BLIS, there should be no bicycle rack, luggage carrier or similar mounted on the car's towbar.

WARNING

- BLIS does not work on sharp bends.
- BLIS does not work when the car is reversing.

NOTE

This function uses the car's radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Related information

- BLIS* (p. 354)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)

100 Blind Spot Information
101 NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

* Option/accessory.

Messages for BLIS

A number of messages regarding BLIS[102] can be shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Message	Specification
Blind spot sensor **Service required**	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[A].
Blind spot system off **Trailer attached**	BLIS and CTA[B] have been deactivated as a trailer has been connected to the car's electrical system.

A An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
B Cross Traffic Alert*

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message persists, contact a workshop[A].

Related information

- BLIS* (p. 354)
- Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 360)

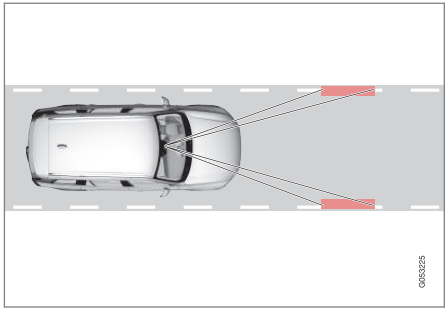
102 Blind Spot Information

Driver Alert Control

The Driver Alert Control (DAC) function is intended to help make the driver aware that he or she is starting to drive less consistently, e.g. if the driver becomes distracted or starts to fall asleep.

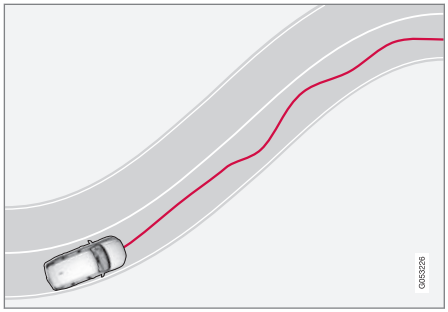
The objective for the function is to detect slowly deteriorating driving ability and it is primarily intended for major roads. The function is not intended for city traffic.

The function is activated when speed exceeds 65 km/h (40 mph) and remains active as long as the speed is over 60 km/h (37 mph).



Driver Alert Control reads the position of the car in the lane.

A camera detects the edge markings painted on the carriageway and compares the alignment of the road with the driver's steering wheel movements.



The car is being driven erratically in the lane.

If driving behaviour becomes noticeably inconsistent, the driver is alerted by this symbol in the driver display, combined with an acoustic signal and the text message **Time to take a break**.

If the car is equipped with Sensus Navigation* and has the function **Rest Stop Guidance** activated, suggestions for an appropriate place for a break are also displayed.

The warning is repeated after a time if driving behaviour has not improved.

⚠ WARNING

Driver Alert Control should not be used to extend a period of driving. The driver should instead plan for breaks at regular intervals and make sure they are well rested.

⚠ WARNING

An alarm from Driver Alert Control should be taken very seriously, as a sleepy driver is often not aware of his/her own condition.

If the alarm sounds or you feel fatigued:

- Stop the car safely as soon as possible and rest.

Studies have shown that it is just as dangerous to drive while tired as it is to drive under the influence of alcohol or other stimulants.

* Option/accessory.

⚠ WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Activating or deactivating Driver Alert Control (p. 359)
- Select rest stop guidance in the event of a warning from Driver Alert Control (p. 359)
- Limitations of Driver Alert Control (p. 360)

Activating or deactivating Driver Alert Control

The Driver Alert Control (DAC) function can be activated or deactivated.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Select **My Car** ➔ **IntelliSafe** ➔ **Driver Alert**.
3. Select or deselect **Alertness Warning** to activate or deactivate the function.

Related information

- Driver Alert Control (p. 358)
- Limitations of Driver Alert Control (p. 360)

Select rest stop guidance in the event of a warning from Driver Alert Control

In cars equipped with Sensus Navigation*, the driver can activate a guide that can automatically suggest an appropriate rest area when Driver Alert Control (DAC) issues a warning.

It is possible to select whether the **Rest Stop Guidance** function should be activated or deactivated.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Select **My Car** ➔ **IntelliSafe** ➔ **Driver Alert**.
3. Select or deselect **Rest Stop Guidance** to activate or deactivate the function.

Related information

- Driver Alert Control (p. 358)
- Limitations of Driver Alert Control (p. 360)

Limitations of Driver Alert Control

The Driver Alert Control (DAC) function may have limitations in certain situations.

In some cases the system may issue a warning despite driving ability not deteriorating, for example:

- in strong side winds
- on rutted road surfaces.

⚠ WARNING

In some cases, driving behaviour is not affected despite driver fatigue – e.g. when using the Pilot Assist* function – resulting in the driver not getting a warning from DAC.

It is therefore important to always stop and take a break at the slightest feeling of fatigue, regardless of whether the function has given a warning.

ⓘ NOTE

This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

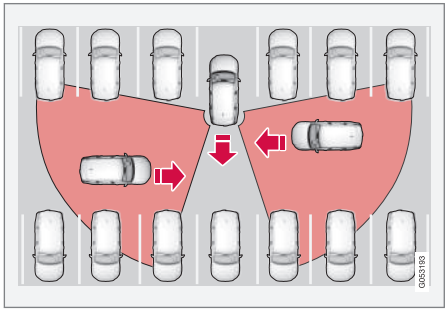
Related information

- Driver Alert Control (p. 358)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)

Cross Traffic Alert*[103]

Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) is a driver support that supplements BLIS[104] and is designed to help the driver detect traffic crossing behind the car when it is reversing.

The auto-brake subfunction can help the driver to stop the car in the event of a risk of collision with an unobserved vehicle.



Examples of areas where Cross Traffic Alert can assist the driver to detect obstacles during reversing.

The function is primarily designed to detect vehicles. In favourable conditions it may also be able to detect smaller objects, such as cyclists and pedestrians.

The function is only active if the car rolls backwards or if reverse gear has been selected.

If the function senses that something is approaching from the side, this is indicated with:

- an acoustic signal - the sound is heard in the left-hand or right-hand speaker according to the direction from which the object approaches.
- an illuminated icon in the **Park Assist System** graphic on the screen.
- an icon on the Park assist camera top view.

Illuminated icon for Cross Traffic Alert in the **Park Assist System** graphic on the screen.

If the driver does not observe the warning from the function and a collision is unavoidable, the **auto-brake** function engages in order to stop the car, after which the driver display

[103] Cross traffic alert when the car is reversing.

* Option/accessory.

shows an explanatory text message on why the car was braked.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Activating or deactivating Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 361)
- Limitations of Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 362)
- Messages for Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 364)
- BLIS* (p. 354)
- Park Assist* (p. 365)

Activating or deactivating Cross Traffic Alert*[105]

The driver can choose to switch off the Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) function.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

- GREEN button indication – the function is activated.
- GREY button indication – the function is deactivated.

The function is activated automatically each time the engine is started.

Related information

- Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 360)
- Limitations of Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 362)
- Messages for Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 364)

[104] Blind Spot Information

Limitations of Cross Traffic Alert*[106]

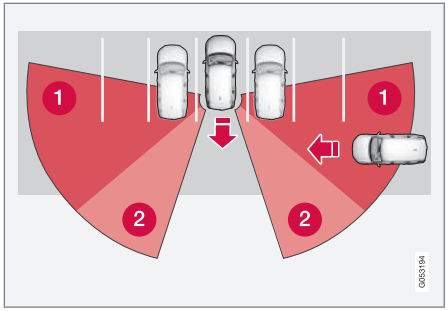
The Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) function with **auto-brake** may have limited functionality in certain situations. Brake intervention is active at speeds below 15 km/h.

⚠ WARNING

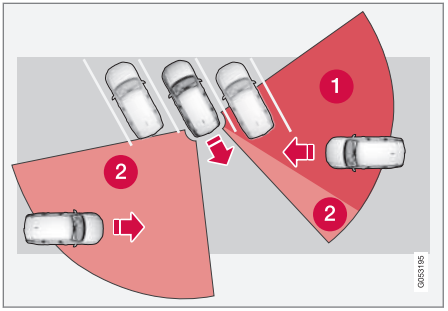
The **auto-brake** subfunction can only detect and brake for other vehicles that are moving – **not** for stationary obstacles, a cyclist or a pedestrian, for example.

The function has a certain limitation – the sensors cannot "see" through other parked vehicles or obstructions, for example.

Here are some examples of situations where the function's "field of vision" may be already limited and approaching vehicles cannot therefore be detected until they are very close:



The car is parked deep inside a parking slot.



In an angled parking slot Cross Traffic Alert may be completely “blind” on one side.

1. Blind sector.
2. Sector in which the function can detect/"see".

However, as your car slowly reverses, the angle it makes with the obstructing vehicle/object changes and the blind sector rapidly decreases.

[105] Cross traffic alert when the car is reversing.
[106] Cross traffic alert when the car is reversing.

* Option/accessory.

Examples of further limitations

- The **auto-brake** subfunction only detects moving vehicles and therefore **cannot** "see" and brake for stationary obstacles, a cyclist or a pedestrian, for example.
- Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may reduce the functions and deactivate alerts.
- CTA is automatically deactivated if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is connected to the car's electrical system.
- For good performance of CTA, there should be no bicycle rack, luggage carrier or similar mounted on the car's towbar.

NOTE

This function uses the car's radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Related information

- Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 360)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)

Messages for Cross Traffic Alert*[107]

A number of messages regarding Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) can be shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Message	Specification
Blind spot sensor **Service required**	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[A].
Blind spot system off **Trailer attached**	BLIS[B] and CTA have been deactivated as a trailer has been connected to the car's electrical system.

A An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
B Blind Spot Information System

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message persists, contact a workshop[A].

Related information

- Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 360)
- BLIS* (p. 354)
- Limitations of Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 362)

107 Cross traffic alert when the car is reversing.

Park Assist*

The Parking Assistance System (PAS[108]) uses sensors to assist the driver when manoeuvring in tight spaces by indicating the distance to obstacles through acoustic signals combined with a graphic in the centre display.

Screen view showing obstacle zones and sensor sectors.

The centre display shows an overview of the relationship between the car and detected obstacles.

The highlighted sector indicates the location of the obstacle. The closer the car symbol is to a highlighted sector box at the front/back, the shorter the distance between the car and detected obstacle.

The side sectors change colour as the distance between the car and an object is reduced.

The shorter the distance to the obstacle, the faster the signal sounds. Other sound from the audio system is muted automatically.

The acoustic signal for obstacles ahead and to the sides is active when the car is moving but stops after the car has been stationary for approx. 2 seconds. The acoustic signal for obstacles behind is also active when the car is stationary.

At a distance within approx. 30 cm (1 ft) from an obstacle behind or in front of the car, the tone is constant and the active sensor field closest to the car symbol is filled.

At a distance within approx. 25 cm (0.8 ft) from an obstacle To the sides, the tone pulses intensively and the active sector field changes colour from ORANGE to RED.

The volume of the parking assistance signal can be adjusted while the signal is sounding by means of the [**>II**] knob on the centre console. Adjustment can also be performed in the top view's **Settings** menu option.

NOTE

Except in the sector nearest to the car symbol, audible warnings are only given for objects directly in the path of the car.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

[108] Park Assist System

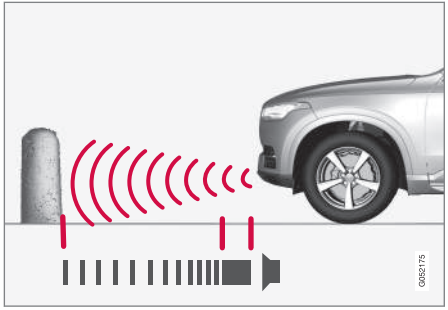
Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Park Assist Pilot front, rear and along the sides* (p. 366)
- Activating or deactivating the parking assistance system* (p. 367)
- Symbols and messages for Park Assist Pilot (p. 370)
- Limitations of Parking assistance (p. 368)

Park Assist Pilot front, rear and along the sides*

Parking Assistance System (PAS[109]) has different behaviour depending on which part of the car is approaching an obstacle.

Forwards



The warning signal has a constant tone at less than approx. 30 cm (1 ft) from an obstacle.

The Parking Assistance System's front detectors are activated automatically when the engine is started. They are active at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph).

The measuring range is approx. 80 cm (2.5 ft) in front of the car.

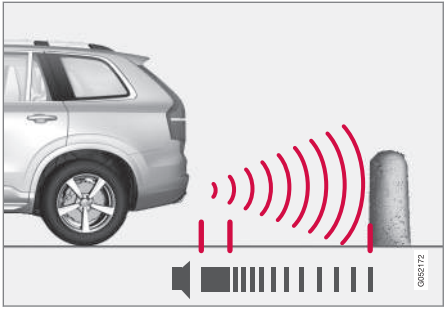
NOTE

Parking assistance is deactivated when the parking brake is used or **P** mode is selected in a car with an automatic gearbox.

IMPORTANT

When auxiliary lamps are fitted: Remember that these must not obscure the sensors - the auxiliary lamps may then be perceived as an obstacle.

Backwards



The warning signal has a constant tone at less than approx. 30 cm (1 ft) from an obstacle.

[109] Park Assist System

* Option/accessory.

The sensors for reverse are activated if the car rolls backward without a gear engaged or when the gear lever is moved to reverse position.

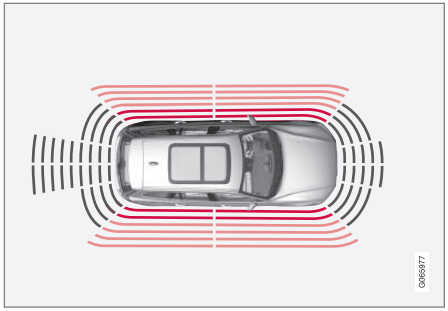
The measuring range is approx. 1.5 metres (5 ft) behind the car.

When reversing with a trailer connected to the car's electrical system, parking assistance backward is deactivated automatically.

NOTE

When reversing with e.g. a trailer or bike carrier on the towbar - without Volvo genuine trailer wiring - parking assistance may need to be switched off manually in order that the sensors do not react to them.

Along the sides



The warning signal pulses intensively at less than approx. 25 cm (0.8 ft) from an obstacle.

Parking assistance side sensors are activated automatically when the engine is started. They are active at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph).

The measuring range is approx. 25 cm (0.8 ft) from the sides.

However, the detection range of the side sensors increases significantly when the steering angle of the front wheels is increased, and obstacles of up to approx. 90 cm (3 ft) located diagonally behind or in front of the vehicle are detected when the steering wheel is turned.

Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 365)
- Sensor fields for parking assistance system (p. 376)

Activating or deactivating the parking assistance system*

The Parking Assistance System (PAS[110]) can be activated or deactivated.

The front and side parking assistance detectors are activated automatically when the engine is started. The rear detectors are activated if the car rolls backwards or when reverse gear is engaged.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

- GREEN button indication – the function is activated.
- GREY button indication – the function is deactivated.

In cars equipped with a park assist camera*, Park Assist Pilot can also be activated or deactivated from the relevant camera view.

Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 365)
- Limitations of Parking assistance (p. 368)

Limitations of Parking assistance

The Parking Assistance System (PAS[111]) cannot detect everything in all situations and may therefore have limited functionality in some cases.

A driver should be aware about the following examples of Park Assist Pilot's limitations:

WARNING

- The parking sensors have blind spots where obstacles cannot be detected.
- Pay particular attention if there are people and animals near the car.
- Bear in mind that the front of the car may swing out towards oncoming traffic during the parking manoeuvre.

WARNING

Pay additional attention while reversing when this symbol is shown if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is mounted and electrically connected to the car.

The symbol indicates that the parking assistance sensors rearward are **switched off** and will not warn of any obstacles.

IMPORTANT

Objects e.g. chains, thin glossy poles or low barriers may be in the "signal shadow" and are then temporarily not detected by the sensors - the pulsating tone may then unexpectedly stop instead of changing over to the expected constant tone.

The sensors cannot detect high objects, such as projecting loading docks.

- In such situations, pay extra attention and manoeuvre/reposition the car particularly slowly or stop the current parking manoeuvre - there may be a high risk of damage to vehicles or other objects since information from the sensors is not always reliable in such situations.

110 Park Assist System
111 Park Assist System

IMPORTANT

In certain conditions the parking assistance system may produce incorrect warning signals that are caused by external sound sources with the same ultrasonic frequencies that the system works with.

Examples of such sources include horns, wet tyres on asphalt, pneumatic brakes, exhaust noises from motorcycles, etc.

NOTE

Since a towbar is configured with the car's electrical system, towbar protrusion is included when the function measures the distance to an object behind the car.

Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 365)

Symbols and messages for Park Assist Pilot

Symbols and messages for Parking Assistance System (PAS[112]) can be shown in the driver display and/or the centre display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
		The rearward parking assistance sensors are **deactivated**, so there are no acoustic warnings for obstacles/objects.
	Park Assist System **Sensors blocked, cleaning needed**	One or more of the function's sensors are blocked - check and correct as soon as possible.
	Park Assist System **Unavailable Service required**	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[A].

[A] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message persists, contact a workshop[A].

Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 365)
- Limitations of Parking assistance (p. 368)

[112] Park Assist System

Park assist camera*

Park assist camera (PAC[113]) can assist the driver when manoeuvring in tight spaces by indicating obstacles with a camera image and graphics in the centre display.

The park assist camera is a support function which is activated automatically when reverse gear is selected or manually via the centre display.

Example of camera view.

1. **Zoom**[114] - zoom in/out
2. **360° view*** - activates/deactivates all cameras
3. **PAS**[115] - activates/deactivates the parking assistance sensors
4. **Lines** - activates/deactivates park assist lines
5. **Towbar*** - activates/deactivates the tow-bar park assist line*[116]
6. **CTA*** - activates/deactivates Cross Traffic Alert

Objects/obstacles may be closer to the car than they appear to be on screen.

WARNING

- The parking sensors have blind spots where obstacles cannot be detected.
- Pay particular attention if there are people and animals near the car.
- Bear in mind that the front of the car may swing out towards oncoming traffic during the parking manoeuvre.

113 Park Assist Camera
114 The park assist lines are switched off when zooming in.
115 Park Assist System
116 Not available for all models and markets.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Related information

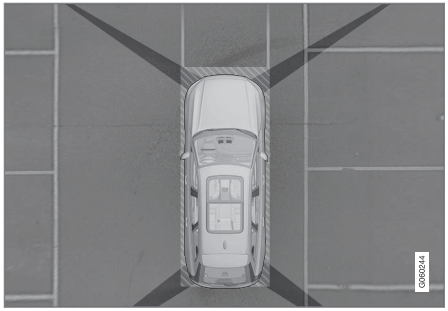
- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Park assist camera locations and surveillance areas* (p. 372)
- Park assist lines for park assist camera* (p. 374)
- Sensor fields for parking assistance system (p. 376)
- Activate park assist camera (p. 378)
- Symbols and messages for Park assist camera (p. 379)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)
- Park Assist* (p. 365)
- Cross Traffic Alert* (p. 360)

Park assist camera locations and surveillance areas*

The Park assist cameras (PAC[117]) can display a composite 360° view and separate views for each of the four cameras: rear, front, left or right camera view.

* Option/accessory.

360° view*



The "field of vision" of the parking cameras with approximate coverage area.

The **360° view** function activates all parking cameras, whereupon the four sides of the car are shown simultaneously in the centre display, which helps the driver to observe what is around the car when manoeuvring at slow speeds.

From the 360° view, each camera view can be activated separately:

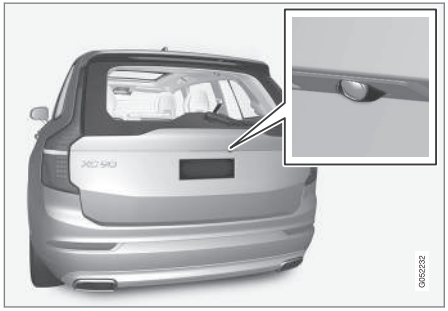
- Press the screen for the desired “field of vision” of the camera, e.g. on the surface in front of/above the front camera.

A camera symbol on the centre display's car symbol indicates which of the cameras is active.

If the car is also equipped with **Park Assist System*** then distance to detected obstacles is illustrated with fields in different colours.

The cameras can be activated automatically or manually.

Backwards



The backwards-facing camera is fitted above the registration plate.

The backward-facing camera shows a wide area behind the car. For certain models, part of the bumper can be seen as well as the towbar in some cases.

Objects shown in the centre display may appear slightly tilted — this is normal.

Forwards

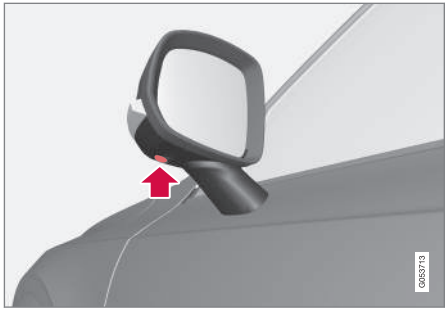
The forwards parking camera is located in the grille.

The front camera can be helpful on an exit road with limited visibility to the sides, e.g. when driving out of a garage. It is active at speeds up to 25 km/h (16 mph) - following which, the front camera is switched off.

If the car does not reach 50 km/h (30 mph) and the speed falls below 22 km/h (14 mph) within 1 minute after the forward-facing camera has been extinguished, the camera is reactivated.

117 Park Assist Camera

The sides



The side cameras are positioned in each door mirror.

The side cameras can show what is along each side of the car.

Related information

- Park assist camera* (p. 371)
- Activate park assist camera (p. 378)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)

Park assist lines for park assist camera*

The Park assist cameras (PAC[118]) indicate the position of the car in relation to its surroundings by displaying lines on the screen.

Example of park assist lines

Park assist lines show the intended route for the car's external dimensions with the current steering wheel angle - this can facilitate parallel parking, reversing into tight spaces and when connecting a trailer.

The lines on the screen are projected as if they were at ground level behind the car and respond directly to steering wheel movements, showing the driver the path the car will take - also when the car is turning.

These park assist lines include the car's most protruding parts, e.g. towbar, door mirrors and corners.

NOTE

- When reversing with a trailer which is not connected electrically to the car, the park assist lines on the display show the route the **car** will take – not the trailer.
- The screen shows no park assist lines when a trailer is connected electrically to the car's electrical system.
- Park assist lines are not shown when zooming in.

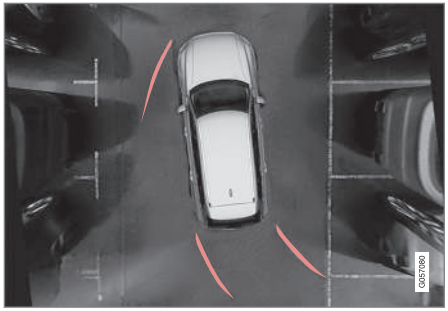
118 Park Assist Camera

* Option/accessory.

IMPORTANT

- Remember, that with the rear camera view selected, the monitor only displays the area behind the car. Be aware of the sides and front of the car when manoeuvring in reverse.
- The same applies vice versa - note what happens to the rear parts of the car when the front camera view is selected.
- Note that the park assist lines show the **shortest** route. Therefore, pay extra attention to the car's sides so that they do not go against/over something when the steering wheel is turned when driving forward or that the front sweeps against/over something when the steering wheel is turned when reversing.

Park assist lines in 360° view*



360° view with park assist lines

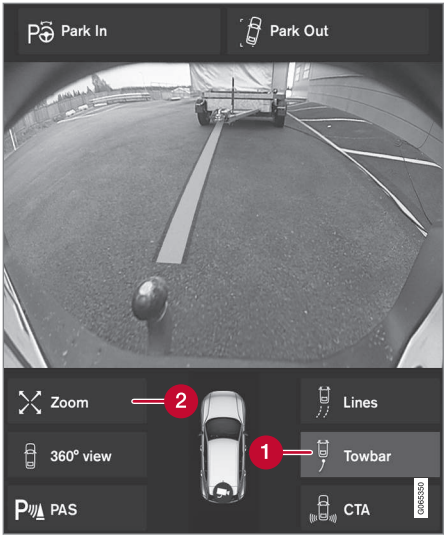
With the 360° view, park assist lines are shown behind, in front of and at the side of the car (depending on the direction of travel):

- When driving forwards: Front lines
- When reversing: Side lines and reversing lines

With front or rear camera selected, the park assist lines appear regardless of the car's direction of travel.

With one side camera selected, the park assist lines only appear when reversing.

Towbar assist line*



Towbar with park assist line

1 **Towbar** - activates the towbar assist line.

2 **Zoom** - zoom in/out.

To use the camera for connecting a trailer:

1. Press **Towbar** (1).
   > The park assist lines for the towbar's intended path appear - the car's park assist lines will disappear at the same time.

   Park assist lines for both car and towbar cannot be shown at the same time.
2. Press **Zoom** (2) when a more precise manoeuvring is required.
   > The camera view zooms in.

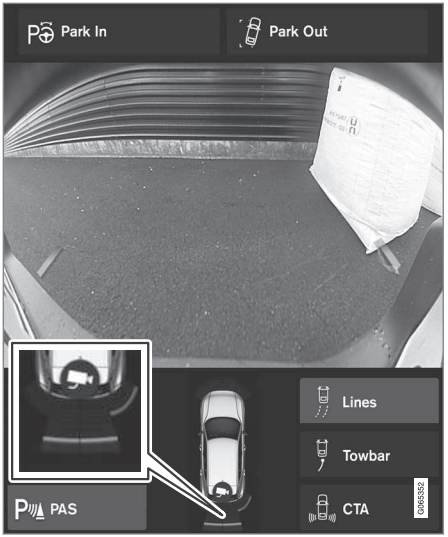
Related information

- Park assist camera* (p. 371)
- Park assist camera locations and surveillance areas* (p. 372)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)
- Towbar* (p. 470)

Sensor fields for parking assistance system

If the car is equipped with the Parking Assistance System (PAS[119]) then the distance is shown in the Parking Assistance Camera (PAC[120]) 360° view with coloured fields for each sensor that registers an obstacle.

Sensor fields backwards and forwards



The screen can show coloured sensor fields on the car symbol.

The fields for the sensors for forwards and reverse change colour as the distance to the

119 Park Assist System
120 Park Assist Camera

* Option/accessory.

obstacle decreases – from AMBER through ORANGE to RED.

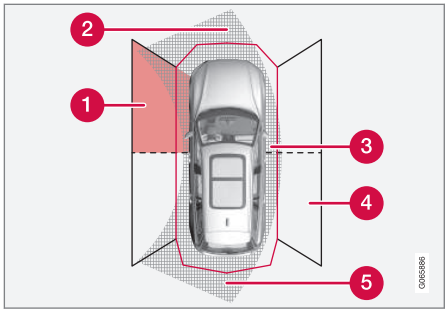
Field colour reverse	Distance in metres (feet)
Yellow	0.6-1.5 (2.0-4.9)
Orange	0.3–0.6 (1.0–2.0)
Red	0-0.3 (0-1.0)

Field colour forwards	Distance in metres (feet)
Yellow	0.6–0.8 (2,0–2.6)
Orange	0.3–0.6 (1.0–2.0)
Red	0-0.3 (0-1.0)

For RED sensor fields, the pulsating acoustic signal changes over to a constant tone.

Sensor field to the sides

Warning signals depend on the intended route of the car. When the steering wheel is turned, therefore, there may also be a warning for obstacles diagonally in front of or diagonally behind the car, not just straight ahead or directly behind.



Parking sensor sectors where obstacles can be detected.

1. Left-hand side front sensor field
2. Obstacle sector in the car's intended route forwards – depending on steering wheel angle
3. Sector with RED field colour and intensively pulsing tone
4. Right-hand side rear sensor field
5. Obstacle sector in the car's intended route in reverse – depending on steering wheel angle.

The colour of the side fields changes with reduced distance to the obstacle – from AMBER to RED.

Colour of side fields	Distance in metres (feet)
Yellow	0.25–0.9 (0.8–3.0)
Red	0–0.25 (0–0.8)

In the case of RED sensor fields, the acoustic signal changes from pulsing to intensively pulsing.

Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 365)
- Park assist camera* (p. 371)
- Park assist camera locations and surveillance areas* (p. 372)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)

Activate park assist camera

The park assist camera (PAC[121]) is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged or manually with one of the centre display's function buttons.

Camera view when reversing

When reverse gear is engaged, the screen shows the 360° view if it or any of the side views was the last used camera view, otherwise the rear view is shown.

Camera view for manual camera activation

Activate the parking camera with this button in the centre display's function view.

The screen then initially shows the last used camera view. However, after each engine start, the previously shown side view is replaced by the 360° view and the previously shown zoomed rear view is replaced by the rear view.

- GREEN button indication – the function is activated.
- GREY button indication – the function is deactivated.

Automatic deactivation of camera

The front view extinguishes at 25 km/h (16 mph) to avoid distracting the driver – it reactivates automatically if the speed drops to 22 km/h (14 mph) within 1 minute, on the condition that the speed has not exceeded 50 km/h (31 mph).

Other camera views are extinguished at 15 km/h (9 mph) and not reactivated.

Related information

- Park assist camera* (p. 371)
- Limitations of Parking assistance (p. 368)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)

121 Park Assist Camera

* Option/accessory.

Symbols and messages for Park assist camera

Symbols and messages for Park assist camera (PAC[122]) can be shown in the driver display and/or the centre display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
		The rearward parking assistance sensors are **deactivated**, so there are no acoustic warnings and field marks for obstacles/objects.
		The camera is disengaged.
	Park Assist System **Sensors blocked, cleaning needed**	One or more of the function's sensors are blocked - check and correct as soon as possible.
	Park Assist System **Unavailable Service required**	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[A].

[A] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[122] Park Assist Camera

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message persists, contact a workshop[A].

Related information

- Park assist camera* (p. 371)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)

* Option/accessory.

Park Assist Pilot*

Park Assist Pilot (PAP[123]) can assist the driver to manoeuvre the car while parking. The function can also assist with steering when driving out from parallel parking.

The function first checks if a space is large enough and if so then assists the driver to steer the car into the space.

The centre display indicates with symbols, graphics and text the various operations to be carried out and when to do so.

WARNING

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Related information

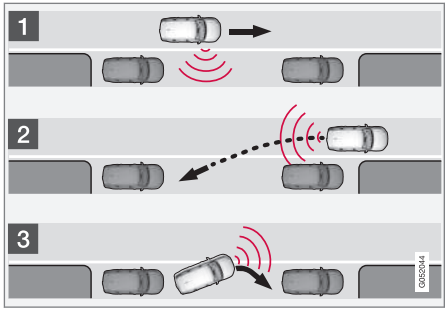
- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Parking variants with Park Assist Pilot* (p. 382)
- Using Park Assist Pilot* (p. 383)
- Leaving parallel parking with Park Assist Pilot* (p. 386)
- Limitations of Park Assist Pilot* (p. 386)
- Messages for Park Assist Pilot* (p. 389)

[123] Park Assist Pilot

Parking variants with Park Assist Pilot*

Park Assist Pilot (PAP[124]) can be used for both parallel and perpendicular parking.

Parallel parking



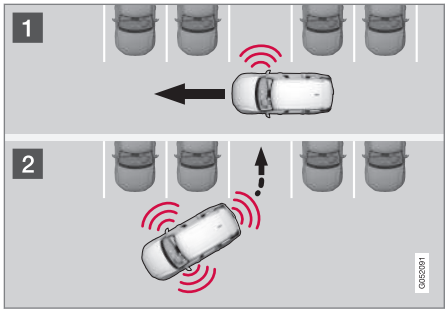
The principal of parallel parking.

The function parks the car using the following steps:

1. A parking space is identified and measured.
2. The car is reversed into the space.
3. The car is positioned in the space by means of driving forward/backward.

With the **Park Out** function, a parallel-parked car can also get help from the function with leaving the parking space.

Perpendicular parking



Principle for perpendicular parking.

The function parks the car using the following steps:

1. A parking space is identified and measured.
2. The car is reversed into the space and then positioned in the space by means of driving forward/backward.

NOTE

When leaving a parking space, the **Park Out** function must only be used for a parallel-parked car - it does not work for a perpendicular-parked car.

Related information

- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 381)
- Leaving parallel parking with Park Assist Pilot* (p. 386)

124 Park Assist Pilot

* Option/accessory.

Using Park Assist Pilot*

Park Assist Pilot (PAP[125]) helps the driver park via three steps. The function can also help the driver to leave a parking space.
This function measures space and steers the car – the driver's job is to:

- keep an eye on what is happening around the car
- follow the instructions in the centre display
- select a gear (reverse/forward) – an acoustic signal indicates when the driver should change gear
- regulate and maintain a safe speed
- brake and stop.

Symbols, graphic and/or text appear on the centre display when the different steps are to be performed.

The function can be activated if the following criteria are met once the engine has been started:

- No trailer is attached to the car
- Speed is lower than 30 km/h (20 mph).

> **NOTE**
>
> The distance between the car and parking spaces should be 0.5–1.5 metres (1.6–5.0 ft) while the function is searching for a parking space.

Parking with Park Assist Pilot

The function parks the car using the following steps:

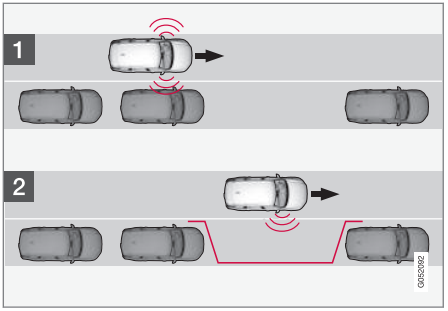
1. A parking space is identified and measured.
2. The car is reversed into the space.
3. The car is positioned into the space - the system may then request that the driver changes gear and brakes.

Find and measure parking spaces

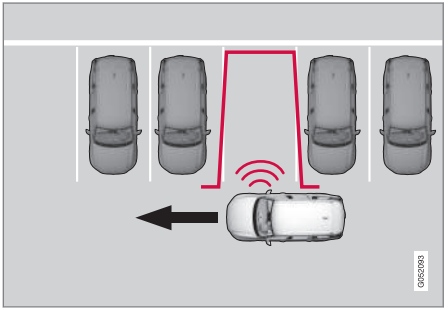
The function can be activated in the centre display's function view.

It can also be accessed from the camera views.

- GREEN button indication – the function is activated.
- GREY button indication – the function is deactivated.



Principle for searching before parallel parking.



Principle for searching before perpendicular parking.

Drive at a maximum of 30 km/h (20 mph) before parking.

125 Park Assist Pilot

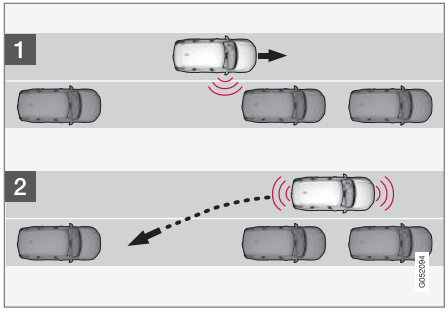
1. Tap on the **Park In** button in the function view or in the camera view.
   > The function searches for a parking space and checks whether it is big enough.
2. Be prepared to stop the car when the graphic and message on the centre display state that a suitable parking space has been found.
   > A pop-up window is shown.
3. Select **Parallel parking** or **Perpendicular parking** and select reverse gear.

NOTE

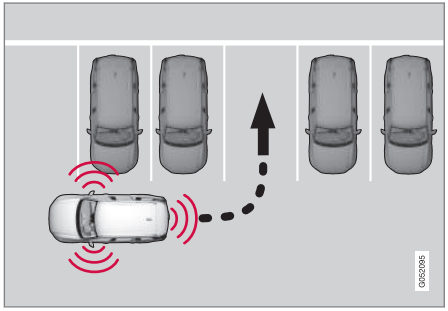
The function searches the area for parking, displays instructions and guides the car in on its passenger side. But if required the car can also be parked on the driver's side of the street:

- Activate the direction indicator to the driver's side - then the system searches for a parking space on that side of the car instead.

Reversing in the parking space



Principle for reversing into parallel parking.



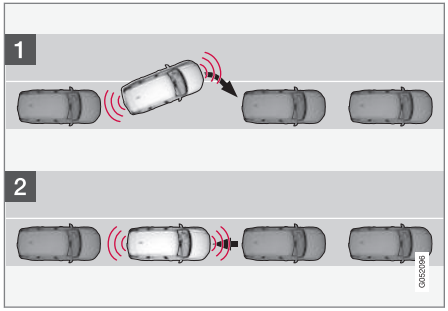
Principle for reversing into perpendicular parking.

1. Check that the area behind the car is clear, then engage reverse gear.
2. Reverse slowly and carefully without touching the steering wheel - and no faster than 7 km/h (4 mph).
3. Be prepared to stop the car when instructed by the graphic and message on the centre display.

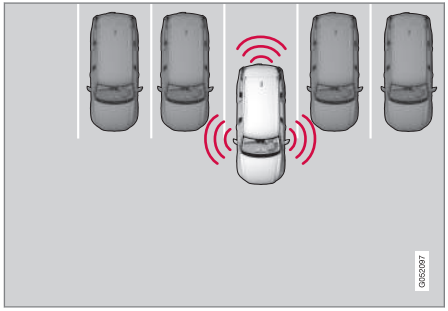
NOTE

- Keep your hands away from the steering wheel when the function is activated.
- Make sure that the steering wheel is not hindered in any way and can rotate freely.
- To achieve optimum results - wait until the steering wheel is fully turned before starting to drive backward/forward.

Positioning the car in the parking space



Principle for positioning during parallel parking.



Principle for positioning during perpendicular parking.

1. Move the gear selector to the gear position as instructed by the system, wait until the steering wheel has been turned and drive forward slowly.
2. Be prepared to stop the car when instructed by the graphic and message on the centre display.
3. Select reverse gear and drive slowly backwards.
4. Be prepared to brake the car when instructed by the graphic and message on the centre display.

The function is deactivated automatically and the graphics and message show that parking is complete. It may be necessary for the driver to correct the car's position. Only the driver can determine whether the car is properly parked.

IMPORTANT

The warning distance is shorter when the sensors are used by Park Assist Pilot (PAP[126]) compared with when Park Assist System uses the sensors.

Auto-brake during parking sequence

If the parking sensors detect a vehicle or pedestrian within the intended route in front of or behind the car during a parking manoeuvre, the car is auto-braked to stationary.

The driver display then shows a pop-up message where the driver can choose to cancel the parking manoeuvre by tapping on **Cancel**, or tap **Resume** to continue the parking sequence.

Proceed as follows after selecting **Resume**:

– Check that there is free space around the car and follow the instructions in the centre display, such as:

  To continue – Gently accelerate away from object.

Related information

- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 381)
- Limitations of Park Assist Pilot* (p. 386)

126 Park Assist Pilot

Leaving parallel parking with Park Assist Pilot*

The **Park Out** function can help the driver to leave a parking space when the car is parallel parked.

NOTE

When leaving a parking space, the **Park Out** function must only be used for a parallel-parked car - it does not work for a perpendicular-parked car.

The **Park Out** function is activated in the centre display's function view or in the camera view.

- GREEN button indication – the function is activated.
- GREY button indication – the function is deactivated.

1. Tap on the **Park Out** button in the function view or in the camera view.
2. Use the direction indicator to select the direction in which the car should leave the parking space.
3. Be prepared to stop the car when instructed by the graphic and message on the centre display - follow the instructions in the same way as for the parking procedure.

Note the steering wheel can "spring" back when the function is completed - the driver may then need to turn the steering wheel back to the maximum steering angle in order to leave the parking space.

If the function considers that the driver can leave the parking space without any extra manoeuvring then the function will be stopped, even if the driver may consider that the car is still in the parking space.

Related information

- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 381)
- Limitations of Park Assist Pilot* (p. 386)

Limitations of Park Assist Pilot*

The Park Assist Pilot (PAP[127]) function cannot detect everything in all situations and may therefore have limited functionality.
A driver should be aware about the following examples of Park Assist Pilot limitations.

WARNING

- The parking sensors have blind spots where obstacles cannot be detected.
- Pay particular attention if there are people and animals near the car.
- Bear in mind that the front of the car may swing out towards oncoming traffic during the parking manoeuvre.

IMPORTANT

Objects situated higher than the sensor detection area are not included when calculating the parking manoeuvre, which could cause the function to swing into the parking space too early – such parking spaces should be avoided for this reason.

127 Park Assist Pilot

Parking is discontinued

A parking sequence will be discontinued:

- if the driver moves the steering wheel
- if the car is driven too quickly - above 7 km/h (4 mph)
- if the driver presses **Cancel** in the centre display
- when the anti-lock brakes or the Electronic stability control are engaged - e.g. when a wheel loses grip on a slippery road
- as the steering servo for speed-dependent steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power – e.g. when cooling due to overheating
- when the parking sensors detect a vehicle or pedestrian within the intended route in front of or behind the car during a parking manoeuvre, the car is auto-braked to stationary.

Where applicable, a message in the centre display states the reason for a parking sequence being discontinued.

IMPORTANT

Under certain circumstances, the function is unable to find parking spaces - one reason for this may be the fact that there is interference with the sensors from external sound sources which emit the same ultrasound frequencies as those with which the system works.

Examples of such sources include horns, wet tyres on asphalt, pneumatic brakes and exhaust noises from motorcycles etc.

NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors will reduce their function and may prevent measurement.

Driver responsibility

The driver should bear in mind that the function is an aid – not an infallible, fully-automatic function. The driver must therefore be prepared to interrupt a parking step.

There are also a few details to bear in mind while parking, e.g.:

- The driver is always responsible for determining whether the space selected by the function is suitable for parking.
- Do not use the function if snow chains or a spare wheel are fitted.
- Do not use the function if cargo items are protruding from the car.
- Heavy rain or snow may cause the system to measure the parking space incorrectly.
- During the search and check-measurement of the parking space, the function may miss objects positioned deep in the parking space.
- Parking spaces on narrow streets are not always feasible, since the space required for manoeuvring may not be sufficient.
- Use approved tyres[128] with the correct tyre pressure - this affects the ability of the function to park the car.
- The function bases itself on the locations of vehicles already parked nearby – if they are inappropriately parked, your own car's tyres and wheel rims may be damaged by contact with the kerb.
- Perpendicular parking spaces may be missed or offered unnecessarily if one

[128] "Approved tyres" refers to tyres of the same type and make as those fitted on delivery from the factory.

parked car is protruding more than other parked cars.

- The function is designed for parking on straight streets – not sharp curves or bends. For this reason, make sure the car is parallel to the potential parking spaces when the function measures the space.

Related information

- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 381)
- Speed-dependent steering force (p. 274)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)

* Option/accessory.

Messages for Park Assist Pilot*

Messages for Park Assist Pilot (PAP[129]) can be shown in the driver display and/or the centre display. Here are some examples.

Message	Specification
Park Assist System **Sensors blocked, cleaning needed**	One or more of the function's sensors are blocked - check and correct as soon as possible.
Park Assist System **Unavailable Service required**	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[A].

[A] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message persists, contact a workshop[A].

Related information

- Park Assist Pilot* (p. 381)
- Limitations of Park Assist Pilot* (p. 386)

[129] Park Assist Pilot

Radar unit

The radar unit is used by several driver support systems and has the task of sensing other vehicles.

Radar unit location

The radar unit is used by the following functions:

- Distance Warning*
- Adaptive cruise control*
- Pilot Assist*
- Lane assistance
- City Safety
- Steering assistance at risk of collision

Modification of the radar unit could result in its use being illegal.

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)
- Recommended maintenance for camera and radar unit (p. 402)
- Type approval for radar device (p. 391)

* Option/accessory.

Type approval for radar device

Here you can find type approval for the car's radar units for adaptive cruise control* (ACC[130]), Pilot Assist* and BLIS*[131].

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
Botswana		✓		
Brazil	✓			Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário. Modelo: L2C0054TR 4122-14-8645 EAN: (01)07897843840855
		✓		Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados. 03563-17-05364

130 Adaptive Cruise Control
131 Blind Spot Information

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
Europe	✓			Hereby, Delphi Electronics and Safety declares that L2C0054TR / L2C0055TR are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU (RED). The original declaration of conformity can be accessed at the following link www.delphi.com/automotive-homologation. Frequency Band: 76GHz – 77GHz Maximum Output Power: 55dBm EIRP The Declaration of Conformity may be consulted at Delphi Electronics & Safety / 2151 E. Lincoln Road / Kokomo, Indiana 46902 USA
		✓		Hereby, Hella KgaA Hueck & Co. Declares that the radio equipment type RS4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: www.hella.com/vcc. Technical information: Frequency range: 24.05 ... 24.25 GHz Transmission power: 20 dBm (maximum) EIRP Manufacturer and Address: Manufacturer: Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. Address: Rixbecker Straße 75, 59552 Lippstadt, Germany
The United Arab Emirates (UAE)	✓			Registered No: ER37536/15 Dealer No: DA37380/15
		✓		Registered No: ER53878/17 Dealer No: DA44932/15
Ghana		✓		NCA Approved: 1R3-1M-7E1-0B7

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
Indonesia	✓			37295/POSTEL/2014 4927
		✓		Certificate number: 50459/SDPPI/2017 Country of origin Germany Certificate number: 53578/SDPPI/2017 Country of origin China PLG ID: 6051
Jamaica		✓		This product contains a Type Approved Module by Jamaica: SMA – “RS4”.
Jordan	✓			Type Approval No.: TRC/LPD/2014/255 Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)
		✓		Type Approval No.: TRC/LPD/2017/63 Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)
Malaysia		✓		CID F 15000578
Morocco	✓			AGREE PAR L’ANRT MAROC NUMÉRO D’AGRÉMENT: MR 9929 ANRT 2014 DATE D’AGRÉMENT: 26/12/2014

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
Mexico	✓			IFETEL: RLVDEL215-0299
		✓		Radar de corto alcance RS4 Hella KGaA Hueck & Co IFETEL: RLVHERS17-0286 La operación de este equipo esta sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones: (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.
Moldova	✓	✓		
Nigeria		✓		Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission.
Oman		✓		

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
Russia		✓		
Serbia	✓			И011 14
		✓		И011 17
Singapore	✓		Complies with IMDA Standards DA 103238	DA 105753
		✓		DA 103238
South Africa	✓			TA-2014/1824
		✓		TA-2016/3407

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
South Korea	✓			Certification No. MSIP-CMI- DPH-L2C0054TR
		✓		R-CMM-HLA-RS4 이 기기는 업무용(A급) 전자파 적합기기로서 판 매자 또는 사용 자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바 라며, 가정외의 지역에서 사용 하는 것을 목적으 로 합니다
Taiwan	✓			CCAB15LP0560T3
		✓		CCAB17LP0470T5 警語 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機,非經許可,公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加 大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信;經發現有干擾現象時,應立即停用 ,並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。 前項合法通信,指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、 科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾
Thailand		✓		เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานหรือข้อกำหนดของ กสทช. เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
Ukraine	✓			Delphi цім стверджує, що обладнання RACAM/SRR2 відповідає вимогам Про затвердження Технічного регламенту радіообладнання і телекомунікаційного кінцевого (термінального) обладнання (Постанова КМУ № 679 від 24 червня 2009 р.) Декларація відповідності знаходиться на сайті Delphi за адресою: Delphi. Частотний діапазон: 24,05 – 24,25 ГГц Потужність передачі: 20 дБм (макс.) EIRP
		✓		Цим HELLA GmbH & Co. KGaA заявляє, що радіотехнічне обладнання типу RS4 відповідає Технічному регламенту радіотехнічного обладнання та Директиві 2014/53/ЄС. Повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний за адресою: www.hella.com/vcc Частотний діапазон: 24,05 – 24,25 ГГц Потужність передачі: 20 дБм (макс.) EIRP
Vietnam		✓		
Zambia		✓		

Type approval for radio equipment

Market	Symbol	Type approval
Europe		Hereby, Volvo cars, declares that all radio equipment's are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU.
Japan		R 204-750001 This device is granted pursuant to the Japanese Radio Law and the Japanese Telecommunications Business Law. This device should not be modified (otherwise the granted designation number will become invalid).

For detailed information on type approval, go to volvocars.com/support.

Related information

- Radar unit (p. 390)
- Adaptive cruise control* (p. 299)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 309)
- BLIS* (p. 354)

* Option/accessory.

Camera unit

The camera unit is used by several driver support systems and has the task of for example detecting lane lines or traffic signs.

Location of the camera unit

The camera unit is used by the following functions:

- Adaptive cruise control*
- Pilot Assist*
- Lane assistance*
- Steering assistance at risk of collision
- City Safety
- Driver Alert Control*
- Road Sign Information*
- Active main beam*
- Park Assist*

Related information

- Driving support systems (p. 274)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)
- Recommended maintenance for camera and radar unit (p. 402)

Limitations for camera and radar unit

The camera and radar unit has certain limitations – which in turn also limit those functions that use the unit. A driver should be aware about the following examples of limitations.

Common limitations for camera and radar

Blocked unit

The marked area must be cleaned regularly and kept free from stickers, objects, shade film, etc.

The camera unit is placed inside the upper section of the windscreen together with the car's radar unit.

Do not place, stick or mount anything on the inside or outside of the windscreen, in front of or around the camera and radar unit – this may interfere with camera and radar-based functions. This may result functions being reduced, being switched off completely or giving incorrect function responses.

High temperature

At very high temperatures the camera and radar unit can temporarily be switched off for about 15 minutes after the engine is started so as to protect the unit's electronics. The camera and radar unit restarts automatically when the temperature has fallen sufficiently.

Damaged windscreen

NOTE

If not rectified it can lead to reduced performance for the driver support systems that use the camera and radar unit. This may result functions being reduced, being switched off completely or giving incorrect function responses.

The following is also applicable so as not to risk incorrect function for the driver supports that use the radar unit:

- If a scratch, crack or stone chip appears on the windscreen in front of any of the "windows" for the camera and radar unit and covers an area of approx. 0.5 × 3.0 mm (0.02 × 0.12 in.) or more, a workshop[132] must be contacted so that the windscreen can be replaced.
- Volvo recommends **not** repairing cracks, scratches or stone chips in the area in front of the camera and radar unit – the entire windscreen should be replaced instead.
- Before replacing a windscreen, contact a workshop[132] to verify that the correct windscreen has been ordered and will be fitted.
- The same type of windscreen wipers or windscreen wipers approved by Volvo must be fitted when the windscreen is replaced.
- When replacing the windscreen, the camera and radar unit must be recalibrated by a workshop[132] to ensure the functionality of all the camera and radar-based systems in the car.

Further limitations for radar

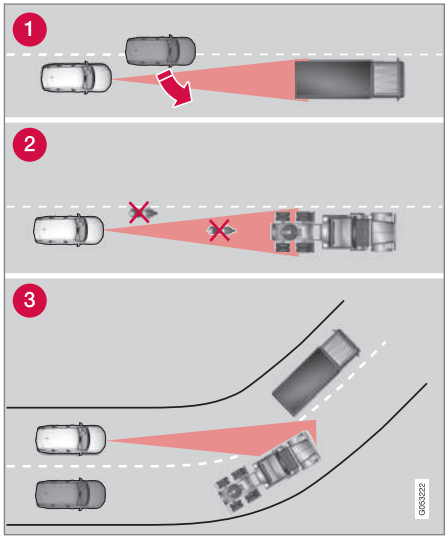
Vehicle speed

The radar unit's ability to detect a vehicle ahead is greatly reduced if the speed of the vehicle ahead is very different to the speed of your own car.

132 An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Limited field of vision

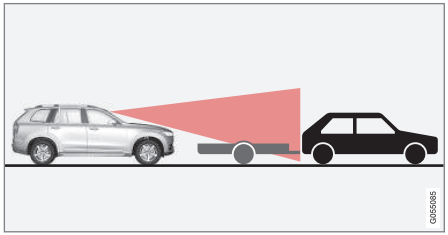
The radar unit has a limited field of vision. In some situations another vehicle is not detected, or the detection is made later than expected.



The radar unit's field of vision

1. Sometimes the radar unit is late at detecting vehicles at close distances - e.g. a vehicle that drives in between your car and the vehicle ahead.
2. Small vehicles, such as motorcycles, or vehicles not driving in the centre of the lane can remain undetected.
3. In bends, the radar unit may detect a different vehicle than intended or lose a detected vehicle from view.

Low trailers



Low trailer in radar shadow

Low trailers can also be difficult for the radar unit to detect, or are not detected at all - the driver should therefore be particularly careful when driving behind low trailers when the adaptive cruise control* or Pilot Assist* is activated.

Further limitations for camera

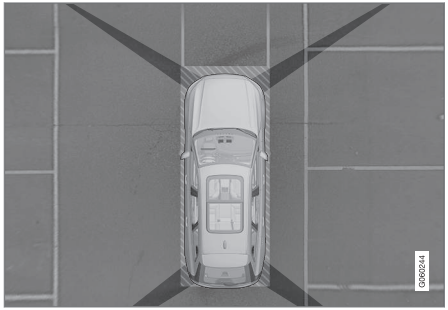
Impaired vision

The cameras have limitations similar to the human eye, i.e. may "see" worse in for example intense snowfall or rain, dense fog, heavy dust storms and snow flurries. Under such conditions, the functions of camera-dependent systems could be significantly reduced or temporarily disengaged.

Strong oncoming light, reflections in the carriageway, snow or ice on the road surface, dirty road surfaces or unclear lane markings can also significantly reduce camera function when it is used to scan the carriageway to detect pedestrians, cyclists, large animals and other vehicles.

Further limitations for Park assist camera*

Blind sectors



There are "blind" sectors between the cameras' fields of vision.

In the park assist camera's 360° view* obstacles/objects may "vanish" in the gaps between the individual cameras.

WARNING

Pay attention to the possibility that, even if it only looks like a relatively small part of the image is obscured, a relatively large sector could be hidden from view. An obstacle could thereby go undetected until the car is very close to it.

Light conditions

The camera image is adjusted automatically according to prevailing light conditions. Because of this, the image may vary slightly in brightness and quality. Poor light conditions can result in reduced image quality.

NOTE

A bike carrier or other accessory mounted on the rear of the car could obscure the camera's view.

Related information

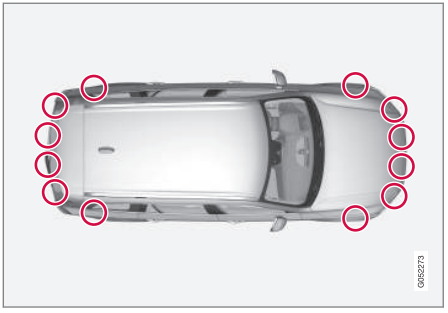
- Camera unit (p. 399)
- Radar unit (p. 390)
- Recommended maintenance for camera and radar unit (p. 402)
- Park assist camera* (p. 371)
- Volvo Cars support site (p. 21)

Recommended maintenance for camera and radar unit

In order that the camera and radar units shall function correctly, they must be kept clear of dirt, ice and snow, and be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.

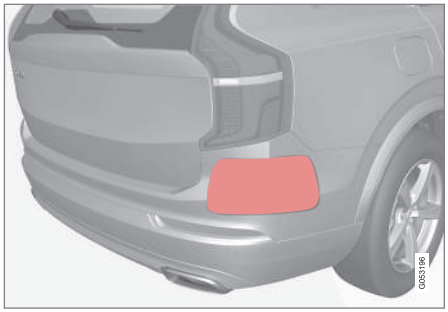
NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may cause incorrect warning signals, reduced or no function.



Location of the parking sensors

* Option/accessory.



Location of rear radar units. Keep the surface indicated clean – on both the left and right-hand sides of the car.

- To ensure best possible functionality, the surfaces in front of the sensors must be kept clean.
- Do not affix any objects, tape or labels in the area of the sensors.
- Clean camera lenses regularly with lukewarm water and car shampoo - be careful not to scratch the lenses.

IMPORTANT

Maintenance of driver support components must only be performed at a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Camera unit (p. 399)
- Radar unit (p. 390)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)
- Park assist camera* (p. 371)

Symbols and messages for camera and radar unit

Here are examples of some of the display messages and symbols regarding the camera and radar units that can be shown in the driver display.

Detector blocked

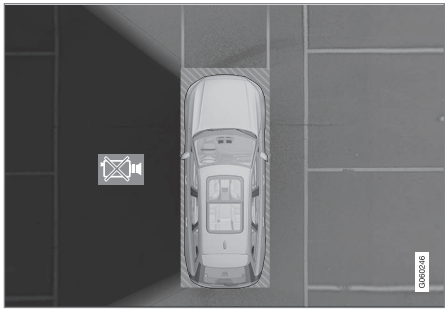
If the driver display shows this symbol and the message **Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual**, this means that the camera and radar unit cannot detect other vehicles, cyclists, pedestrians and large animals in front of the car, and that the car's camera-based and radar-based functions may be disrupted.

The following table presents examples of possible causes for a message being shown, along with the appropriate action:

Cause	Action
The windscreen surface in front of the camera and radar unit is dirty or covered with ice or snow.	Clean dirt, ice and snow from the windscreen surface in front of the camera and radar unit.
Thick fog and heavy rain or snow block the radar signals or the camera view.	No action. Sometimes the unit does not work during heavy rain or snowfall.
Water or snow from the road surface swirls up and blocks the radar signals or camera view.	No action. Sometimes the unit does not work on a very wet or snow-covered road surface.
Dirt has appeared between the inside of the windscreen and the camera and radar unit.	Visit a workshop to have the windscreen inside the unit's cover cleaned - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
Strong oncoming light	No action. The camera unit is reset automatically in more favourable light conditions.

Defective camera

If a camera sector is black and contains this symbol then it means that the camera is out of order.



The car's left-hand camera is out of order.

A black camera sector is also shown in the following instances, but then **without** the symbol for defective camera:

- open door
- open tailgate
- folded-in door mirror.

Rear parking camera

WARNING

Pay additional attention while reversing when this symbol is shown if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is mounted and electrically connected to the car.

The symbol indicates that the parking assistance sensors rearward are **switched off** and will not warn of any obstacles.

Related information

- Camera unit (p. 399)
- Radar unit (p. 390)
- Limitations for camera and radar unit (p. 399)
- Volvo Cars support site (p. 21)

ELECTRIC OPERATION AND CHARGING

General information on electric drive

Recharge runs like a regular car, but certain functions differ from a car that only runs on petrol or diesel. The electric motor drives the car mostly at low speeds, the petrol engine at higher speeds, as well as during more active driving.

The driver display shows some information that is unique to the Recharge - charging information, selected drive mode, distance to empty battery as well as the hybrid battery's charge level.

It is possible to set the car in different drive modes while driving, e.g. electric operation only or, when power is required, both electric motor and petrol engine. The car calculates a combination of drivability, driving experience, environmental impact and fuel economy according to the drive mode selected.

In order that the car should have optimal function it is important that the hybrid battery with associated electrical drive systems, as well as the petrol engine and its drive systems, have the correct operating temperature. Battery capacity may be reduced considerably if the battery is too cold or too hot. Preconditioning prepares the car's drive systems and the passenger compartment before departure so that both wear and energy needs during the journey are reduced. The range for the hybrid battery increases.

The hybrid battery which drives the electric motor is charged via a charging cable but can also be charged by gentle braking and engine braking in gear position **B**. The hybrid battery can also be charged by the car's engine.

Important to know

Car without power

Bear in mind that important functions such as the servo brakes and power steering are limited when the car is without power.

WARNING

The brake servo only works when the electric motor or internal combustion engine is running.

Towing not permitted

Towing the car is not permitted since this damages the electric motor.

Exterior engine noise

WARNING

Remember that the car does not emit any engine noise when it is only powered by the electric motor and may therefore be difficult to notice by children, pedestrians, cyclists and animals. This is especially true at low speeds, such as in car parks.

High-voltage current

WARNING

Several components in the car work with high-voltage current that could be dangerous in the event of incorrect intervention. These components, and all orange-coloured cables, must only be handled by qualified personnel.

Do not touch anything that is not clearly described in the owner's manual.

Related information

- Charging the hybrid battery (p. 409)
- Hybrid gauge (p. 80)
- Drive modes (p. 451)
- Start and switch off preconditioning (p. 209)
- Hybrid battery (p. 608)
- Automatic gearbox (p. 444)
- Towing (p. 478)

Charging the hybrid battery

In addition to the fuel tank, as in a conventional car, the car is equipped with a rechargeable battery - a so-called hybrid battery of the lithium-ion type.

The hybrid battery is charged using a charging cable which is located in a storage compartment in the cargo area.

NOTE

Volvo recommends a charging cable in accordance with IEC 62196 and IEC 61851 which supports temperature monitoring.

The time it takes for the hybrid battery to be charged is dependent on the charging current that is used.

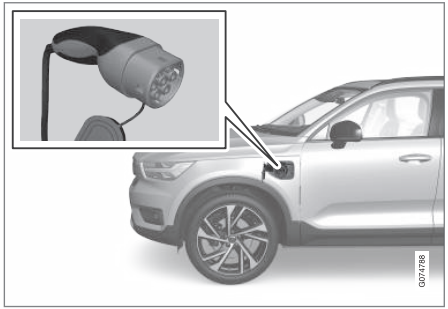
NOTE

The capacity of the hybrid battery decreases slightly with age and use, which may result in increased use of the petrol engine and thereby slightly increased fuel consumption.

WARNING

Replacing the hybrid battery must only be performed by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Charging cable handle and charging input socket



Charging cable handle and charging input socket.

Charging status is indicated in three ways:

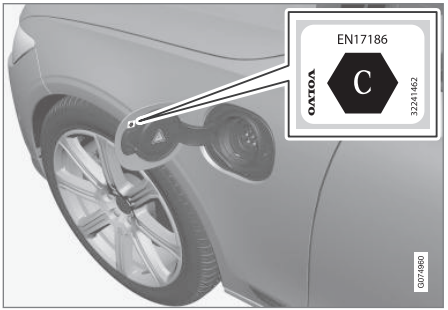
- Indicators on the charging cable's control unit.
- Indicator lamp in the car's charging input socket.
- Illustration and text in the driver display.

The starter battery is charged when the hybrid battery is charging and terminated when the hybrid battery is fully charged.

If the hybrid battery's temperature is below -10 °C (14 °F) or above 40 °C (104 °F) then it may mean that some of the car's functions are changed or unavailable because the capacity of the hybrid batteries is reduced outside this temperature range.

Electric operation is not possible if the temperature of the battery is too low or too high. If drive mode PURE is then selected, the combustion engine starts.

Decal on the inside of the charging flap



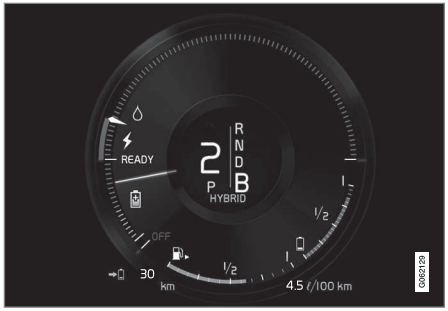
Use charging that is approved for use in the car in accordance with the identifier[1] on the inside of the charging input socket flap.

[1] Identifiers that comply with CEN standard EN 17186 can be found on the inside of the charging input socket flap.

Charging with fixed control unit in accordance with mode 3[2]

In certain markets the control unit is installed within a charging station connected to the mains power circuit. In which case, the charging cable has no control unit of its own. Therefore, use the charging station's charging cable and follow the instructions at the charging station.

Energy recovery during braking



Indication in driver display during energy recovery.

Energy is regenerated to the battery during light pressure on the brake pedal or during engine braking.

The function is available in all drive modes together with gear position **D** or **B**.

Related information

- Charging cable (p. 411)
- Charging current (p. 410)
- Opening and closing the hatch for the charging input socket (p. 415)
- Starting hybrid battery charging (p. 415)
- Stopping hybrid battery charging (p. 423)
- Charging status in the charging cable's control unit (p. 419)
- Charging status in the car's charging input socket (p. 418)
- Charging status in the car's driver display (p. 421)
- Symbols and messages relating to hybrid drive in the driver display (p. 425)
- Automatic gearbox (p. 444)
- Changing drive mode (p. 454)
- Long-term storage of vehicles with hybrid batteries (p. 427)
- Regenerative braking* (p. 443)

Charging current

Charging current is used for charging the hybrid battery as well as preconditioning of the car. Charging takes place with a charging cable connected to the car's charging input socket and a 230 V socket[3] (alternating current).

When the charging cable is activated, the driver display shows a message and a lamp in the car's charging input socket illuminates. The charging current is mainly used for battery charging, but is also used for preconditioning the car. When the car's hybrid battery is charged, the starter battery is also charged.

IMPORTANT

Never unplug the charging cable from the 230 V socket (alternating current) while charging is in progress - there is then a risk of damaging the 230 V socket. Always stop charging first before unplugging the charging cable from the car's charging input socket and then from the 230 V socket.

2 European standard - EN 61851-1.
3 The voltage in the socket may vary depending on market.

* Option/accessory.

IMPORTANT

Ensure that the wall socket fuse can handle the specified amperage for the charging cable.

NOTE

- If the weather is very hot or very cold, some of the charging current is used to heat/cool the hybrid battery and the passenger compartment, which results in a longer charging time.
- The charging time is extended if preconditioning has been selected. The time required depends mainly on the outside temperature.

Charging time

Charging times may vary. The following charging times are applicable when air conditioning or any other consumer is not affecting charging. If charging time seems long, it should be investigated.

Charging times for charging with 230V

Current intensity (A)[A]	Charging time (hours)
6	8
10	4
16	3

A Maximum charging current may vary depending on market.

Fuse

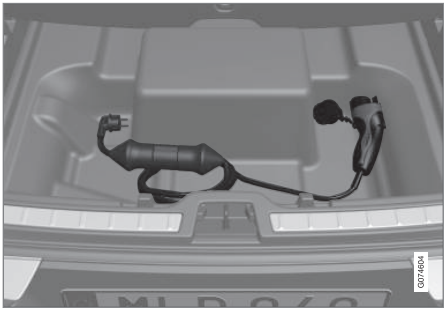
Normally several 230 V consumers are included in a fuse circuit, so additional consumers (e.g. lighting, vacuum cleaner, electric drill, etc.) can be on the same fuse.

Related information

- Charging cable (p. 411)
- Charging status in the charging cable's control unit (p. 419)
- Charging status in the car's driver display (p. 421)
- Charging status in the car's charging input socket (p. 418)
- Start and switch off preconditioning (p. 209)
- Stopping hybrid battery charging (p. 423)

Charging cable

The charging cable with its control unit is used to charge the car's hybrid battery.



The charging cable is located in the storage compartment under the cargo area's floor hatch.

WARNING

Only use the charging cable provided with your car or a replacement cable recommended by Volvo.

Specifications, charging cable	
Ambient temperature	-32 °C to 50 °C (-25 °F to 122 °F)

WARNING

- The charging cable has a built-in circuit breaker. Charging must only take place with grounded and approved sockets.
- Children should be supervised when in the vicinity of the charging cable when it is plugged in.
- High voltage in the charging cable. Contact with high voltage can cause death or serious personal injury.
- Do not use the charging cable if it is damaged in any way. A damaged or inoperative charging cable must only be repaired by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
- Always position the charging cable so that it will not be driven over, stepped on, tripped over or damaged in some other way, or cause personal injury.
- Disconnect the charger from the wall outlet before cleaning it.
- Never connect the charging cable to an extension cord or a multiple plug socket.
- Do not use one or more adapters between the charging cable and the electrical socket.
- Do not use an external timer between the charging cable and the electrical socket.

Also, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for using the charging cable and its components.

IMPORTANT

Multiple plugs, external timers, adapters, extension cables, overvoltage protection or similar devices must not be used together with the charging cable as this result in a risk of fire, electric shocks, etc.

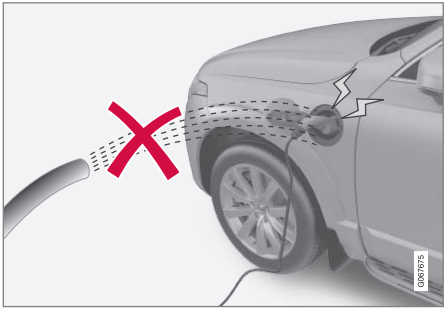
An adapter between the 230 V socket (alternating current) and the charging cable may only be used if the adapter is approved in accordance with IEC 61851 and IEC 62196.

IMPORTANT

Never unplug the charging cable from the 230 V socket (alternating current) while charging is in progress - there is then a risk of damaging the 230 V socket. Always stop charging first before unplugging the charging cable from the car's charging input socket and then from the 230 V socket.

IMPORTANT

Clean the charging cable with a clean cloth, moistened with water or a mild detergent. Do not use chemicals or solvents.



WARNING

The charging cable and its associated parts must not be swamped or immersed in water.

IMPORTANT

Avoid exposing the control unit and its plug to direct sunlight. In such cases, the overheating protection in the plug is at risk of reducing or interrupting the charging of the hybrid battery.

Related information

- Charging status in the charging cable's control unit (p. 419)
- Ground fault breaker in the charging cable (p. 413)
- Temperature monitoring of the charging cable (p. 414)
- Charging the hybrid battery (p. 409)

Ground fault breaker in the charging cable

The control unit for the charging cable charging cable has a built-in ground fault breaker that protects the car and the user from electric shocks caused by system faults.

WARNING

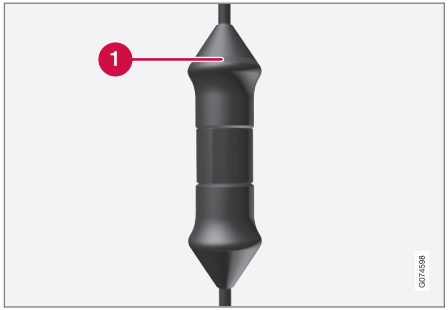
Charging the hybrid battery must only take place with grounded and approved 230 V sockets (alternating current). If the capacity for the socket or fuse circuit is unknown, ask a licensed electrician to check the capacity. Charging above the capacity of a fuse circuit may lead to fire or damage the fuse circuit.

WARNING

- The charging cable's overvoltage protection helps to protect the car's charging system, but cannot guarantee that overload will never occur.
- Never use visibly worn or damaged electrical sockets. This could cause fire or serious injury.
- Never connect the charging cable to a cable extension.
- Maintenance or replacement of the hybrid battery must only be performed by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician.
- Do not use a charging cable that has not been recommended.
- An external timer must not be used between the charging cable and the electrical socket.
- One or more adapters must not be used between the charging cable and the power socket.

IMPORTANT

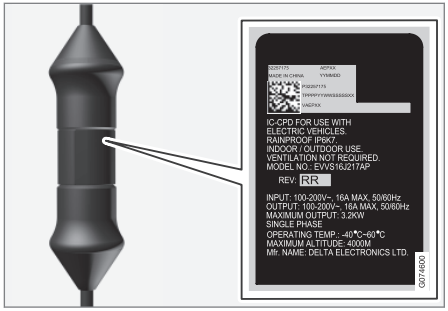
The ground fault breaker does not protect the 230 V socket (alternating current)/ electrical installation.



Control unit LED[4] lamp.

1 LED lamp

If the control unit's built-in ground fault breaker is tripped then the LED lamp illuminates with a red constant glow - check the 230 V socket (alternating current).



IMPORTANT

- Check the capacity of the socket.
- Other electronic equipment connected to the same fuse circuit must be disconnected if the total load is exceeded.
- Do not connect the charging cable if the socket is damaged.

Related information

- Charging cable (p. 411)
- Charging status in the charging cable's control unit (p. 419)

Temperature monitoring of the charging cable

For the car's hybrid battery to be charged safely every time, the control unit for the charging cable and the plug have built-in monitoring devices for the temperature. Temperature monitoring takes place in the control unit and the plug.

NOTE

Volvo recommends a charging cable in accordance with IEC 62196 and IEC 61851 which supports temperature monitoring.

Monitoring in the control unit

Charging is switched off if the temperature of the control unit is too high. This is to protect the electronics. This may take place at a high outside temperature, for example, and/or when strong sunlight shines directly on the control unit.

4 LED (Light Emitting Diode)

Monitoring at the plug

If the temperature at the power source to which the charging cable is connected is too high, the charging current is reduced. If the temperature exceeds a critical level, charging is stopped completely.

IMPORTANT

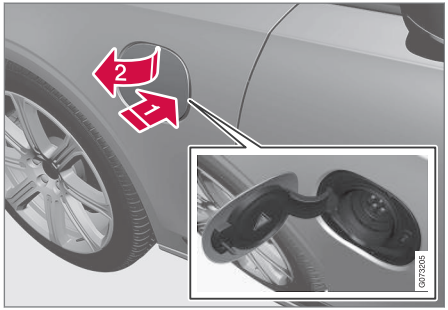
If the temperature monitoring has automatically lowered the charging current repeatedly and charging has been interrupted then the cause of the overheating must be investigated and rectified.

Related information

- Charging cable (p. 411)
- Charging status in the charging cable's control unit (p. 419)

Opening and closing the hatch for the charging input socket

The flap for the hybrid battery's charging input socket is opened manually.



1. Press in the rear section of the cover and release.
2. Open the cover.

Close the cover for the charging input socket in reverse order.

Related information

- Starting hybrid battery charging (p. 415)
- Stopping hybrid battery charging (p. 423)
- Charging the hybrid battery (p. 409)

Starting hybrid battery charging

The car's hybrid battery is charged with a charging cable between the car and a 230 V socket[5] (alternating current).

Only use the charging cable supplied with the car or a replacement cable recommended by Volvo.

IMPORTANT

Never connect the charging cable when there is a risk of thunderstorm or lightning strike.

NOTE

Volvo recommends a charging cable in accordance with IEC 62196 and IEC 61851 which supports temperature monitoring.

[5] The voltage in the socket may vary depending on market.

WARNING

- The hybrid battery must only be charged at maximum permitted charging current or lower in accordance with applicable local and national recommendations for hybrid charging from 230 V sockets (alternating current)/ plugs.
- Charging the hybrid battery must only take place from an approved grounded 230 V socket[6] or from a charging station with a loose charging cable (Mode 3) supplied by Volvo.
- The control unit's ground fault breaker protects the car, but there may still be a risk of overloading the 230 V mains power circuit.
- Avoid visible worn or damaged mains sockets since they may lead to fire damage and/or personal injury if used.
- Never use an extension cable.
- Never use an adapter or external timer.

WARNING

- The charging cable has a built-in circuit breaker. Charging must only take place with grounded and approved sockets.
- Children should be supervised when in the vicinity of the charging cable when it is plugged in.
- High voltage in the charging cable. Contact with high voltage can cause death or serious personal injury.
- Do not use the charging cable if it is damaged in any way. A damaged or inoperative charging cable must only be repaired by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
- Always position the charging cable so that it will not be driven over, stepped on, tripped over or damaged in some other way, or cause personal injury.
- Disconnect the charger from the wall outlet before cleaning it.
- Never connect the charging cable to an extension cord or a multiple plug socket.
- Do not use one or more adapters between the charging cable and the electrical socket.
- Do not use an external timer between the charging cable and the electrical socket.

Also, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for using the charging cable and its components.

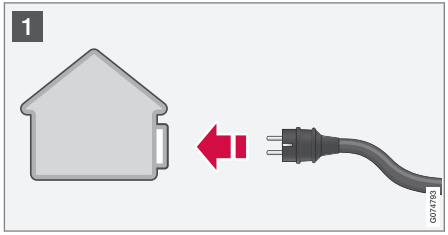
IMPORTANT

Check that the 230 V socket (alternating current) has adequate power capacity for charging electric vehicles – in the event of uncertainty, the socket must be checked by a qualified professional.

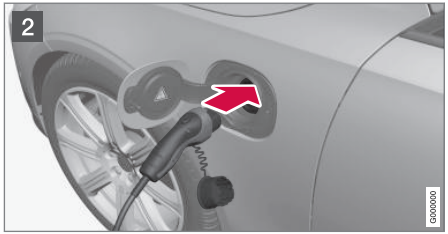
Note that the car must be switched off before charging.

[6] Or equivalent sockets with a different voltage, depending on market.

Take the charging cable out from the storage compartment under the cargo area floor.



1 Connect the charging cable to a 230 V socket. Never use an extension cable.



2 Open the charging hatch. Remove the charging handle's protective cover and then press the handle the whole way into the socket for the car.

3 Clamp the charging handle's cover in place as illustrated.

IMPORTANT

To avoid damage to the paint, e.g. in the event of high winds, position the charging handle's protective cover so that it does not touch the car.

3. The charging cable's charging handle is fastened/locked in, and charging starts within 5 seconds. When charging has started, the LED lamp in the charging input socket flashes with a green glow. The driver display shows the remaining estimated charging time or whether charging is not working as intended.

   Battery charging can be interrupted for a while if the car is unlocked. If the charging cable is left in the charging input socket, the charge will restart again after a while.

IMPORTANT

Never unplug the charging cable from the 230 V socket (alternating current) while charging is in progress - there is then a risk of damaging the 230 V socket. Always stop charging first before unplugging the charging cable from the car's charging input socket and then from the 230 V socket.

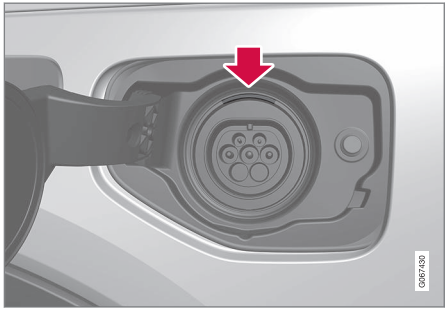
Condensation from the air conditioning may drip under the car during charging. This is normal and takes place due to cooling of the hybrid battery.

Related information

- Charging the hybrid battery (p. 409)
- Opening and closing the hatch for the charging input socket (p. 415)
- Charging status in the car's charging input socket (p. 418)
- Charging status in the car's driver display (p. 421)
- Charging status in the charging cable's control unit (p. 419)
- Stopping hybrid battery charging (p. 423)

Charging status in the car's charging input socket

The charging input socket shows the charging status using an LED lamp.



LED lamp location in the car's charging input socket.

The LED lamp shows the existing status while charging is in progress. If the LED lamp does not illuminate, check that the cable is firmly plugged into the wall socket and the socket in the car. The white, red, yellow or blue lamps are activated when the passenger compartment lighting is switched on - they remain switched on for a while after the passenger compartment lighting has been switched off.

LED lamp's glow	Specification
White	LED light
Yellow	Waiting mode[A] - waiting for charging to start.
Flashing green	Charging in progress[B].
Green	Charging complete[C]
Red	A fault has arisen.
Blue	Scheduled charging

A For example, after a door has been opened or if the charging cable's handle is not locked in.
B The slower the flashing, the closer to fully charged.
C Extinguishes after a while.

Related information

- Charging the hybrid battery (p. 409)
- Charging status in the car's driver display (p. 421)
- Charging status in the charging cable's control unit (p. 419)
- Stopping hybrid battery charging (p. 423)

Charging status in the charging cable's control unit

The indicator on the charging cable's control unit shows the status of ongoing charging as well as status after completed charging.

Control unit LED[7] lamp.

1 LED lamp

[7] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

LED	Status	Specification	Recommended action
Extinguished	Charging is not possible.	No power supply to charging cable.	1. Unplug the charging cable from the socket. 2. Plug the charging cable into the socket again or use another socket. 3. If the problem persists – contact Volvo Support.
White light	Charging possible.	The charging cable is ready to be plugged into the car.	If the LED lamp is white but charging is not possible: 1. Unplug the charging cable from the charging input socket. 2. Plug the charging cable into the charging input socket again. 3. If the indicator does not flash white within approx. 10 seconds – first unplug the charging cable from the charging input socket and then from the power socket. Plug the charging cable into the charging input socket and the socket again. 4. If the problem persists – contact Volvo Support.
Flashes white	Charging in progress.	The car's electronics have started charging Charging in progress.	Wait until the batteries are fully charged.
Illuminates in red	Charging is not possible.	Temporary fault.	1. Unplug the charging cable from the charging input socket. 2. Wait for a short time. 3. Plug the charging cable into the charging input socket again. 4. If the problem persists – contact Volvo Support.
Flashes red	Charging is not possible.	Critical fault.	First remove the charging cable from the charging input socket and then from the power outlet. If the problem persists – contact Volvo Support.

Related information

- Charging the hybrid battery (p. 409)
- Charging status in the car's charging input socket (p. 418)
- Charging status in the car's driver display (p. 421)
- Stopping hybrid battery charging (p. 423)

Charging status in the car's driver display

The driver display shows the status for charging with both image and text. The information is shown for as long as the driver display is operating.

Image	Message	Specification
	Fully charged at: [Time] is shown together with an animation with blue pulsating light through the charging cable.	Charging continues and an approximate time for when the battery is estimated to be fully charged is shown.
	The text **Charging complete** is shown. An illustration of the car is shown with an LED indicator at the charging input socket that illuminates in green.	The battery is fully charged.
	The text **Charging error** is shown. The LED indicator at the charging input socket illuminates in red.	A fault has occurred, check the connection of the charging cable to the car's charging input socket and to the 230 V socket[A] (alternating current).

[A] The voltage in the socket may vary depending on market.

NOTE

If the driver display is not used for a while then it is dimmed. Reactivate the display by means of one of the following:

- depress the brake pedal.
- open one of the doors.
- set the car in ignition position **I** by pressing and releasing the **START** button.

Related information

- Charging the hybrid battery (p. 409)
- Symbols and messages relating to hybrid drive in the driver display (p. 425)
- Charging status in the car's charging input socket (p. 418)
- Charging status in the charging cable's control unit (p. 419)
- Stopping hybrid battery charging (p. 423)

Stopping hybrid battery charging

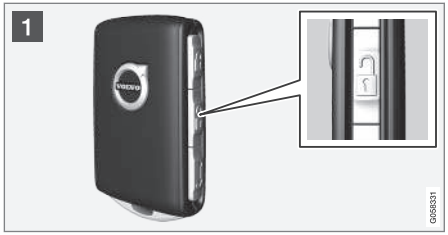
Finish charging by unlocking the car, unplugging the charging cable from the car's charging input socket and then from the 230 V socket[8] (alternating current).

IMPORTANT

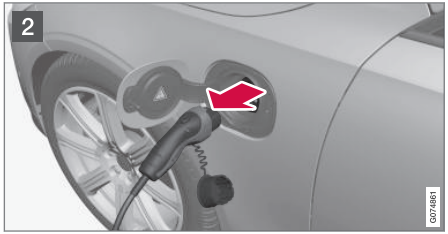
Before the charging cable is disconnected from the car's charging input socket, the car must be unlocked using the unlock button on the remote control key. This must be carried out even if the doors on the car are already unlocked. If the car is not unlocked using the unlock button, this may lead to damage to the charging cable or to the system.

NOTE

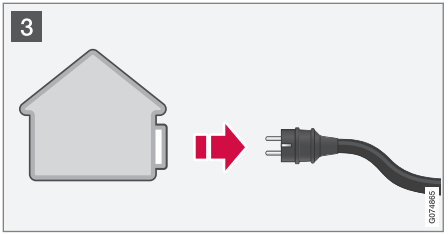
Always unlock the car so that charging is stopped before the connection to the 230 V socket (alternating current) is unplugged. Note that the charging cable must be unplugged from the car's charging input socket before being unplugged from the 230 V socket, partly to avoid damage to the system and partly to avoid stopping the charging unintentionally.



1 Unlock the car with the remote control key - charging is finished and the charging cable's locked handle releases/is unlocked.



2 Unplug the cable from the car's charging input socket and close the hatch.



3 Unplug the cable from the 230 V socket.

Return the charging cable to the storage compartment under the cargo area floor.

The charging cable is locked automatically

If the charging cable is not unplugged from the charging input socket, it is locked in again automatically shortly after unlocking in order to maximise charging and range, as well as to facilitate preconditioning prior to the journey. The charging cable can be unplugged again if the car is unlocked using the remote control key. For cars with Passive Entry*, you can lock and unlock using the handle again.

Related information

- Opening and closing the hatch for the charging input socket (p. 415)
- Charging cable (p. 411)

[8] The voltage in the socket may vary depending on market.

- Charging the hybrid battery (p. 409)
- Starting hybrid battery charging (p. 415)

Symbols and messages relating to hybrid drive in the driver display

A number of symbols and messages regarding Recharge can be shown in the driver display. They may also be shown in combination with general indicator and warning symbols and are then extinguished when the problems have been rectified.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	12 V Battery **Charging fault, service urgent. Drive to workshop**	Hybrid battery fault. Contact a workshop[A] to check the battery as soon as possible.
	12 V Battery **Charging fault Stop safely**	Hybrid battery fault. Stop the car safely and contact a workshop[A] to have the battery checked as soon as possible.
	12 V Battery **Fuse failure Service required**	Hybrid battery fault. Contact a workshop[A] to check the function as soon as possible.
	HV battery **Overheated, stop safely**	The temperature of the hybrid battery seems to be rising abnormally. Stop the car and switch off the engine. Wait at least 5 minutes before continuing to drive. Call a workshop[A] or check from the outside that everything seems normal before continuing to drive.
	Reduced performance **Max car speed limited**	The hybrid battery is not sufficiently charged for driving at high speeds. Charge the battery as soon as possible.
	Propulsion system **Harsh behaviour at low speed, car ok to use**	The hybrid system does not function as intended. Contact a workshop[A] to check the function as soon as possible.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Hybrid system failure **Service required**	The hybrid system is disengaged. Contact a workshop[A] to check the function as soon as possible.
	Charge cable **Remove before start**	Shown when the driver tries to start the car and the charging cable is connected to the car. Disconnect the charging cable and close the charging hatch.

[A] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

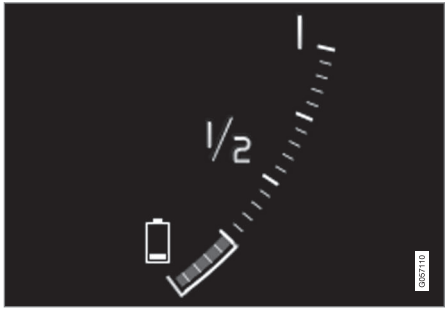
Related information

- Starting hybrid battery charging (p. 415)
- Stopping hybrid battery charging (p. 423)
- Charging the hybrid battery (p. 409)
- Indicator and warning symbols (p. 87)
- Hybrid gauge (p. 80)
- Hybrid battery gauge (p. 81)

Long-term storage of vehicles with hybrid batteries

To minimise hybrid battery degradation during prolonged storage (longer than 1 month) of the vehicle a charge level of approximately 25% is recommended as indicated on the driver display.

Proceed as follows:



1. If the state of charge is high – run the car until approx. 25% remains. If the state of charge is low – charge the battery until a level of approx. 25% is reached.
2. If storage has lasted longer than 6 months or the hybrid battery charge level is significantly lower than 25% – charge the battery to approx. 25% again to compensate for the natural self-discharge that occurred during the prolonged storage. Continuously check the charge level in the driver display.

NOTE

Choose the coolest location possible for the vehicle in order to minimise aging of the battery during long-term storage. During summer the vehicle should preferably remain indoors or outdoors in the shade, depending on where the temperature is lowest.

Related information

- Starting hybrid battery charging (p. 415)
- Hybrid battery gauge (p. 81)
- Charging the hybrid battery (p. 409)

STARTING AND DRIVING

Starting the car

The car is started using the start button beside the steering wheel when the remote control key is in the passenger compartment.

Start button location.

WARNING

Before starting:

- Fasten the seatbelt.
- Adjust the seat, steering wheel and mirrors.
- Make sure that the brake pedal can be fully depressed.

The remote control key is not physically used when starting the car since it is equipped with support for keyless starting (Passive start).

To start the car:

IMPORTANT

The car cannot be started if the charging cable is still engaged. Make sure the charging cable is removed from the charging input socket before the starting the car.

1. The remote control key must be inside the car. For cars with Passive Start, the key needs to be located in the front part of the passenger compartment. With the option for keyless locking/unlocking* of the car, the key can be anywhere in the car.
2. Hold the brake pedal depressed[1] fully. For cars with automatic gear changing, make sure that gear position **P** or **N** is selected. For cars with a manual gearbox, make sure that the gear lever is in neutral position or that the clutch pedal is depressed.
3. Press the start button.

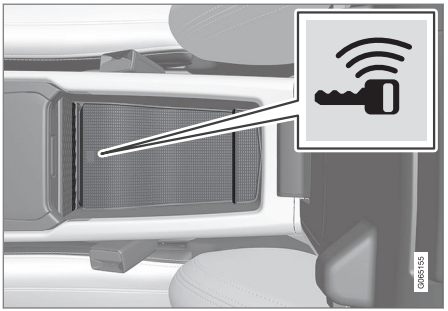
When the engine is started, the starter motor works until the engine is started or until its overheating protection triggers.

When starting in normal conditions, the car's electric drive motor is prioritised - the petrol engine remains switched off. This means that after the start button has been pressed, the electric motor has "started" and the car is ready to move. A started car is indicated by the driver display's indicator lamps extinguishing and its preset theme illuminating.

However there are situations where the petrol engine is started instead e.g. in the event of the temperature being too low or if the hybrid battery needs charging.

Error messages

If the **Car key not found** message is shown in the driver display when starting, place the remote control key by the backup reader. Then try to start the car again.



Backup reader's location.

[1] If the car is moving, the engine can be started simply by pressing the button.

* Option/accessory.

NOTE

When the remote control key is positioned by the backup reader, make sure that there are no car keys, metal objects or electronic apparatus by the backup reader, (e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers). Several car keys close to one another by the backup reader may cause interference with each other.

If the message **Car start System check, wait** is shown in the driver display when starting, wait until the message disappears and then try to start the car again.

IMPORTANT

If the engine fails to start after 3 attempts - wait for 3 minutes before making a further attempt. Starting capacity increases if the battery is allowed to recover.

NOTE

The car cannot be started if the hybrid battery is discharged.

WARNING

Never remove the remote control key from the car while driving.

WARNING

Always take the remote control key out from the car when leaving the car and make sure the car's electrical system is in ignition position **0** - especially if there are children in the car.

NOTE

The idling speed can be noticeably higher than normal for certain engine types during cold starting. This is done in order that the emissions system can reach normal operating temperature as quickly as possible, which minimises exhaust emissions and protects the environment.

Related information

- Switching off the car (p. 431)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 183)
- Using jump starting with another battery (p. 468)
- Selecting ignition mode (p. 433)

Switching off the car

The car is switched off using the start button beside the steering wheel.

Start button location.

To switch off the car:

– Press the start button - the car is switched off.

If the gear selector for cars with an automatic gearbox is not in position **P** or if the car rolls:

– Press the start button and hold it depressed until the car is switched off.

Related information

- Starting the car (p. 430)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 183)

- Using jump starting with another battery (p. 468)
- Selecting ignition mode (p. 433)

Ignition positions

The car's electrical system can be set in different levels/positions and in this way make the different functions available.

In order to facilitate the use of a limited number of functions with the engine switched off, the car's electrical system can be set in three different levels – **0**, **I** and **II**. These levels are described with the denomination "ignition position" throughout the owner's manual.

The following table shows the functions available in each ignition position/level:

Level	Functions
0	• Odometer, clock and temperature gauge are illuminated[A]. • Power* seats can be adjusted. • The power windows can be used. • The centre display is started and can be used[A]. • The infotainment system can be used[A]. In this mode, the functions are controlled by time and are switched off automatically after a short while.
I	• Panoramic roof, power windows, 12V power socket in the passenger compartment, Bluetooth, navigation, phone, ventilation fan and windscreen wipers can be used. • Power seats can be adjusted. • 12 V power sockets* in the cargo area can be used. • The infotainment system is started automatically if it was running when the car was left. **Power is taken from the battery in this ignition position.**

* Option/accessory.

Level	Functions
II	• The headlamps come on. • Warning/indicator lamps illuminate for 5 seconds. • Several other systems are activated. However, heating in seat cushions and the rear window can only be activated after the car has been started. **This ignition position consumes a lot of current from the battery and should therefore be avoided!**

A Also activated when the door is opened.

Related information
- Starting the car (p. 430)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 183)
- Using jump starting with another battery (p. 468)
- Selecting ignition mode (p. 433)

Selecting ignition mode
The car's electrical system can be set in different levels/positions and in this way make the different functions available.

Selecting ignition position

Start button location.

- **Ignition position 0** – Unlock the car and store the remote control key inside the car.

> **NOTE**
>
> To reach level **I** or **II without** starting the engine - do **not** depress the brake pedal, or the clutch pedal for cars with manual gear changing, when these ignition positions are to be selected.

- **Ignition position I** – Depress the start button and release.
- **Ignition position II** – Press and hold the button depressed for approx. 5 seconds. Then release the button.
- **Back to ignition position0** – To return to ignition position **0** from position **I** and **II** – press the start button.

Related information
- Starting the car (p. 430)
- Switching off the car (p. 431)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 183)
- Using jump starting with another battery (p. 468)

Alcohol lock*

The function of the alcohol lock is to prevent the car from being driven by individuals under the influence of alcohol. Before the engine can be started the driver must take a breath test that verifies that he/she is not under the influence of alcohol. Alcohol lock calibration takes place in accordance with each market's limit value in force for driving legally.

The car has an interface for the electrical connection of the different makes and models of alcohol lock recommended by Volvo. The interface facilitates alcohol lock connection, and gives the option of an integrated function including messages related to the alcohol lock in the car's main display. For information about a specific alcohol lock, please refer to the owner's manual from the respective alcohol lock manufacturer.

WARNING

The alcohol lock is an aid and does not exempt the driver from responsibility. It is always the responsibility of the driver to be sober and to drive the car safely.

Related information

- Bypass of the alcohol lock* (p. 434)
- Before starting the engine with the alcohol lock* (p. 435)
- Starting the car (p. 430)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)

Bypass of the alcohol lock*

In the event of an emergency situation or if the alcohol lock is out of order, it is possible to bypass the alcohol lock in order to drive the car.

For deactivation via the alcohol lock, see supplier's manual.

Related information

- Alcohol lock* (p. 434)
- Before starting the engine with the alcohol lock* (p. 435)
- Starting the car (p. 430)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)

* Option/accessory.

Before starting the engine with the alcohol lock*

The alcohol lock is activated automatically and is then ready for use when the car is opened.

To bear in mind

In order to obtain correct function and as accurate a measurement result as possible:

- Avoid eating or drinking approx. 5 minutes before the breath test.
- Avoid excess windscreen washing - the alcohol in the washer fluid may result in an incorrect measurement result.

NOTE

After a completed period of driving, the engine can be restarted within 30 minutes without a new breath test.

Related information

- Bypass of the alcohol lock* (p. 434)
- Alcohol lock* (p. 434)
- Starting the car (p. 430)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)

Brake functions

The car's brakes are used to reduce the speed or prevent the car from rolling.

In addition to the foot brake and parking brake, the car is equipped with several automatic brake assist functions. These can assist the driver by not needing to keep his/her foot on the brake pedal when at a traffic light, or when starting on an uphill gradient.

Depending on the car's equipment, the following auto braking functions are available:

- Automatic brake when stationary (Auto Hold)
- Hill start assist (Hill Start Assist)
- Auto braking after a collision
- City Safety

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 435)
- Parking brake (p. 438)
- Automatic braking when stationary (p. 441)
- Auto braking after a collision (p. 443)
- Help when starting on a hill (p. 443)
- City Safety™ (p. 334)

Foot brake

The foot brake is part of the brake system.

The car is equipped with two brake circuits. If a brake circuit is damaged, the brake pedal may engage deeper. Higher pressure on the pedal will therefore be needed to produce the normal braking effect.

WARNING

The brake servo only works when the electric motor or internal combustion engine is running.

If the foot brake is used when the car is switched off, the brake pedal needs to be depressed passed the normal braking position using a higher pressure to brake the car.

In very hilly terrain or when driving with a heavy load the brakes can be relieved by using engine braking in gearshift mode **B**.

Anti-lock braking system

The car has anti-lock brakes (ABS[2]), which prevents the wheels from locking while braking and allows maintained steering control. Vibration may be felt in the brake pedal when this is engaged and this is normal.

A short test of the ABS system is made automatically after the car has been started when the driver releases the brake pedal. A further

2 Anti-lock Braking System

automatic test of the system may be made at low speed. The test may be felt as pulses in the brake pedal.

Light braking charges the hybrid battery

The electric motor's engine brake is used during light braking. The car's kinetic energy is then converted to electrical energy instead, which is used to charge the hybrid battery. Battery charging with electric motor braking is indicated in the driver display.

The driver display indicates charging during electric motor braking.

This function is active in the speed interval 150-5 km/h (93-3 mph). During heavier braking, as well as outside the speed interval, braking is supplemented by the hydraulic brake system. The driver's display shows this by the indicator being down in the red zone.

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	Check the brake fluid level. If the level is low, fill with brake fluid and check for the cause of the brake fluid loss.
	Fault in pedal sensor.
	Constant glow for 2 seconds when the engine is started: Automatic function check. Constant glow for more than 2 seconds: Fault in the ABS system. The car's normal brake system is still working, but without the ABS function.
	If the message **Brake pedal Characteristics changed Service required** is shown, the system for "Brake-by-wire" is disengaged. The brake pedal needs to be depressed passed the normal braking position using a higher pressure to brake the car.

WARNING

If both the warning lamps for brake fault and ABS fault illuminate at the same time, a fault has occurred in the brake system.

- If the level in the brake fluid reservoir is normal at this stage, drive carefully to the nearest workshop and have the brake system checked - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
- If the brake fluid is below the **MIN** level in the brake fluid reservoir, do not drive further before topping up the brake fluid. The reason for the loss of brake fluid must be investigated.

Related information

- Brake assistance (p. 437)
- Automatic braking when stationary (p. 441)
- Help when starting on a hill (p. 443)
- Braking on wet roads (p. 437)
- Braking on gritted roads (p. 437)
- Brake system maintenance (p. 438)
- Brake lights (p. 149)

Brake assistance

The brake assist system (BAS[3]) helps to increase brake force during braking, and can thereby shorten the braking distance.
The system detects the way in which the driver brakes and increases brake force where necessary. The brake force can be boosted up to the level when the ABS system is engaged.

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 435)

Braking on wet roads

When driving for a prolonged period of time in heavy rain without braking, the braking effect may be delayed slightly when next using the brakes.
This may also be the case after a car wash. It is then necessary to depress the brake pedal more forcefully. You should therefore maintain a greater distance to the vehicles in front.

Brake the car firmly after driving on wet roads or using a car wash. This warms up the brake discs, enabling them to dry faster and protecting them against corrosion. Bear in mind the current traffic situation when braking.

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 435)
- Braking on gritted roads (p. 437)

Braking on gritted roads

When driving on salted roads, a layer of salt may form on the brake discs and brake linings.
This may extend braking distance. You should therefore maintain a greater safety distance to vehicles in front. In addition, make sure you do the following:

- Brake now and again to remove any layer of salt. Make sure that other road users are not put at risk by the braking.
- Gently depress the brake pedal after finishing driving and before starting your next trip.

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 435)
- Braking on wet roads (p. 437)

3 Brake Assist System

Brake system maintenance

Check brake system components regularly for wear.

To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service intervals as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet. After replacing brake linings and brake discs, braking effect is only adapted after they have been "worn in" for a few hundred kilometres (miles). Compensate for the reduced braking effect by depressing the brake pedal harder. Volvo recommends only fitting brake linings that are approved for your Volvo.

IMPORTANT

The wear on the brake system's components must be checked regularly.

Contact a workshop for information about the procedure or engage a workshop to carry out the inspection - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 435)

Parking brake

The parking brake prevents the car from rolling away from stationary by means of mechanically locking/blocking two wheels.

A faint electric motor noise can be heard when the electrically-operated parking brake is being applied. The noise can also be heard during the automatic function checking of the parking brake.

If the car is stationary when the parking brake is activated, it only acts on the rear wheels. If it is activated when the car is moving then the normal foot brake is used, i.e. the brake acts on all four wheels. Brake function changes over to the rear wheels when the car is almost stationary.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the parking brake (p. 439)
- Parking on a hill (p. 440)
- In the event of a fault in the parking brake (p. 441)
- Automatic braking when stationary (p. 441)

Activating and deactivating the parking brake

Use the parking brake to prevent the car from rolling from stationary.

Activating the parking brake

1. Pull the control upward.
   > The symbol in the driver display illuminates when the parking brake is activated.
2. Check that the car is stationary.

Symbol in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	The symbol is illuminated when the parking brake is activated. If the symbol flashes, it indicates a fault has occurred. Read the message in the driver display.

Automatic activation

The parking brake is activated automatically

- when the car is switched off and the setting for automatic activation of the parking brake is activated in the centre display.
- when gear position **P** is selected on a steep hill.
- if the Auto hold (Automatic brake when stationary) function is activated and
  - the car has been stationary for a long time (5-10 minutes)
  - the car is switched off
  - the driver leaves the car.

Emergency brake

In an emergency, the parking brake can be activated when the car is in motion by pulling and holding up the control. Braking stops when the control is released, or if the accelerator pedal is depressed.

NOTE

An acoustic signal sounds while emergency braking is active at high speeds.

Deactivating the parking brake

Deactivate manually

To deactivate the parking brake, the engine needs to be running.

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. Press the control down.
   > The parking brake releases and the symbol in the driver display extinguishes.

Deactivate automatically

1. Start the car.
2. Depress the brake pedal firmly. Select gear position **D** or **R** and depress the accelerator pedal.
   > The parking brake releases and the symbol in the driver display extinguishes.

NOTE

For automatic deactivation, either the driver has to have put on their seatbelt or the driver door has to be closed.

Related information

- Automatic parking brake activation setting (p. 440)
- In the event of a fault in the parking brake (p. 441)
- Parking brake (p. 438)
- Parking on a hill (p. 440)

Automatic parking brake activation setting

Choose whether the parking brake is to be activated automatically when the car is switched off.
To change setting:

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Parking Brake and Suspension** to select or deselect the function **Auto Activate Parking Brake**.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the parking brake (p. 439)
- Parking brake (p. 438)

Parking on a hill

Always use the parking brake when parking on a hill.

WARNING

Always use the parking brake when parking on an inclined surface. Engaging a gear or the automatic transmission's **P** position is not sufficient to hold the car stationary in all situations.

If the car is parked facing uphill:

- Turn the wheels **away from** the kerb.

If the car is parked facing downhill:

- Turn the wheels **towards** the kerb.

Heavy load uphill

A heavy load, such as a trailer, can cause the car to roll backward when the parking brake is released automatically on a steep incline. Avoid this by pulling the control upwards while driving the car away. Release the control when the engine achieves traction.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the parking brake (p. 439)

In the event of a fault in the parking brake

Contact an authorised Volvo workshop if it is not possible to deactivate or activate the parking brake after several attempts.
An acoustic warning signal sounds when driving with the parking brake activated.

If the car must be parked before a possible fault is rectified, then the wheels must be turned as for parking on a hill and the gear selector must be in position **P**.

Low battery voltage

If the battery voltage is too low then the parking brake can be neither deactivated nor activated. Connect a donor battery if the battery voltage is too low.

Replacing the brake linings

The rear brake linings must be replaced at a workshop due to the design of the electrically-operated parking brake - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	If the symbol flashes, it indicates a fault has occurred. See the message in the driver display.
	Fault in brake system. See the message in the driver display.
	Information message in driver display.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the parking brake (p. 439)
- Parking on a hill (p. 440)
- Starter battery (p. 606)
- Volvo service programme (p. 590)

Automatic braking when stationary

Automatic brake when stationary (Auto hold) means that the driver can release the brake pedal while maintaining braking effect when the car has stopped at traffic lights or a junction.
When the car has stopped, the brakes are activated automatically. The function can use either foot brake or parking brake to hold the car stationary and it works on all gradients. When driving off, the brakes are released automatically if the driver is wearing the seatbelt and/or the driver's door is closed.

NOTE

When braking to a standstill on an uphill or downhill slope, the brake pedal should be depressed a little harder before being released to ensure the car does not roll.

The parking brake is activated if

- the car is switched off
- the driver's door is opened
- the driver's seatbelt is unbuckled
- the car has been stationary for a longer time (5-10 minutes).

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	The symbol is illuminated when the function uses the foot brake to keep the car stationary.
	The symbol is illuminated when the function uses the parking brake to keep the car stationary.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the automatic brake at a standstill (p. 442)
- Foot brake (p. 435)
- Parking brake (p. 438)
- Help when starting on a hill (p. 443)

Activating and deactivating the automatic brake at a standstill

The automatic brake function at a standstill is activated using the button in the tunnel console.

– Press the button in the tunnel console to activate or deactivate the function.

  > The indicator in the button illuminates when the function is activated. Activated function remains even when the car is started next time.

Applicable when switching off

If the function is active and holds the car with the foot brake (A-symbol illuminated in the driver display), the brake pedal must be depressed at the same time as the button is depressed in order to deactivate.

- The function remains deactivated until it is reactivated.
- When the function is deactivated, hill start assist (HSA) remains active to prevent the car from rolling backwards when starting on an uphill gradient.

Related information

- Automatic braking when stationary (p. 441)

Help when starting on a hill

Hill start assist (HSA[4]) prevents the car from rolling backwards when starting on an uphill gradient. When reversing uphill, it prevents the car from rolling forwards.

The function means that the pedal pressure in the brake system remains for several seconds while the driver's foot is moved from brake pedal to accelerator pedal.

The temporary braking effect releases after several seconds or when the driver starts to drive away.

The Hill Start Assist is activated when stopping on a sleep slope. The function is available even when the automatic braking when stationary (Auto hold) function is deactivated.

Related information

- Automatic braking when stationary (p. 441)
- Foot brake (p. 435)

Auto braking after a collision

In the event of a collision in which the activation level is reached for the pyrotechnic seatbelt tensioners or airbags, or if a collision with a large animal is detected, the car's brakes are automatically applied. This function is to prevent or reduce the effects of any subsequent collision.

After a serious collision there is a risk that it is no longer possible to control and steer the car. In order to avoid or mitigate a possible further collision with a vehicle or an object in the vehicle's path, the auto braking system is activated automatically and brakes the car in a safe manner.

Brake lights and hazard warning lights are activated during braking. When the car has stopped, the hazard warning lights continue to flash and the parking brake is applied.

If braking is not appropriate, e.g. if there is a risk of being hit by following traffic, the system can be overridden by the driver depressing the accelerator pedal.

The function assumes that the brake system is intact after the collision.

Related information

- Rear Collision Warning* (p. 353)
- BLIS* (p. 354)
- Brake functions (p. 435)

Regenerative braking*

The car recovers kinetic energy during braking in order to reduce fuel consumption and emissions.

The battery symbol is shown in the driver display when the car is generating power for the battery.

The function is available in all drive modes together with gear position **D** or **B**.

Activating brake regeneration

Brake regeneration is activated by gentle pressure on the brake pedal or during engine braking.

Regeneration increases during engine braking when manual gearshift mode **B** is selected.

Related information

- Drive modes (p. 451)
- Changing gear with automatic gearbox (p. 445)

[4] Hill Start Assist

Gearbox

The gearbox is part of the car's powertrain (power transmission) between engine and drive wheels. The function of the gearbox is to change the gear ratio depending on speed and power requirements.

The car has a seven-speed automatic gearbox with dual clutch, integrated electric motor for electric drive and brake energy recovery. The number of gear changes means that the engine's torque and power range can be used effectively.

Both the gear lever and the shift paddles can be used to shift up or down manually. The driver display shows the selected gear position.

Related information

- Automatic gearbox (p. 444)
- Gear shift indicator (p. 449)

Automatic gearbox

Gears are selected automatically so that you can drive as energy-efficiently as possible. The gearbox also has a manual gearshift mode.

Overview of gear lever and shift pattern in the driver display.

The driver display shows the selected gear position:

P, **R**, **N**, **D** or **B**.

Related information

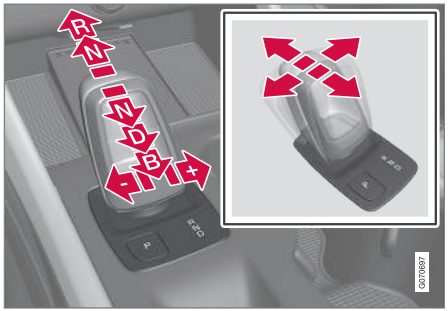
- Changing gear with automatic gearbox (p. 445)
- Changing gear with steering wheel paddles* (p. 446)
- Gear selector inhibitor (p. 448)
- Kick-down function (p. 448)
- Launch function* (p. 448)
- Gear shift indicator (p. 449)
- Symbols and messages for automatic gearbox (p. 449)

* Option/accessory.

Changing gear with automatic gearbox

Change gear position by pressing the spring-loaded gear selector forwards or backwards, or sideways for manual shifting.

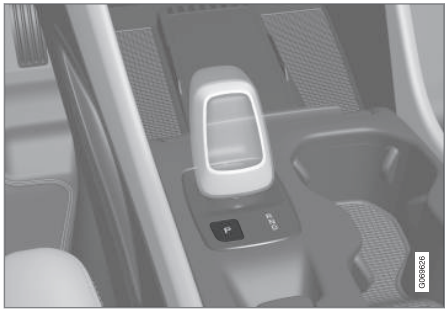
Changing gear



Overview of gear lever and gear positions.

Gear positions

Parking – P



Overview of gear lever and position P.

Parking is activated with the **P** button located next to the gear selector.

The gearbox is mechanically blocked when the **P** position is engaged.

Select position **P** for parking. The car can start in position **P**. The car must be stationary when the **P** position is selected.

To park - first apply the parking bake and then select **P** position.

WARNING

Always use the parking brake when parking on an inclined surface. Engaging a gear or the automatic transmission's **P** position is not sufficient to hold the car stationary in all situations.

NOTE

To be able to lock the car and arm the alarm, the gear position must be in **P**.

Help functions

The system will change to the **P** position automatically:

- if the car is switched off in position **D** or **R**.
- if the driver unfastens the seatbelt and opens the driver's door when the car is running in a mode other than **P**.

To park a car without wearing the seatbelt and with the door open - exit the **P** position by selecting **R** or **D** again.

If the car is switched off in **N** position there is no automatic change-over to **P** position. This makes it possible to wash the car in an automatic car wash.

Reverse – R

Select position **R** to reverse. The car must be stationary when the **R** position is selected.

Neutral – N

The car freewheels in position **N**. The car can start in position **N**. Apply the parking brake if the car is stationary with the gear selector in the **N** position.

In order to change from **N** position to another gear position, the brake pedal must be depressed and the ignition position must be **II**.

Drive position - D

D is the normal driving position. Shifting up and down takes place automatically based on the level of acceleration and speed.

The car must be stationary when changing gear from **R** position to **D** position.

Brake – B

Overview of brake positions in the driver display.

In **B** position, it is possible to change gear manually. The car brakes using its electric motor when the accelerator pedal is released, while also charging the hybrid battery.

Position **B** is selected by moving the gear selector backwards from the **D** position.

- Press the gear selector to the right to "**+**" (plus) to change up one step and release it.
- Press the gear selector to the left to "**–**" (minus) to change down one step and release it.
- Press the gear selector backwards to return to the **D** position.

The gearbox automatically shifts down if the speed decreases to a level lower than appropriate for the selected gear, in order to avoid jerking and stalling.

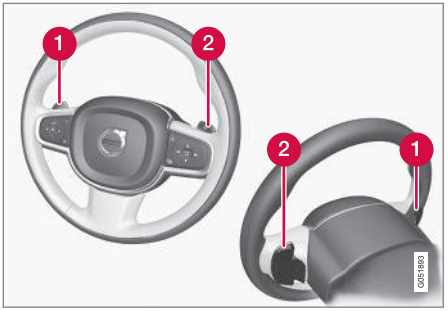
Related information

- Automatic gearbox (p. 444)
- Gear selector inhibitor (p. 448)
- Changing gear with steering wheel paddles* (p. 446)
- Kick-down function (p. 448)

Changing gear with steering wheel paddles*

The steering wheel paddles are a complement to the gear selector and make it possible to change gear manually without releasing hands from the steering wheel.

The function is available in position **D** or **B**.



1. "**-**": Selects the next lower gear.
2. "**+**": Selects the next higher gear.

Switch

To change gear:

– Pull one of the paddles backwards - towards the steering wheel - and release.

A gear change occurs at each pull of the paddle, provided that the engine speed does not leave the permitted range. The driver display shows the current gear.

* Option/accessory.

In **B** position the steering wheel paddles are automatically activated.

Driver display when changing gear with steering wheel paddles in manual gearshift mode.

Activating the steering wheel paddles in position D

To be able to change gear with the steering wheel paddles, they must be activated:

– Pull one of the paddles toward the steering wheel.
  > A figure in the driver display indicates current gear.

Driver display when changing gear with steering wheel paddles.

Deactivating the steering wheel paddles in position D

Manual deactivation

– Pull the right-hand paddle (**+**) toward the steering wheel and hold in place until the number in the driver display extinguishes.
  > The gearbox returns to position **D**.

Automatic deactivation

The steering wheel paddles are deactivated after a short time if they are not used. This is indicated by means of the figure for the current gear extinguishing. The exception is during engine braking - then the paddles are activated for as long as engine braking is in progress.

Related information

- Automatic gearbox (p. 444)
- Changing gear with automatic gearbox (p. 445)
- Gear shift indicator (p. 449)

Gear selector inhibitor

The gear selector inhibitor prevents accidental changing between different gear positions in an automatic gearbox.

Automatic gear selector inhibitor

The automatic gear selector inhibitor has special safety systems.

From park position – P or neutral position – N

In order to move the gear selector from **P** or **N** position to another gear position, the brake pedal must be depressed and the ignition position must be **II**. For some gearbox variants, the engine must be running.

If the gear selector is in the **N** position and the car has been stationary for at least 3 seconds (irrespective of whether the engine is running) then the gear selector is locked.

Message in the driver display

If the gear selector is inhibited a message is shown in the driver display e.g. **Gear lever Press brake pedal to activate gear lever**.

The gear selector is not inhibited mechanically.

Related information

- Automatic gearbox (p. 444)
- Changing gear with automatic gearbox (p. 445)

Kick-down function

Kick-down can be used when maximum acceleration is needed such as for overtaking. When the accelerator pedal is pressed all the way to the floor (beyond the position normally regarded as full acceleration) a lower gear is immediately engaged. This is known as kick-down.

If the accelerator is released from the kick-down position, the gearbox automatically changes up.

Safety function

To prevent over-revving of the engine, the gearbox control program has a protective downshift inhibitor.

The gearbox does not permit downshifting/kick-down which would result in an engine speed high enough to damage the engine. Nothing happens if the driver still tries to shift down in this way at high engine speed – the original gear remains engaged.

On kick-down the car can shift down one or more steps at a time, depending in engine speed. The car shifts up when the engine has reached is maximum engine speed in order to prevent engine damage.

Related information

- Automatic gearbox (p. 444)

Launch function*

Launch can be used when maximum acceleration is required from stationary. The function is available in the following drive modes: **Hybrid**, **Constant AWD**, **Power** and **Individual**.

Activate Launch

Make sure the car is stationary and the wheels are pointing straight forward.

1. Move to gear position **D**.
2. Depress the brake pedal fully.
3. Then fully depress the accelerator pedal.
4. Release the brake pedal within 2 seconds.

NOTE

If the Launch function does not work, wait a few minutes and let the drivetrain cool down to working temperature before retrying.

IMPORTANT

The drivetrain is subject to wear and tear when using Launch and therefore the function is only available a limited number of times.

Related information

- Automatic gearbox (p. 444)

* Option/accessory.

Symbols and messages for automatic gearbox

If a fault should occur in the gearbox, a symbol and a message are shown in the driver display.

IMPORTANT

To prevent damage to any drive system components, the working temperature of the gearbox is checked. If there is a risk of overheating, a warning symbol illuminates in the driver display and a text message is shown - follow the recommendation given.

Symbol	Specification
	An error has occurred in the transmission. Read the message in the driver display.
	Hot or overheated gearbox. Read the message in the driver display.
	Temporary fault on drivetrain. Read the message in the driver display.

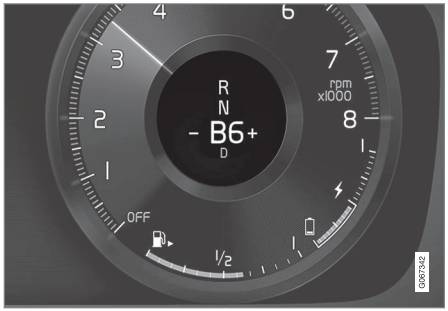
Related information

- Automatic gearbox (p. 444)

Gear shift indicator

The gear shift indicator in the driver display shows the current gear during manual gear-shifting and when it is appropriate to engage the next gear for optimum fuel economy.

For eco-driving during manual gear changing, it is important to drive in the right gear and to change gear in good time.



Gear shift indicator in the driver display[5].

The gear shift indicator is shown in gear position **B**. The gear shift indicator shows the current gear in the driver display and indicates recommended shifting to a higher gear by a flashing plus sign.

Related information

- Automatic gearbox (p. 444)

Drive systems

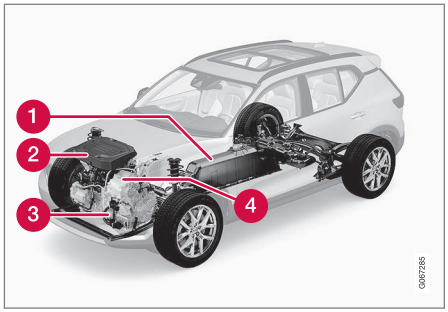
The car combines an internal combustion engine with an electric motor.

Two drive systems

Depending on the driver-selected drive mode and available electric energy, the two drive systems can be used either individually or in parallel.

The electric motor is supplied its energy from a hybrid battery fitted in the tunnel console. The hybrid battery can be charged in a wall socket, or in a special charging station.

Both the internal combustion engine and electric motor can generate motive force directly to the wheels. An advanced control system combines the properties of both drive systems in order to provide optimum driving economy.



1. Hybrid battery - The function of the hybrid battery is to store energy. This receives energy by charging from the power grid or by means of regenerative braking. It provides energy for electric operation as well as for temporarily operating the electric air conditioning during the preconditioning of the passenger compartment.
2. Internal combustion engine - The internal combustion engine starts when the energy level in the hybrid battery is insufficient for the engine power that the driver requests.
3. Super condenser – Provides energy to start the car, which saves the regular 12 V battery.
4. Electric motor - Powers the car in electric operation. If necessary, provides extra torque and power during acceleration. Recycles brake energy to electrical energy.

Related information

- General information on electric drive (p. 408)
- Starting and stopping the combustion engine (p. 450)
- Drive modes (p. 451)
- Gearbox (p. 444)

Starting and stopping the combustion engine

An advanced control system determines the extent to which the car is driven on internal combustion engine, electric motor or both in parallel. During electric operation, the car may sometimes need to start the internal combustion engine automatically due to external circumstances, e.g. in low outside temperatures, which is completely normal. In addition, the internal combustion engine always starts when the hybrid battery reaches its lowest state of charge.

Climate settings at low temperatures

In low outside temperatures, the internal combustion engine sometimes starts automatically in order to achieve the desired passenger compartment temperature and air quality. The amount of time that the internal combustion engine runs can be affected by

- lowering the temperature
- reducing the fan strength
- activating drive mode **Pure**.

Electric operation in low or high temperatures

In low or high outside temperatures, the car's range and output for electric operation may be

[5] The figure is schematic – parts may vary depending on car model.

reduced and affect how often the internal combustion engine is started automatically.

Emission control

To ensure that emission control operates as energy-efficiently as possible, the internal combustion engine must be run for several minutes once it has been started. The duration of the internal combustion engine's running time varies depending on the temperature of the catalytic converter.

Related information

- Drive systems (p. 449)
- Economical driving (p. 456)
- Range (p. 457)
- Drive modes (p. 451)

Drive modes

Selection of drive mode affects the car's driving characteristics in order to enhance the driving experience and facilitate driving in special situations.

Using the drive modes it is possible to quickly have access to the car's numerous functions and settings for different driving needs. Each drive mode is adapted to provide optimum driving characteristics:

- Steering
- Engine/gearbox
- Brakes
- Shock absorption
- Driver display
- Climate settings

Select the drive mode adapted for the current driving conditions. Remember that not all drive modes are available in all situations.

Selectable drive modes

WARNING

Remember that the car does not emit any engine noise when it is only powered by the electric motor and may therefore be difficult to notice by children, pedestrians, cyclists and animals. This applies in particular at low speeds such as in car parks.

WARNING

Do not leave the car in an unventilated area with activated drive mode and the fuel-driven engine switched off - automatic engine start occurs at low energy level in the hybrid battery, and the exhaust gases could then cause serious injury to people and animals.

Hybrid

- This is the car's normal mode where the electric motor and internal combustion engine work together.

When the car starts, it is in the **Hybrid** mode. The control system uses both the electric motor and internal combustion engine – individually or in parallel – and adapts use with regard to performance, fuel consumption and comfort. The capacity to run solely with the electric motor depends on the hybrid battery's energy level and, for example, the need for heating or cooling in the passenger compartment.

If high power output is available, it is possible to drive with electrical power alone. When the accelerator pedal is depressed, only the electric motor is activated until a certain position is reached. The internal combustion engine starts when this position is exceeded and the energy level in the battery is insufficient for the engine power that the driver requests with the accelerator pedal.

At low energy level (hybrid battery almost empty) the battery's energy level must be maintained, leading to the internal combustion engine starting more often. Charge the hybrid battery from a 230 VAC socket with the charging cable, or activate **Charge** in the function view in order to restore the capacity to run on electricity alone.

The drive mode is designed for low energy consumption with a mix of the electric motor and the internal combustion engine, without compromising the climate comfort and driving experience. When higher acceleration is required, maximum additional power from the electric drive line is used.

Information in the driver display

When driving in hybrid mode the driver display shows a hybrid gauge. The pointer in the hybrid gauge indicates how much energy the driver requests with the accelerator pedal. The marking between the lightning bolt and the drop shows how much energy is available.

The driver display for propulsion with both the electric motor and internal combustion engine.

The driver display also shows when energy is returned to the battery (regenerated) during light braking.

Pure

- Drive the car with electric motor, with energy consumption as low as possible and with lowest possible carbon dioxide emissions.

The drive mode prioritises driving on the hybrid battery. This means, for example, that the output of certain climate settings is reduced to provide the longest possible mileage on electric power alone.

The **Pure** mode is available when the hybrid battery has a sufficiently high energy level. The internal combustion engine also starts in the **Pure** mode if the energy level in the battery falls too low. The internal combustion engine also starts

- if the speed exceeds 125 km/h (78 mph)
- if the driver requests more motive force than electric drive can provide
- in the event of system/component limitations e.g. low outside temperature.

NOTE

The internal combustion engine may start temporarily in certain driving situations when the **Pure** drive mode is in use. This is in order to provide the wheels with the desired torque in driving situations that require higher load, e.g. when driving with a trailer or on an uphill gradient.

The drive mode is adapted for maximum range with electric propulsion and especially developed for urban traffic. **Pure** means lowest combustion even when the hybrid battery is empty.

ECO climate control

In the **Pure** drive mode, eco climate control is activated automatically in the passenger compartment in order to reduce energy consumption.

NOTE

When the **Pure** drive mode is activated, several parameters in the climate control system's settings are changed, and several electricity consumer functions are reduced. Certain settings can be reset manually, but full functionality is only regained by leaving **Pure** drive mode or adapting **Individual** drive mode with full climate functionality.

In the event of difficulties due to misting, press the button for max. defroster which has normal functionality.

Power

- The car has sportier characteristics and faster response to accelerating.

The drive mode adapts the combined output of the internal combustion engine and electric motor. The gear changes become faster and more distinct, and the gearbox prioritises a gear with greater traction. Steering response is faster and shock absorption is harder.

The drive mode is adapted for maximum performance and response on acceleration. It changes the internal combustion engine's accelerator pedal response, gear shift pattern and boost pressure system. Chassis settings, steering and brake response are also as good as possible. **Power** drive mode is always available regardless of the battery's state of charge.

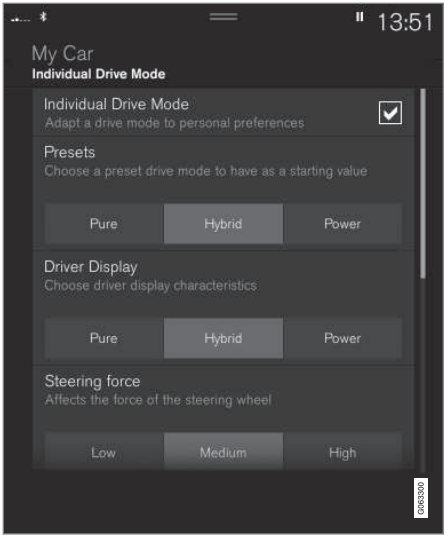
The **Power** mode is also available in the **Polestar Engineered** version*.

Individual

- Adapting a drive mode according to individual preferences.

Select a drive mode to start from, and then adjust the settings according to the desired driving characteristics. These settings are saved in an individual driver profile.

An individual drive mode is only available if it is first activated in the centre display.



Settings view[6] for individual drive mode.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Individual Drive Mode** and select **Individual Drive Mode**.

[6] The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

3. In **Presets**, select a drive mode to start from: **Pure**, **Hybrid**, **Power** or **Polestar Engineered***.

   Possible adjustments apply to settings for:

   - **Driver Display**
   - **Steering Force**
   - **Powertrain Characteristics**
   - **Brake Characteristics**
   - **Suspension Control**
   - **ECO Climate**

Using the electric motor or internal combustion engine

An advanced control system determines the extent to which the car is driven on internal combustion engine, electric motor or both in parallel.

The primary function is to use the engine or motor and the available energy in the hybrid battery as efficiently as possible, with regard to the characteristics of the different drive modes as well as the driver's request for power via the accelerator pedal.

There are also cases where temporary limitations in the system, or functions governed by legal requirements aimed at maintaining a low level of total emissions for the car, may use the internal combustion engine to a greater extent.

Related information

- Changing drive mode (p. 454)
- Range (p. 457)
- Energy distribution using map data* (p. 455)
- Hybrid gauge (p. 80)
- General information on electric drive (p. 408)
- Regenerative braking* (p. 443)

Changing drive mode

Select the drive mode adapted for the current driving conditions.

Change the drive mode using the button in the centre console.
Remember that not all drive modes are available in all situations.

To change drive mode:

1. Press the **DRIVE MODE** button.
   > A pop-up menu is opened in the centre display with the active drive mode highlighted.

* Option/accessory.

2. Select the drive mode in one of two ways:
   - Tap the desired drive mode directly on the touchscreen to select and activate the drive mode.
   - Press the **DRIVE MODE** button again to move the cursor to the desired drive mode. The selected drive mode is activated after a short delay.

Related information
- Drive modes (p. 451)

Energy distribution using map data*

In the driving position **Hybrid** the car is powered by both the electric motor and the internal combustion engine. If a destination has been selected in the navigation system*, the Predictive Efficiency[7] function distributes the electric energy consumption along the whole driving distance using the map data.
Fuel consumption can then be reduced compared with normal hybrid drive when the car is first driven on electricity, to then change over to being driven by the internal combustion engine when the hybrid battery has been discharged.

Function
If the distance to the selected destination is greater than the estimated range when running on electricity, this function distributes the electric energy for consumption that is as energy-efficient as possible for the entire distance to be travelled. This makes it possible to avoid situations where normal hybrid drive would otherwise use a large proportion of the electric energy, for example, to run electric drive at high speed on a motorway and then use the internal combustion engine at low speed in urban driving.

The greatest fuel saving is achieved when
- the distance to be travelled begins with driving on a motorway
- the distance to be travelled is between 50 and 100 km (30 and 60 miles)
- the hybrid battery is fully charged at the beginning.

Conditions for the function
For the function to work requires that a number of conditions are met:
- A destination is set in the navigation system and the driving distance to the destination is longer than the range possible only on electric drive.
- **Hybrid** drive mode is selected.
- The **Hold** and **Charge** functions are deactivated.
- The hybrid battery is charged.

Tips for use
If the car is used for commuting to work and it is not possible to charge the car at the place of work, specify the place of work as an intermediate destination and your home as the final destination. The discharging of the hybrid battery will then take place over your runs both to and from work.

[7] Certain markets only.

◂◂ Add similar commuting routes, i.e. the route between two charging points, as **Favourites** in the navigation system to facilitate arrival.

Related information

- Regenerative braking* (p. 443)
- Drive modes (p. 451)
- Range (p. 457)

Economical driving

To achieve the longest possible range, the driver should plan driving and adapt driving style and speed to the prevailing situation.

Before driving

- Precondition the car before driving if possible using the charging cable connected to the mains power circuit.
- If preconditioning is not possible when it is cold outside, use seat heating and steering wheel heating first of all. Avoid warming up the whole of the interior which takes energy from the hybrid battery.
- Choice of tyres and tyre pressure can affect energy consumption - seek advice on suitable tyres from an authorised Volvo dealer.
- Remove unnecessary items from the car - the greater the load the higher the consumption.

While driving

- Activate drive mode **Pure**.
- Activate the **Hold** function at higher speeds during journeys that are longer than the range of the electricity.
- If possible, avoid using the **Charge** function to charge the hybrid battery.
- Drive at a steady speed and keep a good distance to other vehicles and objects in order to avoid braking.
- The hybrid battery is recharged during braking by braking gently with the brake pedal.
- High speed results in increased energy consumption since the wind resistance increases with speed.
- In a cold climate, reduce electrical heating of windows, mirrors, seats and steering wheel, if possible.
- Avoid driving with open windows.
- Do not hold the car stationary on a hill with the accelerator pedal. Instead, activate the function for braking when stationary.
- If possible, deactivate the climate control while driving a short distance after preconditioning.

After driving

- If possible, park in an acclimated garage with charging facilities.

Related information

- Regenerative braking* (p. 443)
- Range (p. 457)
- Checking tyre pressure (p. 554)
- Show trip statistics in the centre display (p. 85)

* Option/accessory.

- Automatic braking when stationary (p. 441)
- Hold and Charge (p. 458)

Range

The car's range depends on several factors. The ability to achieve a long range varies according to the circumstances and conditions under which the car is being driven.

The certified value for the car's mileage should not be interpreted as an expected range. The certified value should primarily be used to compare different cars and is obtained during special test cycles.

Range in the driver display

When the car is delivered from the factory, or after a factory reset, the range is based on the certified value

When the car has been driven for a while, the range is based on historical driving patterns. The amount of history used depends on the battery's state of charge. Therefore, the less charge there is in the hybrid battery, the faster the range adapts to a changed driving pattern.

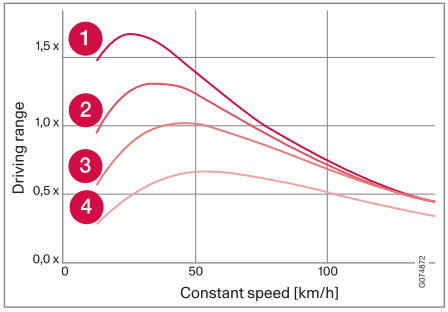
Factors that affect the range

In addition to historical trip data, there are several different factors that affect the range. The longest range is achieved under extremely favourable conditions when all factors have a positive impact.

Examples of factors that affect the range:

- speed
- climate settings
- topography
- preconditioning
- tyres and tyre pressure
- traffic situation
- temperature and weather
- road conditions.

Range based on speed and outside temperature



1. 20 °C (68 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate Off.
2. 20 °C (68 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate On.
3. 35 °C (95 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate On.
4. -10 °C (14 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate On.

The graph shows the approximate relationship between constant speed and range, where a lower constant speed has a positive effect on range.

A higher outside temperature and deactivated climate control are also more beneficial for the range.

Related information

- Show trip statistics in the centre display (p. 85)
- Checking tyre pressure (p. 554)

Hold and Charge

In some situations, it can be useful to be able to control the hybrid battery's state of charge while driving is in progress. This is possible with the functions **Hold** and **Charge**.

Hold and **Charge** are available in all drive modes. The functions are cancelled if **Pure** drive mode is activated.

Activating Hold and Charge

The functions are activated in the centre display's function view.

Hold

Battery level sustained for later use.

The function maintains the charge in the hybrid battery for electric drive and saves available electricity for later use e.g. for driving in an urban environment.

The car works as for normal hybrid operation with discharged battery where, in addition to re-using brake-generated energy, for example, the car starts the internal combustion engine more often in order to maintain the charge in the battery.

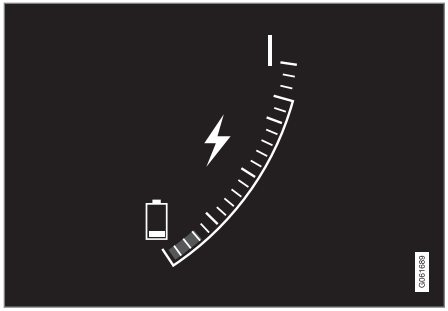
Charge

Engine charges hybrid battery.

The function charges the hybrid battery with assistance from the internal combustion engine for using increased electric operation at a later time.

Symbols in the driver display

The symbol is shown in the hybrid battery gauge when Hold is activated.



The symbol is shown in the hybrid battery gauge when Charge is activated.

Related information

- Range (p. 457)
- Hybrid gauge (p. 80)

Preparations for a long trip

Before a driving holiday or some other type of long journey, it is important to check the car's functions and equipment particularly carefully.

Check that

- the engine is working normally and that fuel consumption is normal
- there are no leaks (fuel, oil or other fluid)
- braking effect on braking works as intended
- the tyres have sufficient tread depth and pressure. Change to winter tyres when driving to areas where there is a risk of snowy or icy road surfaces
- starter battery charging is good
- the wiper blades are in good condition
- a warning triangle and high-visibility vest are located in the car - legally required in certain countries

Related information

- Checking tyre pressure (p. 554)
- Fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions (p. 662)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 645)
- Winter driving (p. 460)
- Economical driving (p. 456)
- Settings for car modem* (p. 532)

- Recommendations for loading (p. 582)
- Driving with a trailer (p. 473)
- Pilot Assist* (p. 309)
- Speed limiter (p. 289)
- Emergency puncture repair kit (p. 568)

Winter driving

For winter driving it is important to perform certain checks of the car in order to ensure that it can be driven safely.
Check the following in particular before the cold season:

- The engine coolant must contain 50% glycol. This mixture protects the engine against frost down to approx. -35°C (-31°F). To avoid health risks, different types of glycol must not be mixed.
- The fuel tank must be kept filled to prevent condensation.
- Engine oil viscosity is important. Oils with lower viscosity (thinner oils) facilitate starting in cold weather and also reduce fuel consumption while the engine is cold.
- The condition of the starter battery and charge level must be inspected. Cold weather places great demands on the starter battery and its capacity is reduced by the cold.
- Use washer fluid with antifreeze to avoid ice forming in the washer fluid reservoir.

See the separate section for engine oil recommendations.

Slippery driving conditions

To achieve optimum roadholding Volvo recommends using winter tyres on all wheels if there is a risk of snow or ice.

NOTE

The use of winter tyres is a legal requirement in certain countries. Studded tyres are not permitted in all countries.

Practise driving on slippery surfaces under controlled conditions to learn how the car reacts.

Related information

- Engine oil — specifications (p. 657)
- Winter tyres (p. 567)
- Snow chains (p. 567)
- Braking on gritted roads (p. 437)
- Braking on wet roads (p. 437)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 645)
- Starter battery (p. 606)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 643)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 642)
- Topping up coolant (p. 604)
- Adverse driving conditions for engine oil (p. 658)

* Option/accessory.

Driving in water

Wading means the car being driven through water e.g. on a flooded road. Driving in water must be performed with great caution.
Observe the following to prevent damage to the car when driving through water:

- The water level must not be higher than the floor of the car. If possible, check the depth at the deepest point before starting to drive through the water. Extra caution should be exercised when passing through flowing water.
- Do not drive faster than walking pace.
- Do not stop the car in the water. Drive forward carefully or reverse the car back out of the water.
- Remember that waves created by oncoming traffic may rise above the level for the floor of the car.
- Avoid driving through salt water (corrosion risk).

IMPORTANT

Parts of the car (e.g. engine, gearbox, driveline or electrical components) may be damaged when driving through water with a level higher than the floor of the car. Damaged caused to a component caused by submersion, hydrolock or lack of oil is not covered by the warranty.

In the event of stalling in water, do not try to restart. Instead, tow the car out of the water and transported on a low loader to a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

When the water has been passed, depress the brake pedal lightly and check that full brake function is achieved. Water and mud for example can make the brake linings wet resulting in delayed brake function.

If necessary, clean the contact for the trailer coupling after driving in water and mud.

Related information

- Recovery (p. 480)

Opening and closing the fuel filler flap

The fuel filler flap is unlocked by pressing a button on the instrument panel.

In the driver display, the arrow next to the tank symbol indicates which side of the car the fuel filler flap is located.

1. Press the button on the instrument panel.
   > Pressure equalisation of the fuel tank involves a certain delay in opening the flap. The message **Fuel tank Fuel filler cap open** is shown in the driver display, and then **Fuel tank Ready for refuelling** in the driver display. If the internal combustion engine is switched on when the button is pressed, it is generally switched off and the car switches to electric mode.

NOTE

After the fuel filler flap has been opened, refuelling must take place within about 15 minutes. After this, the valve that was opened by pressing the button to open the fuel filler cap is closed, and it is no longer possible to refuel because the pump nozzle cuts out.

If the valve is closed before refuelling is complete - press the button again and wait until the driver display shows the message **Fuel tank Ready for refuelling**.

2. After refuelling is finished - close the flap with a gentle press.

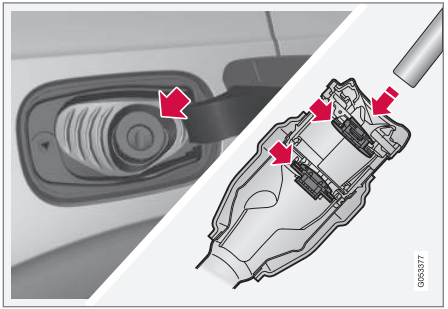
Related information

- Filling fuel (p. 462)

Filling fuel

The fuel tank is fitted with a coverless fuel filler system.

Refuelling the car at a petrol station



It is important to feed the pump nozzle past the filler pipe's two openable hatches before starting to fuel the car.

Fuelling instruction:

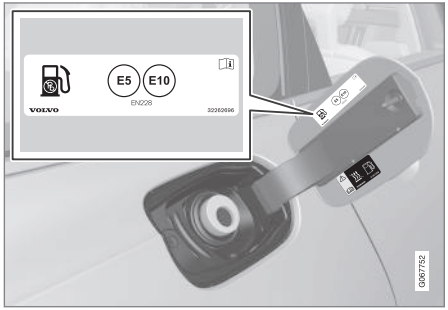
1. Switch off the car and open the fuel filler flap.

NOTE

After the fuel filler flap has been opened, refuelling must take place within about 15 minutes. After this, the valve that was opened by pressing the button to open the fuel filler cap is closed, and it is no longer possible to refuel because the pump nozzle cuts out.

If the valve is closed before refuelling is complete - press the button again and wait until the driver display shows the message **Fuel tank Ready for refuelling**.

2.



Choose fuel that is approved for use in the car in accordance with the identifier[8] on the inside of the fuel filler flap. See information on approved fuels and identifier in the section on "Petrol".

3. Insert the pump nozzle in the fuel filler opening. The filler pipe has two opening caps. The pump nozzle must be pushed past both caps before refuelling is started.
4. Do not overfill the tank but fill until the pump nozzle cuts out the first time.
   > The tank is full.

NOTE

Overfilled fuel in the tank can overflow in hot weather.

Topping up fuel from a fuel can

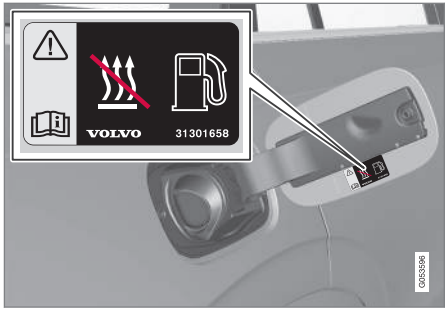
When filling with a fuel can, use the funnel located in the foam block under the floor hatch in the cargo area.

1. Open the fuel filler flap.
2. Insert the funnel in the fuel filler opening. The filler pipe has two opening caps. The funnel's pipe must be pushed past both caps before filling can be started.

Applicable to cars with fuel-driven auxiliary heater*

Never use the fuel-driven heater when the car is in a filling station area.

[8] The identifier in accordance with the CEN standard EN16942 is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap, and will be on corresponding fuel pumps and their nozzles at filling stations throughout Europe by 12 October 2018 at the latest.



Decal on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

Related information

- Opening and closing the fuel filler flap (p. 461)
- Petrol (p. 465)

Handling of fuel

Do not use fuel with a lower quality than that recommended by Volvo, as this will negatively affect engine power and fuel consumption.

WARNING

Always avoid inhaling fuel vapour and getting fuel splashes in the eyes.

In the event of fuel in the eyes, remove any contact lenses and rinse the eyes in plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and seek medical attention.

Never swallow fuel. Fuels such as petrol, bioethanol and mixtures of them and diesel are highly toxic and could cause permanent injury or be fatal if swallowed. Seek medical attention immediately if fuel has been swallowed.

WARNING

Fuel which spills onto the ground can be ignited.

Switch off the fuel-driven heater before starting to refuel.

Never carry an activated mobile phone when refuelling. The ring signal could cause spark build-up and ignite petrol fumes, leading to fire and injury.

IMPORTANT

Mixtures of various fuel types or use of fuels which are not recommended will invalidate Volvo's guarantees and any supplementary service agreements; this is applicable to all engines.

Related information

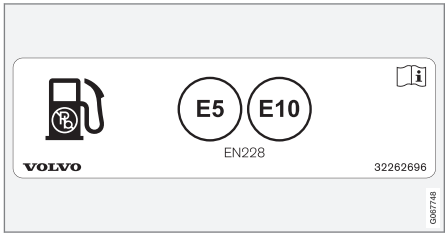
- Petrol (p. 465)

Petrol

It is important to use the correct fuel during refuelling. Petrol is available with different octane ratings that are adapted for different types of driving.

Only use petrol from well-known producers. Never use fuel of dubious quality. The petrol must fulfil the EN 228 standard.

Identifier for petrol



Decal on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

The identifier in accordance with the CEN standard EN16942 is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap, and will be on corresponding fuel pumps and their nozzles at filling stations throughout Europe by 12 October 2018 at the latest.

These are the identifiers that apply for current standard fuels in Europe. Petrol with the following identifiers may be used in cars with petrol engine:

E5 is a petrol with maximum 2.7% oxygen and maximum 5 volume % ethanol.

E10 is a petrol with maximum 3.7% oxygen and maximum 10 volume % ethanol.

IMPORTANT

- Fuel that contains up to 10 percent by volume ethanol is permitted.
- EN 228 E10 petrol (max 10 percent by volume ethanol) is approved for use.
- Ethanol higher than E10 (max. 10 percent by volume ethanol) is not permitted, e.g. E85 is not permitted.

Octane rating

- RON 95 can be used for normal driving.
- RON 98 is recommended for good power and low fuel consumption.
- An octane rating lower than RON 95 must not be used.

When driving in temperatures above +38 °C (100 °F), fuel with the highest octane rating is recommended for adapted performance and fuel economy.

IMPORTANT

- Use only unleaded petrol to avoid damaging the catalytic converter.
- Fuel containing metallic additives must not be used.
- Do not use any additives which have not been recommended by Volvo.

Related information

- Handling of fuel (p. 464)
- Filling fuel (p. 462)
- Petrol particle filter (p. 466)
- Fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions (p. 662)

Petrol particle filter[9]

Petrol cars are fitted with particle filters for more efficient emission control.

Particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the petrol particle filter during normal driving. In normal driving conditions, passive regeneration takes place, which leads to the particles being oxidised and burned away. The filter is emptied in this way.

If the car is driven at low speed or with repeated cold starts in low outside temperature, active regeneration may be necessary. Regeneration of the particulate filter is automatic and normally takes 10-20 minutes. Fuel consumption may temporarily increase during regeneration.

When driving short distances at low speeds in a petrol car

The capacity of the emissions system is affected by how the car is driven. Driving varying distances and at different speeds is important in order to achieve performance that is as energy-efficient as possible.

Driving short distances at low speeds (or in cold climates) frequently, where the engine does not reach normal operating temperature, can lead to problems that can eventually cause a malfunction and trigger a warning message. If the vehicle is mostly driven in city traffic, it is important to regularly drive at higher speeds to allow the emissions system to regenerate.

- The car should be driven on A-roads at speeds in excess of 70 km/h (44 mph) for at least 20 minutes between each refuelling.

Related information

- Petrol (p. 465)

Overheating in the engine and drive system

Under certain conditions, e.g. hard driving in hilly terrain and hot climate, there is a risk that the engine and drive system may overheat – in particular with a heavy load.

- In the event of overheating, the engine's power may be limited temporarily.
- Remove any auxiliary lamps from in front of the grille when driving in hot climates.
- If the temperature in the engine's cooling system becomes too high then a warning symbol is illuminated and the driver display shows the message **Engine temperature High temperature Stop safely**. Stop the car in a safe way and allow the engine to run at idling speed for several minutes and cool down.
- If the message **Engine temperature High temperature Turn off engine** or **Engine coolant Level low, turn off engine** is shown, stop the car and switch off the engine.
- In the event of overheating in the gearbox, an alternative gear shift program will be selected. In addition, a built-in protection function is activated that, amongst other things, illuminates a warning symbol and the driver display shows the message **Transmission warm Reduce speed to**

9 Applicable to certain variants.

lower temperature or **Transmission hot Stop safely, wait for cooling**. Follow the recommendation given, reduce speed or stop the car in a safe way and allow the engine to run at idling speed for several minutes to enable the gearbox to cool down.

- If the car overheats, the air conditioning may be switched off temporarily.
- Do not turn the engine off immediately you stop after a hard drive.

NOTE

It is normal for the engine's cooling fan to operate for a time after the engine has been switched off.

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	High engine temperature. Follow the recommendation given.
	Low level, coolant. Follow the recommendation given.
	Gearbox hot/overheated/cooled. Follow the recommendation given.

Related information

- Topping up coolant (p. 604)
- Driving with a trailer (p. 473)
- Preparations for a long trip (p. 459)
- Gear shift indicator (p. 449)

Overloading the starter battery

The electrical functions in the car load the starter battery to varying degrees. Avoid using the ignition position II when the car is switched off. Instead, use ignition position I - which uses less power.

Also, be aware of different accessories that load the electrical system. Do not use functions which use a lot of power when the car is switched off. Examples of such functions are:

- ventilation fan
- headlamps
- windscreen wiper
- audio system (high volume).

If the starter battery voltage is low, a message is shown in the driver display. The energy-saving function then shuts down certain functions or reduces certain functions such as the ventilation fan and/or audio system.

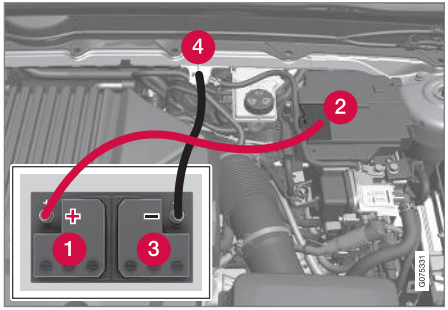
– In which case, charge the starter battery by starting the car and then running it for at least 15 minutes - starter battery charging is more effective during driving than running the engine at idling speed while stationary.

Related information

- Starter battery (p. 606)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)

Using jump starting with another battery

If the starter battery is discharged then the car can be started with current from another battery.



Charging point for jump-starting own car. There are two connection points under the cover. Only use the one closest to the passenger compartment.

IMPORTANT

The car's charging point is only intended for jump-starting the car itself. The charging point is not intended for jump-starting another car. Using the charging point to jump start another car may cause a fuse to blow, which means the charging point will stop working.

When a fuse has blown the message **12 V Battery Fuse failure Service required** is shown in the driver display. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.

When jump-starting the car, the following steps are recommended to avoid short circuits or other damage:

1. Set the car's electrical system in ignition position **0**.
2. Check that the donor battery has a voltage of 12 V.
3. If the donor battery is installed in another car - switch off the donor car's engine and make sure that the two cars do not touch each other.
4. Connect one of the red jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's positive terminal (1).

IMPORTANT

Connect the start cable carefully to avoid short circuits with other components in the engine compartment.

5. Open the positive jump-starting point's cover (2).

   There are two connection points under the cover. Only use the connection point closest to the passenger compartment.
6. Connect the red jump lead's other clamp onto the car's positive jump-starting point (2).
7. Connect one of the black jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's negative terminal (3).
8. Connect the black jump lead's other clamp onto the car's negative jump-starting point (4).
9. Check that the jump lead clamps are affixed securely so that there are no sparks during the starting attempt.
10. Start the engine of the "donor car" and allow it to run a few minutes at a speed slightly higher than idle approx. 1500 rpm.

11. Hold down the start button for at least 5 seconds without your foot on the brake to activate the car's electrical system.

NOTE

When starting the engine in normal conditions, the car's electric drive motor is prioritised – the internal combustion engine remains switched off. This means that after the start button has been depressed, the electric motor has "started" and the car is ready to move. A started motor is indicated by the driver display's indicator lamps extinguishing and its preset theme illuminating.

IMPORTANT

Do not touch the connections between cable and car during the starting attempt. There is a risk of sparks forming.

12. Wait at least 2 minutes in order to charge the starter battery and then make a start attempt.
13. If the attempt at starting fails, repeat points 11 and 12.
14. Remove the jump leads in reverse order - first the black and then the red.

    Make sure that none of the black jump lead's clamps comes into contact with the car's positive jump-starting point/donor battery's positive terminal or the clamp connected to the red jump lead.

WARNING

- The battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
- Do not connect the jump leads to any fuel system component or any moving part. Be careful of hot engine parts.
- The battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
- If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.
- Never smoke near the battery.

NOTE

The car cannot be started if the hybrid battery is discharged.

Related information

- Starting the car (p. 430)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)
- Adjusting the steering wheel (p. 183)
- Selecting ignition mode (p. 433)

Towbar*

The car can be equipped with a towbar that makes it possible to tow e.g. a trailer behind the car.

There may be different towbar variants available for the car. Contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

IMPORTANT

When the engine is switched off, the constant battery voltage to the trailer connector can be switched off automatically so as not to drain the starter battery.

IMPORTANT

The towball needs regular cleaning and lubrication with grease in order to prevent wear.

NOTE

When a hitch with a vibration damper is used, the towball must not be lubricated.

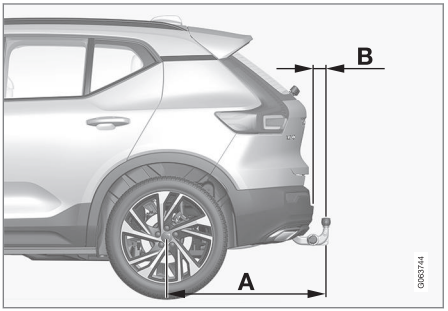
This also applies when fitting a bicycle rack that is clamped in around the towball.

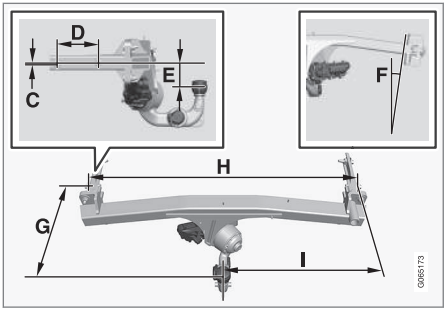
Related information

- Extendable and retractable towbar* (p. 471)
- Driving with a trailer (p. 473)
- Towbar-mounted bicycle rack* (p. 477)
- Specifications for towbar* (p. 470)

Specifications for towbar*

Dimensions and mounting points for towbar.





* Option/accessory.

Dimensions, mounting points in mm (inches)	
A	939 (37)
B	72 (2.8)
C	6 (0.24)
D	145 (5.7)
E	88 (3.5)
F	Side beam tilts 8 degrees
G	353 (13.9)
H	1048 (41.3)
I	524 (20.6)

Related information

- Towbar* (p. 470)
- Towing capacity and towball load (p. 654)

Extendable and retractable towbar*

The retractable tow hook is easy to retract or extend as required. In the retracted position, the towbar is completely concealed.

WARNING

Follow the instructions for retracting and extending the towbar carefully.

WARNING

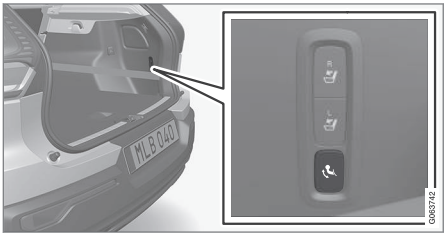
Do not press the extend/retract button if a trailer or accessory is attached to the tow bar.

Extending the towbar

WARNING

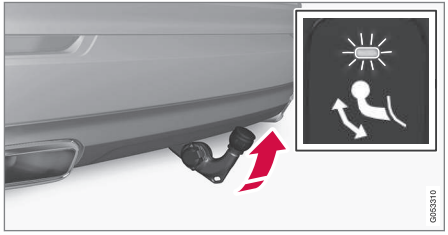
Avoid standing close to the bumper in the centre behind the car when extending the towing hitch.

1.



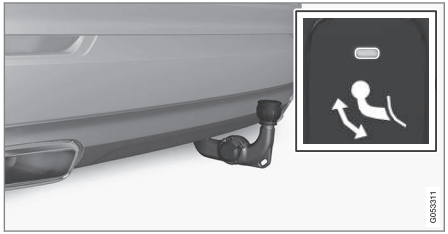
Open the tailgate. A button for extending/retracting the towbar is located on the right-hand side at the rear of the cargo area. An indicator lamp in the button must illuminate with a constant orange glow for the extension function to be active.

2. Press and release the button – extension might not start if the button is pressed for too long.



> The towbar extends out and down in an unlocked position - the indicator lamp flashes orange. The tow hook is ready to continue moving to the locked position.

3.



Move the towbar to its end position, where it is secured and locked in place - the indicator lamp illuminates with a constant orange glow.

> The towbar is ready for use.

IMPORTANT

When the tow bar is activated by pressing a key and has been placed in the unlocked position:

Wait at least 2 seconds before the tow bar is moved to the locked position. If the tow bar does not remain in the locked position, wait another few seconds and try again.

Do not kick the tow bar.

WARNING

Take care to secure the trailer's safety cable in the intended bracket.

NOTE

Power save mode activates after a while and the indicator lamp goes out. The system is reactivated by closing and opening the tailgate. This applies when retracting or extending the towbar.

If the car detects a connected trailer electrically, the indicator lamp stops illuminating with a constant glow.

Retracting the towbar

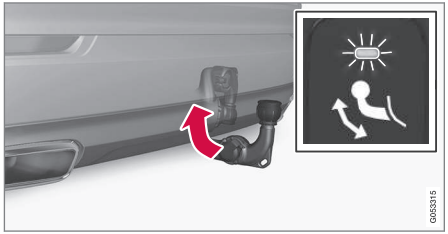
IMPORTANT

Make sure that there is no plug or adapter in the electrical socket when retracting the towbar.

1. Open the tailgate. Press and release the button on the right-hand side at the rear of the cargo area - retraction might not start if the button is pressed for too long.

> The towbar automatically lowers in an unlocked position - the indicator lamp in the button flashes orange.

2.



Lock the towbar by moving it back to its retracted position, where it is locked.

> The indicator lamp will now illuminate with a constant glow if the towbar is correctly retracted.

IMPORTANT

When the tow bar is activated by pressing a key and has been placed in the unlocked position:

Wait at least 2 seconds before the tow bar is moved to the locked position. If the tow bar does not remain in the locked position, wait another few seconds and try again.

Do not kick the tow bar.

Related information

- Driving with a trailer (p. 473)
- Towbar* (p. 470)

Driving with a trailer

When driving with a trailer, there are a number of points that are important to think about regarding the towbar, the trailer and how the load is positioned in the trailer.

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories, e.g. towbar, reduces the car's payload by a corresponding weight.

The car is supplied with the necessary equipment for towing a trailer.

- The car's towbar must be of an approved type.
- Distribute the load on the trailer so that the weight on the towbar complies with the specified maximum towball load. Towball load is calculated as part of the car's payload.
- Increase the tyre pressure to the recommended pressure for a full load.
- The engine is loaded more heavily than usual when driving with a trailer.
- Do not tow a heavy trailer when the car is brand new. Wait until it has been driven at least 1000 km (620 miles).
- The brakes are loaded much more than usual on long and steep downhill slopes. Downshift to a lower gear when shifting manually and adjust your speed.

- Follow the regulations in force for the permitted speeds and weights.
- Maintain a low speed when driving with a trailer up long, steep ascents.
- The maximum indicated trailer weight only applies to heights up to 1000 metres above sea level (3280 ft). At higher elevations, the engine output and the vehicle's climbing ability are reduced due to the reduced air density, and the maximum trailer load must therefore be reduced. The weight of the car and trailer must be decreased by 10% for each additional 1000 m (3280 ft) or part thereof.
- Avoid driving with a trailer on inclines of more than 12%.

NOTE

Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes, in combination with poorer fuel quality than recommended, are factors that considerably increase the car's fuel consumption.

Trailer connector

An adapter is required if the car's towbar has a 13 pin connector and the trailer has a 7 pin connector. Use an adapter approved by Volvo. Make sure the cable does not drag on the ground.

IMPORTANT

When the engine is switched off, the constant battery voltage to the trailer connector can be switched off automatically so as not to drain the starter battery.

Trailer weights

WARNING

Follow the stated recommendations for trailer weights. Otherwise, the car and trailer may be difficult to control in the event of sudden movement and braking.

NOTE

The stated maximum permitted trailer weights are those permitted by Volvo. National vehicle regulations can further limit trailer weights and speeds. Towbars can be certified for higher towing weights than the car can actually tow.

Level control*

The car's system for level control endeavours to maintain a constant height regardless of load (up to the maximum permissible weight). When the car is stationary the rear of the car lowers slightly, which is normal.

When driving in hilly terrain and hot climates

Under certain circumstances, there may be a risk of overheating when towing a trailer. If the engine and drive system overheats, a warning symbol comes on in the driver display and a message is displayed.

The automatic gearbox adapts the gears depending on load and engine speed.

Steep inclines

Do not lock the automatic gearbox in a higher gear than the engine "can cope with" - it is not always a good idea to drive at a high gear with low engine speed.

Parking on a hill

1. Depress the brake pedal fully.
2. Activate the parking brake.
3. Select gear position **P**.
4. Release the brake pedal.

Block the wheels with chocks when parking a car with hitched trailer on a hill.

Starting on a hill

1. Depress the brake pedal fully.
2. Select gear position **D**.
3. Releasing the parking brake.
4. Release the brake pedal and start driving off.

* Option/accessory.

Related information

- Trailer stability assist* (p. 475)
- Checking trailer lamps (p. 476)
- Towing capacity and towball load (p. 654)
- Overheating in the engine and drive system (p. 466)
- Adverse driving conditions for engine oil (p. 658)
- Extendable and retractable towbar* (p. 471)

Trailer stability assist*

The function of trailer stability assist (TSA[10]), which is included in the stability system ESC[11], is to stabilise cars towing trailers in situations where they begin snaking. The function is available with towbar installation, contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

Reasons for snaking

The snaking phenomenon can occur with any car/trailer combination. Snaking normally occurs at high speeds. However, there is a risk of it occurring at lower speeds if the trailer is overloaded or the load is improperly distributed, e.g. too far back.

In order for snaking to occur, there must be a triggering factor, e.g.:

- Car with trailer subjected to a sudden and powerful side wind.
- Car with trailer drives on an uneven road surface or in a pothole.
- Sweeping steering wheel movements.

If snaking has started, it could be difficult or even impossible to suppress. This makes the car/trailer combination difficult to control and there is a risk that you could, for example, end up in the wrong lane or leave the carriageway.

Trailer stability assist function

The trailer stability assist function continually monitors the car's movements, particularly lateral movements. If snaking is detected, the front wheels are individually braked. This serves to stabilise the car/trailer combination. This is often enough to help the driver regain control of the car.

If snaking is not eliminated the first time that trailer stability assist intervenes, the car/trailer combination is braked with all wheels and engine power is reduced. Once snaking has been gradually suppressed and the car/trailer combination is stable once again, the system stops regulating and the driver once again has full control of the car.

NOTE

The stability function is deactivated if the driver chooses to activate **ESC Sport Mode** via the menu system in the centre display.

Trailer stability assist may fail to intervene if the driver uses severe steering wheel movements to try to rectify the snaking because in such a situation the system cannot determine whether it is the trailer or the driver causing the snaking.

10 Trailer Stability Assist
11 Electronic Stability Control

When Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) is operating, the ESC symbol flashes in the driver display.

NOTE

Retrofitting a towbar requires an update of the car's software, contact a Volvo dealer.

Related information

- Driving with a trailer (p. 473)
- Electronic stability control (p. 275)

Checking trailer lamps

When connecting a trailer - check that all the trailer lamps work before departure.

Direction indicators and brake lights on the trailer

If one or more of the trailer's direction indicators or brake light bulbs is broken, the driver display shows a symbol and a message. Other lights on the trailer must be checked manually by the driver before setting off.

Symbol	Message
	• **Trailer turn indicator Right turn indicator malfunction** • **Trailer turn indicator Left turn indicator malfunction**
	• **Trailer brake light Malfunction**

If any lamp for the trailer's direction indicators is broken, the driver display symbol for direction indicators will also flash more quickly than normal.

Rear fog lamp on trailer

When connecting the trailer, the rear fog lamp may not light up on the car. In such cases, the rear fog lamp function switches to the trailer. Upon activation of the rear fog lamp, check therefore that the trailer is equipped with a rear fog lamp to travel safely.

Checking trailer lamps*

Automatic checking

After a trailer is connected electrically, it is possible to check that the trailer lamps are working via an automatic lamp activation. The function helps the driver check that the trailer lamps are working before starting off.

The car must be switched off to perform the check.

1. When a trailer is connected to the towbar, the **Automatic Trailer Lamp Check** message is shown in the driver display.
2. Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's **O** button.
   > The lamp check starts.
3. Exit the car to check lamp functionality.
   > All trailer lamps start to flash - then the lamps are switched on one at a time.
4. Visually check that all lamps available on the trailer are operational.
5. After a moment, all lamps on the trailer flash again.
   > The check is complete.

* Option/accessory.

Switching off automatic checking

The automatic checking function can be switched off in the centre display.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Lights and Lighting**.
3. Deselect **Automatic Trailer Lamp Check**.

Manual checking

If the automatic checking is switched off then it is possible to start the check manually.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** ➔ **Lights and Lighting**.
3. Select **Manual Trailer Lamp Check**.
   > The lamp check starts. Exit the car to check lamp functionality.

Related information

- Driving with a trailer (p. 473)

Towbar-mounted bicycle rack*

When using a bicycle rack, the bicycle racks that Volvo has developed are recommended. This is in order to avoid damage to the car and in order to achieve the maximum possible safety during a journey. Volvo's bicycle racks are available for purchase at authorised Volvo dealers.

Carefully follow the instructions enclosed with the bicycle rack.

- Bicycle rack including load must weigh a maximum of 75 kg (165 pounds).
- The bicycle rack may be designed for a maximum of three bicycles.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the bicycle rack may cause damage to the towbar and car.

The bicycle rack can loosen from the towbar if it

- is incorrectly fitted on the towball
- is overloaded, see the bicycle rack's instructions for maximum load weight
- is used for carrying something other than bicycles.

The car's driving characteristics are affected when a bicycle rack is fitted on the towbar. For example due to:

- increased weight
- reduced acceleration capacity
- reduced ground clearance
- changed braking capacity.

Recommendations for loading bicycles on the bicycle rack

The larger the distance between the load's centre of gravity and the towball, the greater the load on the towbar.

Load according to the following recommendations:

- Fit the heaviest bicycle furthest in, closest to the car.
- Keep the load symmetrical and as close to the centre of the car as possible e.g. by loading the bicycles facing alternately if several bicycles are loaded.
- Remove loose objects from the bicycle for transportation, e.g. bicycle basket, battery, child seat. Partly to reduce the load on the towbar and bicycle rack, and partly to reduce the wind resistance, which affects fuel consumption.
- Do not use protective covers on the bicycles. This may affect manoeuvrability, impair visibility and increase fuel con-

sumption. It may also lead to an increased load on the towbar.

Related information

- Towbar* (p. 470)

Towing

During towing, the car is towed by another vehicle by means of a towline.

Towing the car is not permitted as this will damage the electric motor. Instead, the car must be transported raised with all the wheels on a recovery vehicle's platform, neither of the wheel pairs may have road contact.

When towing another car

Find out the statutory maximum speed limit for towing before the towing begins.

Jump starting

Tow-starting the motor is not permitted as this will damage the electric motor. Use a donor battery if the starter battery is discharged and the engine does not start.

IMPORTANT

The electric drive motor and the catalytic converter may be damaged during attempts to tow-start the car.

Related information

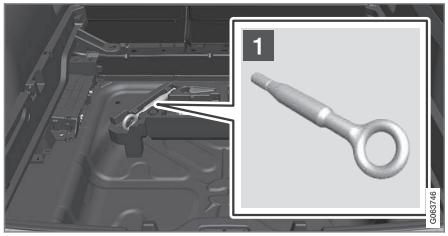
- Fitting and removing the towing eye (p. 479)
- Hazard warning flashers (p. 149)
- Recovery (p. 480)
- Using jump starting with another battery (p. 468)
- Selecting ignition mode (p. 433)
- Gearbox (p. 444)

* Option/accessory.

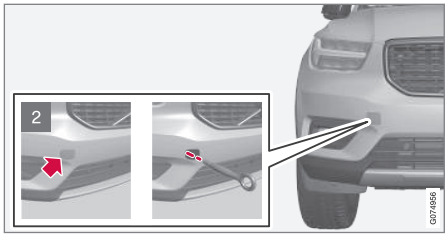
Fitting and removing the towing eye

Use the towing eye for towing. The towing eye is screwed into a threaded socket behind a cover on the right-hand side of the bumper, front or rear.

Fitting the towing eye

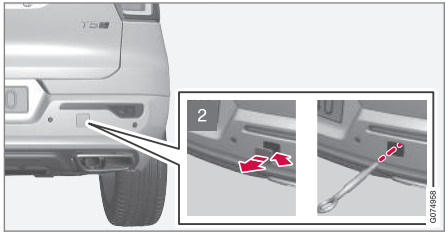


1 Take out the towing eye from the foam block under the floor in the cargo area.



2 Front: Remove the cover – press the lid.

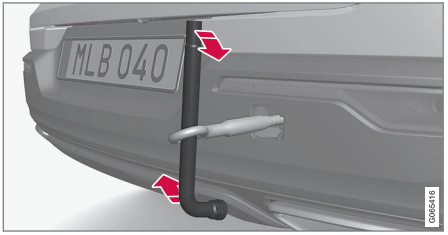
> The cover pivots around its centre line and can then be removed.



2 Rear: Remove the cover – Use a coin, key or similar to pry the lid out using the marking.

> Fold out the cover completely and detach.

4. Screw in the towing eye until it reaches its end stop.



Screw the eye in firmly. For example, thread through the wheel bolt wrench* and use it as a lever.

IMPORTANT

It is important that the towing eye is firmly screwed into place - right in until it stops.

Removing the towing eye

– Unscrew and remove the towing eye after use and return it to its foam block.

Finish by refitting the cover onto the bumper.

Related information

- Towing (p. 478)
- Recovery (p. 480)
- Tool kit (p. 563)

Recovery

For recovery, the car is taken away with the help of another vehicle.
Call a recovery service for recovery assistance.

The towing eye can be used to pull the car up onto a recovery vehicle with a flatbed platform.

IMPORTANT

Note that the car must always be transported raised up with all the wheels on the recovery vehicle's platform.

The car's position and ground clearance determine whether it is possible to pull it up onto a flatbed platform. If the slope of the recovery vehicle's ramp is too steep, or if the ground clearance under the car is inadequate, then the car may be damaged if you try to pull it up. The car should then be lifted using the recovery vehicle's lifting device.

WARNING

No one/nothing is allowed to remain behind the recovery vehicle while the car pulled up onto the flatbed platform.

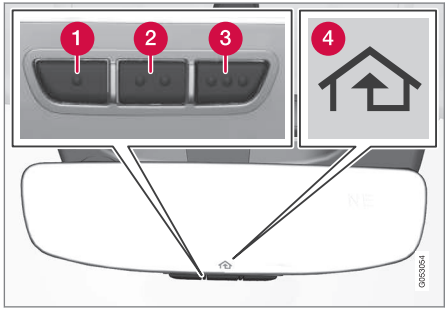
Related information

- Fitting and removing the towing eye (p. 479)

HomeLink®*[12]

HomeLink®[13] is a programmable remote control, integrated in the car's electrical system, which can remotely control up to three different devices (e.g. garage door opener, alarm system, outdoor and indoor lighting) and thereby replace the remote controls for them.

General



The figure is schematic - the version may vary.

1. Button 1
2. Button 2
3. Button 3
4. Indicator lamp

HomeLink® is supplied built-in to the interior rearview mirror. The HomeLink® panel consists of three programmable buttons and one indicator lamp in the mirror glass.

For more information about HomeLink®, visit homelink.com or call 00 8000 466 354 65 (or the toll number +49 6838 907 277)[14].

Save the original remote controls for future programming (e.g. when changing to another car or for use in another vehicle).

IMPORTANT

The programming for the buttons should be deleted when the car is sold.

Related information

- Using HomeLink®* (p. 483)
- Programming HomeLink®* (p. 481)
- Type approval for HomeLink®* (p. 483)

* Option/accessory.

Programming HomeLink®*15

Follow these instructions to program HomeLink®, reset all programming or reprogram individual buttons.

NOTE

In certain vehicles the ignition must be switched on or in "accessory position" before HomeLink® can be programmed or used. If possible, fit new batteries in the remote control that shall be replaced by HomeLink® for faster programming and improved transmission of the radio signal. The HomeLink® buttons should be reset before programming.

WARNING

While programming HomeLink®, the garage door or gate being programmed may activate. For this reason, make sure that nobody is in the vicinity of the door or gate while programming is in progress. The car should be outside the garage while a garage door opener is being programmed.

1. Aim the remote control towards the HomeLink® button to be programmed and hold it approx. 2-8 cm (approx. 1-3 inches) from the button. Do not obstruct the indicator lamp on HomeLink®.

   Note: The ability of some remote controls to program HomeLink® is improved at a distance of approx. 15-20 cm (approx. 6-12 inches). Bear this in mind if problems occur with the programming.

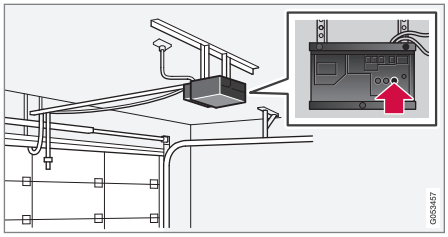
2. Press and hold depressed both the button on the remote control and the button to be reprogrammed on HomeLink®.

3. Do not release the buttons until the indicator lamp has switched from flashing slowly (approx. once per second) to either flashing quickly (approx. 10 times per second) or illuminating with a constant glow.

   > **If the indicator lamp illuminates with a constant glow:** Indication that the programming has finished. Press the programmed button twice to activate.

   If the indicator lamp flashes quickly: The device to be programmed to HomeLink® may have a security function that requires extra steps. Test by pressing the programmed button twice to see whether the programming is working. Otherwise, continue with the following steps.

12 Applies to certain markets.
13 HomeLink and the HomeLink house symbol are registered trademarks of Gentex Corporation.
14 Note that the toll-free number may not be available depending on operator.
15 Applies to certain markets.



4. Locate programming button[16] on the receiver for the garage door or similar. It is normally located close to the antenna's bracket on the receiver.
5. Depress and release the receiver's programming button once. The programming must be completed within 30 seconds of the button being depressed.
6. Press and release the button on HomeLink® that you want to program. Repeat the sequence of pressing/holding/releasing a second time and, depending on the receiver model, even a third time.
   > Programming is now be complete and the garage door, gate or similar should now be activated when the programmed button is depressed.

In the event of programming problems, contact HomeLink® at homelink.com, or call 00 8000 466 354 65 (or the toll number +49 6838 907 277)[17].

Reprogramming individual buttons

To reprogram an individual HomeLink® button, proceed as follows:

1. Press the desired button and hold it depressed for approx. 20 seconds.
2. Once the indicator lamp on HomeLink® starts to flash slowly, programming can continue as normal.

   Note: If the button to be reprogrammed is not programmed with a new unit, it will resume the previously saved programming.

Resetting the HomeLink® buttons

It is only possible to reset all of the HomeLink® buttons at the same time, not each button individually. Individual buttons can only be reprogrammed.

– Press and hold depressed the outer buttons (1 and 3) on HomeLink® for approx. 10 seconds.
  > When the indicator lamp changes over from a constant glow to starting to flash, the buttons are reset and ready to be reprogrammed.

Related information

- Using HomeLink®* (p. 483)
- HomeLink®* (p. 480)
- Type approval for HomeLink®* (p. 483)

16 Button designation and colour varies between manufacturers.
17 Note that the toll-free number may not be available depending on operator.

Using HomeLink®*[18]

When HomeLink® is fully programmed it can be used in place of the separate original remote controls.

Depress the programmed button. The garage door, gate, alarm system or similar is activated (may take a few seconds). If the button is depressed for more than 20 seconds then the reprogramming is started. The indicator lamp illuminates or flashes when the button has been depressed. Naturally the original remote controls can still be used in parallel with HomeLink® if required.

NOTE

When the ignition has been switched off, HomeLink® works for at least 7 minutes.

NOTE

HomeLink® cannot be used if the car is locked and the alarm is armed* from the outside.

WARNING

- If HomeLink® is used to control a garage door or gate, ensure that nobody is near the door or gate while it is in motion.
- Do not use HomeLink® for any garage door that does not have safety stop and safety reverse.

Related information

- HomeLink®* (p. 480)
- Programming HomeLink®* (p. 481)
- Type approval for HomeLink®* (p. 483)

Type approval for HomeLink®*[19]

Type approval for EU

Gentex Corporation hereby declares that HomeLink® Model UAHL5 complies with the Radio equipment directive 2014/53/EU.

Wavelength within which the radio equipment functions:

- 433.05MHz-434.79MHz <10mW E.R.P.
- 868.00MHz-868.60MHz <25mW E.R.P.
- 868.70MHz-868.20MHz <25mW E.R.P.
- 869.40MHz-869.65MHz <25mW E.R.P.
- 869.70MHz-870.00MHz <25mW E.R.P.

Certificate holder address: Gentex Corporation, 600 North Centennial Street, Zeeland MI 49464, USA

For more information, search support information on type approval at volvocars.com

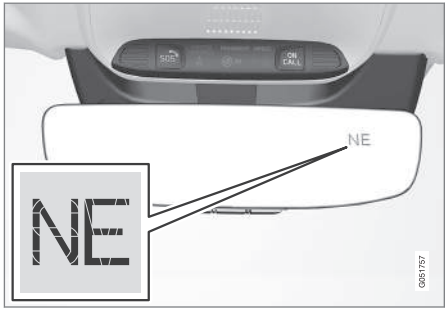
Related information

- HomeLink®* (p. 480)

18 Applies to certain markets.
19 Applies to certain markets.

Compass*

The upper right-hand corner of the rearview mirror has an integrated display that shows the compass direction[20] in which the front of the car is pointing.



Rearview mirror with compass.

Eight different compass directions are shown by their English abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (north east), **E** (east), **SE** (south east), **S** (south), **SW** (south west), **W** (west) and **NW** (north west).

Related information

- Activating and deactivating the compass* (p. 484)
- Calibrating the compass* (p. 484)

Activating and deactivating the compass*

The upper right-hand corner of the rearview mirror has an integrated display that shows the compass direction[21] in which the front of the car is pointing.

The compass is activated automatically when the car is started.

To deactivate/activate the compass manually:

– Depress the button on the underside of the rearview mirror using e.g. a paper clip.
  > If the compass is deactivated when the car is switched off, it will not be activated the next time the car is started. In this case, the compass needs to be activated manually.

Related information

- Compass* (p. 484)
- Calibrating the compass* (p. 484)

Calibrating the compass*

The earth is divided into 15 magnetic zones. The compass[22] should be calibrated if the car is moved between several magnetic zones.

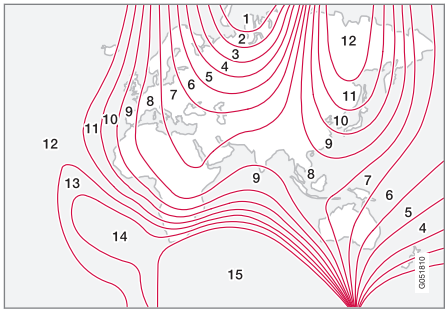
1. Stop the car in a large open area free from steel structures and high-voltage power lines.
2. Start the car and switch off all electrical equipment (air conditioning, wipers, etc.) and ensure that all doors are closed.

NOTE

Calibration may fail or not start at all if electrical equipment is not switched off.

3. Hold the button on the underside of the rearview mirror depressed for approx. 3 seconds (use a paper clip, for example). The number for the current magnetic zone is shown.

20 A rearview mirror with a compass is available as an option on certain markets and models only.
21 A rearview mirror with a compass is available as an option on certain markets and models only.
22 A rearview mirror with a compass is available as an option on certain markets and models only.



Magnetic zones.

4. Press the button repeatedly until the required magnetic zone (**1–15**) is shown. See the map of magnetic zones for the compass.
5. Wait until the display returns to showing the character **C**, or hold the button on the underside of the rearview mirror depressed for approx. 6 seconds until the character **C** is shown.
6. Drive slowly in a circle at a speed of no more than 10 km/h (6 mph) until a compass direction is shown in the display, indicating that calibration is complete. Then drive a further 2 circles to fine-tune calibration.
7. **Cars with heated windscreen*:** If the character **C** is shown in the display when the heated windscreen is activated, perform the calibration in accordance with point 6 above with the heated windscreen activated.
8. Repeat the above procedure as necessary.

Related information

- Compass* (p. 484)
- Activating and deactivating the compass* (p. 484)

SOUND, MEDIA AND INTERNET

Sound, media and Internet

The audio and media system consists of media player and radio. You can also connect a phone via Bluetooth to use handsfree functions or play music wirelessly in the car. When the car is connected to the Internet you can also use apps for media playback.

Overview of audio and media

Control the functions with your voice, steering wheel keypad or the centre display. The number of speakers and amplifiers depends on which audio system the car is equipped with.

System updating

The audio and media system is continuously improved. It is recommended to download system updates when new ones are available.

Related information

- Media player (p. 498)
- Radio (p. 492)
- Phone (p. 514)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Apps (p. 489)
- Voice recognition (p. 132)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)
- Driver distraction (p. 40)
- Managing system updates via the Download Centre (p. 591)
- License agreement for audio and media (p. 538)

Audio settings

The sound reproduction quality is preset, but it can be adjusted as well.

The volume is normally adjusted with the volume control below the centre display or with the right-hand steering wheel keypad. This applies, for example, during playback of music, radio, ongoing phone calls and active traffic messages.

Sound reproduction

The sound system is pre-calibrated by means of digital signal processing. This calibration takes into account loudspeakers, amplifiers, passenger compartment acoustics, listener position, etc., for each combination of car model and audio system. There is also a dynamic calibration that takes into account the setting of the volume control and vehicle speed.

Personal preferences

Various settings are available in the top view under **Settings** ➔ **Sound** depending on the car's audio system.

Premium Sound* (Harman Kardon)

- **Equaliser** – equalizer setting.
- **Balance** – balance between right/left loudspeakers and balance between front/rear loudspeakers.
- **System Volumes** – adjusts volume in the various systems of the car, e.g. **Voice**

* Option/accessory.

Control, **Park Assist** and **Phone Ringtone**.

High Performance*

- **Tone** – settings for bass, treble, equalizer, etc.
- **Balance** – balance between right/left loudspeakers and balance between front/rear loudspeakers.
- **System Volumes** – adjusts volume in the various systems of the car, e.g. **Voice Control**, **Park Assist** and **Phone Ringtone**.

Performance

- **Tone and Balance** – balance between speakers and setting of e.g. bass, treble and equalizer.
- **System Volumes** – adjusts volume in the various systems of the car, e.g. **Voice Control**, **Park Assist** and **Phone Ringtone**.

Related information

- Sound experience* (p. 489)
- Media player (p. 498)
- Settings for voice recognition (p. 136)
- Settings for phone (p. 522)
- Sound, media and Internet (p. 488)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)

Sound experience*

Sound experience is an app that provides access to further audio settings.

Sound Experience is opened from the app view in the centre display. The following settings can be defined, depending on the audio system fitted to the car:

- **Seat Optimisation** – the sound can be adjusted so that it can primarily be adapted for **Driver**, **All** and **Rear**.
- **Surround** - surround sound mode with level settings.
- **Tone** – settings for bass, treble, equalizer, etc.

Related information

- Audio settings (p. 488)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 105)

Apps

The app view contains apps that give access to some of the car's services.

Swipe from right to left[1] across the centre display's screen in order to access the app view from the home view. Apps that have been downloaded (third-party apps) and apps for embedded functions, such as **FM radio**, are found here.

App view (generic image, basic apps vary by market and model)

Some basic apps are always available. More apps such as web radio and music services can be downloaded when the car is connected to the Internet.

Certain apps are only available for use if the car is connected to the Internet.

Start an app by pressing the app in the centre display's app view.

All the apps used should be updated to the latest version.

Related information

- Downloading apps (p. 490)
- Updating apps (p. 491)
- Deleting apps (p. 491)
- Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 507)
- Android Auto* (p. 511)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Storage space on hard disk (p. 537)
- User terms and conditions and data sharing (p. 535)

Downloading apps

New apps can be downloaded when the car is connected to the Internet.

NOTE

Data download may affect other services that transmit data, e.g. Internet radio. If the effect on other services is experienced as disruptive then the download can be interrupted. Alternatively, it may be appropriate to switch off or interrupt other services.

NOTE

When downloading using a phone, pay extra attention to the data traffic costs.

1. Open the **Download Centre** app in the app view.

2. Select **New apps** in order to open a list of apps that are available but not installed in the car.
3. Tap on the row for an app in order to expand in the list and get more information about the app.
4. Select **Install** in order to start the download and installation of the desired app.
   > The status of the download and installation is shown while it is in progress.

   A message is shown if a download cannot be started for the moment. The app will remain in the list and it is possible to try to start a download again.

Cancelling the download

– Tap on **Abort** to cancel a download in progress.

Note that only the download can be cancelled, when the installation phase has started, this cannot be cancelled.

Related information

- Apps (p. 489)
- Updating apps (p. 491)
- Deleting apps (p. 491)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Managing system updates via the Download Centre (p. 591)
- Storage space on hard disk (p. 537)

[1] Applies to left-hand drive cars. For right-hand drive cars - swipe in the opposite direction.

Updating apps

The apps can be updated when the car is connected to the Internet.

NOTE

Data download may affect other services that transmit data, e.g. Internet radio. If the effect on other services is experienced as disruptive then the download can be interrupted. Alternatively, it may be appropriate to switch off or interrupt other services.

NOTE

When downloading using a phone, pay extra attention to the data traffic costs.

If an app is being used during an ongoing update, it will be restarted in order for the installation to be completed.

Update all

1. Open the **Download Centre** app in the app view.

2. Select **Install all**.
   > Updating is started.

Update some

1. Open the **Download Centre** app in the app view.
2. Select **Application updates** in order to open a list of all available updates.
3. Locate the desired app and select **Install**.
   > Updating is started.

Related information

- Apps (p. 489)
- Downloading apps (p. 490)
- Deleting apps (p. 491)
- Managing system updates via the Download Centre (p. 591)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)

Deleting apps

Apps can be uninstalled when the car is connected to the Internet.

An app that is being used must be closed in order for the uninstallation to be completed.

1. Open the **Download Centre** app in the app view.

2. Select **Application updates** in order to open a list of all installed apps.
3. Locate the desired app and select **Uninstall** in order to start the uninstallation of the app.
   > When the app has been uninstalled, it disappears from the list.

Related information

- Apps (p. 489)
- Downloading apps (p. 490)
- Updating apps (p. 491)
- Managing system updates via the Download Centre (p. 591)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)

Radio

It is possible to listen to the FM bands and to digital radio (DAB)*. When the car is online, it is also possible to listen to Internet radio.

The radio can be operated using voice recognition, the steering wheel keypad or the centre display.

Related information

- Start radio (p. 492)
- Changing radio band and radio station (p. 493)
- Save radio channels in the Radio Favourites app (p. 495)
- Settings for radio (p. 495)
- Digital radio* (p. 497)
- RDS radio (p. 497)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 136)
- Media player (p. 498)

Start radio

The radio is started from the centre display app view.

1. Open the required frequency band (e.g. **FM**) from the app view.

2. Select a radio station.

Related information

- Radio (p. 492)
- Searching for radio stations (p. 494)

* Option/accessory.

- Changing radio band and radio station (p. 493)
- Save radio channels in the Radio Favourites app (p. 495)
- Settings for radio (p. 495)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 136)

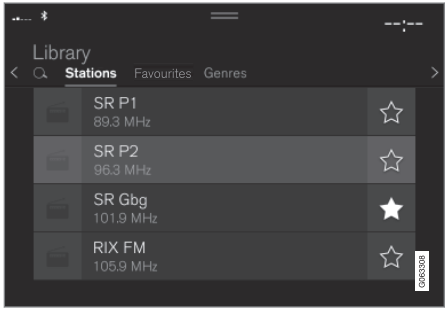
Changing radio band and radio station

There are instructions here for changing the radio band, the list in the radio band and the radio station in the selected list.

Changing radio band

Swipe to show the app view in the centre display and select the preferred radio band (e.g. **FM**), or open the driver display's app menu using the right-hand keypad on the steering wheel and make your selection from there.

Changing lists within the frequency band



1. Press **Library**.
2. Select playback from **Stations**, **Favourites**, **Genres** or **Ensembles**[2].
3. Tap on the desired station from the list.

Favourites - only plays back selected favourite channels.

Genres - only plays back channels broadcasting the selected genre/programme type, e.g. pop or classical.

Changing stations within the selected list

– Press on ⏮ or ⏭ under the centre display or the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.
  > The highlight moves up or down one place in the selected playlist.

You can also change radio station in the selected list via the centre display.

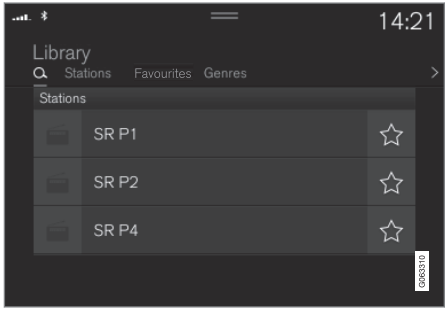
Related information

- Radio (p. 492)
- Searching for radio stations (p. 494)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 136)
- Save radio channels in the Radio Favourites app (p. 495)
- Settings for radio (p. 495)
- App menu in the driver display (p. 94)

2 Only applies to digital radio (DAB*).

Searching for radio stations

The radio automatically compiles a station list of the radio stations within the area that are transmitting the strongest signals.



The parameters you can search on depend on the frequency band selected:

- FM - station, genre and frequency.
- DAB* - ensembles and stations.

1. Press **Library**.
2. Press .
   > Search view with keyboard is opened.
3. Enter the search terms.
   > Searching takes place with each input of a character and the search results are shown by category.

Manual tuning

Searching manually makes it possible to find and tune to stations that are not on the automatically compiled list of the strongest stations in the area.

On changing over to manual tuning, the radio no longer changes frequency automatically when reception is poor.

– Press **Manual tuning**, pull the control or press ⏮ or ⏭. With a long press, the search jumps to the next available station in the frequency band. It is also possible to use the right keypad on the steering wheel.

Related information

- Radio (p. 492)
- Start radio (p. 492)
- Changing radio band and radio station (p. 493)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 136)
- Settings for radio (p. 495)

* Option/accessory.

Save radio channels in the Radio Favourites app

It is possible to add a radio channel to the **Radio favourites** app and the favourites list for the radio band (e.g. FM). Instructions on how to add and remove radio channels can be found below.

Radio Favourites

The Radio Favourites app shows saved radio channels from all frequency bands.

1. Open the app **Radio favourites** from the app view.
2. Tap on the desired station in the list to start listening.

Adding and removing radio favourites

1. Tap on ☆ to add a channel to or from frequency band favourites and the Radio Favourites app.
2. Tap on **Library**, select **Edit** and tap on 🗑 to remove a radio channel from the favourites.

When a radio channel is saved from a station list, the radio will automatically search for the best frequency. But if a radio channel is saved from a manual station search, the radio does not automatically change to a stronger frequency.

If a radio channel is removed from the Radio Favourite app, the channel will also be removed from the favourites list for the relevant frequency band.

Related information

- Radio (p. 492)
- Start radio (p. 492)
- Searching for radio stations (p. 494)
- Changing radio band and radio station (p. 493)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 136)
- Settings for radio (p. 495)
- App menu in the driver display (p. 94)

Settings for radio

There are various radio functions to activate and deactivate.

Cancelling traffic messages

The broadcast of traffic messages etc. can be temporarily interrupted by tapping on ○ in the right-hand steering wheel keypad or by tapping on **Cancel** in the centre display.

Activating and deactivating radio functions

Drag down the top view and select **Settings** ➔ **Media** and the desired radio band to view available functions.

FM Radio

- **Show Broadcast Information**: shows information on programme content, artists, etc.
- **Freeze Program Name**: select to stop the programme service name from scrolling continuously. Instead it freezes after 20 seconds.
- **Select Announcements**:[3]
  - **Local Interruptions**: interrupts the current media playback and broadcasts information about traffic disruptions in the neighbourhood. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished. The **Local Interruptions** function is a geographically restricted version of the **Traffic Announcements** function. The **Traffic Announcements** function must be activated at the same time.
  - **News** : interrupts the current media playback and broadcasts news. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the news broadcast is finished.
  - **Alarm**: interrupts the current media playback and sends alerts about major accidents and disasters. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished.
  - **Traffic Announcements**: interrupts the current media playback and broadcasts information about traffic disruptions. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished.

DAB* (digital radio)

- **Sort Services**: option for how channels will be sorted. Either alphabetically or by service number.
- **DAB To DAB Handover**: starts the function for linking within DAB. If reception of a radio channel is lost, another channel is found automatically in another channel group (ensemble).
- **DAB To FM Handover**: starts the function for linking between DAB and FM. If reception of a radio channel is lost, an alternative FM frequency is searched for automatically.
- **Show Broadcast Information**: select to show radio text or selected types of radio text, e.g. artist.
- **Show Program Related Images**: select whether or not to show images for programmes on the screen.
- **Select Announcements**: select the types of messages to be received while DAB is playing. Selected messages will interrupt the current media playback to play back the message. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished.
  - **Alarm**: interrupts the current media playback and sends alerts about major accidents and disasters. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished.
  - **Traffic Flash**: receives information about traffic disruptions.
  - **News Flash**: receives news.
  - **Transport Flash**: receives information about public transport, e.g. ferry and train timetables.
  - **Warning/Services**: receives information about incidents of lower significance than the Alarm function, e.g. power failures.

Related information

- Radio (p. 492)
- Digital radio* (p. 497)
- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 114)

[3] Not all stations support all message types.

* Option/accessory.

RDS radio

RDS (Radio Data System) means that the radio automatically changes to the strongest transmitter. RDS provides the ability to receive e.g. traffic information and to search for certain programme types.

RDS links FM transmitters into a network. An FM transmitter in such a network sends information that gives an RDS radio the following functions:

- Switch automatically to a stronger transmitter if reception in the area is poor.
- Search for programme category, e.g. programme types or traffic information.
- Receive text information on current radio programme.

NOTE

Some radio stations do not use RDS or only selected parts of its functionality.

When broadcasting news or traffic messages, the radio can switch stations, interrupting the audio source currently in use. The radio returns to the previous audio source and volume when the set programme type is no longer broadcast. To go back earlier, press ○ on the right-hand steering wheel keypad or tap **Cancel** in the centre display.

4 Digital Audio Broadcasting

Related information

- Radio (p. 492)
- Settings for radio (p. 495)

Digital radio*

Digital radio (DAB[4]) is a digital broadcasting system for radio. The radio supports DAB, DAB+ and DMB[5].

The radio can be operated using voice recognition, the steering wheel keypad or the centre display.

The digital radio app is launched from app view in the centre display.

Digital radio is played back in the same way as other radio bands, such as FM. Besides the option to select playback from **Stations**, **Favourites** and **Genres**, there is also the option to select playback from subchannels and **Ensembles**. An ensemble is a set of radio channels (a channel group) broadcasting on the same frequency.

In the cases where the radio channel transmits its logotype, it is downloaded and shown beside the station name (download time varies).

DAB subchannel
Secondary components are usually named subchannels. These are temporary and can contain e.g. translations of the main programme into other languages. Subchannels are indicated with an arrow symbol in the channel list.

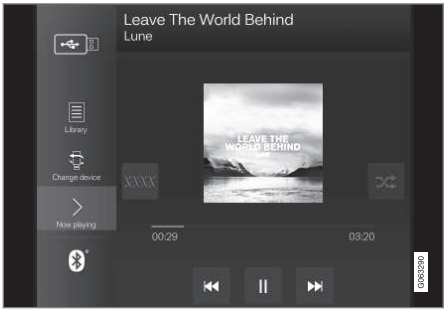
Related information
- Link between FM and digital radio* (p. 498)
- Changing radio band and radio station (p. 493)
- Searching for radio stations (p. 494)
- Save radio channels in the Radio Favourites app (p. 495)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 136)
- Settings for radio (p. 495)

Link between FM and digital radio*
The function enables the digital radio (DAB) to switch from a channel with poor or no reception to the same channel in another channel group (ensemble) with better reception, within DAB and/or between DAB and FM.

DAB to DAB and DAB to FM linking
1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Media** ➔ **DAB**.
3. Tick/untick **DAB To DAB Handover** and/or **DAB To FM Handover** in order to activate/deactivate the respective functions.

Related information
- Digital radio* (p. 497)
- Radio (p. 492)
- Settings for radio (p. 495)

Media player
The media player can play back audio from external audio sources connected via the USB port or Bluetooth. It can also play back video format via the USB port.
When the car is connected to the internet, it is also possible to listen to web radio, audio books and music services via apps.



The media player is operated from the centre display, but several functions can be operated using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad or voice control.

The radio is operated in the media player and is described in a separate section.

5 Digital Multimedia Broadcasting

* Option/accessory.

Related information

- Media playback (p. 499)
- Controlling and changing media (p. 500)
- Searching media (p. 501)
- Apps (p. 489)
- Radio (p. 492)
- Video (p. 503)
- Media via Bluetooth® (p. 504)
- Media via USB port (p. 505)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)

Media playback

The media player is controlled from the centre display. Several functions can also be operated using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad or voice control.

The media player also operates the radio, which is described in a separate section.

Starting the media source

App view. (Generic image, basic apps vary by market and model.)

USB memory

1. Insert the USB memory.
2. Open the app **USB** from the app view.
3. Select what to play back.
   > Playback begins.

Mp3 player and IPod®

NOTE

To start playback from iPod, use the iPod app (not USB).

When an iPod is used as audio source, the car's audio and media system has a menu structure that is similar to the iPod player's own menu structure.

1. Connect media source.
2. Start playback from the connected media source.
3. Open the app (**iPod**, **USB**) from the app view.
   > Playback begins.

Bluetooth connected device

1. Activate Bluetooth in the media source.
2. Connect media source.
3. Start playback from the connected media source.
4. Open the app **Bluetooth** from the app view.
   > Playback begins.

Media with Internet connection

Play back media from Internet-connected apps:

1. Connect the car to the Internet.
2. Open the current app from the app view.
   > Playback begins.

Read the separate section on how apps are downloaded.

Video

1. Connect media source.
2. Open the app **USB** from the app view.
3. Tap on the title of the desired item to play back.
   > Playback begins.

Apple CarPlay

CarPlay is described in a separate section.

Android Auto

Android Auto is described in a separate section.

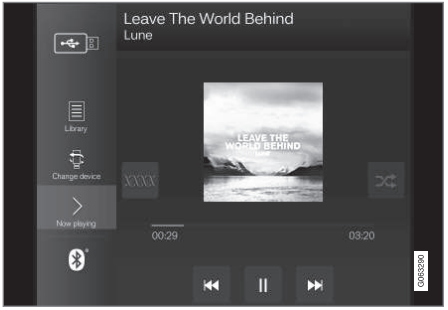
Related information

- Managing the app menu in the driver display (p. 95)
- Radio (p. 492)
- Controlling and changing media (p. 500)
- Connecting a device via USB port (p. 505)
- Connecting a device via Bluetooth® (p. 504)
- Downloading apps (p. 490)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Video (p. 503)
- Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 507)
- Android Auto* (p. 511)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 136)
- Compatible media formats (p. 506)

Controlling and changing media

The playback of media can be controlled with voice control, steering wheel keypad or the centre display.

The media player can be operated by voice recognition, from the steering wheel keypad or the centre display.



Volume - turn the control knob under the centre display or press ▲ ▼ on the steering wheel's right-hand keypad in order to increase or decrease the volume.

Play/pause - tap on the image belonging to the song being played back, the physical button under the centre display or ◯ on the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

* Option/accessory.

Change track/song - tap on the desired track in the centre display, press on ⏮ or ⏭ under the centre display or on the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

Fast forward/move in time - tap on the time axis in the centre display and drag sideways, or press and hold ⏮ or ⏭ under the centre display or on the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

Changing media - select from previous sources in the app, in the app view, press on the desired app or select with the steering wheel's right-hand keypad via the app menu .

Library - tap on the button to play back from the library.

Shuffle - tap on the button to shuffle the playback order.

Similar - tap on the button in order to use Gracenote to search for similar music on the USB device and to create a playlist from it. The playlist can contain a maximum of 50 songs.

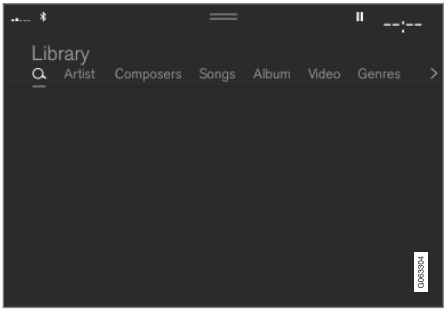
Change device - tap on the button in order to switch between USB devices when several are connected.

Related information

- Media player (p. 498)
- Searching media (p. 501)
- Audio settings (p. 488)
- Apps (p. 489)
- Gracenote® (p. 502)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 136)

Searching media

It is possible to search by artist, composer, song titles, album, video, audio book, playlist and, when the car is connected to the Internet, podcasts (digital media via Internet).



1. Press .
   > Search view with keyboard is opened.
2. Enter the search terms.
3. Press **Search**.
   > Connected devices are searched and the search results are listed by category.

Swipe sideways across the screen to show each category separately.

Related information

- Media player (p. 498)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)

- Media playback (p. 499)
- Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display (p. 119)

Gracenote®

Gracenote identifies artist, album, song titles and associated images, which are shown during playback.

Gracenote MusicID® is a standard for music recognition. Information on the music can be presented by means of the identification and analysis of the metadata in the music files. Sometimes metadata from different sources can be inconsistent or inadequate.

Gracenote has support for phonetic processing of artist name, album titles and genres, and in this way, voice control can be used to play back music.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Media** ➔ **Gracenote®**.
3. Select settings for Gracenote data:

- **Gracenote® Online Search** - searches in Gracenote's online database for playing media.
- **Gracenote® Multiple Results** - selects how to display Gracenote data if there are more than one search results.

  1 - the file's original data are used.

  2 - Gracenote data are used.

  3 - Gracenote or original data can be selected.
- **None** - no results are shown.

Updating Gracenote

The content of the Gracenote database is updated continuously. Download the latest update to take advantage of improvements.

For information and downloading see volvocars.com/support.

Related information

- Media playback (p. 499)
- License agreement for audio and media (p. 538)
- Voice control of radio and media (p. 136)

Video

Videos on USB-connected devices can be played back using the media player.

No picture is shown when the car starts to move, but only the audio is played back. The picture is shown again when the car is stationary.

Information on compatible formats for media can be found in a separate section.

Related information

- Playing a video (p. 503)
- Playing back DivX® (p. 503)
- Settings for video (p. 504)
- Compatible media formats (p. 506)

Playing a video

Videos are played using the **USB** app in the app view.

1. Connecting a media source (USB device).
2. Open the app **USB** from the app view.
3. Tap on the title of the desired item to play back.
   > Playback begins.

Finding video files may be problematic if the USB device also contains music and audio tracks. In this case, it is possible to find them by going to **Library** and selecting the video tab.

Related information

- Video (p. 503)
- Playing back DivX® (p. 503)
- Settings for video (p. 504)
- Compatible media formats (p. 506)

Playing back DivX®

This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play back purchased DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) films.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Tap **Video** ➔ **DivX® VOD** and retrieve the registration code.
3. Go to vod.divx.com for more information and to complete the registration.

Related information

- Video (p. 503)
- Playing a video (p. 503)
- Settings for video (p. 504)
- Compatible media formats (p. 506)

Settings for video

Certain language settings can be changed for video playback.

With the video player in full screen mode, or by opening the top view and pressing **Settings** ➔ **Media** ➔ **Video**, the following can be adjusted: **Audio Language** and **Subtitle Language**.

Related information

- Video (p. 503)

Media via Bluetooth®

The car's media player is equipped with Bluetooth and can wirelessly play audio files from external Bluetooth devices, such as mobile phones and tablets.

For the media player to be able to play back audio files wirelessly from an external device, the device must first be connected to the car via Bluetooth.

Related information

- Connecting a device via Bluetooth® (p. 504)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 515)
- Media playback (p. 499)
- Compatible media formats (p. 506)

Connecting a device via Bluetooth®

Connect a Bluetooth® device to the car for wireless playback of media and to provide the car with an Internet connection where possible.

Many phones on the market now have wireless Bluetooth® technology, but not all of them are fully compatible with the car.

For information on compatibility, see volvocars.com/support.

The procedure for connecting a media device is the same as for connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth®.

Related information

- Media via Bluetooth® (p. 504)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 515)
- Media playback (p. 499)

Media via USB port

An external audio source, e.g. an iPod® or MP3 player, can be connected to the audio system via the car's USB port.
Devices with rechargeable batteries are recharged when connected via USB and the ignition is in position **I**, **II** or the engine is running.

The content of the external source can be loaded more quickly if it only consists of compatible formats. Video files can also be played back via the USB port.

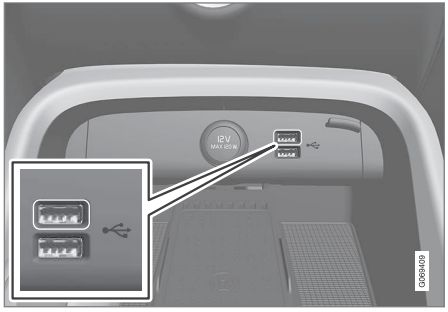
Certain MP3 players have their own file system that the car does not support.

Related information

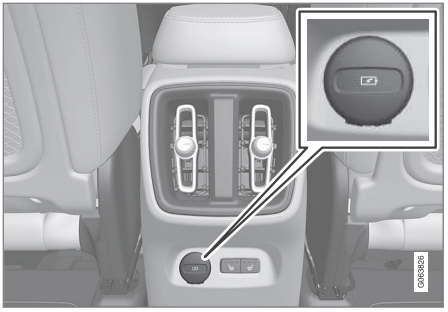
- Connecting a device via USB port (p. 505)
- Media playback (p. 499)
- Video (p. 503)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)
- Technical specifications for USB devices (p. 506)
- Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 507)
- Android Auto* (p. 511)

Connecting a device via USB port

An external audio source, e.g. an iPod® or MP3 player, can be connected to the audio system via one of the car's USB ports.
The phone must be connected to the USB port with white frame (when there are two USB ports) when using Apple CarPlay* and Android Auto*.



USB inputs (type A) under the centre display.



USB inputs* (type C) on rear of tunnel console for charging telephones and tablets for example[6].

Related information

- Media playback (p. 499)
- Media via USB port (p. 505)
- Media player (p. 498)
- Technical specifications for USB devices (p. 506)
- Technical specifications for USB devices (p. 506)
- Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 507)
- Android Auto* (p. 511)

[6] It is not possible to playback media in the car's audio or media system via this input.

Technical specifications for USB devices

The following specifications must be met to allow the contents of the USB devices to be read.
No folder structure will be shown in the centre display during playback.

	Max number
Files	15 000
Folders	1 000
Folder levels	8
Playlists	100
Items in a playlist	1 000
Subfolders	No limit

Technical specification for USB A connector

- Type A socket
- Version 2.0
- Voltage supply 5 V
- Current supply max. 2.1 A

Technical specification for USB C connector

- Type C socket
- Version 3.1
- Voltage supply 5 V
- Current supply max. 3.0 A

Related information

- Media via USB port (p. 505)

Compatible media formats

The following file formats must be used for media playback.

Audio files

Format	File extension	Codec
MP3	.mp3	MPEG1 Layer III, MPEG2 Layer III, MP3 Pro (mp3 compatible), MP3 HD (mp3 compatible)
AAC	.m4a, .m4b, .aac	AAC LC (MPEG-4 part III Audio), HE-AAC (aacPlus v1/v2)
WMA	.wma	WMA8/9, WMA9/10 Pro
WAV	.wav	LPCM
FLAC	.flac	FLAC

Video files

Format	File extension
MP4	.mp4, .m4v
MPEG-PS	.mpg, .mp2, .mpeg, .m1v

Format	File extension
AVI	.avi
AVI (DivX)	.avi, .divx
ASF	.asf, .wmv

Subtitles

Format	File extension
SubViewer	.sub
SubRip	.srt
SSA	.ssa

DivX®

DivX certified devices have been tested for high-quality DivX (.divx, .avi) video playback. When you see the DivX logo, you have the freedom to play DivX films.

Profile	DivX Home Theater
Video codec	DivX, MPEG-4
Resolution	720x576
Bit rate	4.8Mbps
Frame rate	30 fps
File extension	.divx, .avi
Max file size	4 GB
Audio codec	MP3, AC3
Subtitles	XSUB
Special functions	Multiple subtitles, multiple audio, resume play
Reference	Meets all requirements of the DivX Home Theater profile. Visit divx.com for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX Home Theater video.

Related information

- Media player (p. 498)
- Video (p. 503)
- Playing back DivX® (p. 503)

Apple® CarPlay®*

CarPlay[7] gives you the option to listen to music, make phone calls, get directions, send/receive messages and use Siri, all while you stay focused on your driving.

CarPlay works with selected iOS devices. If the car does not already support CarPlay there is the option to install it retroactively. Contact a Volvo dealer to install CarPlay.

Information about which apps are supported and which iOS devices are compatible is available on Apple's website: www.apple.com/ios/carplay/. Using apps that are not compatible with CarPlay may sometimes mean that the connection between the device and the car is broken. Please note that Volvo is not responsible for the content in CarPlay.

When using map navigation via CarPlay no guidance is shown in the driver display, but only in the centre display.

When navigation is started through Apple CarPlay, ongoing native turn-by-turn route guidance will be ended.

The CarPlay apps can be controlled via the centre display, the iOS device or using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad (applies to certain functions). The apps can also be voice-controlled using Siri. A long press on the

▸▸

steering wheel button starts voice control using Siri and a short press activates the car's own voice control. If Siri breaks off too early, hold the steering wheel button depressed.[8]

By using Apple CarPlay you acknowledge the following: Apple CarPlay is a service provided by Apple Inc. under its terms and conditions. Volvo Cars is thus not responsible for Apple CarPlay or its features/applications. When using Apple CarPlay, certain information from your car (including its position) is transferred to your iPhone. In relation to Volvo Cars, you are fully responsible for your and any others person's use of Apple CarPlay.

Related information

- Using Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 508)
- Settings for Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 510)
- Voice recognition (p. 132)
- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 124)

Using Apple® CarPlay®*

To use CarPlay[9], Siri voice control must be activated on your iOS device. The device also needs an Internet connection via Wi-Fi or the mobile network for all functions to work.

Connect an iOS device and start CarPlay

NOTE

CarPlay can only be used if Bluetooth is deactivated. A phone or media player connected to the car via Bluetooth will therefore not be available when CarPlay is active. An alternative Internet source must be used to connect to the Internet for the car's apps. Use Wi-Fi or the car's built-in modem*.

To start CarPlay from an iOS device that has not been connected previously:

1. Connect an iOS device with support for CarPlay to the USB port. In the cases where there are two USB ports, the one with the white frame around the port must be used.
2. Read the terms and conditions and then tap on **Accept** to connect.
   > The subview with CarPlay is opened and compatible apps are shown.
3. Tap on the desired app.
   > The app starts.

7 Availability may vary depending on market.
8 Apple and CarPlay are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.
9 Availability may vary depending on market.

* Option/accessory.

Starting CarPlay

To start CarPlay from an iOS device that has been connected previously:

1. Connect an iOS device to the USB port. In the cases where there are two USB ports, the one with the white frame around the port must be used.
   > **If the setting for automatic start is selected** - the name of the device will be shown. The tile with CarPlay is opened automatically in the cases where the home view is shown when connecting the iOS device.
2. If the tile with CarPlay does not open automatically, tap on the device name. The subview with CarPlay is opened and compatible apps are shown.
3. If an app is active in the same tile, tap on **Apple CarPlay** in the app view.
   > The subview with CarPlay is opened and compatible apps are shown.
4. Tap on the desired app.
   > The app starts.

CarPlay runs in the background if another app is started, or is already active when connecting, in the same tile. To show CarPlay in the subview again - tap on the CarPlay icon in the app view.

Switch the connection between CarPlay and iPod

CarPlay to iPod

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Continue to **Communication** ➔ **Apple CarPlay**.
3. Untick the box for the iOS device that shall no longer start CarPlay automatically when the USB cable is connected.
4. Disconnect and connect the iOS device to the USB port.
5. Open the app **iPod** from the app view.

iPod to CarPlay

1. Tap on **Apple CarPlay** in the app view.
2. Read the information in the pop-up window and then tap on **OK**.
3. Disconnect and connect the iOS device to the USB port.
   > The subview with Apple CarPlay is opened and compatible apps are shown[10].

Related information

- Connecting a device via USB port (p. 505)
- Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 507)
- Settings for Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 510)
- Connect the car to the Internet via a phone (Wi-Fi) (p. 530)
- Connect the car to the Internet via car modem (SIM card) (p. 531)
- Voice recognition (p. 132)

10 Apple, CarPlay, iPhone and iPod are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

Settings for Apple® CarPlay®*

Settings for iOS device connected with CarPlay[11],[12].

Automatic start

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Continue to **Communication** ➔ **Apple CarPlay** and select setting:
   - Tick the box - CarPlay starts automatically when the USB cable is connected.
   - Untick the box - CarPlay does not start automatically when the USB cable is connected.

If the car is shared by a lot of people, such as in a car pool, it is worth noting that a maximum of 20 iOS devices can be stored simultaneously in the list. When the list is full and a new device is connected the oldest one is deleted.

To delete the list, the settings must be reset in the centre display (factory reset).

System volumes

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Tap on **Sound** ➔ **System Volumes** and make the settings for the following:
   - **Voice Control**
   - **Navi Voice Guidance**
   - **Phone Ringtone**

Related information

- Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 507)
- Using Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 508)
- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 124)

Tips for using Apple® CarPlay®*

Here are some useful tips for using CarPlay®[13].

- Update your iOS device with the latest version of the iOS operating system and ensure that the apps have been updated.
- In the event of a problem with CarPlay, disconnect the iOS device from the USB port and reconnect. Otherwise, try to close the app on the device that is not working and then restart the app, or try closing all apps and restart your device.
- If the apps do not appear when CarPlay starts (black screen), try minimising and expanding the tile for CarPlay.
- Using apps that are not compatible with CarPlay may sometimes mean that the connection between the iOS device and the car is broken. Information about supported apps and compatible telephone devices can be found on the Apple website. You can also search for CarPlay in the App Store to find information about apps that are compatible with CarPlay on your market.
- Using Siri it is possible to write/dictate and read out messages. Messages are read out and dictated in the language

11 Apple and CarPlay are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.
12 Availability may vary depending on market.
13 Availability may vary depending on market.

selected in the settings for Siri. When the message is written/dictated, no text will be shown in the centre display – instead, the text will appear on the iOS device. When Siri is used, note that the telephone's microphones are used and that the quality is therefore dependent on the position of the telephone.

- If the device is connected to the car via Bluetooth, the connection will be interrupted when CarPlay is used. Resume the Internet connection in the car by sharing the Internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot from the device.
- Some of the CarPlay functions (such as voice call and messages) mean that use of the car's own functions is stopped and CarPlay is shown automatically instead. If this behaviour is not wanted, deselect the display of the equivalent function in CarPlay under the phone's settings for notifications.
- CarPlay only works with iPhone[14].

NOTE

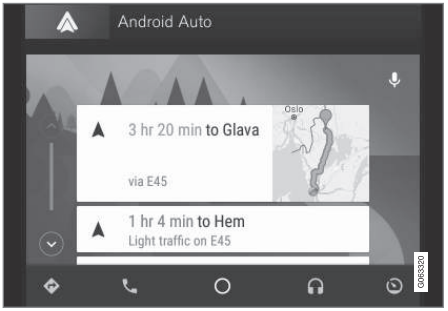
Availability and functionality may vary depending on market.

Related information

- Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 507)
- Connect the car to the Internet via a phone (Wi-Fi) (p. 530)

Android Auto*

Android Auto[15] gives you the option to listen to music, make phone calls, get directions and use car-adapted apps from an Android device. Android Auto works with selected Android devices.



Information about which apps are supported and which Android devices are compatible is available on the website: www.android.com/auto/. For third-party apps, see Google Play. Please note that Volvo is not responsible for the content in Android Auto.

Android Auto is started from the app view. After Android Auto has been started once, the app will be started automatically the next time

14 Apple, CarPlay and iPhone are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.
15 Availability may vary depending on market.

the device is connected. Automatic start can be deactivated under settings.

NOTE

When a device is connected to Android Auto it is possible to stream via Bluetooth to another media player. Bluetooth is active while Android Auto is being used.

When using map navigation via Android Auto there is no guidance in the driver display, but only in the centre display.

Android Auto can be controlled via the centre display using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad or voice control. Holding down the steering wheel button starts Google Assistant and a short press deactivates it.

By using Android Auto, you acknowledge the following: Android Auto is a service provided by Google Inc. under its terms and conditions. Volvo Cars is not responsible for Android Auto or its features or applications. When you use Android Auto, your car transfers certain information (including its location) to your connected Android phone. You are fully responsible for your and any other person's use of Android Auto.

Related information

- Using Android Auto* (p. 512)
- Settings for Android Auto* (p. 513)

Using Android Auto*

To use the **Android Auto**[16] app, the app must be installed on your Android device and the device must be connected to the car's USB port.

NOTE

For installation of Android Auto to be possible, the car must be equipped with two USB ports (USB hub)*. If the car only has one USB port then it is not possible to use Android Auto.

The first time an Android is connected

1. Connect your Android device to the USB input with a white frame.
2. Read the information in the pop-up window and then tap on **OK**.
3. Tap on **Android Auto** in the app view.
4. Read the terms and conditions and then tap on **Accept** to connect.
   > The subview with Android Auto is opened and compatible apps are shown.
5. Tap on the desired app.
   > The app starts.

16 Availability may vary depending on market.

Previously connected Android

1. Connect your device to the USB input with a white frame.
   > **If the setting for automatic start is selected** - the name of the device is shown.
2. Tap on the device name – the tile with Android Auto is opened and compatible apps are shown.
3. **If the setting for automatic start is not selected** - open the **Android Auto** app from the app view.
   > The subview with Android Auto is opened and compatible apps are shown.
4. Tap on the desired app.
   > The app starts.

Android Auto runs in the background if another app is started in the same subview. To show Android Auto in the subview again - tap on the Android Auto icon in the app view.

Related information

- Android Auto* (p. 511)
- Settings for Android Auto* (p. 513)
- Connecting a device via USB port (p. 505)
- Voice recognition (p. 132)

Settings for Android Auto*

Settings for an Android device that has been connected for the first time with Android Auto[17].

Automatic start

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication** ➔ **Android Auto** and select setting:
   - Tick the box - Android Auto starts automatically when the USB cable is connected.
   - Untick the box - Android Auto does not start automatically when the USB cable is connected.

A maximum of 20 Android devices can be stored in the list. When the list is full and a new device is connected the oldest one is deleted.

A factory reset has to be executed in order to clear the list.

System volumes

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Tap on **Sound** ➔ **System Volumes** and make the settings for the following:
   - **Voice Control**
   - **Navi Voice Guidance**
   - **Phone Ringtone**

Related information

- Android Auto* (p. 511)
- Using Android Auto* (p. 512)
- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 124)

17 Availability may vary depending on market.

Tips for using Android Auto*

Here are some useful tips for using Android Auto[18].

- Ensure that your apps are updated.
- When starting the car, wait until the centre display has started, connect the device and then open Android Auto from the app view.
- In the event of problems with Android Auto, disconnect your Android device from the USB port and then reconnect via USB. Otherwise, try closing the app on the device and then restarting the app.
- When a device is connected to Android Auto it is still possible to playback media via Bluetooth to another media player. The Bluetooth function is on when Android Auto is used.
- If the icon for Android Auto is greyed out, this means no device is connected. When you connect your device the icon will be illuminated. If the icon is not visible at all then the car does not have support for connecting a device for this purpose.
- If the device is connected to the car via Bluetooth, the connection will be interrupted when Android Auto is used. Resume the Internet connection in the car by sharing the Internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot from the device.

18 Availability may vary depending on market.

Related information

- Android Auto* (p. 511)
- Connect the car to the Internet via a phone (Wi-Fi) (p. 530)

Phone

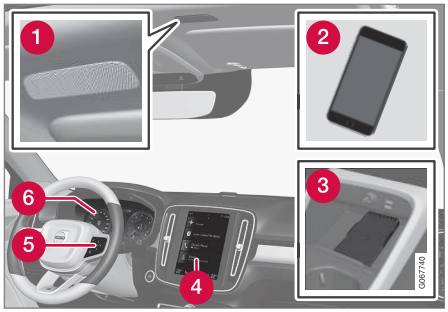
A phone with Bluetooth can be connected wirelessly to the car's built-in hands-free system.

The audio and media system acts as hands-free, with the facility to remotely control a selection of the phone's functions. The phone can still be operated with its own keys even if it is connected to the car.

When a phone has been connected online and connected with the car, it can be used make calls, send/receive messages, play back media wirelessly and be used as an Internet connection.

The phone is operated from the centre display, but also via voice recognition and the app menu, which are accessed from the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

Overview



1. Microphone.
2. Phone.
3. Wireless phone charger.
4. Phone operation from centre display.
5. Keypad for operating phone functions that are shown in the driver display and voice recognition.
6. Driver display.

Related information

- Managing phone calls (p. 519)
- Managing the phone book (p. 521)
- Managing text messages (p. 520)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 515)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth automatically (p. 517)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth manually (p. 518)
- Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone (p. 518)
- Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones (p. 518)
- Removing devices connected to Bluetooth (p. 519)
- Wireless phone charger* (p. 523)
- Settings for phone (p. 522)
- Voice recognition (p. 132)
- Managing the app menu in the driver display (p. 95)
- Audio settings (p. 488)
- Connect the car to the Internet via a Bluetooth-enabled phone (p. 530)

Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time

Connect a phone with Bluetooth activated to then be able to make calls from the car, send/receive messages, play back media wirelessly and connect the car to the Internet.

It is possible to have two Bluetooth devices connected at once, in which case one of them can only play back wirelessly. The most recently connected phone will automatically be connected to make calls, send/receive messages, play back media and provide an Internet connection. It is possible to change what the phone is to be used for under **Bluetooth Devices** via the settings menu in the centre display's top view. Your mobile phone needs to be equipped with Bluetooth and support tethering.

After the device has been connected/registered a first time via Bluetooth, it no longer needs to be visible/discoverable, but only have Bluetooth activated. A maximum of 20 connected Bluetooth devices can be stored in the car.

There are two options for connecting. Either search the phone from the car or search the car from the phone.

Option 1 - search phone from car

1. Make the phone searchable/visible via Bluetooth.

2. Open the phone tile in the centre display.
   - If there is no phone connected to the car, tap on **Add phone**.
   - If there is a phone connected to the car, tap on **Change** . In the pop-up window, tap on **Add phone**.

   > Available Bluetooth devices are listed. The list is updated as new devices are detected.
3. Tap on the name of the phone to be connected.
4. Check that the specified number code in the car matches that in the phone. In which case, choose to accept in both places.
5. On the phone, choose to accept or reject any options for phone contacts and messages.

NOTE

- The message function must be activated in certain phones.
- Not all mobile phones are fully compatible and may therefore not show contacts and messages in the car.

Option 2 - search car from phone

1. Open the phone tile in the centre display.
   - If there is no phone connected to the car, tap on **Add phone** ➔ **Make car discoverable**.
   - If there is a phone connected to the car, tap on **Change** . In the pop-up window, tap on **Add phone** ➔ **Make car discoverable**.
2. Activate Bluetooth on the phone.
3. Search on the phone for Bluetooth devices.

   > Available Bluetooth devices are listed.
4. Select the name of the car on the phone.
5. A pop-up window for the connection is shown in the car. Confirm the connection.
6. Check that the specified number code in the car matches the one shown in the external device. In which case, choose to accept in both places.
7. On the phone, choose to accept or reject any options for phone contacts and messages.

NOTE

- The message function must be activated in certain phones.
- Not all mobile phones are fully compatible and may therefore not show contacts and messages in the car.

NOTE

If the phone's operating system is updated then the connection may be broken. In which case, delete the phone from the car and then connect again.

Related information

- Phone (p. 514)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth automatically (p. 517)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth manually (p. 518)
- Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone (p. 518)
- Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones (p. 518)
- Removing devices connected to Bluetooth (p. 519)
- Settings for Bluetooth devices (p. 522)

- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Connect the car to the Internet via a Bluetooth-enabled phone (p. 530)

Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth automatically

It is possible to connect a phone to the car automatically via Bluetooth. The phone has to have been connected to the car for the first time.

It is only the two last connected phones that can be connected automatically.

1. Activate Bluetooth in the phone before setting the car in ignition position **I**.
2. Set the car in ignition position **I** or higher.
   > The phone will connect.

Related information

- Phone (p. 514)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 515)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth manually (p. 518)
- Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone (p. 518)
- Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones (p. 518)
- Removing devices connected to Bluetooth (p. 519)
- Settings for Bluetooth devices (p. 522)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Connect the car to the Internet via a Bluetooth-enabled phone (p. 530)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)

Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth manually

It is possible to connect a phone to the car manually via Bluetooth. The phone has to have been connected to the car for the first time.

1. Activate Bluetooth on the phone.
2. Open the subview for phone.
   > Connected phones are listed.
3. Tap on the name of the phone to be connected.
   > The phone will connect.

Related information

- Phone (p. 514)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 515)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth automatically (p. 517)
- Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone (p. 518)
- Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones (p. 518)
- Removing devices connected to Bluetooth (p. 519)
- Settings for Bluetooth devices (p. 522)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Connect the car to the Internet via a Bluetooth-enabled phone (p. 530)

Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone

It is possible to disconnect a phone connected to Bluetooth, and it will then no longer be connected to the car.

- When the phone is out of range of the car it is automatically disconnected. If disconnection occurs during an active call, then the call will be continued on the phone.
- It is also possible to disconnect the phone by manually deactivating Bluetooth.

Related information

- Phone (p. 514)
- Settings for phone (p. 522)
- Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones (p. 518)
- Removing devices connected to Bluetooth (p. 519)
- Settings for Bluetooth devices (p. 522)

Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones

It is possible to switch between a number of Bluetooth-connected phones.

1. Open the tile for the phone.
2. Tap on **Change** or drag down the top view and tap on **Settings** ➔ **Communication** ➔ **Bluetooth Devices** ➔ **Add device**.
   > Available Bluetooth devices are listed.
3. Tap on the phone to be connected.

Related information

- Phone (p. 514)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 515)
- Settings for Bluetooth devices (p. 522)
- Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone (p. 518)
- Removing devices connected to Bluetooth (p. 519)

* Option/accessory.

Removing devices connected to Bluetooth

It is possible to remove phones from the list of registered Bluetooth devices, for example.

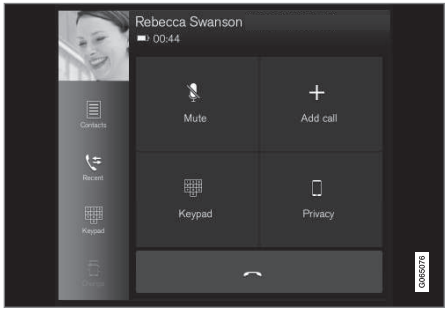
1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication ➔ Bluetooth Devices**.
   > Registered Bluetooth devices are listed.
3. Tap on the device to be removed.
4. Tap on **Remove device** and confirm your selection.
   > The device is no longer registered to the car.

Related information

- Phone (p. 514)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 515)
- Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone (p. 518)
- Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones (p. 518)
- Settings for Bluetooth devices (p. 522)

Managing phone calls

Call handling in the car for a Bluetooth-connected phone.



Generic illustration.

Making phone calls

1. Open the subview for phone.
2. Select call from call history, enter number using the keypad or via the contact list. It is possible to search or browse in the contact list. Tap on ☆ in the contact list in order to add a contact under **Favourites**.
3. Press to make a call.
4. Tap on to end the call.

You can also make calls from the call log via the app menu, which is accessed from the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

Making multi-party calls

During a call:

1. Press **Add call**.
2. Choose to make a call from the call log, favourites or the contact list.
3. Tap on an entry/row in the call log, or tap on alongside the contact in the contact list.
4. Tap on **Swap call** to switch between the parties.
5. Tap on to end the active call.

Conference calls

During an active multi-party call:

1. Tap on **Join calls** to merge the active multi-party call.
2. Tap on to end the call.

Incoming phone calls

Incoming phone calls are shown in the driver display and the centre display. Manage the call on the right-hand steering wheel keypad or in the centre display.

1. Tap on **Answer/Reject**.
2. Tap on to end the call.

Incoming phone call during an active call

1. Tap on **Answer/Reject**.
2. Tap on to end the call.

Private call

– During the current call, press **Privacy** and select setting:

- **Switch to mobile phone** - the handsfree function is disconnected and the call continues on your mobile phone.
- **Driver focused** - the microphone in the roof on the passenger side is switched off and the call continues with the car's handsfree function.

Related information

- Phone (p. 514)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 515)
- Controlling a telephone with voice recognition (p. 135)
- Managing the app menu in the driver display (p. 95)
- Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display (p. 119)
- Managing the phone book (p. 521)
- Managing text messages (p. 520)
- Audio settings (p. 488)

Managing text messages[19]

Message handling in the car for a Bluetooth-connected phone.
In some phones, the message function must be activated. Not all phones are compatible. In such cases, they cannot display contacts and messages in the car.

Managing text messages in the centre display

Text messages are only shown in the centre display if the setting is selected.

Press **Messages** in the app view to manage text messages in the centre display.

Reading text messages in the centre display

Press the icon to get the message read aloud.

Sending text messages in the centre display[20]

1. You can reply to a message or create a new message.
   - Reply to message — tap on the contact whose message you wish to reply to, then tap on **Answer**.
   - Create new message - tap on **Create new**. Select a contact or enter a number.
2. Compose the message.
3. Press **Send**.

Managing text messages in the driver display

Text messages are only shown in the driver display if the setting is selected.

Reading a new text message in the driver display

– To have the message read aloud – select **Read out** with the steering wheel keypad.

Dictating a reply in the driver display

After the text message has been read out, it is possible to reply briefly with dictation if the car is connected to the Internet.

– Press **Answer** with the steering wheel keypad. A dictation dialogue starts.

19 Valid in certain markets only. Contact a Volvo dealer for more information.
20 Only certain phones can send messages via the car. The connected phone must support the Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP).

Message notification

It is possible to activate and deactivate notifications in the text message settings.

Related information

- Phone (p. 514)
- Settings for text messages (p. 521)
- Settings for phone (p. 522)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Controlling a telephone with voice recognition (p. 135)
- Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display (p. 119)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 515)
- User terms and conditions and data sharing (p. 535)

Settings for text messages

Settings for text messages on connected phone.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication** ➔ **Text Messages** and select settings:
   - **Notification in centre display** - shows message notifications in the centre display's status bar.
   - **Notification in driver display** - displays notifications in the driver's display and incoming messages can be managed using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.
   - **Text message tone** - select tone for incoming text messages.

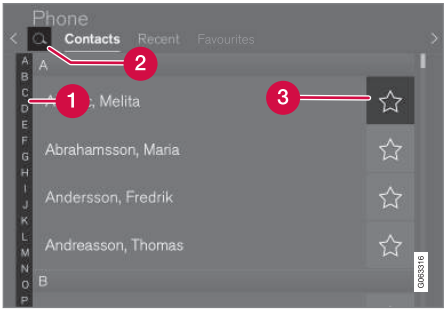
Related information

- Phone (p. 514)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 515)
- Managing text messages (p. 520)
- Settings for phone (p. 522)

Managing the phone book

When a phone is connected to the car with Bluetooth, contacts can be managed directly in the centre display.

Up to 3000 contacts can be shown from the phone selected in the centre display.



1. Browse between the letters and # to find a matching contact. Depending on existing contacts in the phone book, only matching letters are shown.
2. **Search contacts** - tap on to search for a phone number of name in the contact list.
3. **Favourites** - tap on ☆ to add/remove a contact to/from the favourites list.

Sorting

The contact list is sorted in alphabetical order where special characters and numbers are sorted under # . It is possible to sort by first name or surname, and this setting is adjusted in the telephone setup.

Related information

- Phone (p. 514)
- Settings for phone (p. 522)
- Controlling a telephone with voice recognition (p. 135)
- Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display (p. 119)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 515)

Settings for phone

When the telephone is connected to the car, the following settings can be made:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication** ➔ **Phone** and select settings:
   - **Ringtones** - select ringtone. It is possible to use a ringtone from the phone or the car. Some phones are not fully compatible and their ringtones may therefore not be available for use in the car.
   - **Sort Order** - select sort order of contact list.

Related information

- Phone (p. 514)
- Settings for text messages (p. 521)
- Settings for Bluetooth devices (p. 522)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 515)
- Audio settings (p. 488)

Settings for Bluetooth devices

Settings for Bluetooth-connected devices.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication** ➔ **Bluetooth Devices** and select settings:

- **Add device** - starts the pairing of a new device.
- **Previously paired devices** - lists registered/paired devices.
- **Remove device** - removes the connected device.
- **Allowed services for this device** - sets device usage options: calling, sending/receiving messages, streaming media and as Internet connection.
- **Internet connection** - connects the car to the Internet via the device's Bluetooth connection.

Related information

- Phone (p. 514)
- Settings for phone (p. 522)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 515)

* Option/accessory.

Wireless phone charger*

There is a charging plate for wireless phone charging located in the tunnel console.

A condition for being able to charge the phone is that it supports wireless charging (Qi). Phones not equipped with wireless charging receivers can often be supplemented with a shell that makes wireless charging possible.

WARNING

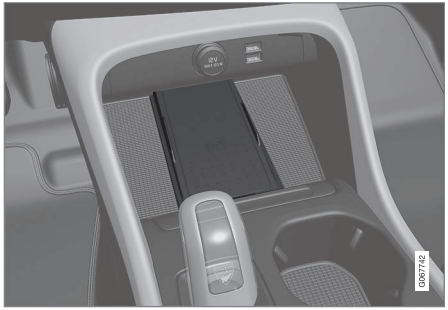
Wireless charging may affect the operation of an implanted pacemaker or other medical devices. If you have one, it is recommended to consult with your doctor before using the wireless charging system.

Related information

- Phone (p. 514)
- Using the wireless telephone charger* (p. 523)
- Certificate for wireless charger (p. 525)

Using the wireless telephone charger*

The rubber plate under the centre display makes it possible to charge phones without the need to use the phone's cable.



Wireless phone charger in front of gear lever

WARNING

Wireless charging may affect the operation of an implanted pacemaker or other medical devices. If you have one, it is recommended to consult with your doctor before using the wireless charging system.

You can switch the charging plate on and off via the function view in the centre display. The default mode is that the charging plate is not activated. When the charging plate is switched on, a message is shown about the risks to users with an implanted pacemaker or other devices that could be affected by the charging plate. Confirm that the charging plate should be switched on in the centre display.

To use the wireless charging plate:

1. Check that the charging plate is switched on in the function view of the centre display.
2. Remove all other objects from the charging plate and position the phone in the centre of the charging plate.
   > Phone charging is started and the symbol is shown at the top in the centre display.

IMPORTANT

Avoid storing cards with Near Field Communication (NFC), such as debit cards for contactless payment, together with the phone. This type of card can be destroyed when charging is in progress.

NOTE

Some phones may become hot during wireless charging. This is normal.

If the phone does not charge:

- Check that the charging plate is switched on in the function view of the centre display.
- Check that the charging plate is free from other objects.
- Check that the phone supports wireless charging (Qi).
- Remove the case from the phone if one is fitted.
- Lift the phone and position it in the centre of the charging plate once again.
- Check that the car is running.

If the phone is positioned incorrectly, or if objects prevent charging on the charging plate, a message is shown in the centre display.

IMPORTANT

Keep the phone and charging plate free of other objects while charging to avoid overheating.

Related information

- Phone (p. 514)
- Wireless phone charger* (p. 523)
- Certificate for wireless charger (p. 525)
- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 114)

* Option/accessory.

Certificate for wireless charger

Country/ Area	
Mexico:	RCPVAPVO 18-1919
Paraguay:	 2018-11-1-000541
Taiwan:	根據 NCC 低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 規定: 第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。 第十四條 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。 前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。 低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Country/ Area	
Ukraine:	Ци Діапазон частот: 107 кГц - 115 кГц Максимальна потужність радіосигналу: 5 Вт (сполучена), 63 Вт наномасштабів (випромінюється) Коефіцієнт викидів: N / A Модуляції: 2 кГц NFC Діапазон частот: 13,56 МГц, у межах +/- 0,01% Максимальна вихідна потужність РФ: 10 мВт – виробник: Ел-Джі Електронікс Інк.(LG Electronics Inc) 10, Магок'юнганг 10-ро, Гангсео-гу, Сеул, 07796, Корея Frequency range 111 кГц / Максимальна потужність РЧ: 42 дБмк А / м справжнім Ел-Джі Електронікс Інкзаявляє, що тип радіообладнання WC510MVV20 відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою:https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc. імпортер : Віннер Імпортс Україна Вул. Дачна, 5-А, с.Капітанівка, Київська область, 08112, Україна Тел.: +38(044) 585 63 00 Контактна особа : Alla Haidai (ahaidai@winner.ua)

Country/ Area	
USA/ Canada	FCC ID : BEJWC510MVV20 IC : 2703H-WC510MVV20 This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-Gen,RSS-216 rules of Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. Any changed or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment. FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 15cm between the radiator and your body. – IDéclaration d'avertissement ISED Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) Cet appareil ne doit pas provoquerd'interferences nuisibles, et (2) Cet appareil doit accepter toute interference recue, y compris les interferences pouvant entrainerun fonctionnement indesirable. Les changements ou modifications non expressement approuves par LG Vehicle Components Company pourraient annuler l'autorite de l'utilisateura utilizer l'equipement. Déclaration d'exposition aux radiations RF de l'ISED: Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements RF de l'ISED définies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet appareil et son antenne ne doivent pas être situés ou fonctionner conjointement avec une autre antenne ou un autre émetteur.

Country/ Area	
	Cet équipement doit être installé pour fonctionner avec une distance minimale de 10cm entre le radiateuret le corps de l'utilisateur final.

Related information

- Wireless phone charger* (p. 523)
- Using the wireless telephone charger* (p. 523)
- License agreement for audio and media (p. 538)

* Option/accessory.

Internet-connected car*

When the car is connected to the Internet, it is possible – for example – to use web radio and music services via apps, download software and contact your retailer from the car. The car is connected via Bluetooth, Wi-Fi or with the car's built-in modem* (SIM card).

When the car is connected to the Internet, it is possible to share the car's Internet connection (Wi-Fi hotspot) so that other devices such as tablets can access the Internet[21].

The Internet status is indicated by a symbol in the centre display's status bar.

NOTE

Data is transferred when using the internet (data traffic), which can have a cost.

Activation of data roaming can result in further charges.

Contact your network operator about the cost for data traffic.

NOTE

When using Apple CarPlay, it is only possible to connect the car to the Internet using Wi-Fi or the car modem*.

NOTE

When using Android Auto, it is possible to connect the car to the Internet using Wi-Fi, Bluetooth or the car modem*.

Before connecting the car to the Internet, search support information on terms and conditions for services and privacy policy for customers at volvocars.com.

Related information

- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 114)
- Connect the car to the Internet via a Bluetooth-enabled phone (p. 530)
- Connect the car to the Internet via a phone (Wi-Fi) (p. 530)
- Connect the car to the Internet via car modem (SIM card) (p. 531)
- Apps (p. 489)
- No or poor Internet connection (p. 533)
- Sharing Internet access from the car via a Wi-Fi hotspot (p. 532)
- Remove Wi-Fi network (p. 534)
- Wi-Fi technologies and security (p. 534)
- Volvo ID (p. 26)
- User terms and conditions and data sharing (p. 535)

21 This does not apply in the case of connection with Wi-Fi.

Connect the car to the Internet via a Bluetooth-enabled phone

Create an Internet connection via Bluetooth by sharing your phone's Internet access and access several online services in the car.

1. To be able to connect the car to the Internet via a Bluetooth-connected phone, the phone has to have already been connected to the car via Bluetooth for a first time.
2. Make sure that your phone supports tethering and that this function is activated. On an iPhone, this function is known as "tethering". On Android phones, this function may have different names but is frequently known as "hotspot". For iPhones, the menu page "tethering" must also be open until the Internet connection has been established.
3. If the phone has been connected via Bluetooth previously, press **Settings** in the centre display top view.
4. Press **Communication** ➔ **Bluetooth Devices**.
5. Tick the box for **Bluetooth Internet connection** under the heading **Internet connection**.
6. If another connection source has been used, confirm the option to change connection.
   > Your car is now connected to the Internet via the Bluetooth-connected phone.

NOTE

The telephone and network provider must support tethering (Internet connection sharing), and the subscription must include data.

NOTE

When using Apple CarPlay, it is only possible to connect the car to the Internet using Wi-Fi or the car modem*.

Related information

- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Connect the car to the Internet via car modem (SIM card) (p. 531)
- Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time (p. 515)
- Connect the car to the Internet via a phone (Wi-Fi) (p. 530)
- Apple® CarPlay®* (p. 507)
- No or poor Internet connection (p. 533)
- Settings for Bluetooth devices (p. 522)

Connect the car to the Internet via a phone (Wi-Fi)

Create an Internet connection via Wi-Fi by tethering your phone and access online services in the car.

1. Make sure that your phone supports tethering and that this function is activated. On an iPhone, this function is known as "tethering". On Android phones, this function may have different names but is frequently known as "hotspot". For iPhones, the menu page "tethering" must also be open until the Internet connection has been established.
2. Press **Settings** in the top view.
3. Continue to **Communication** ➔ **Wi-Fi**.
4. Activate/deactivate by ticking/unticking the box for Wi-Fi.
5. If another connection source has been used, confirm the option to change connection.
6. Tap on the network name of the network to be connected.
7. Enter the network password.
   > The car connects to the network.

Note that certain phones switch off tethering after the contact with the car has been disconnected, e.g. when leaving the car and until the next time it is used. The tethering in the phone

* Option/accessory.

therefore needs to be reactivated the next time it is used.

When a phone is connected to the car, it is saved for future use. To show a list of saved networks or manually delete saved networks, go to **Settings ➔ Communication ➔ Wi-Fi ➔ Saved networks**.

NOTE

The telephone and network provider must support tethering (Internet connection sharing), and the subscription must include data.

Technical and safety requirements for Wi-Fi connection, are described in a separate section.

Related information

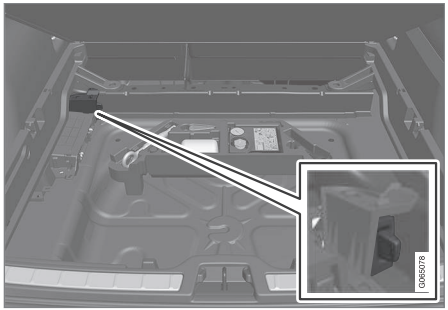
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Remove Wi-Fi network (p. 534)
- No or poor Internet connection (p. 533)
- Wi-Fi technologies and security (p. 534)

Connect the car to the Internet via car modem (SIM card)

It is possible to establish an Internet connection via the car modem and a personal SIM card (P-SIM)*.

Cars equipped with Volvo On Call will use the Internet connection with car modem for the services.

1.



Fit a personal SIM card into the holder under the cargo area floor.

Note that a **mini SIM** is required to fit the car's card reader.

2. Press **Settings** in the top view.
3. Press **Communication ➔ Car Modem Internet**.
4. Activate/deactivate by ticking/unticking the box for **Car modem Internet**.
5. If another connection source has been used, confirm the option to change connection.
6. Enter the SIM card's PIN code.
   > The car connects to the network.

NOTE

Note that the SIM card used for Internet connection via P-SIM cannot have the same telephone number as the SIM card that the phone uses. If this is disregarded, it will not be possible to route calls correctly to the telephone. Therefore, use a SIM card with a separate telephone number for the Internet connection, or a data card that does not handle telephone calls and is therefore unable to disrupt the function of the telephone.

Related information

- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Folding up the cargo area floor (p. 585)
- No or poor Internet connection (p. 533)
- Settings for car modem* (p. 532)

Settings for car modem*

The car is equipped with a modem that can be used to connect the car to the Internet. It is also possible to share the Internet connection via Wi-Fi.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication ➔ Car Modem Internet** and select settings:

- **Car modem Internet** - select whether to use the car modem as Internet connection.
- **Data usage** - tap on **Reset** resets the counters for received and sent data volume.
- **Network**.

  Select network operator - automatic or manual selection of network operator.

  Data roaming - if the box is ticked, the car modem will attempt to connect to the Internet when the car is abroad and outside its home network. Note that this may result in heavy costs. Check your roaming agreement for data traffic abroad with your network provider in your home country.
- **SIM card PIN**.

  Change PIN - a maximum of 4 digits can be entered.

  Disable PIN - select whether the PIN code shall be required for access to the SIM card.
- **Send request code** — used e.g. to top up or check the balance on a prepaid card. Functionality depends on the provider.

NOTE

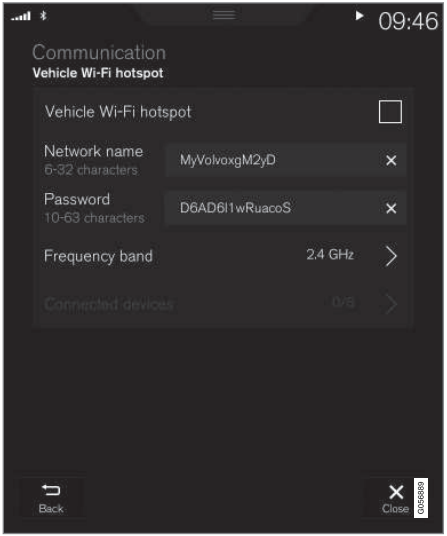
Note that the SIM card used for Internet connection via P-SIM cannot have the same telephone number as the SIM card that the phone uses. If this is disregarded, it will not be possible to route calls correctly to the telephone. Therefore, use a SIM card with a separate telephone number for the Internet connection, or a data card that does not handle telephone calls and is therefore unable to disrupt the function of the telephone.

Related information

- Connect the car to the Internet via car modem (SIM card) (p. 531)
- No or poor Internet connection (p. 533)

Sharing Internet access from the car via a Wi-Fi hotspot

When the car is online, its Internet connection can be shared to allow other devices to use it[22].



22 Does not apply when the car is online via Wi-Fi.

* Option/accessory.

The network operator (SIM card) must support tethering (sharing of the Internet connection).

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication ➔ Car Wi-Fi Hotspot**.
3. Tap on **Network name** and name the shared connection.
4. Tap on **Password** and select a password to be entered on connecting devices.
5. Tap on **Frequency band** and select the frequency on which the hotspot is to transmit data. Note that selection of frequency band is not available in all markets.
6. Activate/deactivate by ticking/unticking the box for **Car Wi-Fi Hotspot**.
7. If Wi-Fi has been used as a connection source, confirm the option to change connection.
   > It is now possible for external devices to connect to the car's tethering (Wi-Fi hotspot).

NOTE

Activation of Wi-Fi-hotspot can result in further charges from your network operator.

Contact your network operator about the cost for data traffic.

Connection status is indicated by the symbol in the centre display's status bar.

Press **Connected devices** to see a list of the currently connected devices.

Related information

- Symbols in the centre display's status bar (p. 114)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- No or poor Internet connection (p. 533)

No or poor Internet connection

Factors that affect the Internet connection.

The amount of data transferred is dependent on the services or apps in use in the car. For example, streaming audio can require large amounts of data which requires a good connection and good signal strength.

Phone to car

The speed of the Internet connection may vary depending on the location of the phone in the car. Move the phone closer to the centre display in order to increase the signal strength. Ensure that there is no source of interference in between.

Phone to network operator

The speed of the mobile network varies depending on the coverage in the present location. Poor network coverage may occur, for example in tunnels, in mountainous country, in deep valleys or indoors. The speed also depends on the agreement you have with your network.

NOTE

In the event of problems with data traffic, contact your network operator.

Restarting the phone

If there are problems with the Internet connection then it may help to restart the phone.

Related information
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Wi-Fi technologies and security (p. 534)

Remove Wi-Fi network

Removing a network that is not to be used.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Continue to **Communication** ➔ **Wi-Fi** ➔ **Saved networks**.
3. Tap on **Forget** alongside the network to be removed.
4. Confirm the selection.
   > The car will no longer connect to the network in future.

Remove all networks

All networks can be removed simultaneously by restoring factory settings. Please note that all user data and system settings are reset to original factory settings.

Related information
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- No or poor Internet connection (p. 533)
- Resetting settings in the centre display (p. 124)
- Connect the car to the Internet via a phone (Wi-Fi) (p. 530)

Wi-Fi technologies and security

Possible network types to connect to.

It is only possible to connect to the following types of network:

- Frequency — 2.4 or 5 GHz[23].
- Standards — 802.11 a/b/g/n.
- Security type — WPA2-AES-CCMP.

The car's Wi-Fi system is designed to handle Wi-Fi devices inside the car.

If several devices operate on the frequency at the same time then it may result in reduced performance.

Related information
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)

23 Selection of frequency is not available on all markets.

* Option/accessory.

User terms and conditions and data sharing

The first time certain services and apps are started, a pop-up window with the headings **Terms and conditions** and **Data sharing** may be shown.
The purpose is to inform about Volvo's user terms and conditions and policy for data sharing. By accepting data sharing, the user accepts that certain information is sent from the car. This is required so that certain services and apps can have full functionality.

The data sharing function for online services and apps is deactivated as default[24]. Data sharing needs to be activated so that certain online services and apps in the car can be used. Data sharing can be set from the centre display's settings menu or in connection with the services or apps being started in the centre display.

Privacy and data sharing

With the software update made available November 2017, privacy and data sharing settings were introduced for online services and downloaded apps. The settings can be found under **Privacy and data** in the settings menu in the car's centre display.

There you can select the online services which are allowed to share data. Data sharing for downloaded apps can also be deactivated there. Note that services and apps cannot be used as intended if data sharing is deactivated.

After a factory reset or e.g. a workshop visit or software update, the data sharing settings may have been reset to their default settings. In which case, reactivate data sharing for online services and for downloaded apps.

NOTE

Privacy and data sharing settings are unique for every driver profile.

Related information

- Activating and deactivating data sharing (p. 535)

Activating and deactivating data sharing

Data sharing for services and apps required can be set in the centre display's settings menu.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **System** ➔ **Privacy and data**.
3. Select activation or deactivation of data sharing for individual services and all apps.

If data sharing has not been activated for an online service or downloaded apps, this can be done when they are started in the centre display. If this is the first time a service is started, or e.g. after a factory reset or certain software updates, Volvo's terms and conditions for online services need to be approved. Note that data sharing will then also be activated for other services or apps for which sharing has already been approved.

NOTE

After a visit to a Volvo workshop, you may need to reactivate data sharing so that the online services and apps shall work again.

Related information

- User terms and conditions and data sharing (p. 535)

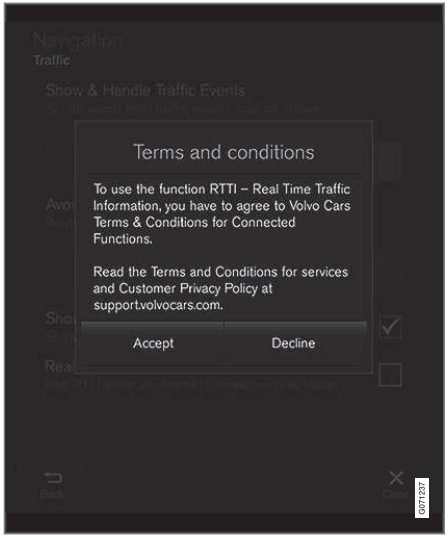
24 Does not apply to Volvo On Call*.

Data sharing for services

If you have not activated data sharing for an online service or for downloaded apps, you can do this in connection with starting them in your centre display. If this is the first time you are starting a service, or e.g. after a factory reset or certain software updates, you also need to approve Volvo's terms and conditions for online services.

Activate data sharing when you start a service

1. Select the function or service to be activated.
   > If this is the first time you are using the service and also after e.g. a factory reset or certain software updates, you first need to approve Volvo's terms and conditions for online services in order to continue.



2. Select to approve data sharing for the service or to cancel.

If you select to approve, data sharing is activated and you can start to use the service.

Activate data sharing when you start an app

To approve data sharing for an app that needs the function, start the app and tap on **Allow** in the pop-up window.

You can deactivate data sharing for services and apps in the settings menu under **System ➔ Privacy and data ➔ Data Sharing**.

Storage space on hard disk

It is possible to view how much free space there is on the car's hard disk.

Storage information for the car's hard disk, including total capacity, available capacity and how much space is used for installed apps can be shown. The information is available under **Settings ➔ System ➔ System Information ➔ Storage**.

Related information

- Apps (p. 489)

License agreement for audio and media

A license is an agreement for the right to operate a certain activity or the right to use someone else's entitlement according to the terms and conditions in the agreement. The following texts are Volvo's agreements with manufacturers/developers.

Dirac Unison®

Dirac Unison co-optimises the loudspeakers in frequency, time and space for the best possible bass integration and clarity. It enables a faithful reproduction of the acoustic characteristics of specific performance venues. Using advanced algorithms, Dirac Unison controls all loudspeakers digitally based on acoustic high-precision measurements. Like a conductor of an orchestra, it guarantees that the loudspeakers perform in perfect unison.

DivX®

DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logotypes are trademarks belonging to DivX, LLC and are used under licence.

This DivX Certified® device can play back DivX® Home Theater video files up to 576p (including .avi, .divx). Download free software on www.divx.com to create, play back and stream digital video.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play back purchased DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) films. Get the registration code by locating the DivX VOD section in the device's settings menu. Go to vod.divx.com for more information on how to complete the registration.

Patent numbers

Protected by one or more of the following US patents. 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 8,656,183; 8,731,369; RE45,052.

Gracenote®

Parts of the content are copyright © of Gracenote or its suppliers.

Gracenote,Gracenote logo and logotype, "Powered by Gracenote" and Gracenote MusicID are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote, Inc. in the USA and/or other countries.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement
This program or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California, USA ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote ("Gracenote software") activates this program to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track and title ("Gracenote data") from online servers or embedded databases (together called "Gracenote servers") and in order to perform other actions. You may only use Gracenote data in accordance with the intended end-user functions for this program or this device.

You agree to only use Gracenote data, Gracenote software and Gracenote servers for your own personal non-commercial use. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit this Gracenote software or any Gracenote data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED IN THIS AGREEMENT.

You agree that your non-exclusive right to use Gracenote data, Gracenote software and Gracenote servers will be terminated if you violate these restrictions. If your license is terminated you agree to cease all use of Gracenote data, Gracenote software and Gracenote servers. Gracenote holds exclusive rights to all Gracenote data, all Gracenote software and all Gracenote servers, including all ownership rights. Gracenote will under no circumstances have any obligation to pay you for any information you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce the company's rights under this agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track enquiries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to enable the Gracenote service to count enquiries without knowing anything about who you are. Additional information is available on the web page for Gracenote's privacy policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote software and everything included in Gracenote data are licensed to you "as is". Gracenote provides no undertakings or warranties, express or implied, as to the accuracy of the Gracenote data contained in the Gracenote servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote servers or to change data categories for any reason that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is provided that the Gracenote software or Gracenote servers are fault-free or that the Gracenote software or Gracenote servers will operate without interruption. Gracenote has no obligation to provide you with new, improved or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future, and the company reserves the right to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. GRACENOTE DOES NOT GUARANTEE THE RESULTS OBTAINED THROUGH YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR A GRACENOTE SERVER. GRACENOTE WILL IN NO EVENT BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGE OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR REVENUES.

© Gracenote, Inc. 2009

Sensus software

This software uses parts of sources from clib2 and Prex Embedded Real-time OS - Source (Copyright (c) 1982, 1986, 1991, 1993, 1994), and Quercus Robusta (Copyright (c) 1990, 1993), The Regents of the University of California. All or some portions are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are

permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. Neither the name of the <ORGANIZATION> nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

This software uses parts of sources from "libtess". The Original Code is: OpenGL Sample Implementation, Version 1.2.1, released January 26, 2000, developed by Silicon Graphics, Inc. The Original Code is Copyright (c) 1991-2000 Silicon Graphics, Inc. Copyright in any portions created by third parties is as indicated elsewhere herein. All Rights Reserved. Copyright (C) [1991-2000] Silicon Graphics, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions: The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/ shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software. THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL SILICON GRAPHICS, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE. Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

This software is based in parts on the work of the FreeType Team.

This software uses parts of SSLeay Library: Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). All rights reserved

Linux software

This product contains software licensed under GNU General Public License (GPL) or GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.

You have the right of acquisition, modification, and distribution of the source code of the GPL/LGPL software.

You may download Source Code from the following website at no charge: http://www.embedded-carmultimedia.jp/linux/oss/download/TVM_8351_013

The website provides the Source Code "As Is" and without warranty of any kind.

By downloading Source Code, you expressly assume all risk and liability associated with downloading and using the Source Code and complying with the user agreements that accompany each Source Code.

Please note that we cannot respond to any inquiries regarding the source code.

camellia:1.2.0

Copyright (c) 2006, 2007

NTT (Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation). All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer as the first lines of this file unmodified.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY NTT ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL NTT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Unicode: 5.1.0

COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

Copyright c 1991-2013 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html.

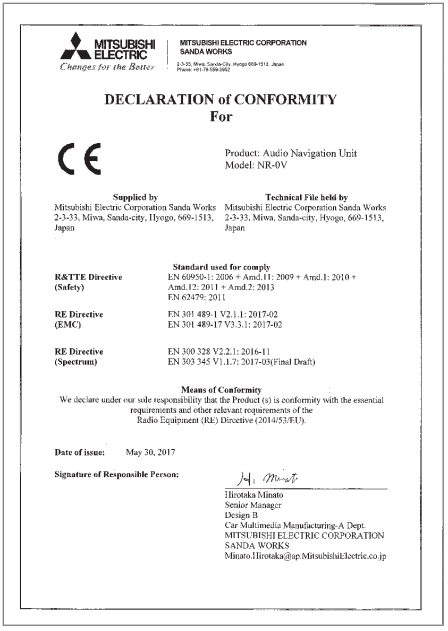
Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of the Unicode data files and any associated documentation (the "Data Files") or Unicode software and any associated documentation (the "Software") to deal in the Data Files or Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, and/or sell copies of the Data Files or Software, and to permit persons to whom the Data Files or Software are furnished to do so, provided that (a) the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear with all copies of the Data Files or Software, (b) both the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in associated documentation, and (c) there is clear notice in each modified Data File or in the Software as well as in the documentation associated with the Data File(s) or Software that the data or software has been modified.

THE DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE

COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR HOLDERS INCLUDED IN THIS NOTICE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, OR ANY SPECIAL INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in these Data Files or Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

Declaration of Conformity



MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC
Changes for the Better

MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION
SANDA WORKS
2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-City, Hyogo 669-1513 Japan
Phone: +81-79-596-3952

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY
For

CE

Product: Audio Navigation Unit
Model: NR-0V

Supplied by	Technical File held by
Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan	Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan

	Standard used for comply
R&TTE Directive (Safety)	EN 60950-1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2009 + Amd.1: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011 + Amd.2: 2013 EN 62479: 2011
RE Directive (EMC)	EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1: 2017-02 EN 301 489-17 V3.3.1: 2017-02
RE Directive (Spectrum)	EN 300 328 V2.2.1: 2016-11 EN 303 345 V1.1.7: 2017-03(Final Draft)

Means of Conformity
We declare under our sole responsibility that the Product (s) is conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the Radio Equipment (RE) Directive (2014/53/EU).

Date of issue: May 30, 2017

Signature of Responsible Person:

Hirotaka Minato
Senior Manager
Design B
Car Multimedia Manufacturing-A Dept.
MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION
SANDA WORKS
Minato.Hirotaka@ap.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp

Country/ Area	
Brazil:	 Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário isto e, náo tem direito a protecão contra interferéncia prejudicial, mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferéncia a sistemas operando em caráter primário. Para consultas, visite: www.anatel.gov.br
EU:	 Manufacturer: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city. Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan Mitsubishi Electric Corporation hereby declares that this type of radio equipment [Audio Navigation Unit] conforms with directive 2014/53/EU. For more information, search support information at www.volvocars.com.
The United Arab Emirates:	

Country/ Area	
Kazakh-stan:	 Model name: NR 0V Manufacturer: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Exporting country: Japan

Country/ Area	
China:	1. ■ 使用频率：2.4 - 2.4835 GHz ■ 等效全向辐射功率(EIRP)： 天线增益＜ 10dBi 时：≤100 mW 或≤20 dBm ① ■ 最大功率谱密度： 天线增益＜ 10dBi 时：≤20 dBm / MHz(EIRP) ① ■ 载频容限：20 ppm ■ 带外发射功率(在 2.4-2.4835GHz 频段以外) ≤-80 dBm / Hz (EIRP) ■ 杂散发射(辐射)功率(对应载波±2.5 倍信道带宽以外)： • ≤-36 dBm / 100 kHz (30 - 1000 MHz) • ≤-33 dBm / 100 kHz (2.4 - 2.4835 GHz) • ≤-40 dBm / 1 MHz (3.4 - 3.53 GHz) • ≤-40 dBm / 1 MHz (5.725 - 5.85 GHz) • ≤-30 dBm / 1 MHz (其它 1 - 12.75 GHz) 2.不得擅自更改发射频率、加大发射功率(包括额外加装射频功率放大器)，不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线； 3.使用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰；一旦发现有干扰现象时，应立即停止使用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用； 4.使用微功率无线电设备，必须忍受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰； 5.不得在飞机和机场附近使用。

Country/ Area	
Korea:	B 급 기기 (가정용 방송통신기자재) 이 기기는 가정용(B 급) 전자파적합기기로서 주로 가정에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 하며, 모든 지역에서 사용할 수 있습니다. 해당 무선설비는 전파혼신 가능성이 있으므로 인명안전과 관련된 서비스는 할 수 없습니다.
Malaysia:	 This device has been certified under the Communications & Multimedia Act of 1998, Communications and Multimedia (Technical Standards) Regulations 2000. To retrieve your device's serial number, please visit (volvocars.com/support) and search for "SIRIM Label Verification". Device category: Navigation equipment for vehicle (Bluetooth) Model: NR-0V Type Approval No.: RDBV/25A/1118/S(18-4228), RDBV/26A/1118/S(18-4229), RDBV/37A/0619/S(19-2241), RDBV/39A/0619/S(19-2240)

Country/ Area	
Mexico:	
Taiwan:	**低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法** 第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。 第十四條 **低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立停用，改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備**之干擾。

Related information

- Sound, media and Internet (p. 488)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Media player (p. 498)
- Gracenote® (p. 502)
- Sensus - online connectivity and entertainment (p. 32)
- Certificate for wireless charger (p. 525)

WHEELS AND TYRES

Tyres

The function of the tyres is to carry load, provide grip on the road surface, dampen vibration and protect the wheel from wear.
The tyres greatly affect the car's driving characteristics. The type of tyre, dimensions, tyre pressure and speed rating are important for how the car performs.

The car is fitted with tyres according to the tyre information sticker found on the driver's side door pillar (between the front door and the rear door).

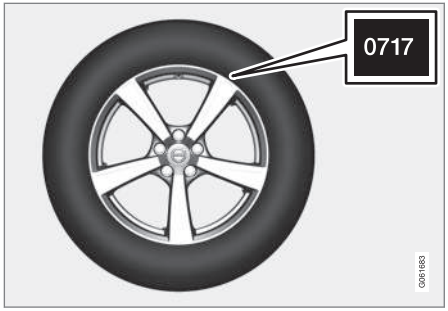
⚠ WARNING

A damaged tyre may lead to loss of control over the car.

Recommended tyres

On delivery, the car is equipped with Volvo original tyres that have the VOL[1] marking on the side of the tyres. These tyres are carefully adapted to the car. In the event of changing tyres, it is therefore important that the new tyres also have this marking in order for the car's driving characteristics, comfort and fuel consumption to be maintained.

New tyres



Tyres are perishable. After a few years they begin to harden at the same time as the friction capacity/characteristics gradually deteriorate. For this reason, aim to get as fresh tyres as possible when you replace them. This is especially important with regard to winter tyres. The last four digits in the sequence mean the week and year of manufacture. This is the tyre's DOT marking (Department of Transportation), and this is stated with four digits, for example 0717. The tyre is then manufactured in week 07, year 2017.

Tyre age

All tyres older than 6 years old should be checked by an expert even if they seem undamaged. Tyres age and decompose, even if they are hardly ever or never used. The function can therefore be affected. This applies to all tyres that are stored for future use. Examples of external signs which indicate that the tyre is unsuitable for use are cracks or discolouration.

Tyre economy

- Maintain the correct tyre pressure.
- Avoid fast starts, heavy braking and squealing tyres.
- Tyre wear increases with speed.
- Correct wheel alignment is very important.
- Unbalanced wheels worsen tyre economy and travelling comfort.
- The tyres must have the same direction of rotation during their entire service life.
- When you change tyres, the tyres with the best tread must be fitted on the rear wheels to reduce the risk of oversteer during heavy braking.
- If you drive over kerbstones or deep holes you can damage the tyres and/or wheel rims permanently.

Tyre rotation

The car has no mandatory tyre rotation. Driving style, tyre pressure, climate and road condition affect how quickly the tyres age and

[1] There may be deviations for certain tyre dimensions.

wear. Correct tyre pressure results in more even wear.

To avoid differences in tread depth and to prevent wear patterns forming on the tyres, the front and rear wheels should be switched with each other. A suitable distance for the first change is approx. 5000 km (approx. 3100 miles) and then at 10000 km (approx. 6200 miles) intervals.

Volvo recommends the an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted for checking if you are uncertain about tread depth. If significant differences in wear (> 1 mm difference in tread depth) between tyres have already occurred, then the least worn tyres must always be fitted on the rear. Understeer is normally easier to correct than oversteer, and leads to the car continuing forwards in a straight line rather than having the rear end skidding to one side, resulting in possible complete loss of control over the car. This is why it is important for the rear wheels never to lose grip before the front wheels.

Storing wheels and tyres

When you store complete wheels (tyres fitted on wheel rims) they should be hung up or positioned lying on their sides on the floor.

Tyres not fitted on rims must be stored lying on their sides or standing upright, but not hung up.

IMPORTANT

Tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and dark place, and should never be stored close to solvents, petrol, oils, etc.

WARNING

- Wheel rim size and tyre size for your Volvo are specified to meet stringent requirements for stability and driving characteristics. Unapproved combinations of wheel rim size and tyre size may have a negative effect on the car's stability and driving characteristics.
- Any damage caused by the fitting of unapproved combinations of wheel rim size and tyre size is not covered by the new car warranty. Volvo accepts no liability for death, personal injury or any costs caused by such installations.

Related information

- Checking tyre pressure (p. 554)
- Tyres' rotation direction (p. 553)
- Tread wear indicators on the tyres (p. 554)
- Tyre pressure monitoring system* (p. 557)
- Emergency puncture repair kit (p. 568)
- Dimension designation for tyre (p. 552)
- Approved wheel and tyre sizes (p. 665)
- Recommendations for loading (p. 582)

Dimension designation for tyre

Designations for tyre dimension, load index and speed rating.

The car has an approval for the complete vehicle with certain combinations of wheel rims and tyres.

Designation of dimensions

All tyres have a dimension designation, such as: 235/50 R19 99 V.

235	Tyre width (mm)
50	Ratio between tyre wall height and tyre width (%)
R	Radial ply
19	Rim diameter in inches
99	Codes for the maximum permitted tyre load, tyre load index (LI)
V	Speed rating for maximum permitted speed, speed rating (SS). (In this case 240 km/h (149 mph).)

Load index

Each tyre has a certain capacity to carry a load, a load index (LI). The car's weight determines the load capacity required of the tyres.

Speed rating

Each tyre can withstand a certain maximum speed. Tyre speed rating, SS (Speed Symbol), must at least correspond with the car's top speed. The table below shows the maximum permitted speed for each speed rating (SS). The only exception to these regulations is winter tyres[2], where a lower speed rating may be used. If such a tyre is selected, the car must not be driven more quickly than the tyre is rated for. For example, cars with Q rating tyres must be driven at speeds not exceeding 160 km/h (100 mph). The road conditions and applicable road traffic rules determine how quickly the car can be driven, not the speed rating of the tyres.

NOTE

The maximum permitted speed is specified in the table.

Q	160 km/h (100 mph) (used only on winter tyres)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	300 km/h (186 mph)

WARNING

The lowest permitted tyre load index (LI) and speed rating (SS) for the tyres for each respective engine variant are shown in the specifications, which can be found in the printed owner's manual. If a tyre with too low a load index or speed rating is used, it may overheat and be damaged.

Related information

- Tyres (p. 550)
- Dimension designation for wheel rim (p. 553)
- Approved wheel and tyre sizes (p. 665)
- Minimum permitted tyre load index and speed rating for tyres (p. 666)

[2] Both those with metal studs and those without.

Dimension designation for wheel rim

Wheel and rim dimensions are designated in accordance with the examples in the table below.

The car has an approval for the complete vehicle with certain combinations of wheel rims and tyres.

All wheel rims have a dimension designation, for example: 7.5Jx18x50.5.

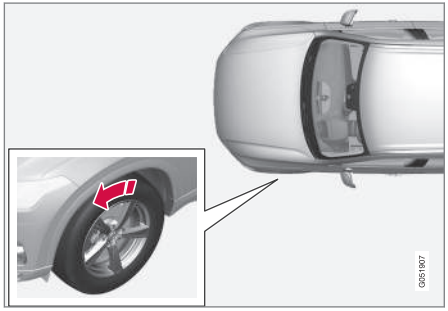
7.5	Rim width in inches
J	Rim flange profile
18	Rim diameter in inches
50.5	Off-set in mm (distance from wheel centre to wheel contact surface against the hub)

Related information

- Tyres (p. 550)
- Dimension designation for tyre (p. 552)
- Approved wheel and tyre sizes (p. 665)

Tyres' rotation direction

Tyres with a tread pattern which are designed to only turn in one direction have the direction of rotation marked with an arrow.



The arrow shows the tyre's direction of rotation.

- The tyre must always rotate in the same direction throughout its lifespan.
- Tyres should only be switched between front and rear positions, never between left and right-hand sides, or vice versa.
- If the tyres are fitted incorrectly, the car's braking characteristics and capacity to force rain and slush out of the way are adversely affected.
- Tyres with the greatest tread depth should always be fitted to the rear of the car (to decrease the risk of skidding).

NOTE

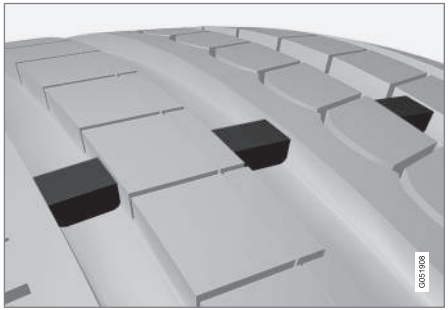
Make sure that both pairs of wheels have the same type and dimension, and also the same make.

Related information

- Tyres (p. 550)

Tread wear indicators on the tyres

Tread wear indicators show the status of the tyre's tread depth.



A tread wear indicator is a narrow elevation across the longitudinal grooves of the tyre's tread pattern. On the side of the tyre are the letters TWI (Tread Wear Indicator). When the tyre's tread depth is down to 1.6 mm (1/16 inch), the tread will be level in height with the tread wear indicators. Change to new tyres as soon as possible. Remember that tyres with little tread depth provide very poor grip in rain and snow.

Related information

- Tyres (p. 550)

Checking tyre pressure

Correct tyre pressure helps to improve driving stability, save fuel and extend the service life of the tyres.

Tyre pressure decreases over time, this is a natural phenomenon. Tyre pressure also varies depending on ambient temperature. Driving on tyres with tyre pressure that is too low could result in the tyres overheating and being damaged. Tyre pressure affects travelling comfort, road noise and driving characteristics.

Check the tyre pressures monthly. Use the recommended tyre pressure for cold tyres in order to maintain good tyre performance. Tyre pressure that is too low or too high may cause uneven wear on the tyres.

WARNING

- Tyre pressure that is too low is the most common cause of tyre failure and may result in serious cracks in the tyre, the tread loosening or the tyre exploding, with unexpected loss of control of the car and increased risk of personal injury.
- Tyres with pressure that is too low reduce the load capacity of the car.

Cold tyres

The tyre pressure must be checked when the tyres are cold. Tyres are considered cold when they have the same temperature as the surrounding air. This temperature is normally reached when the car has been parked for at least three hours.

After having driven approximately 1.6 km (1 mile) these tyres are considered as warm. If you have to drive further than this to inflate the tyres, first check and record the tyre pressure and inflate to a suitable tyre pressure when you arrive at the pump.

When the outside temperature changes, the tyre pressure also changes. A decrease in temperature of 10 degrees causes the tyre pressure to decrease 1 psi (7 kPa). Check the tyre pressure regularly and adjust to the correct pressure, which is specified on the car's tyre information decal or certification label.

If you check the tyre pressure when the tyres are warm then you must never release any air. The tyres are warm due to driving and it is normal for the pressure to increase above the recommended pressure for cold tyres. A warm tyre with tyre pressure equal to or below the recommendation for cold tyres may have a pressure that is far too low.

Related information

- Adjusting tyre pressure (p. 555)
- Recommended tyre pressure (p. 556)
- Tyre pressure monitoring system* (p. 557)
- Tyres (p. 550)

Adjusting tyre pressure

Tyre pressure decreases over time, this is a natural phenomenon. The tyre pressure must therefore sometimes be adjusted in order to maintain the recommended tyre pressure.
Use the recommended tyre pressure for cold tyres in order to maintain good tyre performance and even tread wear.

NOTE

To avoid incorrect tyre pressure, the pressure should be checked on cold tyres. "Cold tyres" means the tyres are the same temperature as the ambient temperature (approx. 3 hours after the car has been driven). After a few kilometres of driving, the tyres warm up and the pressure increases.

1. Remove the cap from the valve on one tyre and then press the tyre pressure gauge firmly down onto the valve.
2. Inflate the tyres to the correct pressure, see the decal on the door pillar on the driver's side showing the recommended pressure for factory fitted tyres.
3. Refit the dust cap.

NOTE

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

4. Check the tyres visually for any implanted nails or other objects that could puncture the tyre and cause leakage.
5. Check the sidewalls for any cavities, cuts, bumps or other irregularities.
6. Repeat this for all tyres, including the spare tyre*.

NOTE

If you have over-inflated, release air by pressing in the metal pin in the centre of the valve. Then check the pressure again using the tyre pressure gauge.

Some spare tyres require a higher tyre pressure than other tyres. Check in the tyre pressure table or on the tyre pressure label.

Related information

- Recommended tyre pressure (p. 556)
- Checking tyre pressure (p. 554)
- Inflating tyres with the compressor from the puncture repair kit (p. 573)
- Approved tyre pressures (p. 667)

Recommended tyre pressure

The tyre pressure label on the driver's side door pillar (between frame and rear door) shows which pressures the tyres should have at different loads and speed conditions.

Tyre pressure label location

The decal displays the designation for the factory-fitted tyres on the car, as well as load limits and tyre pressure.

> **NOTE**
>
> It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and locations in the car. The information that applies to your particular car can be found on the decal on the car.

Improved fuel economy with ECO pressure

For a light load (max. 3 people) and a speed of up to 160 km/h (100 mph), the ECO pressures can be chosen for good fuel economy. However, the lower comfort pressures are recommended instead if improved noise and travelling comfort are desired.

Related information

- Checking tyre pressure (p. 554)
- Approved tyre pressures (p. 667)

Tyre pressure monitoring system*

The tyre pressure monitoring system[3] gives a warning with an indicator symbol in the driver display when the pressure in one or more of the car's tyres is too low.

This symbol illuminates to indicate low tyre pressure. Check the tyre pressure in the **Car Status** app in the centre display.

If there is a fault in the system the tyre pressure warning symbol flashes for approximately one minute and then remains illuminated.

System description

The tyre pressure monitoring system measures differences in rotation speed between the different wheels via the ABS system in order to be able to determine whether they have the correct tyre pressure. If the tyre pressure is too low, the tyre's diameter is changed and, as a result, so is its rotation speed. By comparing the tyres with each other the system can determine whether one or more tyres have pressure that is too low.

General information on the tyre monitoring system

In the information below, the tyre monitoring system is referred to generically as TPMS.

Each tyre, including the spare tyre*, should be checked once a month. When checking, the tyre should be cold and have the air pressure recommended by the car manufacturer specified on the tyre pressure label or in the tyre pressure table. If the car has tyres of a different size than that recommended by the manufacturer, find out what the correct air pressure level is for these.

As an extra safety feature, the car is equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS), which shows when the air pressure in one or more tyres is too low. When the indicator symbol for low air pressure is lit, stop and check the tyres as soon as possible and inflate to the correct air pressure.

Driving with tyres that have tyre pressure that is too low may cause the tyre to overheat, which can cause a tyre failure. Low tyre pressure also reduces fuel efficiency as well as tyre service life, and can affect car handling and stopping ability. Note that TPMS does not replace regular tyre maintenance. It is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if the limit for low tyre pressure has not been reached so that the indicator symbol illuminates.

The car is also equipped with a TPMS system fault indicator, which indicates when the system is not functioning correctly. The TPMS system fault indicator is combined with the indicator symbol for low tyre pressure. When the system detects a fault, the symbol in the driver display will flash for about one minute and then remain illuminated. This procedure will be repeated when the car is started until the fault has been rectified. When the symbol is illuminated, the system's ability to detect or warn of low tyre pressure may be affected.

A TPMS system fault can occur for several reasons, such as after changing to a spare tyre, or changing tyres or wheels that prevent TPMS from functioning correctly.

Always check the indicator symbol for TPMS after changing one or more tyres in order to ensure the new tyre or wheel is working correctly with TPMS.

To bear in mind

- Always save a new tyre pressure in the system after changing a wheel or adjusting tyre pressure.
- If you change to tyres of a different size to the ones fitted at the factory, the system must be reset by storing a new tyre pressure for these tyres to avoid false warnings.
- If a spare wheel* is used, it is possible that the tyre pressure monitoring system does

[3] Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

not work correctly due to the differences between the wheels.

- The system does not replace the need for regular tyre inspection and maintenance.
- It is not possible to switch off the tyre pressure monitoring system.

WARNING

- Incorrect tyre pressure may lead to tyre failure, which could result in the driver losing control of the car.
- The system cannot indicate sudden tyre damage in advance.

Related information

- Recommended tyre pressure (p. 556)
- See tyre pressure status in the centre display* (p. 559)
- Action in the event of warning for low tyre pressure (p. 560)
- Saving a new reference value for tyre pressure monitoring* (p. 558)
- Messages for tyre pressure monitoring* (p. 561)

Saving a new reference value for tyre pressure monitoring*

In order for the system for tyre pressure monitoring[4] to work correctly, a reference value for the tyre pressure must be saved. This must take place every time the tyres are changed or the tyre pressure is changed so that the system can warn about low pressure correctly.

For example, when driving with a heavy load or at high speed above 160 km/h (100 mph), the tyre pressure should be adjusted in accordance with Volvo's recommended tyre pressure values. The system is then reset by saving a new tyre pressure.

Perform the following procedure to store a new tyre pressure as a reference value in the system:

1. Switch off the car.
2. Inflate the tyres to the correct pressure, see the decal on the door pillar on the driver's side showing the recommended pressure for factory fitted tyres.
3. Start the car.
4. Open the **Car Status** app in the app view.
5. Press **TPMS**.

NOTE

The car must be stationary for the **Store Pressure** button to be selectable.

6. Press **Store Pressure**.
7. Tap on **OK** to confirm that the tyre pressure in all four tyres has been checked and adjusted.
8. Drive the car until the new tyre pressure has been saved. The new tyre pressure is stored when the car is driven at a speed above 35 km/h (22 mph).
   > When sufficient data has been collected for the system to be able to detect low tyre pressure, the animation showing storage progress disappears from the centre display. The system does not provide additional confirmation that a new tyre pressure has been saved.

If storing fails, a message is shown: **Storing pressure unsuccessful. Try again.**

4 Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

⚠ WARNING

The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, which is invisible and odourless, but highly toxic. The procedure to save a new tyre pressure must therefore always be performed outdoors or in a workshop with exhaust extraction.

Related information

- Recommended tyre pressure (p. 556)
- Adjusting tyre pressure (p. 555)
- See tyre pressure status in the centre display* (p. 559)
- Action in the event of warning for low tyre pressure (p. 560)
- Tyre pressure monitoring system* (p. 557)

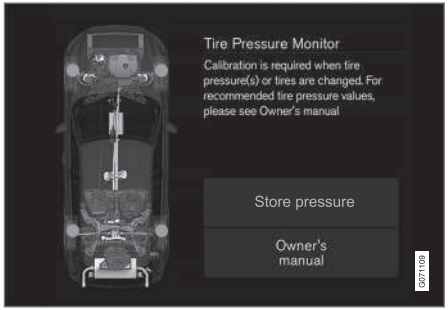
See tyre pressure status in the centre display*

With the system for tyre pressure monitoring[5], tyre pressure status can be viewed in the centre display.

Checking status

Several minutes driving above 35 km/h (22 mph) are required for the system to become active.

1. Open the **Car Status** app in the app view.
2. Tap on **TPMS** to show the status of the tyres.



The figure is schematic. Layout may vary depending on car model or updated software.

Related information

- Saving a new reference value for tyre pressure monitoring* (p. 558)
- Action in the event of warning for low tyre pressure (p. 560)
- Tyre pressure monitoring system* (p. 557)
- Car status (p. 592)
- Messages for tyre pressure monitoring* (p. 561)

[5] Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

Action in the event of warning for low tyre pressure

When the system for tyre pressure[6] warns that tyre pressure is too low, action is required.

Check and rectify the tyre pressure when the indicator symbol for the system is illuminated and the **Tyre pressure low** message is shown.

1. Switch off the car.
2. Check the tyre pressure in all four tyres with a tyre pressure gauge.
3. Inflate the tyres to the correct pressure, see the decal on the door pillar on the driver's side showing the recommended pressure for factory fitted tyres.
4. Always save a new tyre pressure in the system via the centre display after the tyre pressure has been adjusted.

   Note that the indicator symbol does not extinguish until the low tyre pressure has been rectified and storing a new tyre pressure has been started.

NOTE

To avoid incorrect tyre pressure, the pressure should be checked on cold tyres. "Cold tyres" means the tyres are the same temperature as the ambient temperature (approx. 3 hours after the car has been driven). After a few kilometres of driving, the tyres warm up and the pressure increases.

NOTE

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

WARNING

- Incorrect tyre pressure may lead to tyre failure, which could result in the driver losing control of the car.
- The system cannot indicate sudden tyre damage in advance.

Related information

- Recommended tyre pressure (p. 556)
- Adjusting tyre pressure (p. 555)
- Saving a new reference value for tyre pressure monitoring* (p. 558)
- See tyre pressure status in the centre display* (p. 559)
- Tyre pressure monitoring system* (p. 557)
- Inflating tyres with the compressor from the puncture repair kit (p. 573)

6 Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

* Option/accessory.

Messages for tyre pressure monitoring*

A number of messages for the tyre pressure monitoring system[7] can be shown. Here are some examples.

Driver display: **Tyre pressure low Check Car Status app in center display**	The indicator symbol switches on to indicate that there is low tyre pressure in one or more tyres. See the **Car Status** app in the centre display for more information.
Driver display: **Tyre pressure system Temporarily unavailable**	The indicator symbol flashes and changes to constant glow after approx. 1 minute. The system is currently unavailable, activated shortly.
Driver display: **Tyre pressure system Service required**	The indicator symbol flashes and changes to constant glow after approx. 1 minute. The system is not working correctly, contact a workshop[A].

[A] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Tyre pressure monitoring system* (p. 557)
- Saving a new reference value for tyre pressure monitoring* (p. 558)
- Action in the event of warning for low tyre pressure (p. 560)
- Car status (p. 592)
- Volvo Cars support site (p. 21)

Changing wheel

Wheel changes must always be performed correctly. Instructions on how a wheel is removed and mounted and what is important to remember are provided below. Check that the tyre dimension is approved for use on the car.

WARNING

- If a wheel must be changed in a trafficked environment, passengers must stand in a safe place.
- Use a jack designed for the car when changing tyres. Use supports to secure the car for all other work.
- Never crawl under the car or reach under with a part of your body when it is raised on a jack.
- Passengers must leave the car when it is raised on the jack.

[7] Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

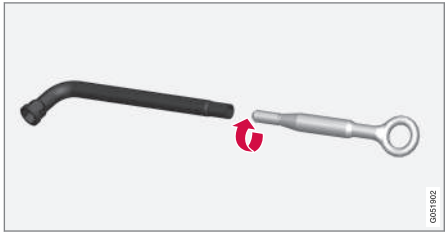
IMPORTANT

- When the jack* is not in use it must be stored in its storage space under the cargo area floor.
- The jack included with the car is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture. Only the jack belonging to the specific model is to be used to jack up the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

Removing a wheel

Read through all instructions before beginning. Take out the tools needed before jacking up the car.

1. Activate the hazard warning flashers and set out a warning triangle if a wheel shall be changed in a trafficked location.
2. Make sure that the parking brake is activated and engage gear position **P**.
3. Chock in front of and behind the wheels that remain on the ground. Use, for example, heavy wooden blocks or large stones.
4. Screw together the towing eye with the wheel wrench to the stop position.



5. Remove the plastic caps from the wheel bolts with the intended tool.
6. With the car still on the ground, use the wheel bolt wrench/towing eye to undo the wheel bolts ½-1 turn by pressing downwards (anticlockwise). Always start with the lockable wheel bolts*.
7. Follow the instructions for how to safely raise the car with the jack.
8. Raise the car high enough to allow the wheel to be removed to move freely. Remove the wheel bolts and lift off the wheel.

Mounting a wheel

1. Clean the surfaces between wheel and hub.
2. Put on the wheel. Tighten the wheel bolts thoroughly.

   Do **not** use lubricant on the threads of the wheel bolts.
3. Lower the car so that the wheels cannot rotate.
4. Tighten the wheel bolts crosswise. It is important that the wheel bolts are tightened properly. Tighten to 140 Nm (103 foot-pound). Check the tightening torque with a torque wrench.

5. Refit the plastic caps over the wheel bolts.
6. Check the tyre pressure and save the new tyre pressure in the system for tyre pressure monitoring*.

* Option/accessory.

WARNING

The wheel bolts may need to be re-tightened several days after the wheel change. Temperature differences and vibration may mean that they are not attached equally as tightly.

NOTE

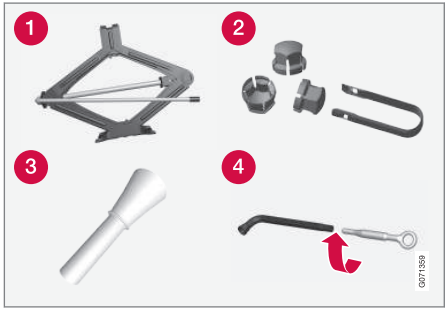
- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

Related information

- Warning triangle (p. 588)
- Raise the car (p. 595)
- Tool kit (p. 563)
- Saving a new reference value for tyre pressure monitoring* (p. 558)

Tool kit

Tools that can be useful during towing, wheel changes or similar are found in the car's cargo area.



All tools are located in the foam block under the cargo area floor.

1. Jack*
2. Tool for removing the plastic caps from the wheel bolts
3. Funnel for filling fluids
4. Wheel wrench* and towing eye

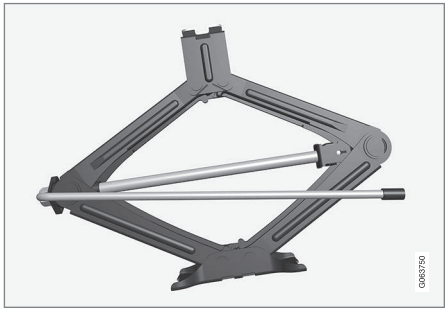
If the car is fitted with a spare wheel*, there is a jack and a wheel bolt wrench.

Related information

- Folding up the cargo area floor (p. 585)
- Changing wheel (p. 561)
- Jack* (p. 564)
- Emergency puncture repair kit (p. 568)
- Fitting and removing the towing eye (p. 479)

Jack*

The jack can be used to raise the car, for example, to change to a wheel.



IMPORTANT

- When the jack* is not in use it must be stored in its storage space under the cargo area floor.
- The jack included with the car is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture. Only the jack belonging to the specific model is to be used to jack up the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

The jack needs to be cranked together to the correct position in order to have space.

Related information

- Folding up the cargo area floor (p. 585)
- Tool kit (p. 563)
- Raise the car (p. 595)

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts are used to attach the wheels to the hubs.

Only use rims that are tested and approved by Volvo and which are Volvo genuine accessories.

Check the tightening torque of the wheel bolts with a torque wrench.

Do **not** use lubricant on the threads of the wheel bolts.

WARNING

The wheel bolts may need to be re-tightened several days after the wheel change. Temperature differences and vibration may mean that they are not attached equally as tightly.

IMPORTANT

The wheel bolts must be tightened to 140 Nm. (103 foot-pound). Overtightening or loose tightening may damage the nuts and the bolts.

Lockable wheel bolt kit*

To loosen or tighten the lockable wheel bolts – turn the wrench in the lock bolt until it fully engages in the code grooves. Always start with the lockable wheel bolts if the wheel shall

* Option/accessory.

be removed. When fitting the wheel, finish with the lock screw.

IMPORTANT

Remember not to use bending force when you loosen/tighten the wheel bolts. This could damage the code groove in the lock bolt and the wheel wrench and so make it impossible to fit/remove the wheel.

When the wheel wrench is not in use it must be stored in its place in the foam block under the cargo area floor. It is important to remember this if the car is due to visit a workshop in order to have the tool available. If you lose the wrench, contact your Volvo dealer.

Related information

- Changing wheel (p. 561)
- Tool kit (p. 563)

Spare wheel*

The spare wheel, the Temporary Spare type, can be used to temporarily replace a punctured normal wheel.

The spare wheel is only designed for temporary use. Replace it with a normal wheel as soon as possible.

The car's driving characteristics can be changed when the spare wheel is used and the ground clearance is reduced. Do not wash the car in an automatic car wash if the Temporary Spare is being used.

Recommended tyre pressure must be maintained regardless of the position of the temporary spare wheel on the car.

If the spare wheel is damaged, a new one can be purchased from a Volvo dealer.

WARNING

- Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) with a spare wheel fitted on the car.
- The car must never be driven fitted with more than one "Temporary Spare" wheel.
- The car may have different driving characteristics while driving with the spare wheel. The spare wheel must be replaced with a normal wheel as soon as possible.
- The spare wheel is smaller than the normal wheel, which affects the car's ground clearance. Look out for high kerbs and do not machine-wash the car.
- Follow the manufacturer's recommended tyre pressure for the spare wheel.
- On all-wheel drive cars, the drive on the rear axle can be disengaged.
- If the spare wheel is fitted to the front axle then it is not possible to use snow chains at the same time.
- The spare wheel must not be repaired.

IMPORTANT

The car must not be driven with tyres of different sizes or with a spare wheel other than the one supplied with the car. Using different-sized wheels can cause serious damage to the car's transmission.

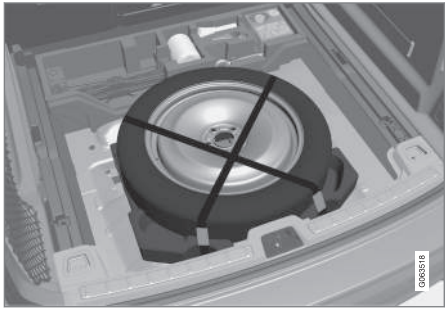
Related information

- Changing wheel (p. 561)
- Recommended tyre pressure (p. 556)

Handling the spare wheel*

Follow these instructions for handling the spare wheel.

Taking out the spare wheel



The illustration is generic and appearance may differ.

The spare wheel is located under the load floor and is attached by a strap. The foam block contains all the tools for changing a wheel.

1. Fold up the cargo area floor.
2. Undo the straps and lift out the spare wheel.

Storing the punctured tyre

1. Put the tools back in their right place in the foam block.
2. Then fold down the cargo area floor and place the punctured tyre in the cargo area.

Related information

- Spare wheel* (p. 565)
- Folding up the cargo area floor (p. 585)
- Tool kit (p. 563)
- Changing wheel (p. 561)

* Option/accessory.

Winter tyres

Winter tyres are adapted for winter road conditions.

Volvo recommends winter tyres with particular dimensions. Tyre dimensions are dependent on engine variant. When driving on winter tyres, the correct type of tyres must be fitted to all four wheels.

Tips for changing to winter tyres

When summer and winter wheels are changed, mark which side of the car they were mounted on, for example **L** for left and **R** for right.

Contact a Volvo dealer for advice on which rim and tyre type suit your car best.

Studded tyres

Studded winter tyres should be run in gently for 500-1000 km (300-600 miles), so the studs settle properly into the tyres. This gives the tyre, and especially the studs, a longer service life.

NOTE

Laws regarding the use of studded tyres may vary. Always follow local laws and regulations.

Tread depth

Road conditions with ice, slush and low temperatures place considerably higher demands on tyres than summer conditions. Volvo therefore recommends not to drive on winter tyres that have a tread depth of less than 4 mm (0.15 inches).

Related information

- Changing wheel (p. 561)
- Winter driving (p. 460)
- Tread wear indicators on the tyres (p. 554)
- Approved wheel and tyre sizes (p. 665)
- Volvo Cars support site (p. 21)

Snow chains

Use of snow chains and/or winter tyres can help to improve the traction in winter conditions.

Volvo recommends that snow chains are not used on wheel dimensions greater than 18 inches.

WARNING

Use Volvo genuine snow chains or equivalent chains designed for the car model, and tyre and rim dimensions. Only **single-sided** snow chains are permitted.

In the event of uncertainty about the show chain, Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted. The wrong snow chains may cause serious damage to the car and lead to an accident.

IMPORTANT

Snow chains can be used on the car with the following restrictions:

- Always follow the mounting instructions from the manufacturer carefully. Fit the chains as tensioned as possible and tension them at regular intervals.
- Snow chains must only be used on the front wheels (also applies to all-wheel drive cars).
- In some cases, snow chains must NOT be used, such as if accessory, aftermarket or "special" tyres and wheels are fitted that have a different size to the original tyres and wheels. Sufficient distance must be maintained between the chains and brakes, suspension and body components.
- Check local regulations with regard to using snow chains before fitting them.
- Never exceed the chain manufacturer's specified maximum speed. You must never exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) under any circumstances.
- Avoid bumps, holes or sharp turns when driving with snow chains.
- Avoid driving on bare ground as this wears out both the snow chains and tyres.
- Driving with snow chains may have a negative effect on the car's driving characteristics. Avoid fast or sharp turns, as well as braking with locked wheels.
- Some types of chain that are firmly tensioned affect brake components and must therefore NOT be used.

You can obtain more information on snow chains from a Volvo dealer.

Related information

- Winter driving (p. 460)

Emergency puncture repair kit

The emergency puncture repair kit[8], is used to seal a puncture as well as to check and adjust the air pressure in the tyre.

Cars equipped with spare tyre* do not have the puncture repair kit.

The puncture repair kit consists of a compressor and a bottle with sealing fluid. The sealing works as a temporary repair.

NOTE

The sealing fluid is effective at sealing tyres with tread punctures but has limited ability to seal tyres with sidewall punctures. Do not use the emergency puncture repair kit on tyres displaying larger slits, cracks or similar damage.

NOTE

The compressor is intended for temporary emergency puncture repair and is approved by Volvo.

Location

The puncture repair kit is located in the foam block under the cargo area floor.

* Option/accessory.

Sealing fluid expiry date

The bottle of sealing fluid must be replaced if the bottle's expiry date has passed (see the decal on the bottle). Treat the old bottle as environmentally hazardous waste.

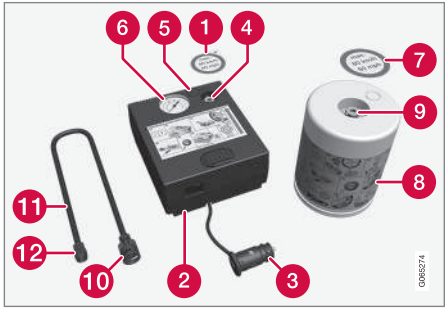
Related information

- Using a puncture repair kit (p. 569)
- Inflating tyres with the compressor from the puncture repair kit (p. 573)
- Tyres (p. 550)

Using a puncture repair kit

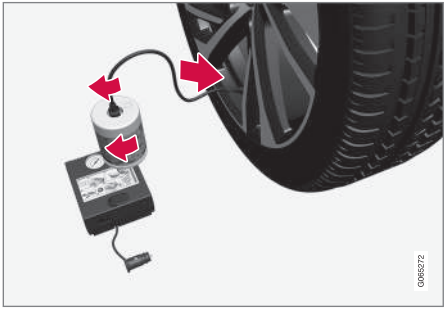
The emergency puncture repair kit (TMK[9]) can be used to seal a puncture. Read through all instructions before use.

Overview



1. Label, maximum permitted speed
2. Switch
3. Electrical cable
4. Bottle bracket
5. Pressure reducing valve
6. Pressure gauge
7. Decal, warning for wheel cover
8. Sealing fluid bottle
9. Bottle opening
10. Connection for bottle
11. Air hose
12. Connection valve

Connecting



8 Temporary Mobility Kit (TMK)
9 Temporary Mobility Kit

WARNING

Please keep the following points in mind when using the tyre sealing system:

- The sealing fluid bottle contains 1) rubber latex, natural and 2) ethanediol. These substances are harmful if swallowed.
- The contents of this bottle may cause allergic skin reactions or otherwise be potentially harmful to the respiratory tract, the skin, the central nervous system, and the eyes.

Precautions:

- Store out of the reach of children.
- Harmful if ingested.
- Avoid prolonged or repeated contact with the skin. If sealing fluid has come into contact with your clothes, remove them.
- Wash thoroughly after handling.

First aid:

- Skin: Wash affected areas of skin with soap and water. Get medical attention if symptoms occur.
- Eyes: Flush with plenty of water for least 15 minutes, occasionally lifting the upper and lower eyelids. Get medical attention if symptoms occur.
- Inhalation: Move the exposed person to fresh air. If irritation persists, get medical attention.
- Ingestion: Do NOT induce vomiting unless directed to do so by medical personnel. Get medical attention.
- Disposal: Dispose of this material and its container at a hazardous or special waste collection point.

WARNING

Do not remove the bottle or air hose when the puncture repair kit is being used.

1. **Preparations**

   Set up the warning triangle and activate the hazard warning lights if a tyre is being sealed in a trafficked location.

   If the puncture was caused by a nail or similar, allow this to remain in the tyre. It helps to seal the hole.

2. Detach the decal for maximum permitted speed that is affixed on one side of the compressor. Affix it visibly on the windscreen as a reminder to observe the speed limit. You should not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) after the emergency tyre repair kit has been used.

   In addition, remove the warning decal and attach it firmly to the side of the wheel so that it doesn't fall off.

3. Check that the switch is in position **0** (Off), and locate the electrical cable and the air hose.

4. Fit the sealing fluid bottle in the compressor so that the red arrows on the compressor and bottle meet, and then turn clockwise until it clicks.

   The bottle is equipped with a non-return valve which means that the fluid does not come out unless it is fitted in the compressor.

5. Attach the air hose to the bottle's opening and turn clockwise until it clicks.

6. Unscrew the tyre's dust cap and screw in the air hose's valve connection to the bottom of the thread on the tyre's air valve.

7. **Begin puncture repair**

   Connect the electrical cable to the closest 12 V socket and start the car.

NOTE

Make sure that none of the other 12 V sockets is in use when the compressor is operating.

WARNING

Do not leave children in the car without supervision when the engine is running.

WARNING

Inhaling car exhaust fumes could result in danger to life. Never leave the engine running in sealed areas or areas that lack sufficient ventilation.

8. Start the compressor by flicking the switch to position **I** (On).

   When the compressor starts, the pressure can increase up to 6 bar (88 psi), but the pressure drops after about 30 seconds.

WARNING

Never stand next to the tyre when the compressor is running. If cracks or unevenness arise then the compressor must be switched off immediately. The journey should not be continued. Call roadside assistance for recovery to a tyre centre. Volvo recommends an authorised tyre centre.

9. Inflate the tyre for 7 minutes.

IMPORTANT

The compressor must not be operated for longer than 10 minutes - risk of overheating.

10. Switch off the compressor to check the pressure on the pressure gauge. Minimum pressure is 1.8 bar (22 psi) and maximum is 2.5 bar (36 psi). Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.

    To access the pressure reducing valve, the sealing fluid bottle must first be removed. Remove the bottle in the following order:

    1. Remove the air hose from the tyre valve.
    2. Remove the air hose from the bottle.
    3. Remove the bottle from the compressor.
    4. Refit the air hose directly in the compressor.
    5. Refit the air hose to the tyre valve.
    6. Release air using the pressure reducing valve.

WARNING

If the pressure is below 1.8 bar (22 psi) then the hole in the tyre is too big. The journey should not be continued. Call roadside assistance for recovery to a tyre centre. Volvo recommends an authorised tyre centre.

11. Switch off the compressor and detach the electrical cable.
12. Unscrew the air hose from the tyre valve and refit the dust cap on the tyre.

NOTE

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

13. Clean the air hose before putting it away and be careful that there is no leakage of sealing fluid.
14. As soon as possible, drive at least 3 km (2 miles) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) so that the sealing fluid can seal the tyre, and then perform a follow-up check.

WARNING

Sealant will spurt out of the puncture during the first few rotations of the tyre. Make sure that nobody is standing near the car and gets the sealing fluid splashed onto them when the car is driven away. The distance should be at least 2 metres (7 feet).

15. **Follow-up inspection**

    Connect the air hose on the tyre valve and screw in the valve connection to the bottom of the tyre valve's thread. The compressor must be switched off.
16. Read the tyre pressure on the pressure gauge.
    - If it is below 1.3 bar (19 psi) then the tyre is insufficiently sealed. The journey should not be continued. Call roadside assistance for recovery.
    - If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar (19 psi), the tyre must be inflated to the pressure specified in accordance with the tyre pressure label on the driver's side door pillar (1 bar = 100 kPa = 14.5 psi). Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.

WARNING

Check the tyre pressure regularly.

Volvo recommends that the car is driven to the nearest authorised Volvo workshop for the replacement/repair of the damaged tyre. Advise the workshop that the tyre contains sealing fluid.

The sealing fluid bottle and hose must be replaced after use. Volvo recommends that these replacements be performed by an authorised Volvo workshop.

WARNING

Maximum mileage with tyres containing sealing fluid is 200 km (120 miles).

NOTE

The compressor is an electrical device. Follow local regulations related to waste management.

Related information

- Recommended tyre pressure (p. 556)
- Emergency puncture repair kit (p. 568)
- Inflating tyres with the compressor from the puncture repair kit (p. 573)

Inflating tyres with the compressor from the puncture repair kit

The car's original tyres can be inflated using the compressor in the emergency puncture repair kit.

1. The compressor must be switched off. Make sure that the switch is in position **0** (Off), and take out the electrical cable and the air hose.
2. Attach the air hose directly into the compressor's bottle bracket and turn clockwise until it clicks.

   Move the warning decal to the side of the compressor. It does not need to be attached to the wheel cover unless the sealing fluid is used.
3. Unscrew the tyre's dust cap and screw in the air hose's valve connection to the bottom of the thread on the tyre's air valve.
4. Connect the electrical cable to the closest 12 V socket and start the car.

WARNING

Inhaling car exhaust fumes could result in danger to life. Never leave the engine running in sealed areas or areas that lack sufficient ventilation.

WARNING

Do not leave children in the car without supervision when the engine is running.

5. Start the compressor by flicking the switch to position **I** (On).

IMPORTANT

Risk of overheating. The compressor must not run for more than 10 minutes.

6. Inflate the tyre to the pressure specified on the tyre pressure label on the driver side door pillar. Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.
7. Switch off the compressor. Detach the air hose and the electrical cable.
8. Refit the dust cap on the tyre.

NOTE

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

NOTE

The compressor is an electrical device. Follow local regulations related to waste management.

Related information

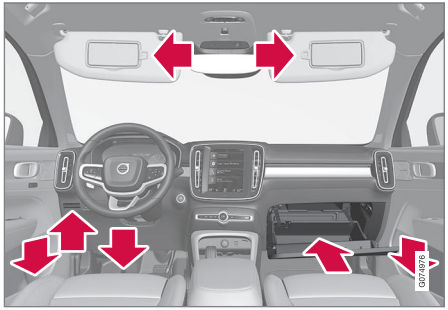
- Recommended tyre pressure (p. 556)
- Using a puncture repair kit (p. 569)
- Emergency puncture repair kit (p. 568)

LOADING, STORAGE AND PASSENGER COMPARTMENT

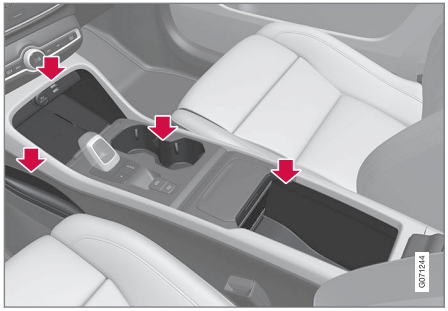
Passenger compartment interior

Overview of the passenger compartment's interior and storage locations.

Front seat

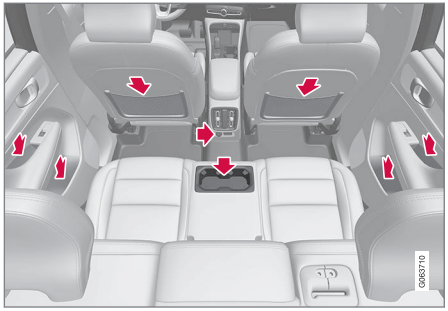


Storage compartment in door panel, card holder on left of steering wheel, storage under driver's seat[1], sun visor and glovebox with extensible hook.



Storage compartment for legroom, electrical socket and USB port above the wireless phone charger*, cup holder and storage under armrest in tunnel console.

Rear seat



Storage compartment in the door panel, cup holder* in the centre seat backrest, storage pocket* on the front seat backrest and also USB ports* in the tunnel console.

WARNING

Keep loose objects such as mobile phones, cameras, remote controls for accessories, etc. in the glove compartment or other compartments. Otherwise they may injure people in the car in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

IMPORTANT

Keep in mind that high gloss surfaces, for example, are easily scratched by metal objects. Do not place keys, phones and other items on sensitive surfaces.

Related information

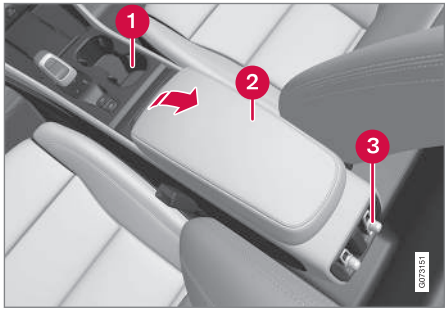
- Emptying the ashtray* (p. 578)
- Using the cigarette lighter* (p. 577)
- Electrical sockets (p. 578)
- Using the glovebox (p. 580)
- Sun visors (p. 581)
- Tunnel console (p. 577)
- Wireless phone charger* (p. 523)
- Connecting a device via USB port (p. 505)

[1] A maximum of 1 kg (2.2 lbs) can be stored here.

* Option/accessory.

Tunnel console

The tunnel console is located between the front seats.



1. Storage compartment with cup holder.
2. Storage compartment under the armrest.
3. Climate controls for the rear seat climate functions* or storage compartment. There are also USB ports underneath*.

WARNING

Keep loose objects such as mobile phones, cameras, remote controls for accessories, etc. in the glove compartment or other compartments. Otherwise they may injure people in the car in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

IMPORTANT

Keep in mind that high gloss surfaces, for example, are easily scratched by metal objects. Do not place keys, phones and other items on sensitive surfaces.

NOTE

One of the detectors for the alarm* is located under the tunnel console's cup holder. Avoid leaving coins, keys and other metal objects in the cup holder, since this may trigger the alarm.

NOTE

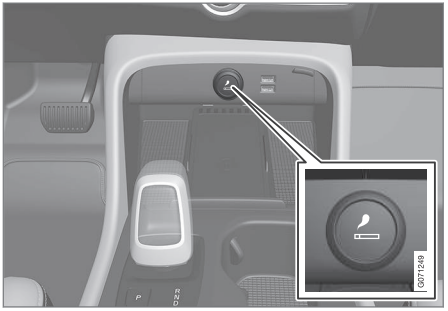
The USB sockets can be used for charging a mobile phone or tablet, for example. Only the front USB input can be used to play media in the car's audio system.

Related information

- Emptying the ashtray* (p. 578)
- Using the cigarette lighter* (p. 577)
- Passenger compartment interior (p. 576)
- Electrical sockets (p. 578)
- Climate controls (p. 197)

Using the cigarette lighter*

The cigarette lighter can be a complement to the 12 V socket in the front section of the tunnel console.



Cigarette lighter in tunnel console, front seat.

1. Press the button on the lighter.
   > The button jumps up when the lighter starts to glow.
2. Pull the lighter out from the socket and use the glow to give a light.
3. Refit the lighter in the socket.

WARNING

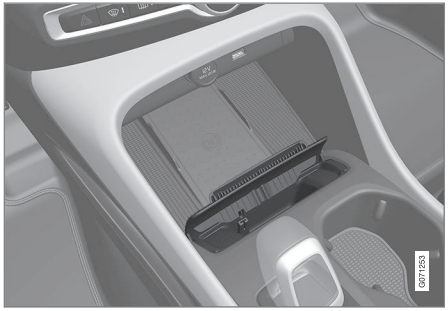
Take care when the lighter is activated so that the glowing part does not, for example, damage the interior or injure passengers.

Related information

- Passenger compartment interior (p. 576)
- Emptying the ashtray* (p. 578)

Emptying the ashtray*

When there is a cigarette lighter fitted in the car there is a detachable ashtray in the tunnel console.



1. Detach the ashtray by pulling it straight up and empty the contents.
2. Refit the ashtray in the tunnel console.

WARNING

Exercise caution with smouldering glow and ash so that they do not damage the interior or injure passengers, for example. Only extinguish cigarettes on the intended surface.

Related information

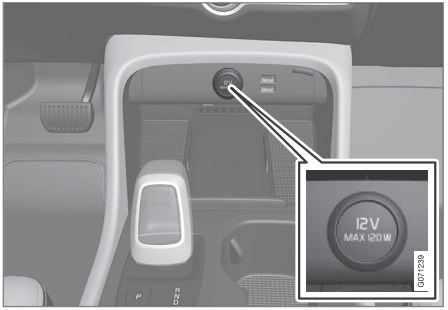
- Passenger compartment interior (p. 576)
- Using the cigarette lighter* (p. 577)

Electrical sockets

There is one 12V electrical socket in the tunnel console and one 12V electrical socket* in the luggage compartment/cargo area.

If a problem occurs with an electrical socket, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

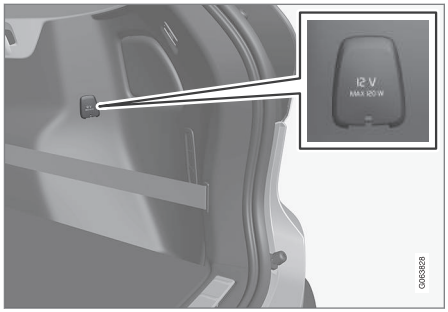
12 V electrical socket



12 V electrical socket in tunnel console, front seat.

The 12 V sockets can be used for various accessories designed for this, such as music players, cooler boxes and mobile phones.

* Option/accessory.



12 V electrical socket in cargo area*.

Related information

- Passenger compartment interior (p. 576)
- Using electrical sockets (p. 579)

Using electrical sockets

12 V sockets can be used for various accessories designed for this, such as music players, cooler boxes and mobile phones.

For the sockets to supply current, the car's electrical system must be set in the lowest ignition position **I**. The sockets are then active as long as the starter battery level does not become too low.

If the engine is switched off and the car is locked, the sockets are deactivated. If the engine is switched off and the car is not locked, or is locked with double lock temporarily deactivated, then the sockets continue to be active for a further seven minutes.

NOTE

Remember that use of the electrical socket with the engine switched off entails a risk of discharging the starter battery, which can limit functionality.

Accessories that are connected to the electrical sockets may be activated even when the car's electrical system is disconnected or if preconditioning is used. For this reason, disconnect the connectors when they are not in use in order to avoid the starter battery being discharged.

WARNING

- Do not use accessories with large or heavy connectors - they can damage the socket or come loose when driving.
- Do not use accessories that can cause interference to the car's radio receiver or electrical system for example.
- Position the accessory so that it is not at risk of injuring the driver or passengers in the event of heavy braking or collision.
- Keep an eye on connected accessories as they can generate heat that can burn passengers or the interior.

Using 12 V sockets

1. Remove the blanking plug (tunnel console) or fold down the cover (cargo area) in front of the socket and plug in the accessory's connector.
2. Unplug the accessory's connector and refit the blanking plug (tunnel console) or fold up the cover (cargo area) when the socket is not in use or if the socket is left unattended.

IMPORTANT

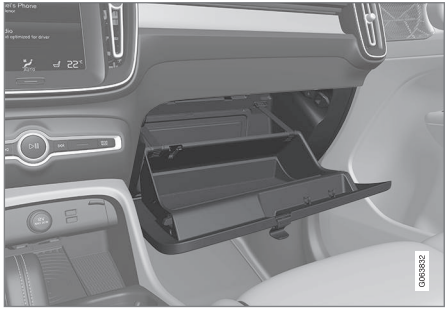
Maximum socket output is 120 W (10 A) per socket.

Related information

- Electrical sockets (p. 578)
- Passenger compartment interior (p. 576)

Using the glovebox

The glovebox is located on the passenger side. The printed owner's manual and maps can be kept in the glovebox, for example. There is also space for a pen and card holder.



Glovebox with extensible hook.

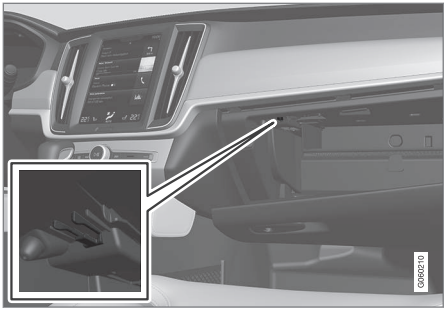
The hook on the glovebox can be extended when the glovebox is open so that it can be used after the glovebox has been closed.

IMPORTANT

Fold in the hook completely before the glovebox is closed, otherwise it can break off.

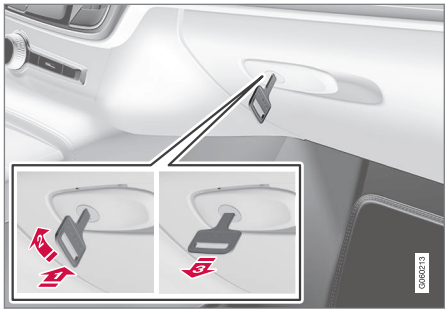
Locking and unlocking the glovebox*

The glovebox can be locked, e.g. when the car is taken in for service, left at a hotel or similar. The glovebox can only be locked/unlocked with the accompanying key.



The key's designated storage space. The figure is schematic - the design may vary.

* Option/accessory.



The figure is schematic - the design may vary.

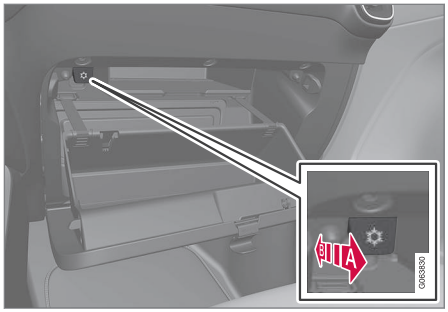
Locking the glovebox:

1. Insert the key in the glovebox lock cylinder.
2. Turn the key 90 degrees clockwise.
3. Pull out the key.

– Unlock by carrying this out in reverse order.

Using the glovebox as a cooled area*

The glovebox can be used for cooling of e.g. drinks or food. The cooling works when the climate control system is active (i.e. when the car is set in ignition position **II** or when the engine is running).



The figure is schematic - the design may vary.

A. Activating cooling.

B. Deactivating cooling.

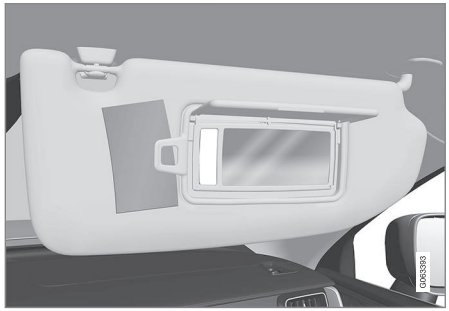
– Activate or deactivate the cooling by moving the control to the end position toward the passenger compartment/glovebox.

Related information

- Passenger compartment interior (p. 576)
- Private locking (p. 267)

Sun visors

There are sun visors in the roof in front of the driver seat and the front seat passenger seat which can be folded down and angled out to the side when necessary.



The figure is schematic - the design may vary.

The mirror lighting* is switched on automatically when the guard is lifted up.

The mirror frame incorporates a holder for e.g. cards or tickets.

Related information

- Passenger compartment interior (p. 576)

Cargo area

The car has a flexible cargo area that makes it possible to transport and secure large objects.

By folding down the backrests in the rear seat, the cargo area can become quite spacious. Use the load retaining eyelets or bag holders available for holding the load securely in place. The parcel shelf can be removed easily to make room for bulky loads.

The car's towing eye and puncture repair kit or spare wheel* are stored under the cargo area floor.

Related information

- Recommendations for loading (p. 582)
- Bag hooks (p. 584)
- Load retaining eyelets (p. 584)
- Remove and store the parcel shelf (p. 587)

Recommendations for loading

There are a number of things that are important to bear in mind when loading the car.

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories reduces the car's payload by a corresponding weight.

WARNING

The car's driving properties change depending on the weight and positioning of the load.

Loading in the cargo area

Good things to remember when loading:

- Position the load firmly against the rear seat's backrest.
- Heavy objects should be placed as low as possible. Avoid placing heavy loads on lowered backrests.
- Cover sharp edges with something soft to avoid damaging the upholstery.
- Secure all loads to the load retaining eyelets with straps or web lashings.

WARNING

A loose object weighing 20 kg (44 pounds) can, in a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h (30 mph) carry the impact of an item weighing 1000 kg (2200 pounds).

WARNING

Leave 10 cm (4 inches) space between the load and the side windows if the car is loaded to above the top edge of the door windows. Otherwise, the intended protection of the inflatable curtain, which is concealed in the headlining, may be compromised.

WARNING

Always secure the load. During heavy braking the load may otherwise shift, causing injury to the car's occupants.

Cover sharp edges and sharp corners with something soft.

Switch off the engine and apply the parking brake when loading/unloading long items. Otherwise you may accidentally knock the gear lever or gear selector with the load into a drive position - and the car could then move off.

Increasing the space in the cargo area

To expand the cargo area and simplify loading, the rear seat's backrest can be lowered. Note that objects must not prevent the function of the WHIPS system for the front seats if any of the rear seat's backrests is folded down.

A through-load hatch* in the rear seat can be folded down for carrying long and narrow loads.

* Option/accessory.

Related information

- Load retaining eyelets (p. 584)
- Lowering the backrests in the rear seat (p. 179)
- Through-load hatch in the rear seat* (p. 585)
- Roof load and loading on load carriers (p. 583)
- Weights (p. 653)

Roof load and loading on load carriers

For loading on the car's roof, the load carriers that Volvo have developed are recommended. This is in order to avoid damage to the car and in order to achieve the maximum possible safety during a journey. Volvo's load carriers are available for purchase at authorised Volvo retailers.

Carefully follow the installation instructions supplied with the carriers.

- Distribute the load evenly over the load carriers. Put the heaviest objects at the bottom.
- Check periodically that the load carriers and load are properly secured. Lash the load securely with retaining straps.
- If the load is longer than the car at the front, e.g. a canoe or kayak, fit the towing eye to its front socket and attach the bungee to this.
- The size of the area exposed to the wind, and therefore fuel consumption, increase with the size of the load.
- Drive gently. Avoid quick acceleration, heavy braking and hard cornering.

⚠ WARNING

The car's centre of gravity and driving characteristics are altered by roof loads.

Follow the car's specifications with regard to weights and maximum permitted load.

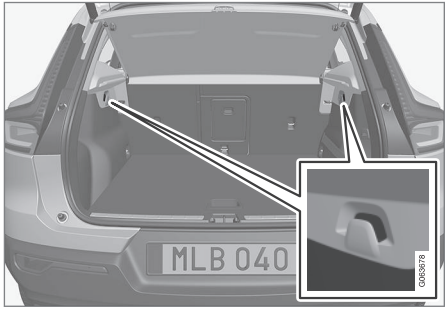
Related information

- Recommendations for loading (p. 582)
- Weights (p. 653)

Bag hooks

Bag hooks keep carrier bags in place and prevent them from overturning and spreading their contents across the cargo area.

Along the sides



There is a bag hook in the side panel on each side of the cargo area.

IMPORTANT

The bag hooks may be loaded with a maximum of 5 kg (11 lbs).

In glovebox

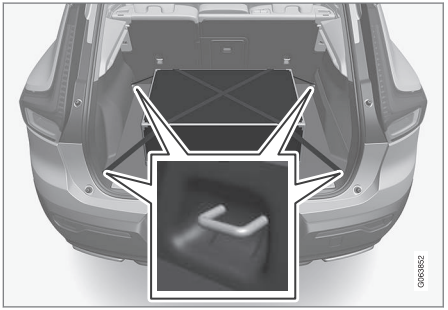
There is also an extensible hook in the glovebox that can be used for hanging up a bag.

Related information

- Recommendations for loading (p. 582)
- Using the glovebox (p. 580)
- Fitting and removing the safety net* (p. 585)

Load retaining eyelets

Use the load retaining eyelets to attach straps in order to anchor items in the cargo area.



WARNING

Hard, sharp and/or heavy objects which protrude may cause injury under violent braking.

Always secure large and heavy objects with a seatbelt or cargo retaining straps.

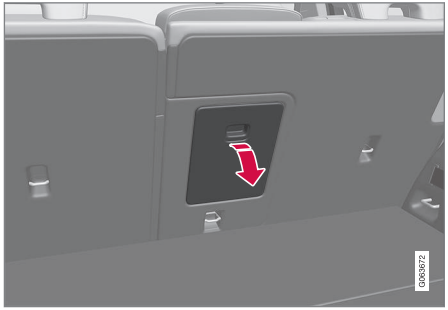
Related information

- Recommendations for loading (p. 582)
- Weights (p. 653)

* Option/accessory.

Through-load hatch in the rear seat*

The hatch in the rear seat's backrest can be opened to transport long narrow items, e.g. skis.



1. In the cargo area, grip the hatch's handle and fold down the hatch.
2. Fold forward the armrest in the rear seat.
3. Adjust the centre seat's head restraint upwards so that the steel tubes do not block the hatch opening.

If the private locking function is used then the through-load hatch must be closed.

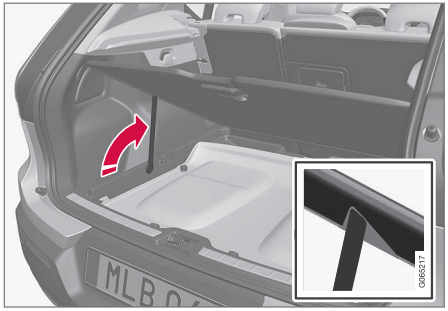
Related information

- Recommendations for loading (p. 582)
- Private locking (p. 267)
- Load retaining eyelets (p. 584)

Folding up the cargo area floor

The cargo area floor can be secured in raised position using the support arm.

1. Grip the handle to fold up the cargo area floor.
2. Fold up the support arm and secure the end in the socket on the underside of the cargo area floor.



> The cargo area floor remains in raised position.

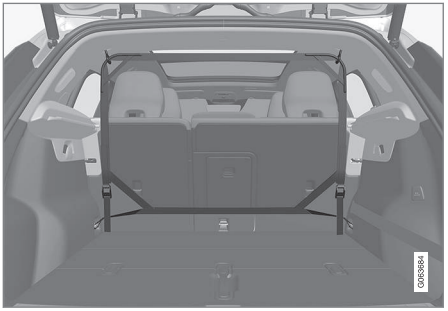
Related information

- Cargo area (p. 582)

Fitting and removing the safety net*

The safety net prevents loads from being thrown forward in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden braking.

The safety net is fitted into four mounting points.



For reasons of safety, the safety net must always be fastened and anchored as described below.

The net is made of a strong nylon fabric and can be secured two different locations in the car:

- Rear fitting - behind the rear seat.
- Front fitting - behind the front seats.

WARNING

Loads in the luggage compartment must be anchored well, and also using a correctly fitted safety net.

Fitting the safety net

WARNING

It is necessary to ensure that the upper securing points of the safety net are fitted correctly and that the puller-straps are hooked in properly.

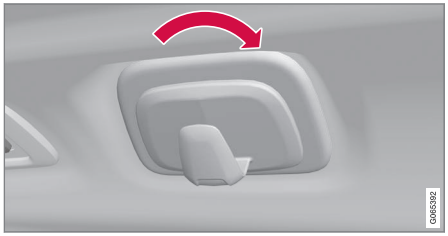
Damaged safety nets must not be used.

NOTE

With forward mounting, the safety net is most easily mounted via one of the rear doors.

1. Unfold the safety net with the upper attachment hooks facing up.
2. Hook one retaining hook of the net into the front or rear roof mounting with the anchoring strap locks turned towards you.

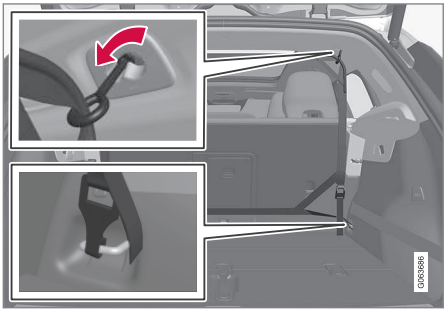
   Remove any clothing hooks from the roof bracket by turning it a quarter turn clockwise on the left-hand side and a quarter turn anticlockwise on the right-hand side respectively.



Applies to left-hand side.

3. Hook the net's second attachment hook to the roof bracket on the opposite side.

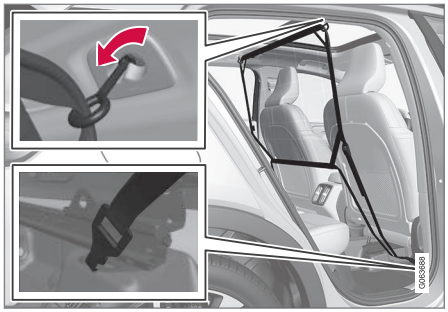
   Take care to press forward the net's retaining hooks for each respective roof mounting's front end position.
4.



Rear fitting.

   For rear fitting:

   With the net fitted in the rear roof mountings, hook the safety net's puller-straps into the front load retaining eyelets in the cargo area.



Front fitting.

For front fitting:

With the net fitted in the front roof mountings, hook the anchoring straps into the outer eyes on the rear of the seat slide rails - it is easier if the backrests are straightened and the seats are moved forward slightly.

Pay attention to make sure that you do not press the seat and backrest hard against the net when they are moved back again - only adjust until the seat or backrest makes contact with the net.

IMPORTANT

If a seat or backrest is pushed backwards hard into the safety net, the net and roof mounts may be damaged.

5. Tension the safety net with the anchoring straps.

Removing the safety net

The safety net can be easily removed and folded up.

1. Reduce safety net tension by pressing the button in the anchoring strap lock and feeding out a little of the anchoring strap on each side.
2. Press in the catches and detach both of the anchoring strap's hooks.
3. Undo the upper attachments and release the net from the roof mountings.
4. Fold up the net and store it in its case.

   Refit any clothing hook if required.

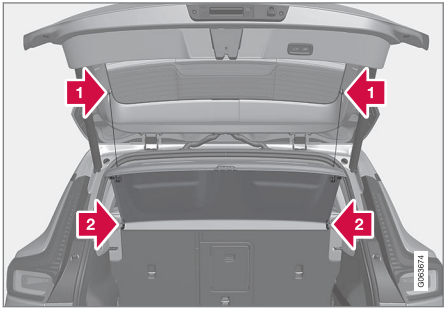
Related information

- Recommendations for loading (p. 582)
- Load retaining eyelets (p. 584)

Remove and store the parcel shelf

The parcel shelf can be removed to increase the size of the cargo area.

Removing parcel shelf



1. Detach the parcel shelf's lifting eyes on both sides.
2. Unhook the parcel shelf at the front edge and remove it.

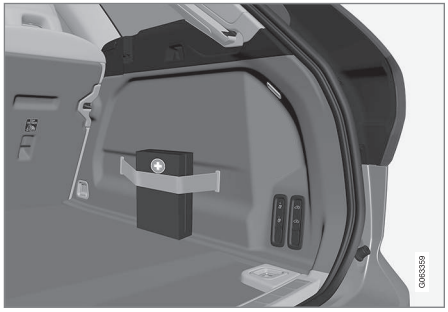
Store the removed parcel shelf in a place where it cannot be damaged.

Related information

- Cargo area (p. 582)

First aid kit*

The first aid kit contains first aid equipment.
Store the first aid kit behind the elastic strap, if the car is equipped with one of these.



The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

Related information

- Cargo area (p. 582)

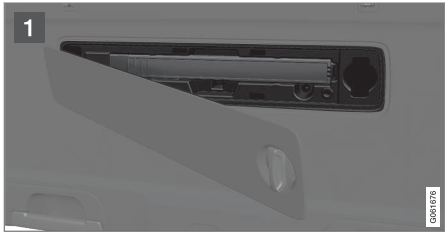
Warning triangle

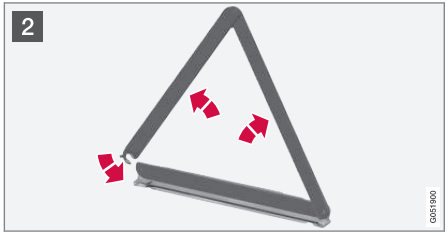
Use the warning triangle to warn other road users if the car is stationary in traffic.
Also activate the hazard warning flashers.

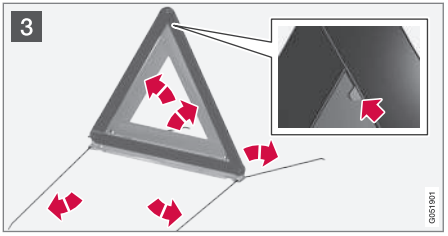
Storage spaces

The warning triangle is located in the compartment on the inside of the tailgate.

Folding up the warning triangle







1. Open the hatch by first turning the knob a quarter turn and then pulling the hatch from its brackets in the top and bottom edges.

   Press the latch that secures the warning triangle slightly to the right and remove the case.

2. Remove the warning triangle from the case, unfold it and put the ends together.

3. Fold out the warning triangle's support legs.

Follow the regulations for the use of a warning triangle. Position the warning triangle in a suitable place with regard to traffic.

Make sure that the warning triangle and case are properly secured in their storage space and that the hatch is fully closed after use.

Related information

- Cargo area (p. 582)
- Hazard warning flashers (p. 149)

* Option/accessory.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

Volvo service programme

To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service programme as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to perform the service and maintenance work. Volvo workshops have the personnel, special tools and service literature that can provide the highest quality of service.

IMPORTANT

For the Volvo warranty to apply, check and follow the instructions in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Service and repair

Service the car regularly. Follow Volvo's recommended service intervals.

If inspection and repair are required then only an authorised Volvo workshop may carry out the work.

WARNING

Do not carry out any repairs of your own on this vehicle. Electrical cables and/or components that have detached must only be rectified by an authorised workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Charging cable with control unit

IMPORTANT

Do not modify the control unit in any way.

Related information

- Car status (p. 592)
- Book service and repair (p. 593)
- Connection of equipment to the car's diagnostic socket (p. 38)
- Servicing the climate control system (p. 598)
- Brake system maintenance (p. 438)
- Engine compartment overview (p. 600)

Data transfer between car and workshop via Wi-Fi

Volvo's workshops have a specific Wi-Fi network for data transfer between your car and the workshop. Your workshop visit will be simpler and more efficient when the transfer of diagnostic information and software can take place via the workshop's network.

During a workshop visit, your service technician may want to connect your car to the workshop's network via Wi-Fi to perform fault-tracing and software download. For this type of communication, the car only connects to a workshop's network. It is not possible to connect the car to another Wi-Fi network, such as at home, in the same way as to a workshop's network.

Connection with the remote control key

Connection is normally handled by the service technician who then uses the remote control key buttons. That's why it's important to take a key with buttons with you for the workshop visit. Press three times on the lock button on the remote control key to connect the car to the workshop's network via Wi-Fi.

When the car is connected to a Wi-Fi network, the symbol appears in the centre display.

⚠ WARNING

The car must not be driven when connected to the workshop's networks and systems.

Related information

- Managing system updates via the Download Centre (p. 591)
- Book service and repair (p. 593)

Download Center

Several of the car's systems can be updated from the centre display with an online car[1].

The **Download Centre** app is started from app view in the centre display and enables:

- searching for and updating system software
- updating map data for Sensus Navigation*
- downloading, updating and uninstalling apps.

Related information

- Managing system updates via the Download Centre (p. 591)
- Downloading apps (p. 490)
- Updating apps (p. 491)
- Deleting apps (p. 491)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 105)

Managing system updates via the Download Centre

Functions for online car and infotainment can be updated via the Download Centre. Updates can be made one at a time or all at once.

Searching for update

If an update is available, the message **New software updates available See Download Center** is shown in the centre display's status bar.

For system updates to be possible, the car must be connected to the Internet[2].

– Go to **Download Centre** in the centre display's app view.

  > If no search has been performed since the last time the infotainment system was started, a search is performed. No search is performed if a software installation is in progress.

    A number on **System updates** shows how many updates are available. One tap shows a list of the updates that can be installed in the car.

1 Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the Internet, and this may involve a cost.
2 Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the Internet, and this may involve a cost.

NOTE

Data download may affect other services that transmit data, e.g. Internet radio. If the effect on other services is experienced as disruptive then the download can be interrupted. Alternatively, it may be appropriate to switch off or interrupt other services.

NOTE

An update can be interrupted when the ignition is switched off and the car is left.

However, the update does not have to be completed before the car is left, this is because the update is resumed the next time the car is used.

Update all system software

– Select **Install all** at the bottom of the list.

If no list is desired, then the **Install all** option can be selected at **System updates**.

Update individual system software programs

– Select **Install** for the software required.

Cancelling software download

– Tap on X in the activity indicator that has replaced **Install** at the start of the download.

Note that only the download can be cancelled, when the installation phase has started, this cannot be cancelled.

Deactivating the background search for software update

Automatic search for software updates is activated when the car is delivered from the factory, but this function can be deactivated.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **System** ➔ **Download Centre**.
3. Deselect **Auto Software Update**.

Related information

- Download Center (p. 591)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 105)

Car status

The general status of the car can be shown in the centre display.

The **Car Status** app is started from app view in the centre display and has four tabs:

- **Messages** - status messages
- **Status** - checking engine oil level and AdBlue level[3]
- **TPMS** - checking the tyre pressure
- **Appointments** - appointment information and car information[4]

Related information

- Handling a message saved from the driver display (p. 97)
- Checking and filling with engine oil (p. 602)
- Tyre pressure monitoring system* (p. 557)
- Book service and repair (p. 593)
- Sending car information to a workshop (p. 594)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 105)

* Option/accessory.

Book service and repair[5]

This service provides a way to send a booking request for service and workshop visit directly in the car.

When it is time for service, and in some cases when the car is in need of repair, a message will appear in the driver display and at the top of the centre display. The service date is determined by how much time has passed, hours that the engine has been running, or distance driven since the last service.

Before the service can be used

- Create a Volvo ID and register it to the car.
- To send and receive booking information, the car must be connected to the Internet[6].

Book a service

Fill in a booking request when so required or when a message indicating that the car needs a service or repair is shown.

1. Open the **Car Status** app from the app view in the centre display.
2. Press **Appointments**.
3. Press **Request appointment**.
4. Make sure that the correct **Volvo ID** is filled in.
5. Make sure that the desired **Workshop information** is filled in.
6. Fill in the field **Tap to write information to the workshop** if there is anything you would like done during the workshop visit or any other important information to your workshop.
7. Press **Send appointment request**.
   > You will receive an appointment suggestion via e-mail within a couple of days[7].

   In certain markets, once you have sent the appointment request, the message that the car needs service is extinguished in the driver display.
8. Tap on **Cancel request** to cancel your request.

The booking enquiry sent from the car includes car information that facilitates workshop planning.

The retailer comes back with a digital booking proposal. Information about your dealer is also available in the car so that you can contact your workshop.

Accept the appointment suggestion

When the car has received an appointment suggestion, a message will be shown at the top of the centre display.

1. Tap the message.
2. If the suggested booking is acceptable, tap on **Accept**. Otherwise, tap on **Send new proposal** or **Decline**.

For certain markets, the system reminds you of a scheduled appointment time as it approaches and the navigation system[8] can also guide you to the workshop when the time comes.

NOTE

If you experience problems with this service – contact your Volvo dealer.

3 AdBlue Applies to cars with diesel engines.
4 Applies to certain markets.
5 Applies to certain markets.
6 Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the Internet, and this may involve a cost.
7 This time frame may vary depending on market.
8 Applies to Sensus Navigation*.

Related information

- Car status (p. 592)
- Sending car information to a workshop (p. 594)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 105)
- Volvo ID (p. 26)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)

Sending car information to a workshop[9]

It is possible to send information for the car at any time, e.g. if you book a workshop appointment and want to help your workshop by providing them with better data so that your visit can be planned. Sending car information is not the same as booking a service appointment.

1. Open the **Car Status** app from the app view in the centre display.
2. Press **Appointments**.
3. Press **Send car data**.
   > A message that vehicle data are being sent is shown at the top of the centre display. You can cancel data transmission by tapping the X in the activity indicator.

   The information is sent via the car's Internet connection[10].

This car information can be accessed by any retailer if they have the car's identification number (VIN[11]).

Car information content

The data sent is the last information saved (the last time the car was running) and includes information in the following areas:

- service requirement
- time since last service
- function status
- fluid levels
- meter reading
- the car's vehicle identification number (VIN[11])
- the car's software version
- the car's diagnostics data.

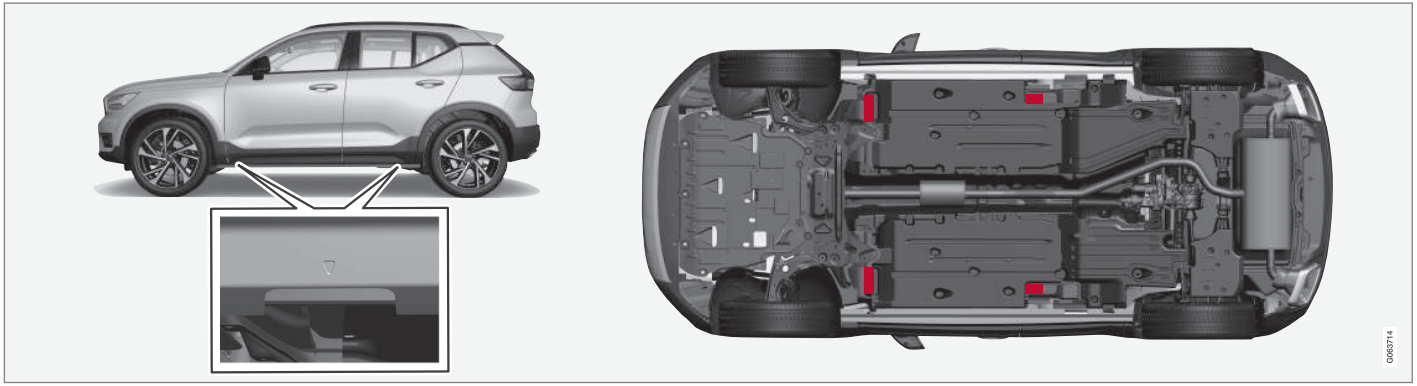
Related information

- Book service and repair (p. 593)
- Car status (p. 592)
- Navigating in the centre display's views (p. 105)
- Internet-connected car* (p. 529)

9 Applies to certain markets.
10 Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the Internet, and this may involve a cost.
11 Vehicle Identification Number.

Raise the car

When raising the car, it is important that the jack is fitted in the intended points on the car's underbody.



The triangles in the plastic cover indicate the locations of the lifting points (marked in red).

NOTE

Volvo recommends only using the jack that belongs to the car model in question. If a jack is selected other than the one recommended by Volvo, follow the instructions supplied with the equipment.

The normal car jack is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

WARNING

- Apply the parking brake and set the gear selector in Park position (**P**).
- Chock the wheels standing on the ground using solid wood blocks or large stones.
- Check that the jack is not damaged, that the threads are thoroughly lubricated and that it is free from dirt.
- Check that the jack is resting on a firm, level surface that is not slippery and is not slanted.
- The jack must be correctly attached in the jack's bracket.
- Never position anything between the ground and the jack, nor between the jack and the car's jacking point.
- Passengers must leave the car when it is raised on the jack.
- If a wheel must be changed in a trafficked environment, passengers must stand in a safe place.
- Use a jack designed for the car when changing tyres. Use supports to secure the car for all other work.
- Never crawl under the car or reach under with a part of your body when it is raised on a jack.

WARNING

If the car is raised using a workshop jack, this must be placed beneath one of the four jacking points. Take care to position the workshop jack so that the car cannot slip off. Make sure that the jack plate is fitted with a rubber guard so that the car remains stable and is not damaged. Always use axle stands or similar.

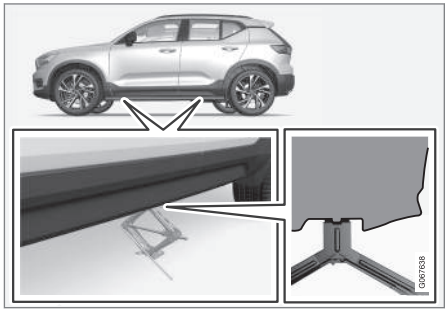
When not in use, the jack* should be stored in its stowage space under the cargo area floor.

Read through all instructions before beginning. Take out the tools needed before jacking up the car.

1. Set up the warning triangle and activate the hazard warning lights if, for example, a tyre is being changed in a trafficked location.
2. Apply the parking brake and engage gear position **P**, or engage first gear if the car has a manual gearbox.
3. Chock in front of and behind the wheels that remain on the ground. Use, for example, heavy wooden blocks or large stones.

* Option/accessory.

4. Position the jack or the lift arms at the designated spots of the car's undercarriage. The triangle markings in the plastic cover indicate the locations of the jacking/lifting points. There are two jacking points on each side of the car. There is a recess for the jack at each point.



5. Position the jack on level, firm and non-slippery ground under the jacking point that will be used.
6. Crank up until it is correctly aligned and so that it makes contact with the car's jacking point. Check that the head of the jack (or lifting arms at a workshop) is correctly positioned in the jacking point so that the bump in the centre of the head fits into the jacking point hole, and check that the base of the jack is positioned vertically below the jacking point.
7. Turn the jack so that the crank is as far away from the side of the car as possible, at which point the jack's arms are perpendicular to the direction of the car.
8. Raise the car high enough to perform the intended measure.

Related information

- Jack* (p. 564)
- Wheel bolts (p. 564)
- Tool kit (p. 563)

Servicing the climate control system

The air conditioning system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

Troubleshooting and repair

The air conditioning system contains fluorescent tracing agents. Ultraviolet light must be used during leak detection.

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.

The car's climate control system uses a freon-free refrigerant either R1234yf or R134a depending on market. Information about which refrigerant the car's climate control system uses is printed on a decal located on the inside of the bonnet.

WARNING

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R134a. This system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

WARNING

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R1234yf. In accordance with SAE J2845 (Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile A/C System), service and repair of the refrigerant system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians in order to ensure the safety of the system.

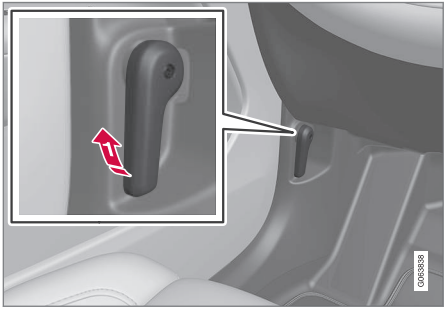
Related information

- Volvo service programme (p. 590)

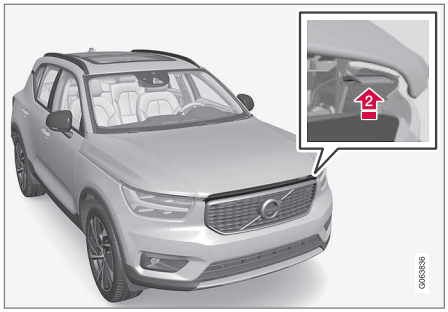
Opening and closing the bonnet

The bonnet can be opened using the handle in the passenger compartment and a handle under the bonnet.

Open the bonnet



1. Pull the handle on the left of the brake pedal in order to release the bonnet from fully closed position.



2. Move the handle under the bonnet upwards to release the bonnet from the lock catch and lift the bonnet.

Warning - bonnet not closed

When the bonnet is released, a warning symbol and graphics in the driver display will light up and an acoustic reminder will sound. If the car starts rolling, an acoustic warning signal will repeat.

NOTE

If the warning symbol is lit or the warning signal is heard despite the bonnet being closed properly, contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

Close the bonnet

1. Push the bonnet down until it starts to fall from its own weight.
2. When the bonnet stops against the lock catch, push the bonnet to close it completely.

WARNING

Risk of crushing! Ensure that the closing path under the bonnet is not obstructed, otherwise there is a risk of personal injury.

WARNING

Check that the bonnet locks properly when closed. The bonnet must engage at both sides audibly.

Bonnet not completely closed.

Bonnet completely closed.

WARNING

Never drive with an open bonnet!

If this symbol is visible – or something else indicates that the bonnet is not fully closed while driving – stop immediately and close it properly.

Related information

- Engine compartment overview (p. 600)
- Door and seatbelt reminder (p. 50)

Engine compartment overview

The overview shows some service-related components.

Some of the components included in the car's electric drive system are located under the bonnet. Exercise caution in this area and only touch anything that is related to normal maintenance.

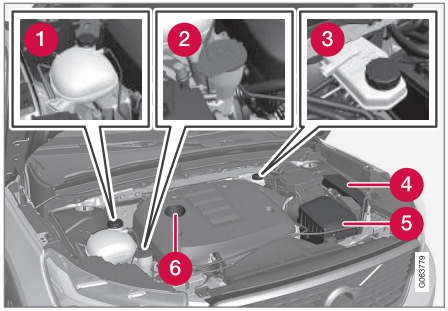
WARNING

Orange-coloured cables must only be handled by qualified personnel.

WARNING

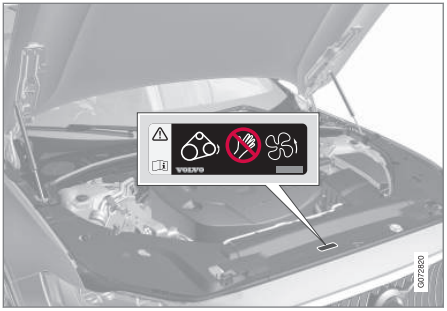
Several components in the car work with high-voltage current that could be dangerous in the event of incorrect intervention.

- Do not touch anything that is not clearly described in the owner's manual.
- Exercise caution when checking/refilling fluids in the engine compartment.



The appearance of the engine compartment may differ depending on model and engine variant.

1. Coolant expansion tank
2. Washer fluid filler pipe
3. Reservoir for brake fluid (located on the driver's side)
4. Central electrical unit
5. Air filter
6. Engine oil filler pipe



Location of warning decal for the engine compartment. The appearance of the engine compartment may differ depending on model and engine variant.

NOTE

It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and locations in the car. The information that applies to your particular car can be found on the decal on the car.

⚠ WARNING

Remember that the radiator fan (located at the front of the engine compartment, behind the radiator) may start or continue to operate automatically for up to approx. 6 minutes after the engine has been switched off.

Always have the engine cleaned by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. There is a risk of fire if the engine is hot.

⚠ WARNING

The ignition system works at a very high and hazardous voltage. The car's electrical system must always be in ignition position **0** when work is being performed in the engine compartment.

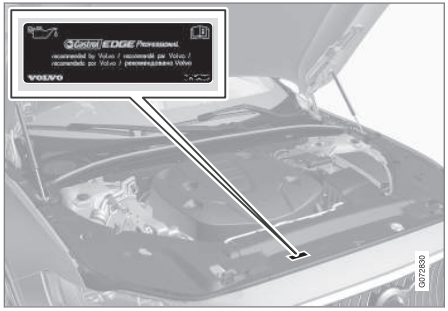
Do not touch the spark plugs or ignition coil when the car's electrical system is in ignition position **II** or when the engine is hot.

Related information

- Opening and closing the bonnet (p. 598)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 645)
- Topping up coolant (p. 604)
- Fuses in engine compartment (p. 611)
- Checking and filling with engine oil (p. 602)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)

Engine oil

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals and warranty can be applied.



Location of warning decal for the engine compartment. The appearance of the engine compartment may differ depending on model and engine variant.

Volvo recommends:

Castrol EDGE PROFESSIONAL

G053097

If the engine oil cannot be checked on a regular basis and the level falls too low, there is a risk that this will cause serious damage to the engine.

ⓘ NOTE

It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and locations in the car. The information that applies to your particular car can be found on the decal on the car.

IMPORTANT

In order to fulfil the requirements for the engine's service intervals all engines are filled with a specially adapted synthetic engine oil at the factory. The choice of oil has been made very carefully with regard to service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied. Only use a prescribed grade of oil for both filling and oil change, otherwise there is a risk of the service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact of the car being affected.

If engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity is not used, engine related components may become damaged. Volvo disclaims any liability for any such damage.

Volvo recommends that oil changes are carried out at an authorised Volvo workshop.

Symbols for low oil level

Volvo uses different systems to warn about the oil level if it is too low/high, or in the event of low oil pressure. The driver display's warning symbol for low oil pressure is used for the oil pressure sensor . For oil level sensor, the driver is informed via the driver display's warning symbol and display texts. Certain variants have both systems. Contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

Change the engine oil and oil filter in accordance with the intervals specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet. Using oil of a higher than specified grade is permitted. If the car is driven in adverse conditions, Volvo recommends using an oil of a higher grade than the one specified.

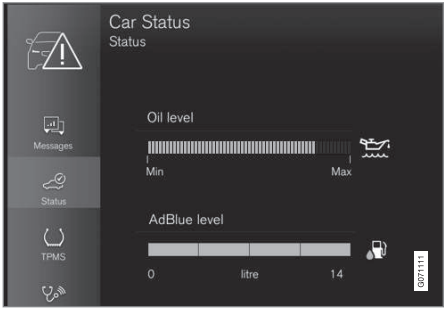
Related information

- Checking and filling with engine oil (p. 602)
- Engine oil — specifications (p. 657)
- Adverse driving conditions for engine oil (p. 658)
- Volvo Cars support site (p. 21)

Checking and filling with engine oil

The oil level is detected with the electronic oil level sensor.

See oil level in the centre display



Example of graphic for oil level in the centre display

The oil level is visualised using the electronic oil level gauge in the centre display when the car has been started. The oil level should be checked regularly.

1. Open the **Car Status** app from the app view in the centre display.
2. Press **Status** to show the oil level.

NOTE

The system cannot directly detect changes when the oil is filled or drained. The car must have been driven approx. 30 km (approx. 20 miles) and have been stationary for 5 minutes with the engine switched off and on level ground before the oil level indication is correct.

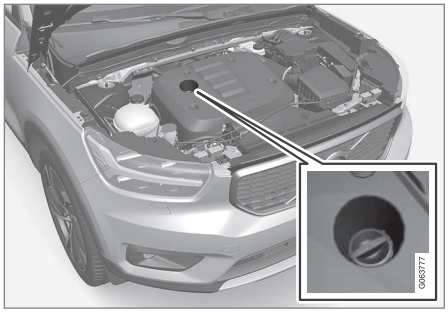
NOTE

If the right conditions for measuring the oil level (time after engine shutdown, the car's inclination, outside temperature, etc.) are not met, then the message **No value available** will be shown in the centre display. This does **not** mean that there is something wrong in the car's systems.

IMPORTANT

If this symbol is shown then the oil pressure may be too low. Stop the car as quickly as possible and have the car recovered to a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Fill the engine oil



Filler pipe[12],[13]

In some cases, oil may need to be topped up between service intervals. No action with regard to engine oil level needs to be taken until a message is shown in the driver display.

WARNING

If the **Engine oil level Service required** message is shown, visit a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. The oil level may be too high.

WARNING

Do not spill oil onto the hot exhaust manifold due to the risk of fire.

IMPORTANT

If the **Engine oil level low Refill 1 litre** message is shown, fill only with the specified volume, e.g. 1 litre (1 quart).

Related information

- Engine oil (p. 601)
- Adverse driving conditions for engine oil (p. 658)
- Engine oil — specifications (p. 657)
- Ignition positions (p. 432)
- Car status (p. 592)

12 Engines with electronic oil level sensor do not have a dipstick.
13 The appearance of the engine compartment may differ depending on model and engine variant.

Coolant

The coolant ensures that surplus heat is distributed in the circuit, e.g. in order to heat the starter battery or provide heat for the passenger compartment.

Only coolant approved by Volvo should be used in order to prevent impairment of the cooling system, engine problems, etc.

Prescribed grade: Ready-mixed coolant approved by Volvo. If concentrated coolant is used, mix with 50% water (of approved water quality, not salt water, etc.). Consult a Volvo dealer if unsure.

Only coolant approved by Volvo should be used in order to prevent impairment of the cooling system, engine problems, etc.

WARNING

Swallowing coolant is hazardous, it may cause damage to organs (kidneys). The product contains ethylene glycol, inhibitor, water, etc.

Related information

- Topping up coolant (p. 604)

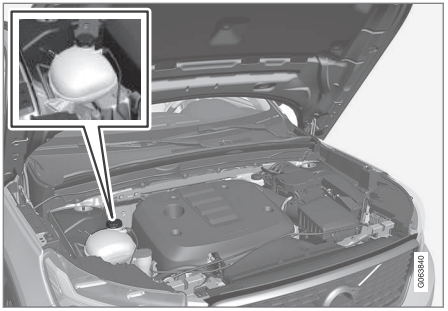
Topping up coolant

When topping up the coolant, follow the instructions on the packaging. Never top up with water only. The risk of freezing increases with both too little and too much coolant concentrate.

If there is coolant under the car, if there is coolant smoke, or if more than 2 litres (approx. 2 quarts) have been filled, always call for recovery to avoid the risk of engine damage due to a defective cooling system when attempting to start the car.

WARNING

The coolant may be very hot. Never open the cap when the coolant is hot. If a top-up is required, unscrew the expansion tank cap slowly to allow any overpressure to disappear.



Coolant expansion tank

– Screw off the cap and top up with coolant if necessary. The coolant level must not exceed the **MAX** mark outside the expansion tank.

IMPORTANT

- Harmful if ingested. May cause organ (kidney) damage.
- Use ready-mixed coolant as recommended by Volvo. If concentrated liquid is used, make sure that the ratio is 50 % coolant to 50 % water of an approved quality.
- Do not mix different coolants.
- Only new coolant should be used when replacing major cooling system components to ensure the system has sufficient corrosion protection.
- The engine must only be run with a well-filled cooling system. Otherwise, temperatures that are too high may occur resulting in the risk of damage (cracks) in the cylinder head.
- A high content of chlorine, chlorides and other salts may cause corrosion in the cooling system.

Related information

- Engine compartment overview (p. 600)
- Coolant (p. 604)

Starter battery

The starter battery is used to start up the electrical system and drive electrical equipment in the car. The hybrid battery is used when the internal combustion engine is started.

The electrical system is single-pole and uses the chassis and engine casing as a conductor.

The starter battery is a 12 V AGM battery (Absorbed Glass Mat), designed for regenerative charging, and to support the functionality of the car's different systems.

The service life and function of the starter battery is influenced by factors such as the number of starts, discharging, driving style, driving conditions, climatic conditions etc.

- Never disconnect the starter battery when the engine is running.
- Check that the cables to the starter battery are correctly connected and properly tightened.

⚠ WARNING

- The battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
- Do not connect the jump leads to any fuel system component or any moving part. Be careful of hot engine parts.
- The battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
- If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.
- Never smoke near the battery.

The service life and capacity of the starter battery

The service life of the battery is affected by several factors, including factors such as the number of starts, discharging, driving style, driving conditions, climatic conditions, etc. Battery starting capacity decreases gradually with time and therefore needs to be recharged if the car is not used for a long time or when it is only driven short distances. Extreme cold further limits starting capacity. If the starter battery is discharged a large number of times, it will negatively affect the service life.

In order to maintain the starter battery in good condition, it is recommended that there is at least 15 minutes driving/week or that the battery is connected to a battery charger with automatic trickle charging. A starter battery that is kept fully charged has a maximum service life.

Location

The starter battery is located in the cargo area.

⚠ WARNING

If the starter battery is disconnected, the automatic opening and closing function must be reset to work properly. A reset must take place for pinch protection to work.

IMPORTANT

On certain models, the battery is attached with a retaining strap. Make sure the retaining strap is properly tightened.

Specifications for starter battery

Battery type	H7 AGM
Voltage (V)	12
Cold start capacity[A] - CCA[B] (A)	800
Size, L×B×H	315×175×190 mm (12.4×6.9×7.5 inches)
Capacity (Ah)	80

[A] According to EN standard.
[B] Cold Cranking Amperes.

Volvo recommends entrusting battery replacement to an authorised Volvo workshop.

IMPORTANT

If the battery is replaced, make sure you replace it with a battery with the same size, cold starting capacity and type as the original battery (see the decal on the battery).

Related information

- Symbols on the batteries (p. 608)
- Hybrid battery (p. 608)
- Using jump starting with another battery (p. 468)
- Reset sequence for pinch protection (p. 157)
- Battery recycle (p. 609)

Hybrid battery

The car is equipped with a hybrid battery for electric motor operation - a maintenance-free rechargeable Lithium-ion type battery.

NOTE

The car cannot be started if the hybrid battery is discharged.

If both the starter battery and the hybrid battery are discharged then both batteries must be charged. In such a case, charging only the hybrid battery is not possible. In order for the hybrid battery to be charged, the starter battery must have a certain state of charge.

WARNING

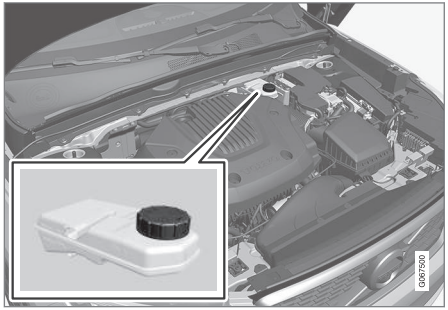
The hybrid battery must only be replaced by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

The service life and capacity of the hybrid battery

The capacity of the hybrid battery diminishes with age and use, which may result in increased use of the internal combustion engine and, as a consequence, reduced fuel economy and reduced range during electric operation.

Coolant

The hybrid battery's cooling system has a separate expansion tank.



IMPORTANT

The hybrid battery's coolant must only be topped up by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Specifications for hybrid battery

Type: Lithium-ion

Total amount of energy: 10.9 kWh.

Related information

- Symbols on the batteries (p. 608)
- Starter battery (p. 606)
- Charging the hybrid battery (p. 409)
- Battery recycle (p. 609)

Symbols on the batteries

There are information and warning symbols on the batteries.

	Use protective goggles.
	Further information in the owner's manual for the car.
	Store the battery out of the reach of children.
	The battery contains corrosive acid.

	Avoid sparks and naked flames.
	Risk of explosion.
	Must be taken for recycling.

Related information

- Starter battery (p. 606)
- Hybrid battery (p. 608)
- Battery recycle (p. 609)

Battery recycle

A used starter battery must be recycled in an environmentally sound manner.
Consult a workshop in the event of uncertainty about how this type of waste should be discarded - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Starter battery (p. 606)
- Hybrid battery (p. 608)
- Symbols on the batteries (p. 608)

Fuses and central electrical units

All electrical functions and components are protected by a number of fuses in order to protect the car's electrical system from damage by short circuiting or overloading.

WARNING

Never use a foreign object or a fuse with an amperage higher than that specified when replacing a fuse. This could cause significant damage to the electrical system and possibly lead to fire.

WARNING

Orange-coloured cables must only be handled by qualified personnel.

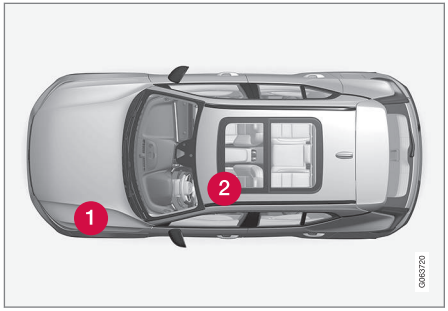
WARNING

Several components in the car work with high-voltage current that could be dangerous in the event of incorrect intervention.

Do not touch anything that is not clearly described in the owner's manual for the car.

If an electrical component or function does not work, it may be because the component's fuse was temporarily overloaded and failed. If the same fuse fails repeatedly then there is a fault in the circuit. Volvo recommends contacting an authorised Volvo workshop for checking.

Location of central electrical units



1. Engine compartment
2. Under the left-hand front seat

Related information

- Replacing a fuse (p. 610)
- Fuses in engine compartment (p. 611)
- Fuses under the left-hand front seat (p. 617)

Replacing a fuse

All electrical functions and components are protected by a number of fuses in order to protect the car's electrical system from damage by short circuiting or overloading.

1. Look in the fuse diagram to locate the fuse.
2. Pull out the fuse and check from the side to see whether the curved wire has blown.
3. If this is the case, replace it with a new fuse of the same colour and amperage.

⚠ WARNING

Never use a foreign object or a fuse with an amperage higher than that specified when replacing a fuse. This could cause significant damage to the electrical system and possibly lead to fire.

⚠ WARNING

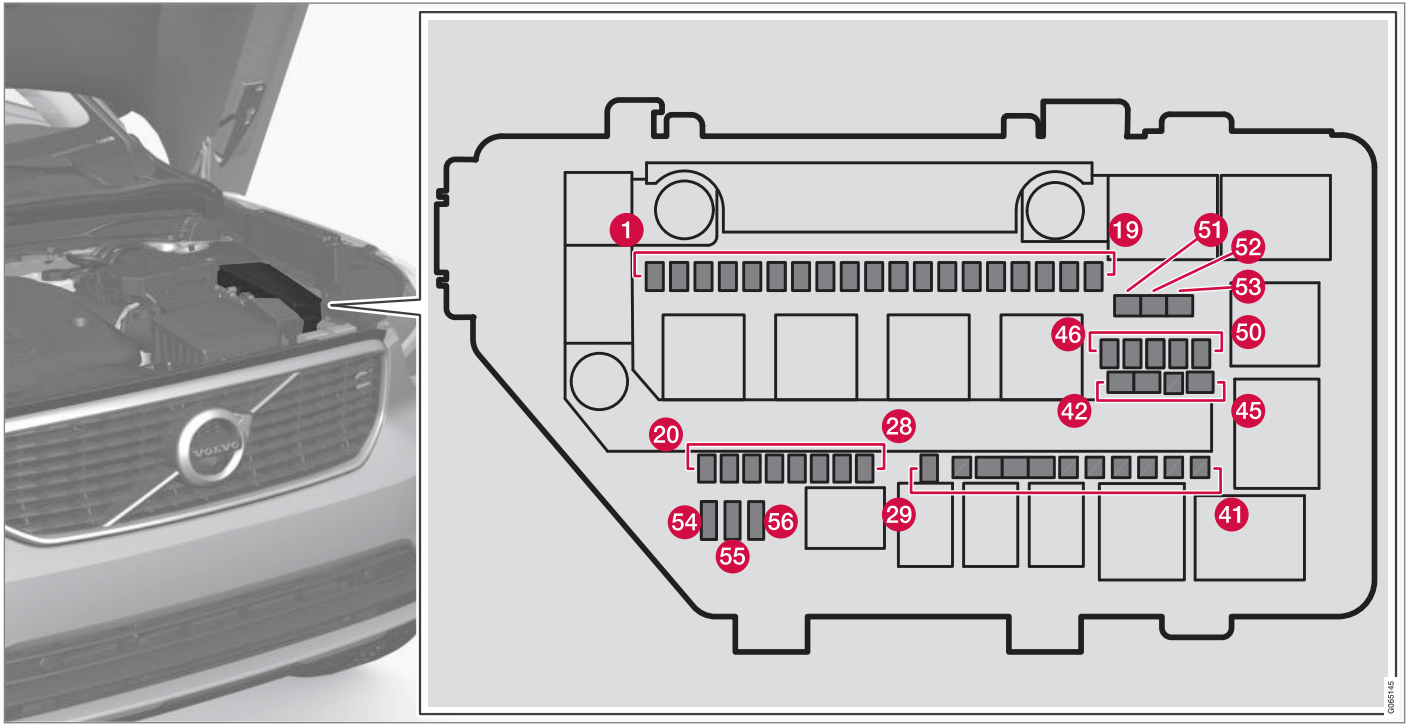
Contact an authorised Volvo workshop about the fuses not mentioned in the owner's manual. If replacing the fuse is not performed correctly, it can cause serious damage to the electrical systems.

Related information

- Fuses and central electrical units (p. 609)
- Fuses in engine compartment (p. 611)
- Fuses under the left-hand front seat (p. 617)

Fuses in engine compartment

Fuses in the engine compartment protect engine and brake functions, amongst other things.



On the inside of the cover there are tweezers that facilitate the procedure for the removal and fitting of fuses.

The fuse box also provides space for several spare fuses.

Positions

On the inside of the cover is a label that shows the location of the fuses.

	Function	Ampere	Type
1	USB port, tunnel console, rear*	5	Micro
	Double USB ports, tunnel console, rear*	7,5	Micro
2	12 V socket in tunnel console, front	15	Micro
3	–	–	Micro
4	12 V socket in cargo area*	15	Micro
5	Engine Control Module (ECM)	20	Micro
6	Ignition coils; Spark plugs	15	Micro
7	Solenoids (petrol); Valve; Thermostat for engine cooling system (petrol); EGR cooling pump (diesel); Glow control module (diesel) Engine Control Module (ECM)	15	Micro
8	Solenoids (petrol); Valve; Thermostat for engine cooling system (petrol); Cooling pump for EGR (diesel); Glow control module (diesel); Vacuum regulators; Valve; Valve for output pulse (diesel) Valves for cooling[A]	10 15[A]	Micro
9	Lambda probe, centre (petrol); Lambda probe, rear (diesel)	15	Micro
10	Sensor for nitrous oxides (diesel); Engine Control Module (ECM)	15	Micro
11	Coolant pump	20	Micro

* Option/accessory.

	Function	Ampere	Type
12	Right-hand headlamp	20	Micro
13	Left-hand headlamp	20	Micro
14	Airbags	5	Micro
15	Accelerator pedal sensor	5	Micro
16	Supplied when the ignition is switched on: Engine control module; Transmission components; Electric steering servo; Central electronic module; Control module for brake system	5	Micro
17	Exterior audio module OBD-II firewall	5	Micro
18	Alcohol lock*	5	Micro
19	–	–	Micro
20	Internal relay coils	5	Micro
21	–	–	Micro
22	Sensor for brake pedal	5	Micro
23	Calculation unit	5	Micro
24	Control module for actuator for engagement/change of automatic gearbox gear positions	5	Micro
	Hydraulic clutch control unit	25	Micro
25	Transmission control module	15	Micro
	Hydraulic clutch control unit	25	Micro

	Function	Ampere	Type
26	Engine Control Module (ECM)	5	Micro
27	Charging unit (OBC)	5	Micro
28	High voltage battery; Inverter generator	5	Micro
29	Horn	20	Micro
30	Siren*	5	Micro
31	Windscreen wipers	30	MCase[B]
32	Control module for brake system (valves, parking brake)	40	MCase[B]
33	Control unit for brake system (ABS pump)	40	MCase[B]
34	Brake booster	40	MCase[B]
35	Actuator for transmission	30	MCase[B]
36	Actuator for transmission	30	MCase[B]
37	–	–	–
38	Right-hand headlamp; Left-hand headlamp	30	MCase[B]
39	–	–	MCase[B]
40	Start relay	30	MCase[B]
41	Towbar control module*	25	MCase[B]
42	Towbar control module*	40	MCase[B]

* Option/accessory.

	Function	Ampere	Type
43	–	–	MCase[B]
44	Power driver seat*	20	MCase[B]
45	–	–	MCase[B]
46	–	–	Micro
47	Air conditioning	5	Micro
48	High voltage battery; Inverter generator	5	Micro
49	Shut-off valve for the hybrid battery's coolant; Coolant pump 1 for hybrid battery	15	Micro
50	Coolant pump for electric drive system	15	Micro
51	Fuel filter heater (diesel)	30	MCase[B]
52	Heated windscreen* right-hand side	40	MCase[B]
53	Heated windscreen* left-hand side	40	MCase[B]
54	Control function for support battery	5	Micro
55	Left-hand headlamp	20	Micro
56	Right-hand headlamp	20	Micro

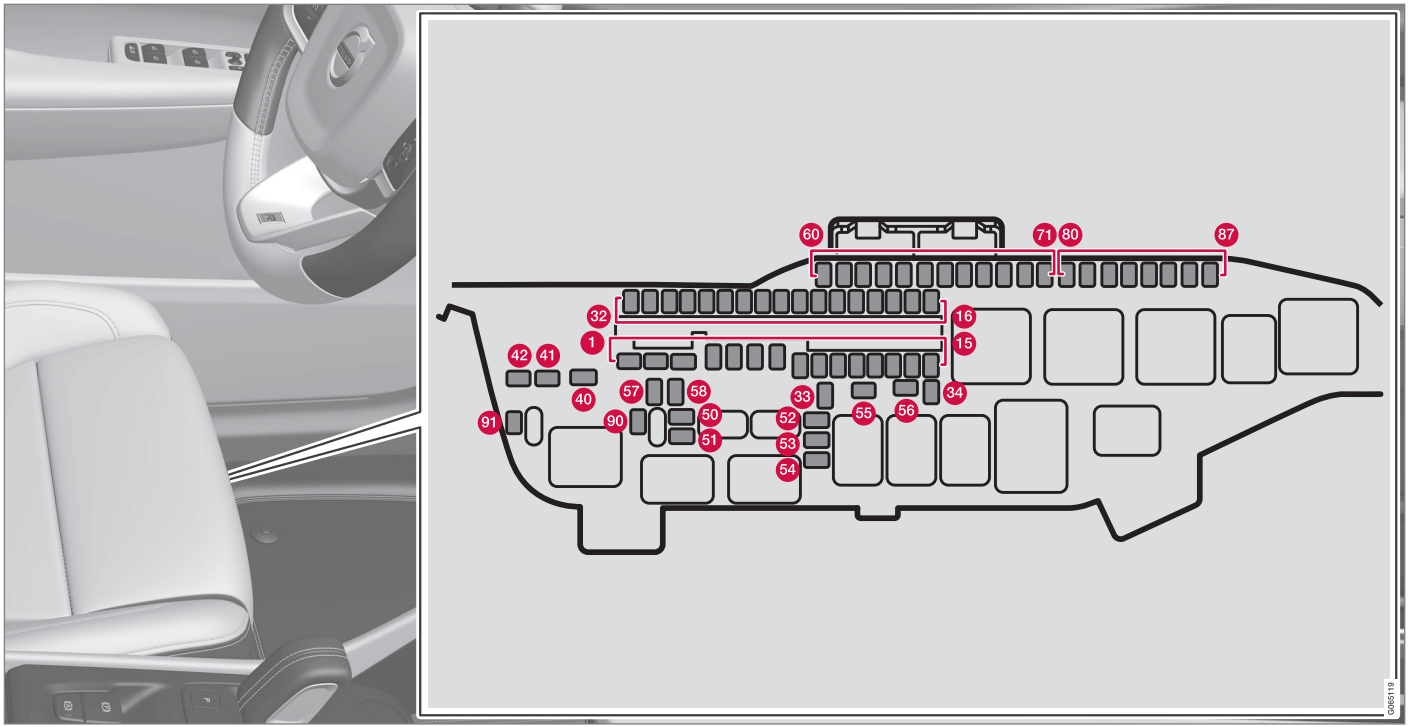
[A] Applies to petrol engines, generation 3 (VEP4_G3).
[B] This type of fuse should be replaced by a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Fuses and central electrical units (p. 609)
- Replacing a fuse (p. 610)

Fuses under the left-hand front seat

Fuses under the left-hand front seat protect, amongst other things, electrical sockets, displays and door modules.



The **fuse box in the engine compartment** provides space for several spare fuses. On the inside of the cover there are tweezers that facilitate the procedure for the removal and fitting of fuses.

Positions

On the inside of the cover is a label that shows the location of the fuses.

	Function	Ampere	Type
1	Audio control device (amplifier)[A]	40	MCase[B]
2	Central Electric Module A: Sensors, radar units, power seats*	40	MCase[B]
3	Central Electric Module B: Sensors, radar units, power seats*	40	MCase[B]
4	Fan module for climate control system, front	40	MCase[B]
5	Power operated tailgate*	25	MCase[B]
6	Power seat*, right	20	MCase[B]
7	Parking heater*	25	MCase[B]
8	Control module for reduction of nitrous oxides (diesel)	30	MCase[B]
9	Door module in right-hand rear door	20	Micro
10	Door module in left-hand rear door	20	Micro
11	Door module in left-hand front door	20	Micro
12	–	–	Micro
13	Door module in right-hand front door	20	Micro
14	Seat heating, rear*	15	Micro
15	The fuel tank's insulation valve; Intermediate voltage module	5	Micro
16	Calculation module	5	Micro
17	Sun sensor	5	Micro

	Function	Ampere	Type
18	Steering lock	7.5	Micro
19	Control module for climate control system	7.5	Micro
20	Interior movement detectors*	5	Micro
21	Driver display	5	Micro
22	Keypad in centre console	5	Micro
23	Steering wheel module	5	Micro
24	Module for start knob; Electronic shifting module; Electronic parking brake	5	Micro
25	Centre display	5	Micro
26	Control module for online car; Control module for Volvo On Call	5	Micro
27	Module for multi-band antenna	5	Micro
28	Relay coils	5	Micro
29	Module for detecting foot movement* (for opening the power operated tailgate)	5	Micro
30	Sensus control module TV*C	15	Micro
31	Diagnostic socket OBDII	10	Micro
32	Alcohol lock*	5	Micro
33	Lock motor for head restraint on rear left-hand side	15	Micro

* Option/accessory.

	Function	Ampere	Type
34	Lock motor for head restraint on rear right-hand side	15	Micro
40	Rear window defroster	30	MCase[B]
41	Seatbelt pretensioner module, left-hand side	40	MCase[B]
42	Seatbelt pretensioner module, right-hand side	40	MCase[B]
50	Humidity sensor	5	Micro
51	Control module for fuel pump	20	Micro
52	Coolant pump	7.5	Micro
53	Steering wheel module for heated steering wheel*	15	Micro
54	Air humidity sensor Electric additional heater	5	Micro
55	Headlamp washers*	25	MCase[B]
56	Windscreen and rear window washers	25	MCase[B]
57	–	–	MCase[B]
58	–	–	MCase[B]
59	–	–	Micro
60	–	–	Micro
61	–	–	Micro

	Function	Ampere	Type
62	–	–	Micro
63	Seatbelt pretensioner module	5	Micro
64	Blind Spot Information (BLIS)*: control module, exterior reversing sound	5	Micro
65	–	–	Micro
66	–	–	Micro
67	All Wheel Drive (AWD) control module*	15	Micro
68	–	–	Micro
69	Parking camera*	5	Micro
70	–	–	Micro
71	Control module for airbags and seatbelt tensioners	5	Micro
80	Rear window wiper	15	Micro
81	Roof console for panoramic roof*	20	Micro
82	–	–	Micro
83	Interior lighting; Dimming of interior rearview mirror*; Rain and light sensor*; Control panels in rear doors and cargo area	7.5	Micro
84	–	–	Micro
85	Control module for driver support functions	5	Micro
86	Alcohol lock*	5	Micro

* Option/accessory.

	Function	Ampere	Type
87	Wireless mobile charger*; USB port	5	Micro
90	–	–	Micro
91	–	–	Micro

A Applicable to certain variants.
B This type of fuse should be replaced by a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
C Applies to certain markets.

Related information

- Fuses and central electrical units (p. 609)
- Replacing a fuse (p. 610)

Bulb replacement

Lamp types vary depending on model and equipment level. If a bulb[14] breaks, it can be replaced according to the method described in the Owner's Manual.

If a fault occurs in LED[15] lamps, the entire lamp unit usually must be replaced.

NOTE

For information about bulbs not covered in this Owner's Manual, contact a Volvo dealer or an authorised Volvo workshop.

WARNING

The car's electrical system must be in ignition position **0** when replacing bulbs.

IMPORTANT

Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease from your fingers is vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.

NOTE

If an error message remains after the broken bulb has been replaced then we recommend visiting an authorised Volvo workshop.

NOTE

Outside lighting such as headlamps and rear lamps may temporarily have condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal, all exterior lighting is designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing when the lamp has been switched on for a time.

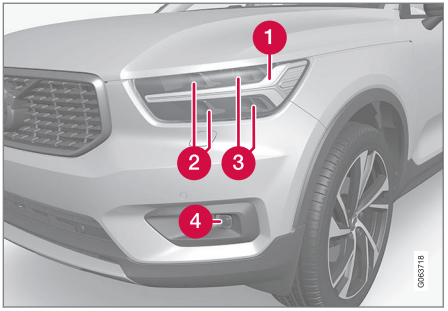
Related information

- Exterior lamp positions (p. 624)
- Replacing the rear direction indicator bulb (p. 625)
- Changing brake light bulb (p. 626)
- Replacing the rear fog lamp bulb (p. 627)
- Bulb specifications (p. 628)

Exterior lamp positions

The exterior lighting of the car uses a number of different lamps. An LED[16] type lamp must be replaced by a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Lamps, front

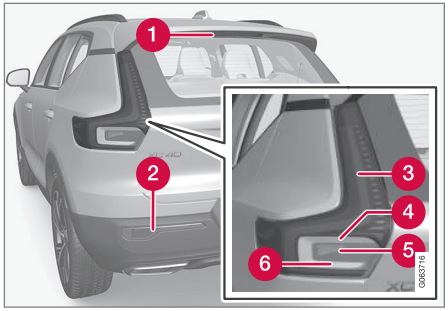


1. Daytime running lights/position lamps/direction indicators (LED)
2. Main beam (LED)
3. Dipped beam (LED)
4. Front fog lamps/cornering lights* (LED)

14 Some cars have no bulbs.
15 LED (Light Emitting Diode)
16 LED (Light Emmitting Diode)

* Option/accessory.

Lamps, rear



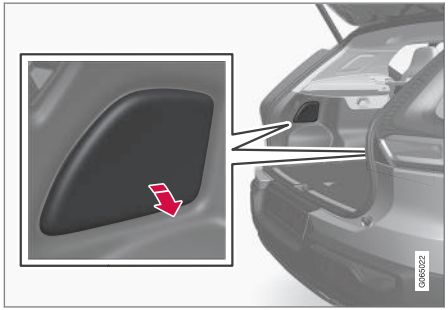
1. Brake light - central, high-level (LED)
2. Fog lamp
3. Position lamps (LED)
4. Direction indicators
5. Brake lights
6. Reversing lamps (LED)

Related information

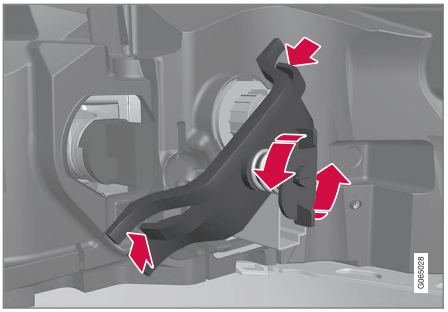
- Bulb replacement (p. 624)
- Bulb specifications (p. 628)
- Lighting control (p. 140)

Replacing the rear direction indicator bulb

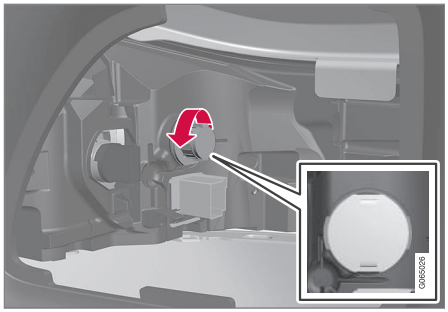
Bulbs for rear direction indicators are located behind the panel in the side of the cargo area.



1. Press in the panel hatch at the upper edge to detach it.
2. Move the insulation aside to access the supporting bridge.



3. Unscrew and remove the spring bolt anti-clockwise, press the clips into the sides and remove the supporting bridge. It is easiest to allow the screw to remain in the supporting bridge.



4. Undo the grey bulb holder by turning it anticlockwise and pulling it out.
5. Remove the bulb by pressing it in and turning anticlockwise.
6. Fit a new bulb by pressing it in and turning it clockwise.
7. Attach the bulb holder by turning it clockwise.
8. Fit the supporting bridge with associated spring bolt and make sure that the clips align in the correct position. Tighten the spring bolt until it stops, max. 2 Nm (1.5 ft lbs).
9. Move back the insulation and then hook in the panel and press it back into place.

IMPORTANT

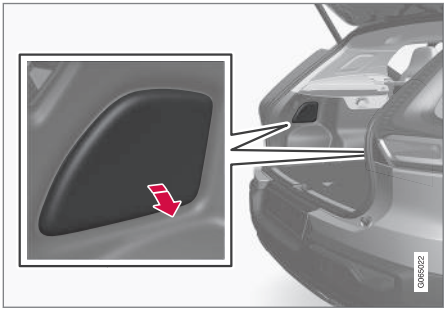
Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease from your fingers is vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.

Related information

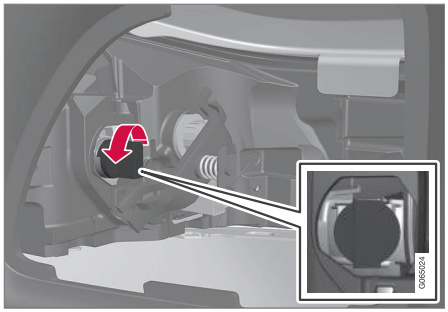
- Exterior lamp positions (p. 624)
- Bulb specifications (p. 628)
- Bulb replacement (p. 624)

Changing brake light bulb

Bulbs for brake lights are located behind the panel in the side of the cargo area.



1. Press in the panel hatch at the upper edge to detach it.
2. Move the insulation aside to access the brake light bulb.



3. Undo the black bulb holder by turning it anticlockwise and pulling it out.
4. Remove the bulb by pressing it in and turning anticlockwise.
5. Fit a new bulb by pressing it in and turning it clockwise.
6. Attach the bulb holder by turning it clockwise.
7. Move back the insulation and then hook in the panel and press it back into place.

IMPORTANT

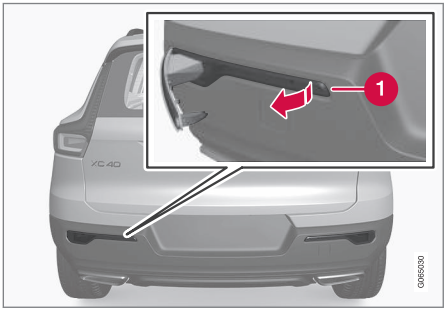
Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease from your fingers is vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.

Related information

- Exterior lamp positions (p. 624)
- Bulb specifications (p. 628)

Replacing the rear fog lamp bulb

The rear foglight is fitted in the rear bumper on the driver's side.



The rear fog light is only fitted on the driver's side.

1. Loosen the foglight unit on the driver's side by inserting a flat object, such as a table knife or a screwdriver, on the bulb kit's narrower short side of the keypad and then prize the foglight unit out.
2. Unplug the connector.
3. Undo the bulb holder by turning it anticlockwise and pulling it out.
4. Remove the bulb by pressing it in and turning anticlockwise.
5. Fit a new bulb by pressing it in and turning it clockwise.
6. Attach the bulb holder by turning it clockwise.

7. Plug in the connector.
8. Insert the hook on the wide part of the foglight unit in the rear bumper and rotate the unit inwards so that the clips engage.

Related information

- Exterior lamp positions (p. 624)
- Bulb specifications (p. 628)

Bulb specifications

Specifications for replaceable bulbs.

Contact a workshop[17] if faults occur in lamps other than bulbs. If a fault occurs in LED[18] lamps, the entire lamp unit usually must be replaced.

Function	W[A]	Type
Rear direction indicators	24	PY24W
Brake lights	21	H21W LL
Rear fog lamp	21	H21W LL

[A] Watt

Related information

- Exterior lamp positions (p. 624)
- Bulb replacement (p. 624)

Cleaning the interior

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

IMPORTANT

- Certain items of coloured clothing (e.g. dark jeans and suede garments) may stain the upholstery. If this occurs, it is important to clean and treat these parts of the upholstery as soon as possible.
- Never use strong solvents such as washer fluid, pure petrol or white spirit or concentrated alcohol to clean the interior, since this may damage the upholstery as well as other interior materials.
- Never spray the cleaning agent directly onto components that have electrical buttons and controls. Wipe them instead using a moistened cloth containing the cleaning agent.
- Sharp objects and Velcro may damage the fabric upholstery.
- Only use cleaning agents on the type of material for which they were intended.

17 An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
18 LED (Light Emitting Diode)

Related information

- Cleaning the centre display (p. 629)
- Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining (p. 630)
- Cleaning the seatbelts (p. 631)
- Cleaning textile floor and entrance mats (p. 631)
- Cleaning leather upholstery* (p. 632)
- Cleaning the leather steering wheel (p. 633)
- Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts (p. 633)

Cleaning the centre display

Dirt, stains and grease from fingers can affect the centre display's performance and readability. Clean the screen frequently with a microfibre cloth.

1. Turn off the centre display with a long press on the home button.
2. Wipe the screen with the microfibre cloth supplied or use another microfibre cloth of equivalent quality. Wipe the screen with a clean and dry microfibre cloth using small circular movements. If necessary, lightly moisten the microfibre cloth with clean water.
3. Activate the display with a short press on the home button.

IMPORTANT

The microfibre cloth used to clean the centre display must be free from sand and dirt.

IMPORTANT

When cleaning the centre display, only use gentle pressure on the screen. Heavy pressure can damage the screen.

IMPORTANT

Do not spray any liquid or caustic chemicals directly on the centre display. Do not use window cleaning agent, other cleaning agents, aerosol spray, solvents, alcohol, ammonia or cleaning agent containing abrasive.

Never use abrasive cloths, paper towels or tissue paper, since they may scratch the centre display.

Related information

- Cleaning the interior (p. 628)
- Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining (p. 630)
- Cleaning the seatbelts (p. 631)
- Cleaning textile floor and entrance mats (p. 631)
- Cleaning leather upholstery* (p. 632)

- Cleaning the leather steering wheel (p. 633)
- Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts (p. 633)

Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining

It is recommended to use a fabric cleaning agent when cleaning textile fabric. Clean if necessary, and treat stains straight away.

IMPORTANT

Never scrape or rub a stain since this may damage the upholstery.

IMPORTANT

Never use stain removing agent or strong solvents, they could damage the upholstery.

Cleaning fabric upholstery

1. Start by vacuum cleaning the upholstery.
2. Follow the instructions for the fabric cleaning agent.
3. When cleaning fabric, a spray extraction cleaner is recommended for suction of the washing fluid and subsequent water rinsing.

IMPORTANT

Some coloured clothing (such as jeans and suede garments) may stain the fabric upholstery. Heavy stains such as oil may be difficult to remove.

IMPORTANT

Always clean the entire upholstery, even there are only individual stains. This is to avoid water rings.

NOTE

Do not remove the upholstery for cleaning.

Cleaning the headlining

1. Brush the headlining carefully using a soft brush.
2. Follow the instructions for the fabric cleaning agent.
3. Then use a soft and lint-free cloth to wipe the headlining.

IMPORTANT

Careless cleaning can damage the headlining.

Related information

- Cleaning the interior (p. 628)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 629)
- Cleaning the seatbelts (p. 631)
- Cleaning textile floor and entrance mats (p. 631)
- Cleaning leather upholstery* (p. 632)

* Option/accessory.

- Cleaning the leather steering wheel (p. 633)
- Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts (p. 633)

Cleaning the seatbelts

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Use water and a synthetic detergent. A special textile cleaning agent is available from Volvo retailers. Ensure that the seatbelt is dry before allowing it to retract.

Related information

- Cleaning the interior (p. 628)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 629)
- Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining (p. 630)
- Cleaning textile floor and entrance mats (p. 631)
- Cleaning leather upholstery* (p. 632)
- Cleaning the leather steering wheel (p. 633)
- Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts (p. 633)

Cleaning textile floor and entrance mats

It is recommended to use a fabric cleaning agent when cleaning mats. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Remove inlaid carpets for separate cleaning of the floor carpet and the inlaid carpets. Each inlay mat is secured with pins.

1. Remove the inlay mat by taking hold of the inlay mat at each pin and lifting the mat straight up.
2. Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust and dirt.

NOTE

The inlay mats must not be swung around without care or hit against objects to remove dirt since this can crack the inlay mats.

3. A textile cleaner is recommended for stains on the floor mat, after vacuuming.
4. After cleaning, fit the inlay mat in place by pressing it in at each pin.

WARNING

Only use one inlaid mat at each seat, and check before setting off that the mat by the driver's seat is firmly affixed and secured in the pins so that it does not get caught adjacent to and under the pedals.

Related information

- Cleaning the interior (p. 628)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 629)
- Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining (p. 630)
- Cleaning the seatbelts (p. 631)
- Cleaning leather upholstery* (p. 632)
- Cleaning the leather steering wheel (p. 633)
- Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts (p. 633)

Cleaning leather upholstery*

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Volvo's leather upholstery* is treated to preserve its original appearance.

Leather upholstery* is a natural product that changes and acquires a beautiful patina over time. Regular cleaning and treatment are required in order that the properties and colours of the leather shall be preserved. Volvo offers a comprehensive product, Volvo Leather Care KitWipes, for cleaning and treatment of leather upholstery. The protective outer layer of the leather is preserved when this is used according to the instructions.

To achieve results that are as good as possible, Volvo recommends cleaning and application of the protective cream one to four times per year (or more frequently if required). Volvo Leather Care Kit/Wipes is available from Volvo dealers.

Cleaning the leather upholstery

1. Apply the leather cleaner to a damp sponge and squeeze until a foam is created.
2. Use the sponge on the stain in a circular motion.
3. Thoroughly dampen the stain using the sponge, allow the sponge to absorb the stain without scrubbing.
4. Wipe the stain with a soft cloth and allow the leather to dry thoroughly.

Protecting the leather upholstery

1. Apply a small amount of leather protective agent to a cloth and then apply it to the leather in light circular motions.
2. Allow to dry for about 20 minutes.
   > Protecting the leather upholstery makes it more resistant to the stresses from the sun's UV radiation.

Related information

- Cleaning the interior (p. 628)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 629)
- Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining (p. 630)
- Cleaning the seatbelts (p. 631)
- Cleaning textile floor and entrance mats (p. 631)
- Cleaning the leather steering wheel (p. 633)
- Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts (p. 633)

* Option/accessory.

Cleaning the leather steering wheel

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.
Leather needs to breathe. Never cover the leather steering wheel with protective plastic. We recommend Volvo Leather Care Kit/Wipes for cleaning the leather steering wheel. First remove dirt, dust, etc. with a damp sponge or cloth.

IMPORTANT

Sharp objects, e.g. rings, can damage the leather on the steering wheel.

Related information

- Cleaning the interior (p. 628)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 629)
- Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining (p. 630)
- Cleaning the seatbelts (p. 631)
- Cleaning textile floor and entrance mats (p. 631)
- Cleaning leather upholstery* (p. 632)
- Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts (p. 633)

Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away.
A fibrillated fibre or microfibre cloth, lightly moistened with water, available from Volvo dealers, is recommended for cleaning interior parts and surfaces.

Do not scrape or rub stains. Never use strong stain removers, either.

IMPORTANT

Do not use solvent that contains alcohol when cleaning the glass for the driver display.

IMPORTANT

Keep in mind that high gloss surfaces are easily scratched. Clean these surfaces with a clean, dry microfibre cloth using small, circular motions. If needed, dampen the microfibre cloth with a little clean water.

Related information

- Cleaning the interior (p. 628)
- Cleaning the centre display (p. 629)
- Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining (p. 630)
- Cleaning the seatbelts (p. 631)
- Cleaning textile floor and entrance mats (p. 631)
- Cleaning leather upholstery* (p. 632)
- Cleaning the leather steering wheel (p. 633)

Cleaning the exterior

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. This means that the car is easier to clean since the dirt does not attach as firmly. It also reduces the risk of scratches and keeps the car fresh. Perform the cleaning in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo that is recommended by Volvo.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 634)
- Polishing and waxing (p. 634)
- Handwashing (p. 635)
- Automatic car wash (p. 636)
- High-pressure washing (p. 638)
- Cleaning the wiper blades (p. 638)
- Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components (p. 639)
- Cleaning wheel rims (p. 640)
- Rustproofing (p. 640)

Polishing and waxing

Polish and wax the car if the paintwork is dull or to give the paintwork extra protection. The car does not need to be polished until it is at least one year old. However, the car can be waxed during this time. Do not polish or wax the car in direct sunlight, the surface being polished should be a maximum of 45 °C (113 °F).

- Wash and dry the car thoroughly before you begin polishing or waxing. Clean off asphalt and tar stains using tar remover or white spirit. More stubborn stains can be removed using fine rubbing paste designed for car paintwork. Use cleaning agent recommended by Volvo.
- Polish first with a polish and then wax with liquid or solid wax. Follow the instructions on the packaging carefully. Many preparations contain both polish and wax.

IMPORTANT

Never polish or wax any matt details on the car. This can destroy the matt effect and give the surface a permanent shine.

IMPORTANT

Avoid waxing and polishing on plastic and rubber.

When using degreasant on plastic and rubber, only rub with light pressure if it is necessary. Use a soft washing sponge.

Polishing glossy trim mouldings could wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.

Polishing agent that contains abrasive must not be used.

IMPORTANT

Use cleaning agent recommended by Volvo. Other treatment such as preserving, sealing, protection, lustre sealing or similar could damage the paintwork. Paintwork damage caused by such treatments is not covered by Volvo warranty.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 634)
- Handwashing (p. 635)
- Automatic car wash (p. 636)
- High-pressure washing (p. 638)
- Cleaning the wiper blades (p. 638)
- Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components (p. 639)

- Cleaning wheel rims (p. 640)
- Rustproofing (p. 640)

Handwashing

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. This means that the car is easier to clean since the dirt does not attach as firmly. It also reduces the risk of scratches and keeps the car fresh. Carry out cleaning in a cleaning area with an oil separator, and use car shampoo. Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo.

Important points to remember when handwashing the car

- Avoid washing the car in direct sunlight. This can cause the detergent or wax to dry and have an abrasive effect.
- Remove bird droppings from the paintwork as soon as possible. They contain substances that damage and discolour paintwork very quickly. For example, use soft paper or sponge soaked in plenty of water. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended for the removal of any discolouration.
- Wash the underbody, including wheel housings and bumpers.
- Rinse the entire car until the dissolved dirt has been removed so as to reduce the risk of scratches from washing. Do not spray directly onto the locks.
- If necessary, use cold degreasing agent on very dirty surfaces. Note that in this case, the surfaces must not be hot from the sun.
- Wash using a sponge, car shampoo and plenty of lukewarm water. Ensure that the sponge is dirt-free. Dirt on the sponge may cause you to scratch the car during washing.
- Clean the wiper blades with a lukewarm soap solution or car shampoo.
- Dry the car using a clean, soft chamois or a water scraper. If you avoid allowing drops of water to dry in strong sunlight, you reduce the risk of water drying stains which may need to be polished out.
- After the car has been washed, tar from asphalt may remain. Use tar remover that is recommended by Volvo to get rid of the last spots.

WARNING

Always have the engine cleaned by a workshop. There is a risk of fire if the engine is hot.

IMPORTANT

Dirty headlamps have impaired functionality. Clean them regularly, e.g. when refuelling.

Do not use any corrosive cleaning agents but use water and a non-scratching sponge instead.

NOTE

Outside lighting such as headlamps and rear lamps may temporarily have condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal, all exterior lighting is designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing when the lamp has been switched on for a time.

IMPORTANT

- Make sure that the panoramic roof* and sun visor are closed before washing the car.
- Never use polishing agent with abrasive properties on the panoramic roof.
- Never use wax on the rubber mouldings around the panoramic roof.

IMPORTANT

Remember to remove dirt from the drain holes in the doors and in the sills after washing the car.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 634)
- Polishing and waxing (p. 634)
- Automatic car wash (p. 636)
- High-pressure washing (p. 638)
- Cleaning the wiper blades (p. 638)
- Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components (p. 639)
- Cleaning wheel rims (p. 640)
- Rustproofing (p. 640)
- Automatic parking brake activation setting (p. 440)

Automatic car wash

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the car is left dirty, the more difficult it will be to get it completely clean and there is a risk of scratching the paintwork.

Washing the car in an automatic car wash is a simple and quick way of getting it clean, but it cannot reach everywhere. Volvo recommends washing your car by hand or using an automatic car wash supplemented with washing by hand.

NOTE

Volvo recommends that the car is not washed in an automatic car wash during the first few months (this is because the paintwork has not fully hardened).

IMPORTANT

Before driving the car into an automatic car wash, deactivate the functions for automatic braking when stationary and automatic parking brake application. If these functions are not deactivated, the brake system will jam when the car is stationary and the car will not be able to move.

* Option/accessory.

IMPORTANT

For car washes where the car is pulled forward with rolling wheels, the following applies:

1. Before washing the car, make sure that the automatic rain sensor is deactivated, otherwise there is the risk of it starting and damaging the wiper arms.
2. Make sure that the door mirrors are retracted, any auxiliary lamps secured, antennas retracted or removed, otherwise they risk being damaged by the automatic car wash.
3. Drive into the car wash.
4. Switch off the "Automatic braking at standstill" function using the button Ⓐ on the tunnel console.
5. Switch off the "Automatic parking brake application" function via the top view of the centre display.
6. Switch off the engine by pressing the start button next to the steering wheel. Hold the button depressed for at least 2 seconds.

The car is ready for the car wash.

IMPORTANT

The system will automatically switch to **P** mode unless the above step is followed. The wheels are locked in **P** mode, which they should not be when putting the car through an automatic car wash.

NOTE

Be aware that if the car has the keyless locking and unlocking function*, the car can be locked/unlocked when the car is being washed if the remote control key is within range.

Test the brakes

WARNING

Always test the brakes after washing the car, including the parking brake, to ensure that moisture and corrosion do not attack the brake linings and reduce braking performance.

Depress the brake pedal now and then while driving long distances in rain or slush. The friction heat means that the brake linings heat up and dry out. Do the same after starting in very damp or cold weather.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 634)
- Polishing and waxing (p. 634)
- Handwashing (p. 635)
- High-pressure washing (p. 638)
- Cleaning the wiper blades (p. 638)
- Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components (p. 639)
- Cleaning wheel rims (p. 640)
- Rustproofing (p. 640)
- Automatic braking when stationary (p. 441)
- Automatic parking brake activation setting (p. 440)
- Keyless and touch-sensitive surfaces* (p. 256)

High-pressure washing

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the car is left dirty, the more difficult it will be to get it completely clean and there is a risk of scratching the paintwork. Wash the car in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo that is recommended by Volvo.

When using high-pressure washing, use sweeping movements and make sure that the nozzle does not come closer than 30 cm (13 in.) to the surface of the car. Do not spray directly onto the locks.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 634)
- Polishing and waxing (p. 634)
- Handwashing (p. 635)
- Automatic car wash (p. 636)
- Cleaning the wiper blades (p. 638)
- Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components (p. 639)
- Cleaning wheel rims (p. 640)
- Rustproofing (p. 640)

Cleaning the wiper blades

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the car is left dirty, the more difficult it will be to get it completely clean and there is a risk of scratching the paintwork. Wash the car in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo that is recommended by Volvo.

Asphalt, dust and salt residue on wiper blades, as well as insects, ice etc. on the windscreen, impair the service life of wiper blades.

When cleaning, set the wiper blades in service position.

NOTE

Wash the wiper blades and windscreen regularly with a lukewarm soap solution or car shampoo. Do not use any strong solvents.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 634)
- Polishing and waxing (p. 634)
- Handwashing (p. 635)
- Automatic car wash (p. 636)
- High-pressure washing (p. 638)
- Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components (p. 639)
- Cleaning wheel rims (p. 640)
- Rustproofing (p. 640)

Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the car is left dirty, the more difficult it will be to get it completely clean and there is a risk of scratching the paintwork. Use car shampoo that is recommended by Volvo.

A special cleaning agent available from Volvo dealers is recommended for the cleaning and care of coloured plastic parts, rubber and trim components, e.g. glossy trim mouldings. When using such a cleaning agent the instructions must be followed carefully.

Avoid washing the car with detergent with a pH value below 3.5 or above 11.5. This can cause discolouration of anodised aluminium components*, as illustrated. We advise against use of abrasive polishing agents, as illustrated.

Parts that should be washed using a cleaning agent with a pH value between 3.5 and 11.5.

IMPORTANT

Avoid waxing and polishing on plastic and rubber.

When using degreasant on plastic and rubber, only rub with light pressure if it is necessary. Use a soft washing sponge.

Polishing glossy trim mouldings could wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.

Polishing agent that contains abrasive must not be used.

IMPORTANT

Avoid washing the car with cleaning agent with a pH value lower than 3.5 or higher than 11.5. This may result in discolouration of anodised aluminium parts such as roof rack and around the side windows.

Never use metal polishing agent on anodised aluminium parts, this can result in discolouration and destroy the surface treatment.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 634)
- Polishing and waxing (p. 634)
- Handwashing (p. 635)
- Automatic car wash (p. 636)
- High-pressure washing (p. 638)
- Cleaning the wiper blades (p. 638)
- Cleaning wheel rims (p. 640)
- Rustproofing (p. 640)

Cleaning wheel rims

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the car is left dirty, the more difficult it will be to get it completely clean and there is a risk of scratching the paintwork. Perform the cleaning in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo that is recommended by Volvo.

Use rim cleaning agent recommended by Volvo.

Strong rim cleaning agents can damage the surface and cause stains on chrome-plated aluminium rims.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 634)
- Polishing and waxing (p. 634)
- Handwashing (p. 635)
- Automatic car wash (p. 636)
- High-pressure washing (p. 638)
- Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components (p. 639)
- Cleaning wheel rims (p. 640)
- Rustproofing (p. 640)

Rustproofing

The car has protection against corrosion.
Anti-corrosion protection for the body consists of metallic protective coatings on the sheet metal, a high-quality painting process, corrosion-protected and minimised metal overlap, and shielding plastic components, abrasion protection and supplemental rust inhibitor on exposed areas. In the chassis, exposed components of the wheel suspension are made of corrosion-resistant cast aluminium.

Inspection and maintenance

The car's anti-corrosion protection normally requires no maintenance, but a good way to reduce the risk of corrosion is to keep the car clean. Strong alkaline or acidic cleaning solutions must be avoided on glossy trim components. Any stone chips should be rectified as soon as they are discovered.

Related information

- Cleaning the exterior (p. 634)
- Polishing and waxing (p. 634)
- Handwashing (p. 635)
- Automatic car wash (p. 636)
- High-pressure washing (p. 638)
- Cleaning the wiper blades (p. 638)
- Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components (p. 639)
- Cleaning wheel rims (p. 640)

Car paintwork

The paintwork consists of several layers and is an important part of the car's rustproofing, and should therefore be checked regularly.
The most common types of paintwork damage are stone chips, scratches, and marks on the edges of wings, doors and bumpers. To avoid the onset of rust, damaged paintwork should be rectified immediately.

Related information

- Touching up minor paintwork damage (p. 641)
- Colour codes (p. 642)

Touching up minor paintwork damage

Paint is an important part of the car's rust-proofing and should therefore be checked regularly. The most common types of paint-work damage are stone chips, scratches, and marks on e.g. the edges of wings, doors and bumpers.

To avoid the onset of rust, damaged paintwork should be rectified immediately.

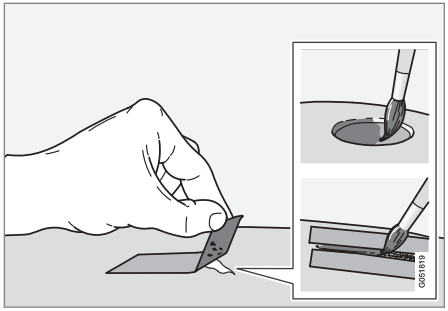
NOTE

When paint is repaired the surface must be clean and dry. The temperature of the surface should be at least 15 °C (59 °F).

Materials that may be needed

- Primer – a special adhesive primer in a spray can is available for e.g. plastic-coated bumpers.
- Basecoat and clearcoat - available in spray cans or as touch-up pens/sticks[19].
- Masking tape.
- Fine sand paper.

Applying touch-up paint to the damaged surface



If the damage has not reached down to the metal, the touch-up paint can be applied directly after the surface has been cleaned.

1. Apply a piece of masking tape over the damaged surface. Then remove the tape to remove any loose paint.

   If the damage is down to the metal, use of a primer is appropriate. In the event of damage to a plastic surface, an adhesive primer should be used to give better results - spray into the lid of the spray can and brush on thinly.
2. Before painting, gentle polishing using a very fine polishing agent may be carried out locally if required (e.g. if there are any uneven edges). The surface is thoroughly cleaned (grease and salt should be removed) and left to dry.
3. Stir the primer well and apply using a fine brush, a matchstick or similar. Finish off with a basecoat and clearcoat once the primer has dried.

For scratches, implement the same procedure but mask around the damaged area to protect the undamaged paintwork.

Touch-up pens and spray paints for touching up paintwork are available from Volvo dealers.

NOTE

If the stone chip has not penetrated down to the meal and an undamaged layer of paint remains in place, fill in with base coat and clear coat as soon as the surface has been cleaned.

Related information

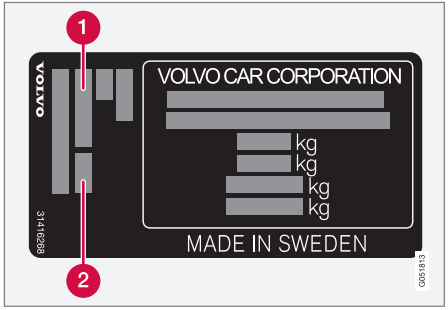
- Car paintwork (p. 640)
- Colour codes (p. 642)

19 Follow the instructions that are included with the package for the touch-up pen/stick.

Colour codes

Colour code

The decal for the colour code is positioned on the car's right-hand door pillar between the front and rear door and will be visible when the right-hand rear door is opened.



1. Exterior colour code
2. Any secondary exterior colour code

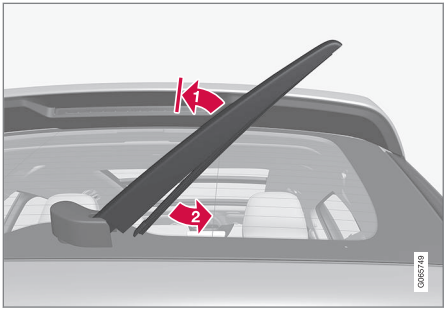
Related information

- Car paintwork (p. 640)
- Touching up minor paintwork damage (p. 641)

Replacing the wiper blade, rear window

The wiper blades sweep water away from the windscreen and rear window. Together with washer fluid, they aim to clean the windows and ensure visibility while driving. Windscreen and rear window wiper blades can be replaced.

Replacing the wiper blade, rear window



Lift the wiper arm from the window and pull the lower section of the blade to the right.

1. Grip the centre of the wiper arm and lift it from the windscreen to lock position.

NOTE

There is a lock position at half extension angle that may feel like resistance, this lock prevents the arm from falling back against the windscreen. The wiper arm must be pulled past the lock for wiper blade replacement.

2. Grip the lower part of the blade and pull to the right until the blade loosens from the arm.

3. Press the new wiper blade into place. You should hear a click. Check that it is firmly installed.
4. Lower the wiper arm.

IMPORTANT

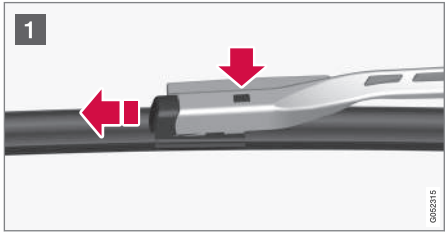
Check the blades regularly. Neglected maintenance shortens the service life of the wiper blades.

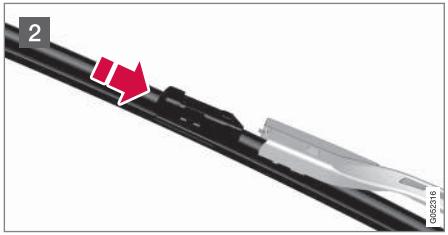
Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 168)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 170)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 172)
- Activating and deactivating the rain sensor's memory function (p. 169)
- Using the rear window wiper and rear window washer (p. 171)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 645)
- Set the wiper blades in service position (p. 644)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 643)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 167)
- Wiper blades and washer fluid (p. 167)

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

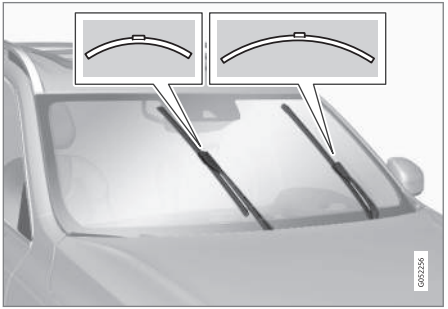
The wiper blades sweep water away from the windscreen and rear window. Together with washer fluid, they aim to clean the windows and ensure visibility while driving. Windscreen and rear window wiper blades can be replaced.





1. Fold up the wiper arm when it is in service position. Service position is activated/deactivated via the function view in the centre display when the car is stationary and the windscreen wipers are not on. Press the button located on the wiper blade mounting and pull straight out parallel with the wiper arm.
2. Slide in the new wiper blade until a "click" is heard.
3. Check that the blade is firmly installed.
4. Fold the wiper arm back towards the windscreen.

The wiper blades are different lengths



NOTE

When replacing the wiper blades, note that they have different lengths. The blade on the driver's side is longer than on the passenger side.

Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 168)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 170)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 172)
- Activating and deactivating the rain sensor's memory function (p. 169)
- Using the rear window wiper and rear window washer (p. 171)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 645)
- Set the wiper blades in service position (p. 644)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 642)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 167)
- Wiper blades and washer fluid (p. 167)

Set the wiper blades in service position

In some situations, the windscreen's wiper blades must be set in service position (vertical position), e.g. when they shall be replaced.

Wiper blades in service position.

In order to change, clean or lift the wiper blades (e.g. for scraping off ice from the windscreen) they must be in service position.

IMPORTANT

Before placing the wiper blades in the service position, make sure that they are not frozen down.

Activating/deactivating service mode

Service mode can be activated/deactivated when the car is stationary and the windscreen wipers are not on. Service mode is activated/deactivated via the function view in the centre display:

Press the **Wiper Service Position** button. The light indicator in the button illuminates when service mode is activated. When activated, the wipers move to the service position. To deactivate the service mode, press **Wiper Service Position** again. The light indicator in the button extinguishes when service mode is deactivated.

The wiper blades also exit the service position if:

- Windscreen wiping is activated.
- Windscreen washing is activated.
- The rain sensor is activated.
- The car is driven away.

IMPORTANT

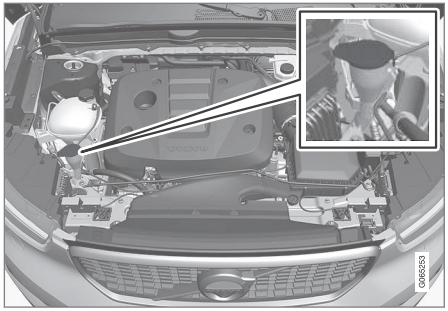
If the wiper arms in service position have been folded up from the windscreen, they must be folded back down onto the windscreen before the activation of wiping, washing or the rain sensor, as well as before driving. This is to avoid scraping the paint on the bonnet.

Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 168)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 170)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 172)
- Activating and deactivating the rain sensor's memory function (p. 169)
- Using the rear window wiper and rear window washer (p. 171)
- Filling washer fluid (p. 645)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 643)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 642)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 167)
- Wiper blades and washer fluid (p. 167)

Filling washer fluid

Washer fluid is used for cleaning the headlamps as well as the windscreen and rear window. Washer fluid with antifreeze must be used when the temperature is under the freezing point.



Washer fluid is filled into the reservoir with the blue cap. The reservoir is used for windscreen washer, rear window washer and headlamp washers*

NOTE

When approx. 1 litre (1 qt) of washer fluid remains in the reservoir, the message **Washer fluid Level low, refill** is shown in the driver display, together with the symbol.

Prescribed grade: Washer fluid recommended by Volvo – with frost protection during cold weather and for temperatures below freezing point.

IMPORTANT

Use Volvo genuine washer fluid or equivalent with a recommended pH of between 6 and 8, in working dilution (e.g. 1:1 with neutral water).

IMPORTANT

Use washer fluid with antifreeze when the temperature is below freezing to avoid the fluid freezing inside the pump, reservoir and hoses.

Volume:

- Cars **with** headlamp washing: 5.5 litres (5.8 qts).
- Cars **without** headlamp washing: 3.5 litres (3.7 qts).

Related information

- Using the rain sensor (p. 168)
- Using windscreen and headlamp washers (p. 170)
- Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing (p. 172)

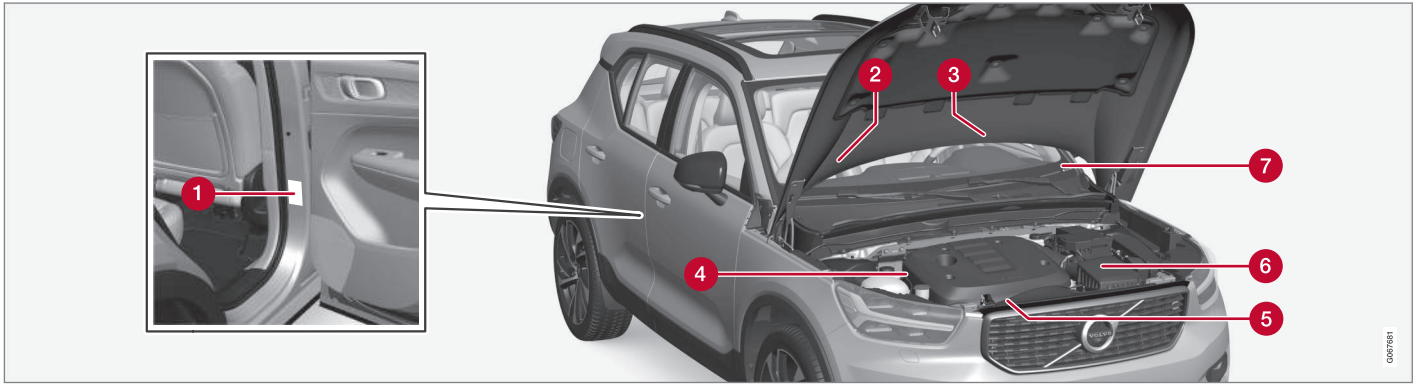
- Activating and deactivating the rain sensor's memory function (p. 169)
- Using the rear window wiper and rear window washer (p. 171)
- Set the wiper blades in service position (p. 644)
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades (p. 643)
- Replacing the wiper blade, rear window (p. 642)
- Using windscreen wipers (p. 167)
- Wiper blades and washer fluid (p. 167)
- Opening and closing the bonnet (p. 598)

SPECIFICATIONS

Type designations

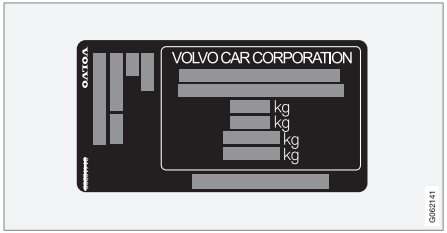
The decals in the car contain information such as chassis number, type designation, colour code, etc.

Label location

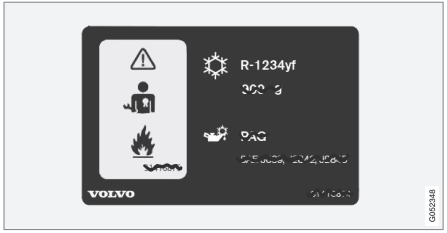


The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on market and model.

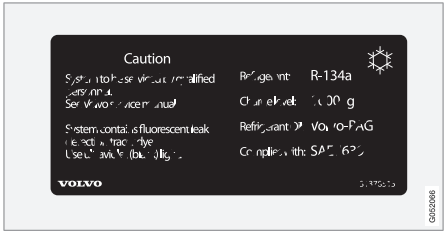
Knowing the car's type designation, vehicle identification and engine numbers can facilitate all contact with an authorised Volvo dealer regarding the car and when ordering spare parts and accessories.



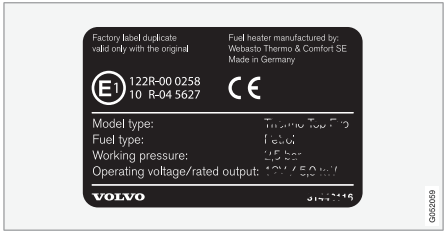
1 Decal for type designation, vehicle identification number, permissible maximum weights and code designation for exterior colour and type approval number. The decal is positioned on the door pillar, and will be visible when the right-hand rear door is opened.



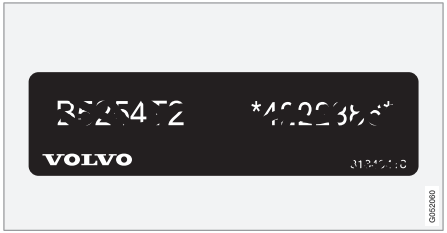
2 Decal for A/C system for cars with refrigerant R1234yf.



2 Decal for A/C system for cars with refrigerant R134a.

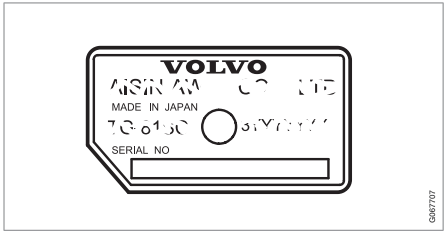


3 Label for parking heater.

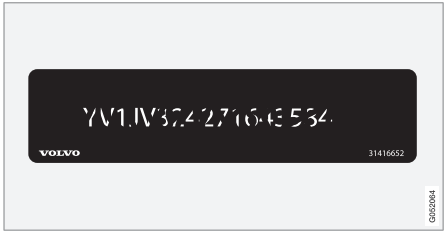


4 Decal for engine code and the engine's serial number. For certain engine alternatives there is no decal. In these cases, the engraved engine code can be read directly on the engine instead.

5 Label for engine oil.



6 Decal for gearbox type designation and serial number.



7 Decal for the car's identification number - VIN (Vehicle Identification Number).

Further information on the car is presented in the registration document.

NOTE

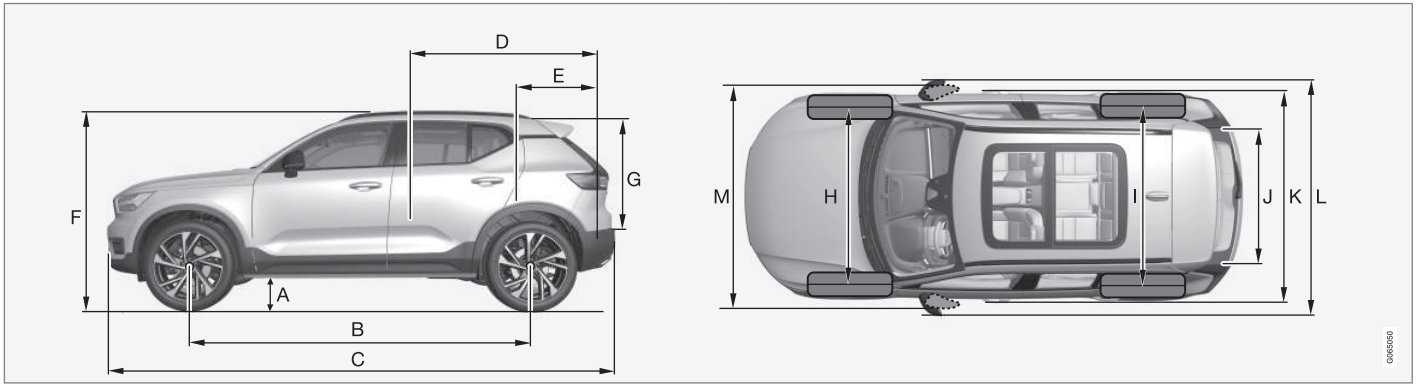
It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and locations in the car. The information that applies to your particular car can be found on the decal on the car.

Related information

- Air conditioning — specifications (p. 660)

Dimensions

Measurement of car length, height, etc. can be read in the table.



	Dimensions	mm	inches
A	Ground clearance[A]	205	8.1
B	Wheelbase	2702	106.4
C	Length	4425	174.2
D	Load length, floor, folded seat	1670	65.7

	Dimensions	mm	inches
E	Load length, floor	887	34.9
F	Height[B]	1658	65.3
G	Load height	733	28.9
H	Front track	1601	63.0
I	Rear track	1626	64.0
J	Load width, floor	1059	41.7

	Dimensions	mm	inches
K	Width	1873 (1863[C])	73.7 (73.3[C])

	Dimensions	mm	inches
L	Width including door mirrors	2034	80.1
M	Width including folded-in door mirrors	1910	75.2

A At kerb weight + 1 person. (Varies slightly depending on tyre dimension, chassis option, etc.)
B Including roof antenna, for kerb weight.
C Body width.

Related information

- Weights (p. 653)

Weights

Max. gross vehicle weight, etc. can be read on a label in the car.
Kerb weight includes the driver, the fuel tank 90% full, plus and all oils and fluids.

The weight of passengers and accessories, and towball load (when a trailer is hitched) influence the load capacity and are not included in the kerb weight.

Permitted max. load = Gross vehicle weight - Kerb weight.

NOTE

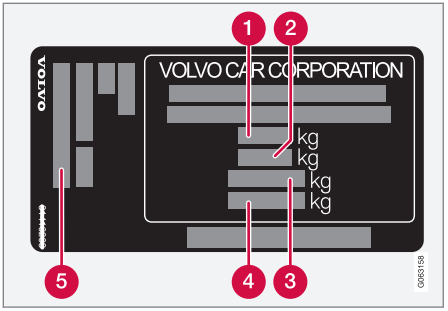
The documented kerb weight applies to cars in the standard version - i.e. a car without extra equipment or accessories. This means that for every accessory added the loading capacity of the car is reduced correspondingly by the weight of the accessory.

Examples of accessories that reduce load capacity are the different equipment levels (e.g. Kinetic, Momentum, Summum), as well as other accessories such as towbar, load carrier, space box, audio system, auxiliary lamps, GPS, fuel-driven heater, safety grille, carpets, cargo cover, power seats, etc.

Weighing the car is a certain way of ascertaining the kerb weight of your own particular car.

WARNING

The car's driving characteristics change depending on how heavily it is loaded and how the load is distributed.



The decal is positioned on the door pillar, and will be visible when the right-hand rear door is opened.

1. Max. gross vehicle weight
2. Max. train weight (car+trailer)
3. Max. front axle load
4. Max. rear axle load
5. Equipment level

Max. load: See registration document.

Max. roof load: 75 kg.

Related information

- Type designations (p. 648)
- Towing capacity and towball load (p. 654)

Towing capacity and towball load

Towing capacity and towball load for driving with a trailer can be read in the tables.

Max. weight braked trailer

NOTE

Use of vibration dampers on the towbar is recommended for trailers heavier than 1800 kg.

Engine	Engine code[A]	Gearbox	Max. weight braked trailer (kg)	Max. towball load (kg)
T4 Recharge	B3154T10	Automatic	1800	100
T5 Recharge	B3154T5	Automatic	1800	100

A The engine code, component number and serial number can be found on the engine.

IMPORTANT

When driving with a trailer, it is permitted to exceed the vehicle's gross vehicle weight (including towball load) by a maximum of 100 kg (220 lbs), provided that speed is limited to 100 km/h (62 mph). National legal requirements for the vehicle combination, such as speed, etc. must be observed.

NOTE

If there is no weight data in the table, this is available in an enclosed supplement.

Max. weight unbraked trailer

Max. weight unbraked trailer (kg)	Max. towball load (kg)
750	50

Related information

- Type designations (p. 648)
- Weights (p. 653)
- Driving with a trailer (p. 473)
- Trailer stability assist* (p. 475)

Engine specifications

Engine specifications (power, etc.) for each respective engine alternative can be found in the table below.

The Recharge variant is driven both by a petrol engine and an electric drive motor (ERAD – Electric Rear Axle Drive).

NOTE

Not all engines are available in all markets.

NOTE

If there is no engine data in the table, this is available in an enclosed supplement.

Engine	Engine code[A]	Output (kW/rpm)	Output (hp/rpm)	Torque (Nm/rpm)	No. of cylinders
T4 Recharge	B3154T10	95/5000	129/5000	245/1600–3000	3
T5 Recharge	B3154T5	132/5800	180/5800	265/1500–3000	3

A The engine code, component number and serial number can be found on the engine.

Electric drive motor

Max. power output: 60 kW (82 hp).

Torque: 160 Nm.

Related information

- Type designations (p. 648)
- Engine oil — specifications (p. 657)

Engine oil — specifications

Engine oil grade and volume for each respective engine alternative can be read in the table.
Volvo recommends:

Engine	Engine code[A]	Oil grade	Volume, incl. oil filter (litres, approx.)
T4 Recharge	B3154T10	Castrol Edge Professional V 0W-20 or VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20	5.6
T5 Recharge	B3154T5		5.6

[A] The engine code, component number and serial number can be found on the engine.

Related information

- Type designations (p. 648)
- Adverse driving conditions for engine oil (p. 658)
- Checking and filling with engine oil (p. 602)
- Engine oil (p. 601)

Adverse driving conditions for engine oil

Adverse driving conditions can lead to abnormally high oil temperature or oil consumption. Below are some examples of adverse driving conditions.

Check the oil level more frequently for long journeys:

- towing a caravan or trailer
- in mountainous regions
- at high speeds
- in temperatures colder than -30 °C (-22 °F) or hotter than +40 °C (+104 °F).

The above also apply to shorter driving distances at low temperatures.

Choose a fully synthetic engine oil for adverse driving conditions. It provides extra protection for the engine.

Volvo recommends:

IMPORTANT

In order to fulfil the requirements for the engine's service intervals all engines are filled with a specially adapted synthetic engine oil at the factory. The choice of oil has been made very carefully with regard to service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied. Only use a prescribed grade of oil for both filling and oil change, otherwise there is a risk of the service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact of the car being affected.

If engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity is not used, engine related components may become damaged. Volvo disclaims any liability for any such damage.

Volvo recommends that oil changes are carried out at an authorised Volvo workshop.

Related information

- Engine oil — specifications (p. 657)
- Engine oil (p. 601)

Transmission fluid – specifications

The transmission fluid needs to be replaced every 60,000 km.

Automatic gearbox

Prescribed transmission fluid:	Dual clutch oil, D1

Related information

- Type designations (p. 648)

Brake fluid – specifications

Brake fluid is the medium in a hydraulic brake system that is used to transfer pressure from e.g. a brake pedal via a master brake cylinder, which in turn acts on the brake callipers.

Prescribed grade: Volvo Original or equivalent fluid compliant with a combination of Dot 4, 5.1 and ISO 4925 class 6.

NOTE

It is recommended that brake fluid is changed or filled by an authorised Volvo workshop.

Related information

- Engine compartment overview (p. 600)

Fuel tank - volume

The fuel tank's filling capacity can be read in the table below.

	All models
Litres (approx)	48
US gallons (approx)	12.7

Related information

- Filling fuel (p. 462)

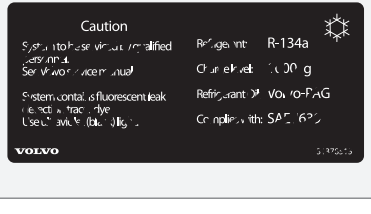
Air conditioning — specifications

The car's climate control system uses a freon-free refrigerant either R1234yf or R134a depending on market. Information about which refrigerant the car's climate control system uses is printed on a decal located on the inside of the bonnet.

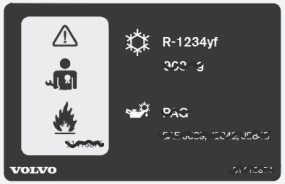
Prescribed grades and volumes of fluids and lubricants in the air conditioning system can be read below.

A/C decal

Decal for R134a



Decal for R1234yf



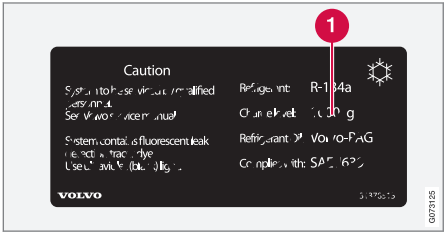
Symbol explanation R1234yf

Symbol	Meaning
	Caution
	Mobile air conditioning system (MAC)
	Lubricant type
	A trained and certified technician is required in order to service the mobile air conditioning system (MAC)
	Flammable refrigerants

Refrigerant

Refrigerant amount is printed on the decal located on the inside of the bonnet.

Cars with R134a refrigerant

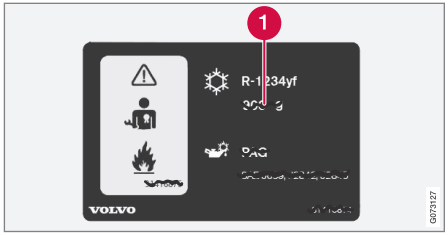


1 Refrigerant amount.

WARNING

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R134a. This system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

Cars with R1234yf refrigerant



1 Refrigerant amount.

WARNING

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R1234yf. In accordance with SAE J2845 (Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile A/C System), service and repair of the refrigerant system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians in order to ensure the safety of the system.

Compressor oil

Volume	Prescribed grade
100 ml (3.38 fl. oz.)	PAG SP-A2

Evaporator

IMPORTANT

The A/C system's evaporator must never be repaired or replaced with a previously used evaporator. A new evaporator must be certified and labelled in accordance with SAE J2842.

Related information

- Servicing the climate control system (p. 598)

Fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions

The information in the tables below is in accordance with WLTP (Worldwide Harmonised Light-Duty Vehicles Test Procedure), which is an international test method for vehicles equivalent to a passenger car designed for laboratory testing.

The fuel consumption for a vehicle is measured in litres per 100 km and carbon dioxide emissions (CO_2) are measured in gram CO_2 per km.

Explanation

	Weighted combined value. The value is weighted between electric mode and fuel mode over the entire drive cycle.
CO_2	Gram CO_2/km

	Litres/100 km
range	Certified value for the car's potential range ("up to") in km in electric mode. The value should not be interpreted as an expected range, and the range is difficult to achieve during normal driving.
	Urban and suburban driving
	Average value over all four drive cycle phases (urban, suburban, extra-urban and motorway driving)
aut	Automatic gearbox

	Low value
	High value

NOTE

If there is no consumption and emissions data in the table, this is available in an enclosed supplement.

NOTE

The capacity of the hybrid battery diminishes with age and use, which may result in increased use of the internal combustion engine and, as a consequence, reduced fuel economy and reduced range during electric operation.

					range	
			CO_2			
T4 Recharge (B3154T10)	aut		45	2.0	56[A]	45[A]
			55	2.4	51[A]	42[A]

					range	
			CO_2	ø		ø
T5 Recharge (B3154T5)	aut		45	2.0	56[A]	45[A]
			55	2.4	51[A]	42[A]

[A] Drive mode PURE

The values in the table above for fuel consumption, CO_2 emissions, and range for electric mode are based on special drive cycles (see below). The car's weight may increase depending on its equipment level. Together with how heavily the car is loaded, this affects fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions, and reduces its range in electric mode. According to WLTP, each car has unique fuel consumption, CO_2 emission values and electric range values, depending on how the car is equipped. These values range between the low value and high value in the table above. In many markets, you can find your car's unique fuel consumption, CO_2 emission values and electric range values in the car's registration document.

The certified values for the car should not be interpreted as the expected values. The certification values are the comparative values obtained during special drive cycles (see below).

There are several reasons for fuel consumption that is higher and an electric range that is shorter than the values in the table. Examples of these include:

- If the car is not regularly charged from the mains.
- If the car is equipped with extra equipment that affects its weight.
- Driving style.
- If the customer chooses wheels other than those mounted as standard on the basic version of the model, this could increase rolling resistance.
- High speed causes increased air resistance.
- Fuel quality, road and traffic conditions, weather and the condition of the car.

A combination of the examples above could increase consumption considerably.

There may be huge deviations in fuel consumption if comparing to the drive cycle profiles (see below), which are used in the certification of the car and on which consumption figures in the table are based. For further information, please refer to the referenced regulations.

NOTE

Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes, in combination with poorer fuel quality than recommended, are factors that considerably increase the car's fuel consumption.

WLTP standard

From and including 1 September 2018, a new standard was introduced for calculating con-

sumption values in the car. The WLTP standard (Worldwide Harmonised Light-Duty Vehicles Test Procedure) represents the average driving conditions for everyday driving. In comparison with the previous standard (NEDC), WLTP takes into account more varied traffic situations and speeds, but also equipment and weight classes. Optional equipment that affects consumption is deactivated during testing, e.g. air conditioning, seat heating, etc. The new standard should provide more realistic figures when it comes to fuel consumption, carbon dioxide and emissions, as well as range for electric operation. The values are intended to allow comparison between different cars and not to represent your typical normal consumption and range for electric mode.

Drive cycle profiles

A drive cycle simulates actual average driving of the car. The standard is based on four different drive cycle profiles. The four drive cycle profiles are:

- **Urban driving** – slow driving
- **Suburban driving** – average driving
- **Extra-urban driving** – fast driving
- **Motorway driving** – very fast driving.

Every drive cycle is determined by different conditions such as speed, time and mileage, for example.

The official value for combined driving, which is shown in the table, is a combination of the results from the four drive cycles, in accordance with legal requirements.

The exhaust gases are collected in order to extrapolate the carbon dioxide emissions (CO_2 emissions) during the four drive cycles. These were then analysed to determine the value for CO_2 emissions.

Related information

- Type designations (p. 648)
- Weights (p. 653)

Approved wheel and tyre sizes

In certain countries not all approved sizes are indicated by the registration document or other documents. The following table shows all approved combinations of wheel rims and tyres.

✓ = Approved

Engine	man/ aut	235/55 R18[A] 7.5x18x50.5	235/50 R19 7.5x19x50.5	245/45 R20 8x20x50.5	245/40 R21 8x21x50.5
All engines	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓

[A] 235/55 R18 on cars equipped with 18" brakes is only possible when using approved wheel rims. Check with your Volvo dealer how your car is equipped.

Related information

- Minimum permitted tyre load index and speed rating for tyres (p. 666)
- Type designations (p. 648)
- Dimension designation for tyre (p. 552)
- Dimension designation for wheel rim (p. 553)
- Snow chains (p. 567)

Minimum permitted tyre load index and speed rating for tyres

The table below shows minimum permitted load index (LI) and speed rating (SS).

Engine	man/ aut	Minimum permitted load index (LI)[A]	Minimum permitted speed rating (SS)[B]
All engines	aut	96	H

[A] The tyre's load index must be at least equal to or greater than indicated in the table.
[B] The tyre's speed rating must be at least equal to or greater than indicated in the table.

Related information

- Approved wheel and tyre sizes (p. 665)
- Approved tyre pressures (p. 667)
- Type designations (p. 648)
- Dimension designation for tyre (p. 552)
- Dimension designation for wheel rim (p. 553)

Approved tyre pressures

Approved tyre pressures for each engine alternative can be found in the table.

> **NOTE**
>
> All engines, tyres or combinations of these are not always available in all markets.

Engine	Tyre size	Speed	Load, 1-3 persons		Max. load		ECO pressure[A]
			Front (kPa)[B]	Rear (kPa)	Front (kPa)	Rear (kPa)	Front/rear (kPa)
All engines	235/55 R18	0-160 km/h (0-100 mph)	230	240	260	260	260
	235/50 R19 245/45 R20 245/40 R21	160+ km/h (100+ mph)	240	240	260	260	–
	Temporary Spare Tyre	max 80 km/h (max 50 mph)	420	420	420	420	–

A Economical driving.
B In certain countries the "bar" unit is used alongside the SI unit "Pascal": 1 bar = 100 kPa.

Related information

- Type designations (p. 648)
- Checking tyre pressure (p. 554)
- Approved wheel and tyre sizes (p. 665)
- Recommended tyre pressure (p. 556)

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

A

A/C (Air conditioning) 208
ABS
anti-lock brakes 435
Accessories and extra equipment 37
installation 38
Active bending lights 146
Active main beam 145
Active Park Assist 381
Limitations 386
Symbols and messages 389
Active Yaw Control 275
Adapting driving characteristics 451
Adaptive Cruise Control 299
activate 302
Auto brake 326
change cruise control functionality 305
change of target 323
controls 300
deactivate 303
display mode 301
fault tracing 305
Limitations 305
overtaking 321
setting the time interval 324
standby mode 303
stored speed 323
Symbols and messages 307
WARNING 322
Additional heater (Auxiliary heater) 220
Adjusting headlamp pattern/headlamp beam 142
Adjusting the steering wheel 183
Aerial
location 259
Airbag 51
Activating/deactivating 54
driver's side 52
passenger side 53, 54
Airbag, see Airbag 51
Air conditioning 208
Air conditioning, fluid
volume and grade 660
Air conditioning system 186, 197
repair 598
Air distribution 192
Air vents 192, 193
change 192
defrosting 202
Recirculation 201
table of options 194
Air quality 189, 190
allergies and asthma 190
passenger compartment filter 191
Air recirculation 201
Alarm 268
deactivation 270
motion and tilt sensors 269
reduced alarm level 270
Alarm for hazard warning flashers 280
Alarm for slippery driving conditions 280
Alcohol lock 434, 435
Allergy and asthma inducing substances. 190
Ambience lights
adapt 153
Android Auto 511, 512, 514
Apple CarPlay 507, 508, 510
Approach lighting 150
Apps 489
Ashtray 578
Assistance at risk of collision 347
activate/deactivate 348
Limitations 351
Symbols and messages 352
upon risk of head-on collision 349
upon risk of rear-end collision 350
upon risk of run-off 348
Audio and media 488
Audio settings 488, 521
phone 522

play media 499, 500
Text message 521
Auto climate control 201
Auto hold 441
Automatic brake 441
activate/deactivate 442
after collision 443
Driver support 274
Automatic car wash 636
Automatic car washes 636
Automatic gearbox 444, 445
kickdown 448
oil 659
trailer 473
Automatic locking 262
Automatic relocking 228, 257
Automatic speed limiter 292
activate/deactivate 293
Limitations 295
tolerance 294
Auxiliary heater 220

B

Backrest
front seat, adjusting 174, 175, 178
rear seat, lowering 179
Bag holder 584
Battery 468, 606
Battery 606
Hybrid battery 608
jump starting 468
maintenance 606
overload 467
recycling 609
symbols on the battery 608
Bicycle rack
towbar mounted 477
Blind Spot Information 354
BLIS 354
activate/deactivate 355
Limitations 356
Symbols and messages 357
Bluetooth
connect 504
connect car to Internet 530
phone 514
settings 522
Bonnet, opening 598
Book service and repair 593
Brake assist
after collision 443
Brake energy 436, 449
Brake fluid
grade 659
Brake functions 435
Brake mode 445
Brakes 435
Anti-lock braking system, ABS 435
autobrake with adaptive cruise control 326
auto brake with Pilot Assist 326
automatic when stationary 441
brake assist system, BAS 437
brake light 149
brake system 435
emergency brake lights 149
maintenance 438
on gritted roads 437
on wet roads 437
Parking brake 438
Brake system
fluid 659
Bulbs
change 624
specifications 628
Bypass alcohol lock 434

C

Camera sensor
see Camera unit 399
Camera unit 399
Limitations 399
maintenance and cleaning 402
Symbols and messages 404
Car care 634, 635, 636, 638, 639, 640
Leather upholstery 632
Care Key
restricted remote control key 236
settings 237
Car functions
in centre display 112
Cargo area 582
electrical socket 578, 579
lighting 152
mounting points 584
parcel shelf 587
protective net 585
Cargo area floor 585
Cargo cover 587
cargo net 585
Car holiday 459
Car key battery low 231
Car modem
connect car to Internet 531
settings 532
Car status 592
Tyre pressure 559
Car upholstery 628, 630, 631, 632, 633
Car washing 634, 635, 636, 638, 639, 640
Catalytic converter
Recovery 478
central locking 260
Centre display
change appearance 121
cleaning 629
climate control 197
function view 112
Keyboard 116
manage 102, 105, 109, 114
messages 130, 131
overview 99
settings 122, 123
switch off and change volume 121
symbols in status bar 114
views 105
Certificate 525
Change of owner 124
Charge
car function 458
Charge current 410
Charging
finish charging 423
Hybrid battery 409
open and close charging flap 415
start charging 415
Status 418, 419, 421
Charging cable 411
Checking the engine oil level 602
Child lock
activate/deactivate 261
Child safety 60
Child seat 60, 63, 64
i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points 62
lower mounting points 62
overview table 66
positioning/fitting 63, 64
table for location 67
table of i-Size 69
table of ISOFIX 70
Upper mounting points 61
Cigarette lighter 577
City Safety 334
brakes for oncoming vehicles 342
cross traffic 340
evasive manoeuvre prevented 341
Limitations 343

limitations in the case of cross traffic 341
obstacle detection 338
set warning distance 337
subfunctions 335
Symbols and messages 346
Cleaning 631, 633
automatic car wash 636
car washing 634, 635, 636, 638, 639, 640
centre display 629
Fabric upholstery 628, 630, 632
rims 640
Seatbelts 631
upholstery 628, 630, 631, 632, 633
Cleaning wheel rims 640
Cleaning wiper blades 638
CleanZone 189
Clean Zone Interior Package 190
Climate control 186, 197
auto-regulation 201
centre display 197
experienced temperature 187
fan control 206
Parking 208
rear seat 197
sensors 187
temperature control 206, 207
voice control 188
zones 186
Climate control system
Refrigerant 660
Clock, adjustment 86
CO2 emissions 662
Coat hanger 585
Collision 44, 46, 51, 58
Collision warning
from behind 353
with adaptive cruise control 322
with Pilot Assist 322
Collision warning system
cross traffic rear 360
see City Safety 334
Colour code, paint 642
Colour codes 642
Combined instrument panel 77
settings 79
Compass 484
calibration 484
Condensation in headlamps 635, 636, 638, 639
Connect car to Internet
no or poor connection 533
via a mobile device (WiFi) 530
via car modem 531
via telephone (Bluetooth) 530
Connected Safety 280
activate/deactivate 281
Limitations 281
Connect phone 515
Controls lighting 153
Control unit
charging status 419
Coolant 604
filling 604
Cooling system
overheating 466
Cornering lights 147
Corner Traction Control 275
Crash, see Collision 44
Cross Traffic Alert 360
activate/deactivate 361
Limitations 362
messages 364
Cruise control 295
activate 297
deactivate 297
standby mode 298
stored speed 323
Customer privacy policy 37
CZIP (Clean Zone Interior Package) 190

D

Data
  recording 35
  transfer between car and workshop 590
Data link connector 38
Data sharing 535
Daytime running lights 143
Deadlock 271
Defrosting 202
Diagnosis
  via the workshop's Wi-Fi 590
Digital radio (DAB) 497
Dimensions 651
  Towbar 470
dipped beam 143
Dipstick, electronic 602
Direction indicator 146
Direction indicators 146
direction of rotation 553
Display
  driver information 77
Display lighting 153
Distance Warning
  Set time interval 324
DivX® 503
Door mirrors 159
  Dipping 160
  resetting 161
  store position 176, 177
Download Centre 591
  using 591
Drive-E
  Environmental philosophy 28
Driver Alert Control 358
  activate/deactivate 359
  guide to rest stops 359
  Limitations 360
Driver display 77
  app menu 94, 95
  hybrid-related symbols and messages 425
  messages 96
  settings 79
Driver performance 85
  settings 86
Driver profile 126
  edit 127, 128, 130
  select 127
driver support system 274
  Driving mode 326
Drive systems 449
Drivetrain
  Gearbox 444
Driving
  cooling system 466
  with a tailer 473
Driving in water 461
Driving mode 451
  change 454
  when using driver support 326
Driving with a trailer
  towball load 654
  towing capacity 654

E

ECO pressure 556, 667
Electrically operated parking brake 438
Electrical socket 578
  using 579
Electrical system 606
Electric drive motor
  specifications 656
Electric motor 449
Electric operation
  Driving 457
  range 456
emergency brake lights 149

Emergency equipment
first aid kit 588
warning triangle 588
Emergency puncture repair kit 568
Pump up tyre 573
using 569
Emissions of carbon dioxide 662
Energy distribution
assisted by map data 455
Engine
automatic start and stop of internal combustion engine 450
deactivate 431
overheating 466
start 430
Engine braking 435, 445
Engine compartment
coolant 604
Engine oil 601
overview 600
Engine drag control 275
Engine oil 601, 658
adverse driving conditions 658
check and top up 602
grade and volume 657
Engine specifications 656
Engine temperature
high 466
Environment 28
Ethanol content 465
External dimensions 651

F

Fan
Air distribution 192
Air vents 193
Control 206
Fault tracing
Adaptive Cruise Control 305
City Safety 343
First aid 588
First aid kit 588
Flooded road 461
Fluids, capacities 645, 659, 660
Fluids and oils 604, 659, 660
Fog lamp
front 147
rear 148
Foot brake 435
Front seat
Climate control 197
Fan 206
heating 198, 199
Temperature 206
Front seat, manual 174
Front seat, power 175
adjusting seat 175
lumbar support 178
massage 178
multi-function control 178
store position 176, 177
FSC, ecolabelling 23
Fuel 464, 465
fuel consumption 662
identifier 465
fuel gauge 80
Fuelling
filling 462
fuel filler flap 461
Fuel tank
volume 659
Fuel vapour 464
Fuse box 610
Fuses 609
changing 610
in engine compartment 611
under glovebox 617

G

Gearbox 444
  automatic 444, 445, 449
Gear positions
  automatic gearbox 445
Gear selector inhibitor 448
Gear shift indicator 449
Glass, laminated/reinforced 156
Glovebox 580
Gracenote® 502
Gross vehicle weight 653
Ground fault breaker 413
GSI - Gear selector assistance 449

H

Handbrake 438
Handwash 635
Hard disk
  space 537
Hazard warning flashers 149
Headlamp beam
  adaptation 142
Headlamp control 140, 153
Headlamp pattern, adjusting 142
head restraint 181
Heated washer nozzles 167
Heater 218
  auxiliary heater 220
  parking heater 219
Heating
  seats 198, 199
  steering wheel 200
  Windows 203, 205
High engine temperature 466
High-pressure washing 638
Hill start assist
  Hill Start Assist (HSA) 443
Hill Start Assist 443
Hold
  car function 458
HomeLink® 480
  program 481
  Type approval 483
  using 483
Home safe lighting, Homesafe Lighting, Follow me home lighting, follow-me-home lighting 150
Horn 182
Hybrid battery 608
  charging 409
Hybrid battery meter 81
Hybrid meter 80
Hybrid operation 451, 455

I

IAQS (Interior Air Quality System) 190
IC (Inflatable Curtain) 57
ID, Volvo 26
Identification number 39
Ignition position 432, 433
Immobiliser 240
Immobilizer
  Immobiliser 240
Indicator symbols 87
Individual drive mode 451
Inflatable curtain 57
Inflatable Curtain 57
Information display 77, 79
Infotainment system (Audio and media) 488
Instrument lighting 153
Instrument overview
  left-hand drive car 74
  right-hand drive car 75

Instruments and controls 74, 75
IntelliSafe
Driver support 31
Interior Air Quality System 190
Interior lighting 151
adapt 153
Interior rearview mirror 159
Dipping 160
Intermittent wiping 167
Internet, see Internet-connected car 529
Internet-connected car
book service and repair 593
send car information 594
system updates 591
iPod®, connection 505
ITPMS - Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System 557

J

Jack 564
Journey statistics 85
Jump starting 468

K

Kerb weight 653
Key 226
Keyboard 116, 119
change language 119
Keyless
Locking/unlocking 257
settings 258
touch-sensitive surfaces 256
Keypad in the steering wheel 182
Key tag 226

L

Labels
location 648
Laminated glass 156
Lamps
change 624
location 624
specifications 628
trailer 476
Lane assistance 327
activate/deactivate 329
display mode 333
Limitations 330
select assistance option 330
Symbols and messages 331
Lane Keeping Aid
see Lane assistance 327
Language 122
Large Animal Detection (LAD) 338
Launch function 448
Leather upholstery, washing instructions 632
License agreement 89, 538
Lifting tool 564
Lighting
active bending lights 146
approach lighting 150
Automatic main beam 145
brake light 149
controls 140, 151
controls, instruments, display 153
cornering lights 147
daytime running lights 143
dipped beam 143
direction indicators 146
emergency brake lights 149
fog lamp 147
Hazard warning flashers 149
home safe lighting 150
in the passenger compartment 151
lamp positions 624

main beam 144, 145
position lamps 142
rear fog lamp 148
settings 141
Lighting, bulb replacement 624
brake light 626
bulbs, specifications 628
direction indicator, rear 625
rear fog lamp 627
Limp home 444
Load carriers 583
Loading
General 582
load retaining eyelets 584
long load 582
Loading hooks 584
Load retaining eyelets
cargo area 584
Lock
Locking/unlocking 228
Lockable wheel bolts 564
Lock confirmation 224
setting 225
Locking/unlocking
tailgate 230, 258
Locks and remote control keys 224
Long-term storage 427
Low battery voltage
Battery 467

M

Main beam 144, 145
Maintained climate comfort 214
start/shut-off 215
maintenance
Rustproofing 640
Max. roof load 653
Media player 498, 499, 500
compatible file formats 506
voice control 136
Messages and symbols
Adaptive Cruise Control 307
Assistance at risk of collision 352
BLIS 357
camera and radar unit 404
City Safety 346
Cross Traffic Alert 364
Lane assistance 331
Park Assist 370
Park assist camera 379
Park Assist Pilot 389
Pilot Assist 320
stability and traction control system 278
Messages in displays 96, 130
manage 97, 131
saved 97, 131
Meters
fuel gauge 80
Hybrid battery 81
Mileage 82
Electric operation 456
Misting
condensation in headlamps 634, 636
Mobile phone, see Phone 515
Mood lighting 152
Motion sensor 269

N

Net
cargo area 585

O

Obstacle detection
City Safety 338
octane rating 465
Oil, see also Engine oil 657, 658
Oil filter 601

Oil level 602
Online car 529
no or poor connection 533
Option/accessory 21
Output 656
electric motor 656
outside temperature gauge 87
Overheating 466, 473
Overtaking Assistance 321
activate 321
Owner's information 16
Owner's manual
ecolabelling 23
in centre display 17, 18
in mobile 20
OWNER'S MANUAL 21

P

PACOS (Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch) 54
Paddle on the steering wheel 182
Paintwork
colour code 642
damage and touch-up 640, 641, 642
Panorama roof
pinch protection 156
Panoramic roof 162
opening and closing 164
sun blind 166
ventilation position 165
Parallel parking 381
Parcel shelf 587
Park Assist 365
activate/deactivate 367
forward, backward and along the sides 366
Limitations 368
Symbols and messages 370
Park assist camera 371
activate 378
Limitations 399
locations and views 372
park assist lines 374
sensor fields 376
Symbols and messages 379
Park Assist Pilot 381
leave parking 386
parallel parking 382
perpendicular parking 382
using 383
Park Assist System 365
Parking
on hill 440
Parking brake 438
activate/deactivate 439
automatic activation 440
low battery voltage 441
Parking climate 208
Symbols and messages 216
Parking heater 219
Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch 54
Passenger compartment filter 191
Passenger compartment heater (Parking heater) 219
Passenger compartment interior 576
ashtray 578
cigarette lighter 577
electrical socket 578
glovebox 580
Sun visor 581
tunnel console 577
Passenger compartment lighting
automatic 151
Personal information (Customer privacy policy) 37
petrol 465
Petrol particle filter 466

Phone 514
Calls 519, 521
change to another 518
connect 515
connect automatically 517
connect manually 518
disconnect 518
remove 519
text message 520
voice control 135
Phone charger 523
Pilot Assist 309
activate 314
Auto brake 326
change of target 323
controls 311
deactivate 315
disabled steering assistance 316
display mode 312
Limitations 317
overtaking 321
setting the time interval 324
standby mode 315
stored speed 323
Symbols and messages 320
WARNING 322
Pinch protection 156
resetting 157
PIN code 532
Private locking 267
Polishing 634
Position lamp 142
Power panoramic roof 162
Power save mode 467
Power seat 175
Power windows 157, 158
opening and closing 158
pinch protection 156
Preconditioning 209
start/shut-off 209
Timer 211
Privacy policy (Customer privacy policy) 37
Private locking 267
activate/deactivate 267
Protective net 585
Pump up tyre 573

R

Radar unit 390
Limitations 399
maintenance and cleaning 402
Symbols and messages 404
Type approval 391
Radio 492
change radio frequency and radio station 493
DAB 497
search for radio station 494
settings 495
start 492
voice control 136
Radio favourites 495
Rain sensor 168, 169
Rain sensor memory function 169
Raising the car 595
Range
during electric operation 662
Rear Collision Warning 353
Limitations 353
Rear seat
Climate control 197
head restraint 181
heating 199
lowering the backrest 179
Rearview and door mirrors
angle external mirrors 161
compass 484
Dipping 160
door 159

electrically retractable 161
heating 205
interior 159
rear window
heating 205
Washers 171, 172
Wiper 171, 172
Recharge
General 408
Recommendations during driving 459
Recommendations for loading 582
Recovery 480
Refrigerant 598
climate control system 660
Refuelling 462
Regeneration 466
Regenerative braking 443
Remote control, HomeLink®
programmable 480
Remote control immobiliser 240
Remote control key 226
battery replacement 231
connect to driver profile 128
detachable key blade 237
loss 235
range 231
Remote control key system, type approval 241
Remote updates 591
Resetting, trip meter 85
Resetting the door mirrors 161
Restore settings 124
change of owner 124
Driver profile 130
Retractable power door mirrors 161
Reversing camera 371
Rims
dimensions 553
Road run-off protection 348
Road sign information
Limitations 288
Road Sign Information 282
activate/deactivate 283
activating / deactivating warnings 287
display mode 284
Sensus Navigation 286
speed camera information 286
Speed warning 286
Rollover protection 275
Roll Stability Control 275
Roof load, max. weight 653
Rustproofing 640

S

Safety 44
pregnancy 44
Safety mode 58
start/movement 59
Sealing fluid 568
Seat, see Seats 174
Seatbelt 46
buckle/unbuckle 47
pregnancy 44
seatbelt reminder 50
seatbelt tensioner 49
Seatbelt, see Seatbelts 46
Seatbelt reminder 50
seatbelt tensioner
Resetting 50
Seatbelt tensioner 49
Seats
heating 198, 199
manual front seat 174
power front seat 175
store position 176, 177
whiplash protection 45
Security code 267

sensors
Air quality 191
Camera unit 399
Climate control 187
Radar unit 390
Sensus
connection and entertainment 32
Sensus Navigation
Road Sign Information 286
Service position 644
Service programme 590
Settings
Categories 125
contextual 123
Resetting 124
Side airbag 57
Side Impact Protection System 57
SIM card 532
SIPS (Side Impact Protection System) 57
Skidding 460
Ski hatch 585
slippery driving conditions 460
Snow chains 567
Software updates 35
Sound experience 489
spare wheel 565
manage 566
Speed camera information 286
activate/deactivate 287
Speed limiter 289
activate 290
automatic 292
deactivate 291
Limitations 292
stored speed 323
temporary deactivation 291
Speed ratings, tyres 552
Spin control 275
Stabiliser
trailer 475
Stability and traction control system 275
sport mode 276, 277
Symbols and messages 278
Stains 628, 630, 631, 632, 633
Starting the engine 430
after collision 59
Start the car 430
State of charge
car function 458
Steering assistance at risk of collision 347
Steering force, speed related 274
Steering force level, see Steering force 274
Steering lock 183
Steering wheel 182, 183
heating 200
keypad 182
paddle 182
steering wheel adjustment 183
Steering wheel paddles 446
Stickers
location 648
Stone chips and scratches 640, 641, 642
Storage spaces 576
glovebox 580
Sun visor 581
tunnel console 577
Stored speed 323
Sun blind
panoramic roof 162, 166
pinch protection 156
Sunroof
pinch protection 156
Sun visor 581
mirror lighting 152
Switching off the engine 431
Switch off engine 431

Symbols
dynamic 77
indicator symbols 87
warning symbols 87
Symbols and messages
centre display status field 114
hybrid related 425
parking climate 216
system updates 591

T

Tailgate
closing and locking with button 263
Locking/unlocking 230, 258
opening/closing with foot movement 265
unlock from inside 261
Target vehicle change 323
Temperature
Control 206, 207
experienced 187
Temperature monitoring 414
Temporary Spare 565
Terms and conditions
services 36
user 535
Through-load hatch 585
Tilt detector 269
Time interval to the vehicle ahead 324
Tools 563
Top view 122
Total airing function 226
Towbar 470
foldable 471
specifications 470
Towing 478, 480
Towing capacity and towball load 654
Towing eye 479
Traction control 275
Traffic information 495
Trailer
cable 474
driving with a trailer 473
Lamps 476
snaking 475
Trailer stability assist 276, 475
Trailer Stability Assist 276
Transmission 444
Transmission oil
grade 659
Tread 554
Tread depth 554
winter tyres 567
Tread wear indicators 554
Trip computer 82
show in driver display 84
Trip meter 82
Trip meter, resetting 85
Trip statistics
settings 86
TSA - trailer stability assist 475
Tunnel console 577
Tunnel detection 143
Type approval
HomeLink® 483
radar system 391
radio equipment 398
remote control key system 241
Type designations 648
Tyre load index 552
Tyre pressure
Adjust 555
Check 554
label showing recommended pressure 556
Tyre pressure monitoring 557
action 560

save a new tyre pressure 558
Status 559
Tyre pressure table 667
Tyres
age 550
designation of dimensions 552
dimensions 665
direction of rotation 553
economy and wear 550
pressure 667
recommended 550
remove and mount 561
rotation during replacement 550
specifications 665, 666, 667
speed rating 552
Storage 550
tread wear indicators 554
tyre pressure table 667
winter tyres 567

U

Units 122
Unlocking
settings 230
with key blade 238
USB
jack for connecting media 505

V

Ventilation 192, 193
Vibration damper 470
Video 503, 505
settings 504
Voice control 132
Climate control 188
phone 135
radio and media 136
settings 136
using 133, 135, 136
VOL marking 550
Volvo ID 26
create and register 26

W

Warning lamps
Adaptive Cruise Control 322
Pilot Assist 322
stability and traction control system 275
Warning sound
Parking brake 441
Warning symbols 87
Safety 44
Warning triangle 588
Washer fluid 167, 645
Washer nozzles, heated 167
Washers
headlamps 170
rear window 171, 172
washer fluid, filling 645
windscreen 170
Waxing 634
Weights
kerb weight 653
Wheel bolts 564
Wheel rims
cleaning 640
Wheels
remove and mount 561
snow chains 567
Wheels and tyres
approved dimensions 665
tyre load index and speed rating 666
whiplash protection 45
Whiplash Protection System 45
WHIPS (Whiplash Protection System) 45
Wi-Fi
connect car to Internet 530
delete network 534
share internet connection, hotspot 532
technology and security 534

Windows and glass 156
Windscreen
heating 203
Windscreen washing 170
Windscreen wiper 167
rain sensor 168, 169
Winter driving 460
snow chains 567
winter tyres 567
Wiper blades 167
changing 642, 643
Service position 644
Wiper blades and washer fluid 167
WPC 523

VOLVO

TP 33401 (English), AT 2017, MY21, Copyright © 2000-2020 Volvo Car Corporation